















SELECTIONS FROM

D. APPLETON & CO.'S PUBLICATIONS.

HISTORY.

- ARNOLD, Dr. History of Rome. 2 vols. 8vo.....5 00  
 GREENHOW'S History of Oregon and California. 8vo., map.....2 50  
 O'CALLAGHAN, Dr. History of New Netherland. 8vo.....2 50  
 ARNOLD, Dr. Lectures on Modern History. Edited by Prof. Reed. 12mo. 1 25  
 FROST, Prof. History of the United States Navy. Plates. 12mo.....1 00  
 —History of the United States Army. Plates. 12mo.....1 25  
 —History of the Indians of North America. Plates. 12mo.....1 00  
 —History of the Colonies of America. 12mo. illustrated.....1 00  
 GUIZOT'S History of Civilization in Europe. Edited by Prof. Henry. 12mo.....1 00  
 KOHLRAUSCH'S Complete History of Germany. 8vo.....1 50  
 MICHELET'S Complete History of France (Now publishing in parts 25 cents each.)  
 ROWAN'S History of the French Revolution. 18mo. 2 vols. in 1.....63  
 TAYLOR'S Natural History of Society in the Barbarous and Civilized State. 2 vols. 12mo.....2 25  
 —Manual of Ancient and Modern History. Edited by Prof. Henry. 8vo. 2 25; sheep.....2 50  
 —Ancient History—Separate.....1 50  
 —Modern History. do.....1 50  
 Already used as a Text-book in several Colleges.

BIOGRAPHY.

- ARNOLD, Dr. Life and Correspondence By Stanly. 12mo.....1 50  
 CARLYLE'S Life of Schiller. New edition, 12mo.....75  
 HAMILTON, Alexander, Life of, by his Son. 2 vols. 8vo.....5 00  
 NAPOLEON, Life of, from the French of Laurent De L'Ardeche. 2 vols. 8vo. 500 cuts.....4 00  
 Cheap edition, paper cover.....2 00  
 SOUTHEY, Robert. Life of Oliver Cromwell. 18mo.....38

CHURCHMAN'S LIBRARY.

*The volumes of this series are of a standard character and uniform in style.*

- HOOK. The Cross of Christ; Meditations on our Saviour. 16mo.....63  
 IVES, Bishop. Sermons. 16mo.....63  
 OGILBY'S Lectures on the Church in England and America.....75  
 MARSHALL'S Notes on Episcopacy. Edited by Wainwright. 12mo.....1 25  
 SPENCER'S Christian Instructed. 16mo. ....1 25  
 NEWMAN'S Sermons on Subjects of the Day. 12mo.....1 25  
 MANNING on the Unity of the Church. 16mo.....1 00

- A'KEMPIS. Of the Imitation of Christ. 16mo.....1 00  
 SHERLOCK'S Practical Christian. 16mo.....1 00  
 SPINCKE'S Manual of Private Devotion. 16mo.....1 00  
 WILSON'S Sacra Privata. Complete. 16mo.....1 00  
 CHURTON'S History of the Early English Church.....1 00  
 LYRA Apostolica. From 5th Oxford edition. 18mo.....75  
 PAGET'S Tales of the Village. 3 vols. 16mo.....1 75  
 SUTTON'S Disce Vivere, Learn to Live. 16mo.....1 00  
 —On the Sacrament. 16mo.1 00  
 —Disce Mori, Learn to Die. 16mo.....1 00  
 CHRISTMAS Bells and other Poems. 16mo.....75  
 TAYLOR'S Golden Grove. 16mo....50  
 —Episcopacy Asserted and Maintained. 16mo.....1 00  
 KIP'S Double Witness of the Church. 12mo.....1 00  
 GRESLEY'S Portrait of an English Churchman.....75  
 EVANS' Rectory of Valehead 16mo...75

MISCELLANEOUS.

- ARNOLD, Dr. Miscellaneous Works. 1 vol. 8vo.....2 00  
 —Rugby School Sermons. 12mo. ....75  
 COIT, Dr. Puritanism Reviewed. 12mo. ....1 50  
 COOLEY'S Cyclopaedia of 6000 Practical Recipes. 8vo.....2 25  
 BOUTISSANGAULT'S Rural Economy. Translated. 12mo.....1 50  
 D'ISRAELI'S Curiosities of Literature. Large 8vo.....3 50  
 FROST'S Book of Illustrious Mechanics. 12mo. illustrated.....1 00  
 —Book of Good Examples. 12mo. illustrated.....1 00  
 FOSTER'S Literary Miscellanies. 12mo. ....1 25  
 GOLDSMITH'S Vicar of Wakefield. 12mo. illustrated.....75  
 MARSHALL'S Farmer's and Emigrant's Hand Book. 12mo. illustrated....1 00  
 OLLENDORFF'S New German Grammar, by Adler. 12mo.....1 50  
 —Key to do. uniform.....75  
 REID'S Dictionary of the English Language, with Derivations. 12mo...1 00  
 STEWART on the Management of Horses. Edited by A. B. Allen. 12mo. ....1 00  
 SOUTHGATE, Bp. Visit to the Syrian Church. 12mo.....1 00  
 URE'S Dictionary of Arts, Manufactures, and Mines, with Supplement. 2 vols. 6 50  
 WARREN'S Introduction to Law Studies 1 vol. 8vo.....3 50  
 WARNER'S Rudimental Lessons in Music. 18mo.....50

*D. Appleton & Co. have just published*  
**THE STANDARD  
PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY**  
OF THE  
**FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES,**  
IN TWO PARTS.

PART I. FRENCH AND ENGLISH.—PART II. ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

**THE FIRST PART COMPREHENDING**

WORDS IN COMMON USE. TERMS CONNECTED WITH SCIENCE. TERMS BELONGING  
TO THE FINE ARTS. 4000 HISTORICAL NAMES. 4000 GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES.

11,000 TERMS LATELY PUBLISHED. WITH THE  
**PRONUNCIATION OF EVERY WORD**

ACCORDING TO THE FRENCH ACADEMY AND THE MOST EMINENT LEXICOGRAPHERS  
AND GRAMMARIANS. TOGETHER WITH

**750 CRITICAL REMARKS,**

IN WHICH THE VARIOUS METHODS OF PRONOUNCING EMPLOYED BY DIFFERENT AU-  
THORS ARE INVESTIGATED AND COMPARED WITH EACH OTHER.

**THE SECOND PART CONTAINING**

A COPIOUS VOCABULARY OF ENGLISH WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS, WITH THE PRONUN-  
CIATION ACCORDING TO WALKER. THE WHOLE PRECEDED BY

A PRACTICAL AND COMPREHENSIVE SYSTEM OF FRENCH PRONUNCIATION.

**BY GABRIEL SURENNE, F. A. S. E.,**

French Teacher in Edinburgh; Corresponding Member of the French Grammatical Society  
of Paris; Lecturer on Military History in the Scottish Naval and Military  
Academy; and author of several Works on Education.

One volume 12mo. of 900 pages.

*Extract from the Author's Preface.*

The Phras eology, forming the second essential part of this Dictionary, is based on that of the Academy, the sole and legitimate authority in France; and every effort of the Author has been so directed, as to render it both copious and practical. With this view, an improved method of elucidating new meanings, by employing parentheses, has been introduced, and it is hoped that the utility and benefits resulting from this improvement, will not fail to be duly appreciated.

Another novelty to which the Author may lay claim, is the placing of Historical and Geographical names below each page; and by this arrangement, the facility of being acquainted with their definition and pronunciation at a single glance, will be found of no small advantage.

As to the English or second part of this Dictionary, the reader will find it to consist of a copious vocabulary of terms, with their pronunciation according to the system of Walker. The various meanings of the words are translated into French; and when the expressions happen to be substantives, the French gender is pointed out by means of proper signs.

Lastly, that competent judges may be aware of the authorities on which the pronunciation and critical remarks pervading this Dictionary are founded, the titles and dates of the [works which] have been consulted. with brief reflectionson their professed object, will be found in the Introduction following this Preface,



# EDUCATIONAL WORKS.

Published by D. Appleton & Company.

**THE STANDARD PRONOUNCING DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES.** Part I. French and English; Part II. English and French. By Gabriel Surenne, F. A. S. E. One volume 12mo.

This new and complete Dictionary embraces many valuable improvements. Its plan is on the principle of Reid's new Dictionary of the English Language, which has been so favorably received by American Scholars.

**OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.** With additions and corrections, by Felix Foresti, Professor of the Italian Language in the University of New-York. One vol. 12mo.

**OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE AND SPEAK THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.** To which is added a systematic outline of the different Parts of Speech, their inflection and use, with full Paradigms, and a complete table of Irregular Verbs. By G. J. Adler, A. B. One neat vol. 12mo. Price \$1 50.

M. Ollendorff's system commends itself as the best, nay the only *one* of the kind, to all who desire a practical knowledge of the language. It is fast superseding all others, both on the Continent, in England, and the United States.

**A KEY TO THE EXERCISES OF OLLENDORFF'S GERMAN GRAMMAR.** One volume 12mo., uniform with the Grammar. Price 75 cents.

**A DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE;** containing the Pronunciation, Etymology, and Explanation of all Words authorized by eminent writers; to which are added a Vocabulary of the Roots of English Words, and an accented list of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names. By Alexander Reid, A. M., Rector of the Circus School, Edinburgh. With a Critical Preface by Henry Reed, Professor of English Literature in the University of Pennsylvania. One vol. 12mo., of near 600 pages, \$1.

The attention of Professors, Students, Tutors, and Heads of Families is solicited to this volume. Notwithstanding its compact size and distinctness of type, it comprises *forty thousand* words. In addition to the correct orthoepy, this manual of words contains four valuable improvements:

I. The primitive word is given, and then follow the immediate derivatives in alphabetical order, with the part of speech appended.

II. After the primitive word is inserted the original term whence it is formed, with the name of the language from which it is derived.

III. There is subjoined a Vocabulary of the Roots of English words, by which the accurate purport of them is instantly discoverable.

IV. An accented List, to the number of fifteen thousand, of Greek, Latin, and Scripture Proper Names, is added.

**LECTURES ON MODERN HISTORY.** By Thomas Arnold, D. D. With an Introduction and Notes by Prof. Henry Reed. One vol. 12mo., \$1 25.

The distinguished topics which these admirable Lectures comprise are rich in thought and wisdom, and furnish an exuberant source of study and mental and moral improvement. The notes of Prof. Reed are extremely valuable and judicious.

**GENERAL HISTORY OF CIVILIZATION IN EUROPE.** From the Fall of the Roman Empire to the French Revolution. By M. Guizot, late Professor of History, now Prime Minister of France. With occasional Notes by C. S. Henry, D. D., Professor of Philosophy and History in the University of the city of New-York. One volume 12mo., Price \$1.

"M. Guizot, in his instructive Lectures, has given us an epitome of modern history, distinguished by all the merit which, in another department, renders Blackstone a subject of such peculiar and unbounded praise—a work closely condensed, including nothing useless, omitting nothing essential; written with grace, and conceived and arranged with consummate ability."

**A MANUAL OF ANCIENT AND MODERN HISTORY;** comprising, I. *Ancient History*, containing the Political History, Geographical Position, and Social State of the Principal Nations of Antiquity, carefully digested from the Ancient Writers, and illustrated by the discoveries of Modern Scholars and Travellers.

II. *Modern History*, containing the Rise and Progress of the principal European Nations, their Political History, and the Changes in their Social Condition, with a History of the Colonies founded by Europeans. By W. Cooke Taylor, LL. D., of Trinity College, Dublin. Revised, with additions on American History, by C. S. Henry, D. D., Professor of History in the University of N. Y. One handsome vol. 8vo. of 800 pages. \$1 25. \*\*\* For convenience as a class-book, the Ancient or Modern portion can be had in separate volumes.

This Manual of History, is already adopted as a text-book in Harvard, Columbia, Yale, New York, Pennsylvania, and Brown Universities, and several leading Academies.

*D. Appleton & Co.'s Educational Publications.*

T. K. ARNOLD'S  
GREEK AND LATIN BOOKS,  
FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

REVISED AND CAREFULLY CORRECTED BY THE REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

*\*\* This Series of Classical Works has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, being introduced into nearly all the great Public Schools and leading Educational Institutions in England. They are also very highly recommended by some of the best American Scholars, for introduction into the Classical Schools of the United States.*

**NOW READY.**

I. A FIRST AND SECOND  
LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

One neat volume, 12mo.

The chief object of this work (which is founded on the principles of imitation and frequent repetition), is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning his attendance.

The First Book can be had separately for Junior Classes in Schools.

II. A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE  
COMPOSITION.

ONE VOLUME, 12MO.

This work is also founded on the principles of imitation and frequent repetition. It is at once a Syntax, a Vocabulary, and an Exercise Book; and considerable attention has been paid to the subject of Synonyms.

**IN PREPARATION.**

I. A FIRST AND SECOND GREEK BOOK, with Easy Exercises and Vocabulary. One volume, 12mo.

II. A PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO GREEK PROSE  
COMPOSITION. One volume, 12mo.

This work consists of a Greek Syntax, founded on Buttman's, and Easy Sentences translated into Greek, after given Examples, and with given Words.

III. CORNELIUS NEPOS, with Critical Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter.

IV. ECLOGÆ OVIDIANÆ, with English Notes, &c.

This work is from the fifth part of the Lateinsches Elementarbuch of Profs. Jacobs and Doring, which has an immense circulation on the Continent.

V. HISTORIÆ ANTIQUÆ EPITOME, from Cornelius Nepos, Justin, &c., with English Notes, Rules for Constructing, Questions, Geographical Lists, &c.

This is a most valuable collection of Classical School Books; and its publication may be regarded as the presage of better things in respect to the mode of teaching and acquiring Languages. Heretofore boys have been condemned to the drudgery of going over Latin and Greek Grammar without the remotest conception of the value of what they were learning, and every day becoming more and more disgusted with the dry and unmeaning task; but now, by Mr. Arnold's admirable method—substantially the same with that of OLLENDORFF—the moment they take up the study of Latin or Greek, they begin to learn sentences, to acquire ideas, to see how the Romans and Greeks expressed themselves, how their mode of expression differed from ours, and by degrees they lay up a stock of knowledge which is utterly astonishing to those who have dragged on month after month in the old-fashioned, dry, studious way of learning Languages.

Mr. Arnold, in fact, has had the good sense to adopt the system of Nature. A child learns his own language by *imitating* what he hears, and constantly *repeating* it till it is fastened in the memory. In the same way Mr. A. puts the pupil immediately to work at Exercises in Latin and Greek involving the elementary principles of the language—words are supplied—the mode of putting them together is told the pupil—he is shown how the Ancients expressed their ideas; and then by repeating these things again and again—*iterum iterumque*—the docile pupil has them indelibly impressed upon his memory and rooted in his understanding.

The American edition comes out under the most favorable auspices. The Editor is a thorough Classical Scholar and has been a practical teacher for years in this city: he has devoted the utmost care to a complete revision of Mr. Arnold's Works, has corrected several errors of inadvertence or otherwise, has rearranged and improved various matters in the early volumes of the series, and has attended most diligently to the accurate printing and mechanical execution of the whole. We anticipate most confidently the speedy adoption of these works in our Schools and Colleges.

392.

A

*[and second]*

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.,

RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

FROM THE FIFTH LONDON EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY.

PHILADELPHIA:

G. S. APPLETON, 148 CHESNUT-STREET.

CINCINNATI: DERBY, BRADLEY, & COMPANY, 113 MAIN-STREET.

M DCCC XLVI.

*Deposited in the Clerk's Office  
for the Southern District of  
New York March 2. 1846.*



1000

PA 2087  
A 68  
1846

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by

D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York.

1846

*Registered in the Clerk's Office  
of the Southern District  
of New York*



## P R E F A C E .

---

THE valuable introductory work now presented to the American public is the first of a series of Classical school books, on the basis of OLLENDORFF'S much and justly admired system. *Imitation* and *frequent repetition*—which are the means by which every child learns his own language—are herein constantly acted upon; and the intelligent pupil is led by natural, and therefore easy steps, into an acquaintance with the structure and many of the peculiarities of the language of the old Romans.

The First Part, or First Latin Book, has obtained high and almost unprecedented reputation in England; it has gone through five editions in as many years; it is recommended by the Oxford Diocesan Board of Education, and adopted by the National Society's Training College at Chelsea, and is admirably adapted, both in design and execution, to the wants of beginners in the Latin language. The Second Part, or Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar, is intended as a sequel to the former Part, and carries the learner on, by a series of Exercises in translating both into Latin and into English, through some of the principal difficulties of the Latin tongue.

The American Editor has not found it necessary to make any material alteration in the original work. The title of the First Part was "Henry's First Latin Book," in imitation of "Mary's Grammar." This title has been changed

by the omission of the first word. The Editor has confined himself principally to a thorough revision of Mr. Arnold's labors ; to such necessary changes as the union of the two parts into one volume required ; to the addition of a few explanatory notes ; an enlargement and improvement of the Latin and English vocabularies, and the correction of occasional errors of inadvertence or of typography.

Under the strong conviction that school books, above all others, should be accurately printed, the Editor has bestowed special care upon this point ; and he trusts that the present volume will be found free from even trifling errors of the press.

NEW YORK, *January 15, 1846.*

## PREFACE

TO THE FIRST ENGLISH EDITION.

---

THE object of this little work is to enable the pupil to do exercises from the first day of his beginning the study of his Accidence. With this view, I have at first confined myself to the third person singular of a few tenses, and to *one* case of a noun: a plan suggested by an able writer in the Quarterly Journal of Education.

The principles of *imitation* and *frequent repetition* are acted upon, as in a larger work which I have just published; and the principal difficulties of the language (the *accusative* with the *infinitive*; the use of the *participle in dus*, &c.) are, it is hoped, fully explained, and illustrated by a sufficient number of examples.

T. K. A.

LYNDON, *May* 13, 1839.





# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.

| LESSON   | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 1. On forming the accusative case.....   | 15   |
| 2. On forming the 3d pers. sing. of three tenses in 1st conjugation.....                         | 18   |
| 3. _____ in 2d conjugation.....  | 19   |
| 4. _____ in 3d conjugation.....  | 20   |
| 5. _____ in 4th conjugation.....   | 21   |
| 6. _____ in the four conjugations  | 22   |
| 7. Adjectives in <i>us, er</i> .....   | 23   |
| 8. Terminations of the Genitive sing.....  | 25   |
| 9. Genitive of <i>price</i> .....  | 26   |
| 10. Omission of ' <i>man, thing</i> '.....   | 27   |
| 11. On the formation of the <i>perfect</i> .....   | 28   |
| 12. Gen. with neut. adjective.....   | 29   |
| 13. Infinitive. Gen. with <i>est</i> .....   | 31   |
| 14. Acc. Plural.....   | 32   |
| 15. Dative and Ablative singular. <i>Time. Place</i> .....                                       | 33   |
| 16. Adjectives in <i>is</i> .....  | 34   |
| 17. On the perfect of the 3d Conjugation. Verbs whose root ends in<br><i>p</i> or <i>b</i> ..... | 35   |
| 18. Terminations of the 3d plural.....   | 36   |
| 19. Of the nom. and gen. plural.....   | 37   |
| 20. On finding the nom. of the 3d Declension.....  | 38   |
| 21. <i>Nē</i> with imperatives.....  | 40   |
| 22. On the perf. of Verbs whose root ends in <i>c, g, or q</i> .....                             | 41   |
| 23. _____ <i>d</i> or <i>t</i> . Dat. and Abl. plur.   | 42   |
| 24. Root of the perf. with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.....                             | 44   |

| LESSON   | PAGE |
|--|------|
| 25. Abl. of price.....   | 45   |
| 26. On distinguishing root of perf. from root of present.....  | 46   |
| 27. The personal pronouns. Apposition.....   | 48   |
| 28. Nominative after <i>est</i> , &c. Some tenses of <i>esse</i> .....                                       | 49   |
| 29. The compounds of <i>esse</i> .....   | 51   |
| 30. Tenses of the <i>subjunctive</i> .....   | 52   |
| 31. English infinitive expressing a <i>purpose</i> .....   | 52   |
| 32. <i>That</i> expressing a <i>consequence</i> after <i>such</i> , <i>so</i> , &c. <i>Summus mons</i> , &c. | 54   |
| 33. Some tenses of <i>posse</i> . Interrogative Particles.....   | 55   |
| 34. Root of <i>supine</i> .....  | 57   |
| 35. The Participles.....   | 59   |
| 36. Translation of the participle of the perf. active. The ablative absolute.....                            | 60   |
| 37. The Gerunds. <i>Occidĕre</i> declined.....   | 62   |
| 38. The participle in <i>dus</i> . <i>Epistōla scribenda</i> .....   | 64   |
| 39. Translation of 'is to be cultivated,' &c. Agent after the participle in <i>dus</i> .....                 | 65   |
| 40. Verbs that govern the dative.....  | 67   |
| 41. Terminations of the <i>persons</i> .....   | 68   |
| 42. The pronoun 'is.' Conditional Sentences.....   | 70   |
| 43. <i>Scribendum est mihi</i> .....   | 71   |
| 44. Subj. pres. and imperf. of <i>esse</i> .....   | 72   |
| 45. <i>Credendum est Caio</i> .....  | 73   |
| 46. <i>Colenda est virtus</i> .....  | 74   |
| 47. The Infinitive Mood.....   | 76   |
| 48. Passive Forms.....   | 78   |
| 49. <i>Qui, quæ, quod. Mihi creditur</i> , &c.....   | 80   |
| 50. Deponent Verbs.....  | 81   |
| 51. The Comparative and Superlative.....   | 83   |
| 52. Prepositions.....  | 84   |
| 53. Translation of 'may,' 'might'.....   | 86   |
| 54. Translation of 'ought'.....  | 87   |
| 55. Ablative denoting the measure of excess or defect. <i>Quo—eo; quanto—tanto</i> .....                     | 89   |
| 56. <i>Quo</i> .....   | 90   |

| LESSON   | PAGE    |
|--|---------|
| 57. <i>Pœnitet, pudet, &amp;c.</i> .....                 | 91      |
| 58. <i>Et—et ; quum—tum, &amp;c.</i> .....               | 93      |
| 59. <i>Aut ; vel ; sive (seu,) &amp;c.</i> .....         | 94      |
| 60. <i>At, sed, tamen, &amp;c.,</i> (adversatives) ..... | 95      |
| 61. <i>Nam, igitur, &amp;c.,</i> (causals) .....         | 95      |
| 62. <i>Ut</i> .....                                      | 96      |
| 63. <i>Nē</i> .....                                      | 97      |
| 64. <i>Quin</i> .....                                    | 98      |
| 65. <i>Quominus</i> .....                                | 99      |
| 66. <i>Vereor ne ; vereor ut</i> .....                   | 100     |
| 67. Interrogatives.....                                  | 101     |
| 68. ————— in dependent sentences.....                    | 101     |
| 69. Double questions.....                                | 102     |
| 70. Conjunctions that always take subj.....              | 103     |
| 71—78. On participles.....                               | 104—110 |
| <br>APPENDIX .....                                       | <br>111 |
| Tables of Nouns and Adjectives.....                      | 111—114 |
| ———— the Verb.....                                       | 115—121 |
| ———— Pronouns.....                                       | 121     |
| ———— Irregular Verbs and Nouns.....                      | 123     |
| ———— Genders.....  | 124     |
| ———— English Pronouns .....                              | 128     |
| ———— English Verb.....                                   | 128     |
| QUESTIONS.....   | 130     |
| DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.....                                | 133     |

## A FEW REMARKS ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

---

THE Latin being a *dead* (that is, an *unspoken*) language, it is not known how the Romans pronounced it. Hence every modern tongue adapts the pronunciation of Latin to its own peculiarities. In English, we follow the analogy or custom of the English language in respect to the sound of the vowels and the position of the accents; therefore—

1. The accent or stress of the voice is *always* on the *penultimate*, (the last syllable but one,) or the *antepenultimate*, (the last syllable but two,) as hom'o, tem'poris, dat'um, agric'ola, &c.

2. In words of more than two syllables, if the penultimate is *long*, the stress is upon it; if *short*, it is on the *antepenultimate*; as rad'cis, con'sūlis, humā'nus, &c.

3. Every vowel has either a long or a short sound; as hōmīnēs, fāmā, āmīcūs, āmīcī, pōpūlōs, vērūs, tūtūs, tūtēlā, Cāesār, rēgērē, dēcōrīs.

4. Monosyllables ending in a vowel have the *long* sound, as dā, mē, sī, dō, tū; otherwise, the *short* sound, as āc, sēd, ĩn, ōb, hūc.

5. When a vowel comes before or between two consonants, it has the *short* sound, though in fact *long* by its position; as ān'nus, pēn'nā, pĭg'nūs, lōn'gus, &c.

6. *E* final is never *mute*; in other words, it always *constitutes a syllable* with a preceding consonant or consonants; as ma-re, gran-de, es-se, a-bī-re, a-cū-te, vī-ce.

7. *C* and *G* are *soft* (that is, pronounced like *s, j*) respectively before *e, æ, æ,* and *i*: as cērā, cōlūm, cīs, gērō, gĭgnō, &c. In other cases they are *hard*, (i. e. have the sound of *k* and *g* hard,) as cāp'rā, gūbernā'tōr, cōgo, Gallus, &c.

8. *Qu, gu* are pronounced respectively like *kw, gw*; as āntīquus = *antikwus*: sanguis = *sangwis*.

---

### OBSERVATIONS.

Numerals above the line refer to the *Questions* when they are followed by a *curve*; to the *Table of Differences*, when not.

Two or more words connected together by a hyphen show that they are to be rendered into Latin by one word; as "natural-to-man," *humanus*; the-space-of-two-years," *biennium*; it-is, *est*, &c.



## LATIN LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

---

Words in *Italics*, in an exercise, are phrases that are either not to be translated word for word; or about which something has been taught that should be remembered.

---

### Lesson 1.

1. WHERE *we* in English put a preposition before a noun, the Romans often used *no preposition*, but changed the *end* of the word.

2. Thus, '*mensa*' being '*a table*;' '*mensæ*' is '*of a table*;' '*mensâ*' '*BY a table*,' and so on.

3. A word so altered is called *a case* of that word; thus *mensæ* is called the *genitive case* of *mensa*; and so on.

4. The unaltered word is said to be in the *nominative case*, though it is not strictly a case.

5. All nouns do not form their cases exactly in the same way.

As there are five principal ways of forming the cases of a noun, nouns are divided into *five classes*, each class being called a *declension*.

6. (a) Nouns that end in *a* and make their genitive in *æ*, are of the *first declension*.

(b) Nouns that end in *us*, *er*, *um*, and make their genitives in *i*, are of the *second declension*.

(c) Nouns in *us* that make their genitive in *ûs*, and all nouns in *u*, are of the *fourth declension*.

- (d) Nouns that end in *es* and make their genitive in *ei*, are of the *fifth declension*.
- (e) Nouns with *any ending* not set down as belonging to the other declensions, and those *with* an ending belonging to some other declension but with a *genitive* in 'is,' belong to the *third declension*.<sup>a</sup>

### 7. On the ACCUSATIVE case.

The *accusative* is the case that follows *transitive* verbs, and many *prepositions*.

8. A transitive verb is one that gives no *complete* meaning, till some person or thing is mentioned *to whom* or *which* the action was done.

He struck—(struck what?) the dog. He killed—(killed whom?) the blacksmith.

9. The following are the *accusative* endings of the five declensions for the singular number.

|    |       |       |
|----|-------|-------|
| 1. | 2. 4. | 3. 5. |
| am | um    | em    |

But ¶ If a noun is *neuter*, its accusative is the *unaltered word*.<sup>b</sup>

10. These endings are to be added to the *word*, after the endings of the nominative, as set down in the table,

<sup>a</sup> TABLE OF THE DECLENSIONS.

| Nouns that end in   | Genitive |                  |   |
|---|----------|------------------|---|
| a   | æ        | are of the first | } |
| us, er, um  | i        | . . second       |   |
| us, u   | ûs*      | . . fourth       |   |
| es  | ei       | . . fifth        |   |
| Those with <i>any other ending</i> , (or with these if their gen. end in 'is'), | is       | . . third        |   |
|   |          | Declension.      |   |

<sup>b</sup> In English all *things* are *neuter*; but in Latin the names of *things* are some *masculine*, some *feminine*, some *neuter*. Hence in Latin, *gender*, as belonging to *things*, has nothing to do with *sex*.

\* In Latin grammars it has always heretofore been asserted that nouns of the fourth declension ending in *u*, are indeclinable in the singular. The latest results, however, of the labors of German scholars seem to have settled that *cornu* has the genitive *cornûs*, and that all nouns ending in *u* have the regular genitive of the fourth declension, in *ûs*. Hence Mr. Arnold uniformly gives this as the correct form. For a full discussion of this point consult the *Preface to Freund's Latin Dictionary*.—AM. ED.

(in 6, note a,) are thrown away. But to this table there are two exceptions:—

- (1) The *case-endings* (or ‘*terminations*’) of nouns of the second in *er*, are added on thus: *e* is *dropped*, and the termination then added on to the *r*. Thus *ager*, *agr-*, Acc. *agr-um*. (Sometimes, however, the *e* is kept; as *puer*, Acc. *puer-um*.)
- (2) The *terminations* of the *third* are added on to *some form* that is *generally not found* in the *nominative*. Thus they are added on to *lapid*, the *nominative* being *lapis*.
- (3) The *root*, or form to which the terminations of the *third* declension are to be added, is to be got from the *genitive* by throwing away ‘*is*.’

¶ Let the learner here turn to the Appendix, No. 7, where are examples of a noun in every declension given out in full; and let him master these thoroughly before proceeding further.

### Exercise 1.

[Obs. *m.*, *f.*, *n.*, stand for *masculine*, *feminine*, and *neuter*. *G.* stands for *genitive*.]

11. Determine of what declension each of the following words is, and write down its accusative case.

### VOCABULARY 1.

|          |                                     |                          |
|----------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Crown,   | corōna                              | KEY-WORDS. <sup>c</sup>  |
| Island,  | insūla                              | ( <i>coronation.</i> )   |
| Friend,  | amicus, <i>G.</i> amici             | ( <i>insular.</i> )      |
| Umpire,  | arbiter, <i>G.</i> arbitr-i         | ( <i>amicable.</i> )     |
| Leaf,    | folium, <i>G.</i> folii             | ( <i>arbitration.</i> )  |
| Garden,  | hortus, <i>G.</i> horti             | ( <i>foliage.</i> )      |
| Law,     | lex, <i>G.</i> lēg-is               | ( <i>horticulture.</i> ) |
| Chariot, | currus, <i>G.</i> currūs            | ( <i>legal.</i> )        |
| Face,    | facies, <i>G.</i> faciēi.           | ( <i>curricl.</i> )      |
| Dust,    | pulvis, <i>G.</i> pulvēr-is         | ( <i>pulverize.</i> )    |
| Time,    | tempus, <i>G.</i> tempōr-is, neuter | ( <i>temporal.</i> )     |
| Oak,     | quercus, <i>G.</i> quercūs.         |                          |
| Horn,    | cornu                               | ( <i>cornucopia.</i> )   |

<sup>c</sup> That is, English words that are derived from the Latin words, and may serve as a *key* or help to their meaning.

## Lesson 2.

12. The *persons* of the Latin verb are distinguished by their *endings*, (as think-*est* and think-*s* are in English.) But in Latin *all* the persons have different endings; and the pronoun *I, thou, &c.*, is generally *left out*, because the *ending* of the verb *tells* which person is meant.

(*Verbs whose infinitives end in are.*)

13. By throwing off *are* you get the root.

14. By adding *at* to the root you get the third person singular of the *present* tense: by adding *abat*, the third person singular of the *imperfect* tense: by adding *abit*, the third person singular of the *future* tense.

(*a*) Amāre, to love: root *am*.

am-āt, loves; is loving; or does love.

am-ābāt, was loving.

am-ābit, will love.

## 15. VOCABULARY 2.

|                        |                           |                   |
|------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| To praise,             | laud-āre                  | KEY-WORDS.        |
| To swear,              | jūr-āre                   | (laudatory.)      |
| To plough,             | ār-āre                    | (ad-jure.)        |
| To dance,              | salt-āre.                 | (arable.)         |
| To avoid,              | vit-āre                   | (in-e-vitable.)   |
| To build,              | adific-āre                | (edification.)*   |
| Husbandman,            | agricōla.                 |                   |
| Wall,                  | mūrus, i                  | (a mural crown.)† |
| Death,                 | mors, G. mort-is          | (mortal.)         |
| Boy,                   | puer, G. puēri (keeps e)— | (puerile.)        |
| Way; road,             | via                       | (de-vious.)       |
| To show, or point out, | monstr-āre                | (de-monstrate.)   |
| Dragon,                | draco, G. dracōn-is.      |                   |
| Voice,                 | vox, G. vōc-is            | (vocal.)          |
| Fox,                   | vulpes, G. vulp-is.       |                   |
| Not,                   | non, (before the verb.)   |                   |

Model sentence. (Obs. in the Latin order of words, the accusative is placed *before* the verb.)

16. Servius imperium administrat.  
*Servius* (the) *government* *administers.*

17. ☞ The Latin language has no *article*.<sup>d</sup>

\* This word means 'the building a man up' in religious knowledge and practice: *building on the foundation of faith.*

† A crown given to the soldier who first mounted the *walls* of a besieged city.

d That is, no word for *a* or *the*.

## Exercise 2.

18. [Order: Nom. Acc. Verb.]

Balbus<sup>e</sup> is-building a wall. The boy shows the road.  
 Caius will build a wall. The boy will show the road.  
 The husbandman will plough. Caius was ploughing.  
 Caius will praise the boy. The boy will avoid death.  
 He was swearing. The boy dances. The boy will  
 dance. The girl was dancing. The boy will avoid the  
 fox. The fox was avoiding the boy.

☞ When there is a 'not,' the present with 'does' must be used: and the auxiliary verb (*does, will, shall, &c.*) must stand before the 'not,' as, "he does not praise the boy."

Puer murum ædificābat. Caius puellam laudat. Balbus jurābit. Agricōla arat. Balbus puerum vitābat. Puer mortem vitābit. Puerum non laudat.

laudat, saltabat, laudabat; jurat, ædificabit, vitat, saltabat, vitabit, vitabat; laudabit, saltat, jurat, jurat, monstrabat, arabit; monstrat, ædificat, vitabit.

## Lesson 3.

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ēre.)

## 19. VOCABULARY 3.

|                |          |              |
|----------------|----------|--------------|
| To fear,       | tīm-ēre  | KEY-WORDS.   |
| To see,        | vīd-ēre  | (timid.)     |
| To laugh,      | rīd-ēre  | (pro-vidē.)  |
| To laugh-at, } |          | (de-ride.)   |
| To hold,       | tēn-ēre  | (a ten-ant.) |
| To frighten,   | terr-ēre | (terri-fy.)  |
| To teach,      | doc-ēre  | (doc-tor.)   |

20. The root is got by throwing off ēre.

21. The endings of the third persons singular are,  
 (pres.) (imperf.) (fut.)  
 et, ēbat, ēbit.

<sup>e</sup> Balbus and Caius are the Latin names. Gen. Balbi, Caii.



*Exercise 3.*

22. A Christian does not fear death. The boy will fear the dragon. The voice will frighten the boy. The boy was holding the fox. The boy will hold the dragon. Balbus was laughing-at the boy. He was building a wall. Caius will plough. He swears. A Christian will not fear death. Balbus was showing the way.

timet, ridēbit, terrēbat ; tenet, videt, vidēbit.

ridēbat, tenēbat, timet ; timēbit, terret, timēbat.

Puer vulpem non timet. Draco puerum terrēbit. Balbus dracōnem tenēbat. Puella viam monstrābat. Puer puellam ridet. Caius puerum docēbat.

*Lesson 4.*

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ěre.)

## 23. VOCABULARY 4.

|                        |            |              |
|------------------------|------------|--------------|
| To neglect, disregard, | neglig-ěre | KEY-WORDS.   |
| To shut,               | claud-ěre. | (negligent.) |
| To write,              | scrib-ěre  | (de-scribe.) |
| To slay,               | occid ěre. |              |
| To learn,              | disc-ere.  |              |
| To lead,               | dūc-ěre    | (ad-duce.)   |
| Gate,                  | porta      | (porter.)    |
| Letter,                | epistola   | (epistle.)   |
| Slave,                 | servus     | (servile.)   |
| Master,                | dōmīnus    | (domineer.)  |

24. The root is got by throwing off ěre, and the terminations of the third persons singular are,

(pres.)                      (imperf.)                      (fut.)

it,

ēbat,

et.

*Exercise 4.*

25. The slave will shut the gate. The girl was writing a letter. Balbus disregards the voice. The boy will learn. Caius was learning. The girl will show the garden. The master will praise (his) slave.

The slave was showing the way. The slave will not fear death. The slave will plough.

discit, claudit, claudēbat; negliget, scribit, scribet, claudet, discēbat, scribet; occīdit, discet, ducit.

Servus dominum occīdit. Puer discēbat. Servus portam claudēbat. Epistolam scribet. Jurābit. Puella puerum laudābat. Puella mortem vitābit. Puer vulpem non timēbit. Christianus mortem non timet.

---

### Lesson 5.

(Verbs whose infinitive ends in ire.)

#### 26. VOCABULARY 5.

|              |                           |                   |
|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| To hear,     | aud-ire                   | (audi-ble.)       |
| To feel,     | sent-ire                  | (pre-senti-ment.) |
| To perceive, |                           |                   |
| To open,     | apēr-ire.                 |                   |
| To uncover,  |                           |                   |
| To bind,     | vinc-ire.                 |                   |
| Pain,        | dolor, G. dolōr-is, masc. | (dolor-ous.)      |
| Sorrow,      |                           |                   |
| Head,        | caput, G. capīt-is, neut. | (capit-al.)       |

27. The root is got by throwing away *ire*, and the endings of the third persons singular are,

|         |           |        |
|---------|-----------|--------|
| (pres.) | (imperf.) | (fut.) |
| it,     | iēbat,    | iet.   |

#### Exercise 5.

28. The boy hears a voice. Balbus will feel pain. The slave uncovers his head. The girl will open the letter. Balbus will bind (his\*) head. Caius will hear the voice. Caius was uncovering (his) head. Balbus will write the letter. The master neglects (his) slave.

vinciebat, sentiet, audiet; sentit, audiebat, aperit, audit, aperiebat, sentiet; vincit, audit, sentiebat.

Puer caput vinciēbat. Balbus vocem audiet. Caius dolōrem vitābit. Puella dolōrem sentiēbat. Servus epistolam scribēbat. Caius servum laudābat. Servus murum ædificat. Servus currum monstrābit.

---

\* Not to be translated.

## Lesson 6.

29. The forms we have now gone through are the four classes (or *conjugations* as they are called) of verbs. They are distinguished by the endings of the infinitive mood.\*

30. (a) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *āre*, are of the *first* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long a*.  
 (b) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ēre*, are of the *second* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long e*.  
 (c) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *ĕre*, are of the *third* conjugation, and their favorite vowels are *short e* and *short i*.  
 (d) Verbs whose infinitive ends in *īre*, are of the *fourth* conjugation, and their favorite vowel is *long i*.

## 31. Terminations of the Infinitive.

| 1 conjug.<br>(favorite vowel ā) | 2 conjug.<br>(fav. vowel ē) | 3 conjug.<br>(fav. vowels ĕ, ĭ) | 4 conjug.<br>(fav. vowel ī.) |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Infin.</i> :—āre             | ēre                         | ĕre                             | īre                          |

## 32. Third persons of three tenses.

|                  | 1.   | 2.   | 3.   | 4.    |
|------------------|------|------|------|-------|
| <i>Present</i> , | āt   | ēt   | īt   | īt    |
| <i>Imperf.</i> , | ābāt | ēbāt | ĕbāt | iēbāt |
| <i>Future</i> ,  | ābit | ēbit | ĕt   | iēt   |

## 33. VOCABULARY 6.

|              |             |                |
|--------------|-------------|----------------|
| To fight,    | pugn-āre    | (pugn-acious.) |
| To sing,     | cant-āre    | (canto.)       |
| To play,     | lūd-ĕre     | (de-lude.)     |
| To cry out,  | clām-āre    | (clam-or.)     |
| To answer,   | respond-ĕre | (respond.)     |
| To sin,      | pecc-āre    | (pecc-ant.)    |
| To run,      | curr-ĕre    | (curr icle.)   |
| To hope for, | spēr-āre    | (de-sper-ate.) |

\* See Appendix, § 21—24, where a verb in each conjugation is given in full through all the moods and tenses.

## Exercise 6.

34. The girl sings. The boy was singing. The slave will play. The slave was crying-out. The boy will answer. Balbus will laugh. The husbandman was not ploughing. Caius is ploughing. Balbus will not answer. The boy will sin. The slave will fight. The master was praising (his) slave. The boy will run. The girl was running.


Servus mortem sperābat. Pater currēbat. Servus pugnabat. Balbus sentiet. Mors Balbum terrēbit. Mors christianum non terret. Puer vocem audiet. Puer vulpem non timet. Servus dominum occidēbat. Puella peccābat. Servus cantābit. Balbus audit. Pater sentit.

## Lesson 7.

(Adjectives in us, er.)

## 35. VOCABULARY 7.

|                                    |  |                |
|------------------------------------|--|----------------|
| To finish,                         | fīn-īre.   |                |
| Labor,                             | labor, G. labōr-is.                              |                |
| Mother,                            | māter, G. matr-is                                | (maternal.)    |
| Father,                            | pāter, G. patr-is                                | (paternal.)    |
| To bury,                           | sepēl-īre  | (sepulture.)   |
| Dead,                              | mortuus, mortua, mortuum.                        |                |
| Son,                               | filius, G. filii                                 | (filial.)      |
| Snake,                             | anguis, anguis, m. (pronounced angwis.)          |                |
| To find,                           | repēr-īre  | (repertory.)   |
| Money,                             |  |                |
| Sum-of-money, }                    | pecunia  | (pecuniary.)   |
|                                    | { magister, G. magistr-i, }                      | (magisterial.) |
| Master,                            | { a master who teaches }                         |                |
|                                    | { dominus, G. i, a master }                      | (domineer.)    |
|                                    | { who owns }                                     |                |
| To rouse-up, or }                  | excit-āre  | (excitement.)  |
| awaken,                            |  |                |
| Mine,                              | meus, mea, meum.                                 |                |
| Good,                              | bonus, bona, bonum.                              |                |
| His, her, its, theirs,             | suus, sua, suum; when the person whose the thing |                |
| is, is the nominative to the verb. |  |                |

36.  Adjectives in *us, er*, have a *masculine*, a *feminine*, and a *neuter* form, and they are declined exactly like substantives.

The masculine ends in *us* or *er*; Gen. *i.* (Decl. *ii.*)  
 — feminine ——— *a*; G. *æ.* (Decl. *i.*)  
 — neuter ——— *um*; G. *i.* (Decl. *ii.*)

Hence the *acc.* of an adjective is got by 9. For instance, if the adjective be *bonus*, (whose *fem.* is *bona*; *neut.* *bonum*.) if I want the *acc. masc.* or *neut.*, I take the *acc.* of *bonus* or *bonum* respectively; if I want the *acc. fem.*, I take the *acc.* of *bona*, which is *bonam*.

37. Every noun is *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*;<sup>f</sup> and every adjective must be of the same *case*, *gender*, and *number* as the noun of which it is spoken.<sup>g</sup>

38. Mulier ancillam suam excitat.  
*The woman maid her awakens.*

Obs. Except with these little words *meus*, *suus*, &c., the adjective generally stands *before* its substantive. 'Bonus puer,' a good boy.  
 [Ancillam suam :—*suam* is put in the *accusative feminine*, because *ancillam* (the noun of which it is spoken) is in the *accusative feminine*.]

### Exercise 7.

39. The father buries (his) dead son. The husbandman finds a snake. (My) friend does not hear my voice. A slave was shutting the gate. The master is teaching the boy. The master will rouse up his slave. Caius disregards the law. The boy will finish his labor. The girl was finishing her labor. The master will

<sup>f</sup> See 9, b.

<sup>g</sup> TABLE by which the gender of a substantive is to be determined.

|            |  |   |                            |
|------------|--|---|----------------------------|
| I. DECL.   | All <i>feminine</i> , except POETA, (poet,) and other designations of <i>men</i> . |   |                            |
| II. DECL.  | }  | us, er, <i>masculine</i> : except humus, dōmus, ( <i>fem.</i> ) and a few more. |                            |
|            |  | um, <i>neuter</i> .   |                            |
| IV. DECL.  | }  | us, <i>masculine</i> , except mānus, ( <i>fem.</i> ) and a few more.            |                            |
|            |  | u, <i>neuter</i> .  |                            |
| V. DECL.   | es, <i>fem.</i> (DIES <i>masculine</i> , but sometimes <i>fem.</i> in singular.)   |   |                            |
| III. DECL. | Masc. term.  | Fem. term.  | Neut. term.                |
|            | ER, OR, OS,  | do, go, io,   | c, a, t, e, l, n,          |
|            | ES <i>increasing</i> .*  | as, is, aus,  | ar, ur, us,                |
|            | o, when not do, go, io.  | x,  | (But ūs with long u,       |
|            |  | es <i>not increasing</i> ,  | in words of more than      |
|            |  | s <i>after a consonant</i> .  | one syll. is <i>fem.</i> ) |

Obs. *Masc.* endings are in *capitals*; *fem.* in *common type*; *neut.* in *Italics*.—There are many exceptions in the *third*. See Appendix, on the Genders of Substantives, § 28.

\* That is, having in the genitive a *syllable more* than in the nominative.



show his garden. The father will praise (his) good son.

Pater filium suum docēbat. Agricōla anguem non timēbit. Caius legem negliget. Christiānus pecuniam negligit. Mortuum agricōlam sepeliet. Pater meus vocem meam non negliget.

### Lesson 8.

40. The following are the *genitive* terminations of the five declensions :

|    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. |
| æ  | i  | is | ûs | ei |

☞ (1) In the Genitive of the fourth *ûs* is for *uis*.

(2) In the Genitive of the fifth, the *e* is long when *it* follows a vowel ; short when it does not. (Faciēi, fidēi.)\*

### 41. VOCABULARY 8.

|               |  |                        |
|---------------|--|------------------------|
| Through,      | per, governs accusative.   |                        |
| To walk,      | ambūlare   | (per-ambulate.)        |
| To call,      | vocāre   | (vocation.)            |
| Poet,         | poēta.   |                        |
| To overturn,  | } evertēre, (the first is its own<br>meaning : the second the<br>word <i>we</i> should use.) |                        |
| To pull-down, |  |                        |
| House,        | dōmus, ūs, <i>f</i> .  | (domestic.)            |
| Body,         | corpūs, corpōr-is, <i>n</i> .  | (corporal punishment.) |
| Great,        | magnus   | (magnitude.)           |
| Little, }     | parvus.  |                        |
| Small, }      |  |                        |

41.\* Ipse Sullæ domum evertit.  
*He-himself Sulla's house pulls-down,*  
(properly, overturns.)

OBS. ☞ The governed genitive stands first, unless the governing noun is emphatic. When the governing noun is to stand before *its* genitive, it will have an accent after it, (thus ; festival'.)

\* This positive statement of Mr. Arnold seems to require some modification. The genitives and datives singular of the fifth declension, always make *e* long before *i*, as *diēi*, *aciēi*, except in the only three nouns of the fifth declension which do not end in *ies*, viz., *fides*, *spes*, *res*. In these *e* is found short in *spēi*, common (either long or short) in *fidēi*, or *fidēi*, and in *rēi* or *rēi*. See Ramsay's Latin Prosody, p. 22.—AM. ED.

## Exercise 8.

42. The slave shuts the gates of the city. He-himself will not pull down his friend's house. The father will not disregard the voice of his son. The father is burying the body of (his) dead son. The boy was pointing-out the snake's body. My mother was praising the poet's daughter. The good boy was walking through the city. My father will call the husband-man's daughter. The poet was holding the queen's crown.

Filius patris sui mortem vindicābit. Pater filii sui vocem non negliget. Leo asinum dilaniat. Servus domini sui mortem vindicābat. Regis sceptrum vidēbit. Agricola per urbem ambulabit.

## Lesson 9.

Say the terminations of the tenses, (32.) Give the accusative endings, (9.) Give the genitive endings, (40.)

## 43. VOCABULARY 9.

|                        |   |          |                        |
|------------------------|---|----------|------------------------|
| At-nothing,            | } nihili, (the genitive of <i>nihilum</i> ,<br>which is only used in some<br>particular phrases.) |          |                        |
| To value,              |   | æstimāre | ( <i>estimation.</i> ) |
| At a great (price,) }  | } magni.*   |          |                        |
| At a high (price,) }   |   |          |                        |
| At a little (price,) } |   | parvi.*  |                        |
| At a low (price,) }    |   |          |                        |
| To think little of,    | parvi æstimāre.   |          |                        |
| Queen,                 | regina.   |          |                        |
| King,                  | rex, G. rēg-is  |          | ( <i>regal.</i> )      |
| Sceptre,               | sceptrum.   |          |                        |
| Labor,                 | lābor, G. labōr-is.   |          |                        |
| True, real,            | vērus   |          | ( <i>verily.</i> )     |
| Virtue,                | virtūs, G. virtūt-is.   |          |                        |
| To tear-to-pieces,     | dilaniāre.  |          |                        |
| An ass,                | asīnus, G. asīni.   |          |                        |
| To avenge,             | vindicāre   |          | ( <i>vindictive.</i> ) |
| Lion,                  | leo, G. leōnis.   |          |                        |

44. With some words the *price* or *value* is put in the *genitive*.

\* These are genitives, (pretii) *price* being understood.

Sapiens virtūtem magni aestimat.  
*The wise man virtue at a great (price) values.*

45. Magna regis corona, *the king's great crown.*

Magna boni regis corona, *the good king's great crown.*

Imitate this order ; *adj. gen. subst.*

### Exercise 9.

46. He disregards his slave's great labor. He sees a great snake. The boy was avoiding the snake's great body. He is avoiding the great snake's great body. The master was rousing up his slave. He will feel great sorrow. The poet will feel real sorrow. The father will not neglect the sorrow of his son. Caius values true virtue *at a great (price.)* The master *thinks little of* the labor of his slave. The father will value my labor *at a great (price.)*

Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvi aestimat.* Pater labōrem meum *magni aestimat.* Leo asīni corpus dilaniabat. Mater laudabat filiam. Vulpes leōnem timet. Boni pueri caput aperiebat. Dominus servi sui epistōlam aperiet. Magnam urbis portam claudebat. Servus puerum vocabit.

---

### Lesson 10.

#### 47. VOCABULARY 10.

|                            |                        |                       |
|----------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Very great, greatest,      | maxīmus.               |                       |
| At a very great (price,) } | maxīmi.                |                       |
| At a very high (price,) }  | avaritia. <sup>h</sup> |                       |
| Avarice,                   | indoctus.              |                       |
| Unlearned,                 | avārus.                |                       |
| Avaricious ; greedy,       | sapiens, sapientis     | ( <i>sapient.</i> )   |
| Wise,                      | sapientia.             |                       |
| Wisdom,                    | laudāre                | ( <i>laudatory.</i> ) |
| To praise,                 | impīus.                |                       |
| Impious,                   |                        |                       |

---

<sup>h</sup> Obs. Nouns in *ia, tia, tas,* and *tūdo,* are *abstract nouns;* such as the names of *virtues, vices, dispositions, feelings, &c.*

48. Avārus maxīmi  
*The avaricious (man) at a very great (price)*  
 æstimat pecuniam.  
*values money.*

When the noun meant is *man*, *woman*, or *thing*, it is often left out in Latin. If *man* is meant, the adjective must, of course, be *masculine*; if *woman*, *feminine*; if *thing*, *neuter*.

### Exercise 10.

(Ask questions from 1—4, from the "Questions" after the Appendix.)

49. The avaricious (man) values<sup>3\*</sup> virtue at-a-low-price. He was pulling down the avaricious (man's) house. He will avenge the death of the wise (man.) The wise (man) values virtue at-a-very-great (price.) The impious (man) will fear death. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. The poet will build a great house. The poet's daughter was walking through the great city. The unlearned (man) laughs-at the poet. The true poet will laugh-at the unlearned (man.)

Christiānus pecuniam parvi æstimābit.<sup>3</sup> Impii domum evertet. Indoctus sapientiam parvi æstimat. Caius sapientiam laudābit. Amīci laudat sapientiam. Christiānus avaritiam vitābit. Mater bonam filiam laudabat. Magnam regis corōnam videbit. Leo dilaniabit asīnum. Puer magnam quercum monstrabit. Servus domīni sui hortum monstrabat.

---

### Lesson 11.

#### *On the formation of the Perfect.*

50. The perfect has the same ending in all the conjugations; but this one ending is added on to a *par-*

---

\* These numerals refer to the *Table of Differences of Idiom*, following the Appendix.

*ticular root*,<sup>i</sup> that is altered in various ways from that of the present.

51. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the root of the perfect is generally formed by adding *āv*, *ŭ*, and *iv*, respectively, to the root of the present.

|                            |        |         |         |
|----------------------------|--------|---------|---------|
| <i>Thus from</i>           | am-āre | mon-ēre | aud-īre |
| ( <i>Root of present</i> ) | am-    | mon-    | aud-    |
| ( <i>Root of perfect</i> ) | amāv-  | monŭ-   | audīv-  |

52. Terminations of the third person singular, in the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future perfect* of the active voice.

|                         |       |  |
|-------------------------|-------|--|
| <i>Perfect</i> ,        | it,   | } to be added to<br>the <i>root of the</i><br><i>perfect</i> . |
| <i>Pluperfect</i> ,     | ĕrat, |  |
| <i>Future perfect</i> , | ĕrit, |  |

53. Find the *roots of the perfect* for cant-āre, terr-ēre, doc-ēre, sepel-īre.

### Exercise 11.

54. The boy had heard a voice. The slave will have shown the road. The lion has torn-in-pieces the ass. The slave has avoided pain. Caius had praised his slave. The fox had frightened the boy. The master has taught the boy. The Christian did not fear death. He had valued wisdom at-a-very-low price.

Juravĕrat. Agricōla aravĕrit. Vulpes terruĕrit puerum. Servus speravit mortem. Puella peccavĕrat. Servus cantabit. Pater mortuum filium sepelivĕrat. Magnam poĕtĕ sapientiam parvi aestimavit. Veram virtutem magni aestimavĕrat.

### Lesson 12.

#### 55. VOCABULARY 11.

|            |   |
|------------|---|
| Bad,       | mālus. Evil, malum, ( <i>neut. adj.</i> ) |
| Something, | alīquid, ( <i>n.</i> )                    |

<sup>i</sup> By a *root* is here meant that *part of a word which is found in all the cases or tenses* spoken of.



|             |   |               |
|-------------|---|---------------|
| How much,   | quantus, quanta, quantum                    | (quantity.)   |
| Pleasure,   | voluptas, G. voluptātis                     | (voluptuary.) |
| Lose,       | amittēre.                                   |               |
| Unwilling,  | invītus, (to be translated, 'unwillingly.') |               |
| Figure,     | figūra.                                     |               |
| To have,    | habēre.                                     |               |
| Stability,  | stabilitas.                                 |               |
| To condemn, | damnāre.                                    |               |
| Unlearned,  | indoctus.                                   |               |
| Industry,   | industria.                                  |               |

56. Figūra nihil habet stabilitatis.  
*The figure nothing has of stability, (has no stability.)*

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Aliquid tempōris                | { something of time. (Lat.)<br>{ (some time.) (Eng.)            |
| Multum boni <sup>k</sup>        | { much of good. (Lat.)<br>{ (much good.) (Eng.)                 |
| Quantum voluptātis <sup>l</sup> | { how much of pleasure. (Lat.)<br>{ (how much pleasure.) (Eng.) |

57. (Eng.) He does it *unwillingly*, (adv.)  
(Lat.) He *unwillingly* does it, (adj.)

### Exercise 12. [Questions 1—5.]

Find, by 51, the root of perfect from hab-ēre, vit-āre, dilani-āre, laud-āre.

58. The boy will lose *some time*. *How much pleasure* does the unlearned man lose!<sup>m</sup> The figure had *no stability*. He avoided *much evil*. The lion had torn-to-pieces the ass. The father praised his son. My father values industry very highly.<sup>2</sup>

Servus viam monstr-av-ērat. Puer mortem tim-u-it. Domīnus servum suum excit-av-ērat. Aliquid tempōris invītus amittet. Christiānus avaritiam damnat. Quantum habet voluptātis sapientia! Avaritia nihil habet veræ voluptātis. Quantum voluptātis hab-u-ērit!

<sup>k</sup> *Boni, mali, &c.*, (the genitives of *bonus, malus*.) are here used as substantives.

<sup>l</sup> *Neuter adjectives* are often followed by a *genitive case*.

These adjectives are generally such as relate to *quantity; indefinite numerals, &c.*

<sup>m</sup> Obs. After '*how much*' the present with '*does*' is used, and the *nominative case* stands between the auxiliary verb and the verb.

## Lesson 13. [Questions 1—6.]

## 59. VOCABULARY 12.

|                                   |                               |               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Natural-to-man,                   | humānus                       | (human.)      |
| Nobody,                           | nēmo, G. nemīn-is.            |               |
| To offend-against; wrong,         | } violāre                     | (violate.)    |
| To break (a law, one's word, &c.) |                               |               |
| Disgraceful,                      | turpis, m. f.; turpe, n.      |               |
| Fidelity; faith; one's word,      | fides, fidēi.*                |               |
| To keep; observe,                 | servāre                       | (pre-serve.)  |
| (One's) country,                  | patria, G. æ, f.              | (patriotism.) |
| To break one's word,              | fidem violāre.                |               |
| It is,                            | est.                          |               |
| Citizen,                          | civis, G. civis.              |               |
| To command,                       | impērāre                      | (imperative.) |
| Easy,                             | fācilis, m. f.; facile, neut. | (facility.)   |

60. Humānum est errāre.

Natural-to-man it-is to err.<sup>n</sup>

Christiāni est nemīnem violāre.

The part } of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.  
The duty }

61. To lie is<sup>o</sup> disgraceful. (Lat.)

It is disgraceful to lie. (Eng.)

62. After 'it is,' such a substantive as *part*, *duty*, *business*, *mark*, is not to be translated into Latin.

In rendering into English, when a genitive follows *est*, (*erat*, *fuit*, &c.) such a substantive as *mark*, *duty*, *business*, *part*, must be supplied.

|   |                     |   |                           |
|---|---------------------|---|---------------------------|
| } | It is the part      | } | of a wise man, &c. (Eng.) |
|   | _____ duty          |   |                           |
|   | _____ business      |   |                           |
|   | _____ a mark        |   |                           |
|   | It is of a wise man |   | . . . . (Lat.)            |

## Exercise 13.

63. It is a great *thing* not to fear death. It is a little *thing* not to fear a fox. The slave had kept his word.

\* See note on p. 25.

<sup>n</sup> } An infinitive mood (with the words belonging to it) is often the *nominative* to the verb; and the adjective that agrees with it is then in the *neuter* gender.

<sup>o</sup> } When an infinitive mood is the *nominative* case to the sentence, in English we put 'it' before the verb 'is.'

This 'it,' which represents, as it were, the coming sentence, must not be translated into Latin.

It is the slave's *business* to shut the gate of the city. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. It is natural to man to value money *at-a-high-price*. It is a mark of an unlearned man to value wisdom *at-a-low-price*.

Turpe est poētæ domum evertere. Humanum est peccare. *Patris* est filium suum sepelire. *Regis* est imperare. *Servi* est viam monstrare. Pater filium docuērat. Puella clamavērat. Mater filiam suam laudavērat. Caius cantavērit. Agricōla juravit. Impii (62) est virtutem *parvi* æstimare. Boni est fidem servare. Impii est fidem violare.

---

#### Lesson 14.

64. For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns the accusative plural ends in *s*; for neuters in *ǎ*.

**RULE.** To get the *acc. plur.* from *acc. sing.*

(1) For *mas.* and *fem.* nouns, turn *um* of the 2d into *os*; in the other declensions, turn *m* into *s*.

(2) For neuters add *a* to the *root*.<sup>9</sup>

Hence the terminations of the *acc. plur.* are,

|                  |                  |                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1.               | 2.               | 3.               | 4.               | 5.               |
| ā <sup>s</sup> , | ō <sup>s</sup> , | ē <sup>s</sup> , | ū <sup>s</sup> , | ē <sup>s</sup> . |

*Obs.* The vowel before *s* is long. *Acc. plur.* of all *neuters* ends in *ǎ*.

#### Exercise 14.

65. It is disgraceful to break (one's) word. It is (the duty) of a Christian to keep (his) word. It is (the part) of a Christian, not to offend-against the laws of his country. The good citizen will observe the laws of his

---

<sup>9</sup> Sometimes *ia* must be added; for which rules will be given below.

country. The master has taught the boys. It is natural-to-man to avoid pain. Balbus will break his word. The fox had frightened the boys. He disregards the labors of his slave.

Pater meus fidem servavērat. Indocti est (62) sapientiam *parvi* æstimāre.<sup>3</sup> Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. CAIUS fidem suam non servāvit. Christiani est nemīnem violāre. Neminem violavit.

---

### Lesson 15.

66. The remaining cases of the singular :

|          | 1. | 2. | 3.                                 | 4. | 5. |
|----------|----|----|------------------------------------|----|----|
| Dative   | æ  | ō  | ī                                  | uī | eī |
| Ablative | ā  | ō  | ě<br><small>some-times 1.*</small> | ū  | ē  |

67. The *Dative* is to be rendered by TO or FOR.

The *Ablative* is to be rendered by WITH, BY, FROM.

But an Ablative of *time* must be rendered by AT or IN : an Ablative of *place*, by AT or FROM.†

68. VOCABULARY 13.

|                     |               |                           |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| Hand,               | mānus, ūs, f. | ( <i>manual.</i> )        |
| To labor,           | lābōrāre.     |                           |
| To be in trouble, } |               |                           |
| To appease,         | plācāre       | ( <i>placable.</i> )      |
| Mind,               | anīm-us, i    | ( <i>magn-anīmi-ty.</i> ) |
| Gift,               | dōnum         | ( <i>donative.</i> )      |

### Exercise 15.

[The thing *with which* is put in the ablative.]

69. The boy will show the road *to* the husbandman. The girl will open the letter *with* her-own hand. The boy will hear voices. Death will not terrify Christians. The slave will shut the gates *for* the king. Death

---

\* *e* is to be used, unless you are told to use *i*.

† *From* after a verb of *motion*.

frightens the impious. It is natural-to-man to fear death. He will appease the boy *with* a gift. He has appeased the boy's mind. He will have appeased the boy's mind *with* a gift.

Agricōlæ est laborāre. Puer discet. Servus domini vocem timēbit. Christiāni est virtūtem laudāre. Caii animum dono placavērit. Iram meam dono placavērat. Puella cantābit. Puer ludēbat.

---

### Lesson 16.

70. ¶ Adjectives ending in *is*, have Gen. *is*, and are therefore of the *third*. They are *masculine* and *feminine*. Their neuter form is *e*, Gen. *is*, &c.; and the ablative singular is *i*.\*

#### 71. VOCABULARY 14.

|                         |   |                         |
|-------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| Rome,                   | Rōma.                                   |                         |
| Carthage,               | Carthāgo, Carthag <sup>r</sup> 1-is, f. |                         |
| The-space-of-two-years, | biennium.                               |                         |
| Winter,                 | hiems, hiēm-is, f.                      |                         |
| To sleep,               | dormīre                                 | ( <i>dor-mouse.</i> )   |
| Cave,                   | antrum.                                 |                         |
| One,                    | unus, una, unum <sup>r</sup>            | ( <i>unit.</i> )        |
| To rest,                | quiescēre                               | ( <i>quiescent.</i> )   |
| To chastise,            | castigāre                               | ( <i>castigation.</i> ) |
| To remain,              | mānēre.                                 |                         |
| To live,                | vivēre                                  | ( <i>re-vive.</i> )     |
| Earth,                  | terra                                   | ( <i>terrestrial.</i> ) |
| Faithful,               | fidēlis                                 | ( <i>fidclity.</i> )    |

72.        Romæ.            Tarenti.            Tibūre.<sup>s</sup>  
               *at Rome.*        *at Tarentum.*    *at Tibur.*

|                  |                 |                         |                   |                |
|------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| Caius            | <i>annum</i>    | <i>unum<sup>t</sup></i> | Cortōnæ           | vixit.         |
| Caius            | <i>year</i>     | <i>one</i>              | <i>at Cortona</i> | <i>lived.</i>  |
| <i>Hiēme</i>     | <i>ursus</i>    | <i>in</i>               | <i>antro</i>      | <i>dormit.</i> |
| <i>In winter</i> | <i>the bear</i> | <i>in</i>               | <i>a cave</i>     | <i>sleeps.</i> |

---

\* A table of the terminations of an adj. in '*is*' is given in the Appendix, § 18.

<sup>r</sup> This word, with some others, has this peculiarity: *unus, una, and unum*, all make their Gen. *unius*, and their Dat. *uni*, instead of the regular Genitives and Datives of the first and second declensions.

<sup>s</sup> ¶ If the name of a town *where* any thing is done, be of the *first* or *second* declension, and *singular* number, it is put in the *genitive*; if not, in the *ablat.*

<sup>t</sup> ¶ Time *when* is put in the *ablative*; time *how-long* in the *accusative*.



73. Obs. The preposition is not to be translated before *the name of a town*, or a noun of *time*.

(a) Before a noun of time consider, whether it tells you *when* the thing *was* (or, *is to be*) *done*; or *how long* it *lasted*, (or *is to last*.)

### Exercise 16.

74. In-winter the earth rests. My father was living at-Rome. BALBUS is-remaining at-Carthage. It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a good citizen to remain at-Rome. In winter the bear will remain in (its) cave. He will remain at-Rome for the-space-of-two-years. He has kept his word unwillingly. It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a father to chastise his son. The slave is walking in the garden. He is remaining at-Tibur unwillingly, (57.) In-the-winter, he will play in the garden.

Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābit. Pater filium castigavērat. Puer in antro dormiēbat. Lex christiāna avaritiam damnavērat. Pater filium castigavērit. Bien-nium Romæ manēbit. Facile est pueri animum dono placare. Puella in horto ludēbat.

---

### Lesson 17.

(On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in *p* or *b*.)

75. In these verbs the root of the *perfect* may generally be got from the root of the *present* by adding *s*.

☞ But *bs* must be written *ps*.

76. EXAMPLES: Root of pres. *rēp*; root of perf. *reps*.  
 Root of pres. *nūb*; root of perf. *nups*.  
 (not *nubs*.)

### 77. VOCABULARY 15.

To write,  
 To marry, (of a female,)

scribēre  
 nūbēre

(*scribe*.)  
 (*nuptials*)<sup>u</sup>

---

<sup>u</sup> This word properly means 'to veil': hence 'to put on a bridal veil'; 'to marry.' It governs the *dative*, as meaning 'to veil for a person.'

|                                  |  |                        |
|----------------------------------|--|------------------------|
| To pluck ; to card ; to carp at, | carpĕre.   |                        |
| Wool,                            | lana.  |                        |
| Flower,                          | flos, flōr-is                                    | ( <i>florist.</i> )    |
| Grape,                           | uva.   |                        |
| Whole,                           | { totus : with <i>G. totus</i> ; <i>D. toti.</i> |                        |
| Letter,                          | { See <i>unus</i> , Appendix, 8, 10.             |                        |
|                                  | epistōla   | ( <i>epistolary.</i> ) |

a. Nubĕre 'to marry' is followed by the *dative*, not by the *accusative*.

b. A case of *suus* must be construed { *his, her, its, their* ; (or)  
*his own, her own, its own, their own* ;  
 according as the nominative is a 'he,'  
 a 'she,' an 'it,' or a 'they.'

*He* wrote it } *manu suā* { with *his* own hand.  
*She* wrote it } { with *her* own hand.

### Exercise 17.

78. The boy was writing a letter. The girl wrote a letter. The slave had written a letter. (It) is easy (60, n) to write a letter. The girl will marry Caius. The girl was carding wool. It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a Christian to observe the laws of his country. The girl had plucked a flower. The boy will pluck the grape. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter.\*

Sapientis est virtūtem<sup>v</sup> magni æstimāre. Epistōlam Romæ scripsit. Facile est lanam carpĕre. Quantum habet voluptātis industria ! Puella epistōlam suâ manu scripsit. Caius epistōlam suâ manu scribĕbat.

### Lesson 18.

#### Terminations of the third plural.

79. The *third plural* of a verb may be got from the *third singular* by changing *t* into *nt*.

(a) But this rule does not hold good of 'it,' which must be changed thus.

'it' must be changed { in the *fourth conj.* into *iunt.*  
 { in the perfect into . . . *ērunt.*  
 { in 'erit' into . . . . *int.*  
 { in other cases into . . . *unt.*†

\* In what case is time *how-long* put ? (See p. 34, note t.)

<sup>v</sup> From *virtus*.

† Thus, sepĕl-*it*, sepĕl-*iunt.*  
 stĕt-*it*, stĕt-*ērunt.*  
 stĕt-*ērīt*, stĕt-*ērint.*  
 reg-*it*, reg-*unt.*

## Exercise 18.

80. Translate the following :

- (1) Amat, amant : monet, monent : regit, regunt : audit, audiunt : amavit, amavērunt.  
 (2) Find the *third* person plural corresponding to each of the following forms:  
 Amābat ; monēbit ; reget ; rexērit ; audiet ; plorābit ; rexit, (*perf.*;) clamavērit, clamabit ; scripsit, audivit.

(3) Turn into Latin :

They will command. They have walked in the garden. They have written a letter. They were praising the faithful slave. They had praised the slave's fidelity. They will have sung. They will fear the lion. They will have chastised the slave. They will pull down the avaricious man's house. They will value money at-a-low-price. Wisdom has much pleasure. They will wrong nobody. They have wronged nobody. It is the duty<sup>7</sup> of a Christian to avoid avarice. They will appease the girl's anger. They were writing letters.

## Lesson 19.

81. Plural terminations of substantives and adjectives :

|             | 1.    | 2.    | 3.       | 4.     | 5.    |
|-------------|-------|-------|----------|--------|-------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | æ,    | i,    | ēs,      | ūs,    | ēs.   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ārum, | ōrum, | um,      | } uum, | ērum. |
|             |       |       | or ium,* |        |       |

82. VOCABULARY 16.

|                |                                     |   |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| To fall down,  | de-cīd-ēre                          | (the <i>deciduous</i> cypress.)         |
| Autumn,        | auctumnus, G. i.                    |   |
| The country,   | rus, <sup>w</sup> G. rūris          | ( <i>rural</i> pleasures.)              |
| To fly (out),  | e-vōl-āre                           | ( <i>volatile</i> : e out, volāre fly.) |
| From ; out of, | ex, governing the <i>ablative</i> . |   |
| In,            | in, governing the <i>abl.</i>       |   |
| City,          | urbs, G. urbis                      | ( <i>urbanity</i> .) <sup>x</sup>       |

Determine by the Table, given at page 24, the *genders* of *dolor*, *auctumnus*, *rūs*, *urbs*.

☞ 'In,' when it means 'into,' governs the accusative.

\* *Um* is to be used when you are not told to put *ium*.

<sup>w</sup> *Patria* is the *country* of which we are citizens; *rus* is 'the country,' as opposed to 'the town.'

<sup>x</sup> Meaning 'city politeness,' as opposed to 'rustic coarseness.'

## Exercise 19.

83. The husbandmen are building a wall. The boys will show the road. Christians will not fear death. The citizens will pull down Sulla's house. Wise (men) value true greatness of mind *very highly*.<sup>2</sup> The unlearned value wisdom at-a-low-price. My friends will not disregard my sorrow. The leaves fall down *in autumn*.<sup>12</sup> The slaves will avenge the death of their master. The slaves will show the gardens. They will appease the anger of the husbandmen with a gift.

Impii mortem timēbunt. *Christiāni est*<sup>7</sup> pecuniam *parvi* aestimāre.<sup>3</sup> Fidem suam *inviti*<sup>5</sup> serv-av-ērunt. Rūs<sup>7</sup> ex urbe evolābunt. *Invitus*<sup>5</sup> domi (168) manēbat. Puērū in urbe sepel-iv-ērunt. Patres filios suos docuērunt. Puellæ clamavērunt. Puēri vulpem non timēbunt.

## Lesson 20.

*On finding the nominative of the third declension from any other case.*

84. The most common way of all is given in the following Rule :

(1) Find the *root*,<sup>2</sup> and add *s* to it.

a) For *cs*, *gs*, you must write *x* ; and if a *t* sound<sup>a</sup> or *r* stand before *s*, throw it away.

b) If the letters before *s* are *nt*, sometimes *t* only is thrown away : sometimes both consonants.

c) Besides this a *short i* in the last syllable should be changed into *e*.

(2) Another way is to throw away the *last letter* of the root.

a) This applies principally to *n*, (sometimes to *r*, *l*.)

b) An *i* before *n* should be changed into *o*, as *consuetudin-em* (*consuetudi*) *consuetudo*.

<sup>7</sup> Into the country, by a rule to be given presently.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes the *root* is itself the *nominative*.

<sup>a</sup> That is, *t* or *d*.

(3) A third way is to add *is, es,* or (for *neuters*) *e* to the root.

(4) Sometimes ‘*ēr,*’ ‘*ör,*’ as the last letters of a root, should be changed into ‘*ūs;*’ and ‘*it*’ into ‘*ut.*’<sup>b</sup>

## 85. VOCABULARY 17.

|              | Root.       |  | Nom.           |                 |
|--------------|-------------|--|----------------|-----------------|
| A flock,     | grĕg        |  | grex, m.       | (greg-arious.)  |
| A shrub,     | frütĭc      |  | frutex, f.     |                 |
| A state,     | cĭvĭtāt     |  | cĭvĭtās, f.    |                 |
| An elephant, | elephant    |  | ĕlēphas, m.    |                 |
| Custom,      | consuetudin |  | consuetūdo, f. |                 |
| Honey,       | mell        |  | mel, n.        | (melli-fluous.) |
| Side,        | lätĕr       |  | latus, n.      | (lateral.)      |
| Head,        | cāpĭt       |  | caput, n.      | (capital.)      |
| Body,        | corpōr      |  | corpus, n.     | (corporal.)     |
| Cloud,       | nūb         |  | nubes, f.      |                 |

### Exercise 20.

86. The boys will not fear the elephant. The slave will show the shrub. Balbus had praised my custom. He feels a pain in his side, (*say,* of his side.) The boy will feel a pain in his head, (*say,* of his head.) The lion will not fear the elephant. The slave had shown the shrub in his master’s garden. He will retain his father’s custom. The state will observe its laws. The husbandman had shown his flocks. He will laugh-at the flock of unlearned men. My father feared the cloud.

Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit. Christiani est<sup>7</sup> nemĭnem violare. Servus mortui elephantis corpus puero monstrābat. Puella epistolam suā manu scripsit. Facile est lanam carpĕre. Biennium Carthagĭne manĕbunt. Domĭni servos fidĕles vindicavĕrant. Dominōrum est<sup>7</sup> fidĕles servos laudāre. Patris est filium suum docĕre. Figūræ nihil<sup>4</sup> habent stabilitatis. Hieme ursi in antro dormiunt. Biennium Romæ manĕbit. Chris-

<sup>b</sup> EXAMPLES.—From *ped-es* we get *ped-s=pes*, [by (1) a;] from *frütic-is, frütics=frütix=frutex*: *cĭvĭtāt-em, cĭvĭtat-s, cĭvĭtās*: *animant-em, animant-s, animans*: *elĕphant-is, elĕphant-s, elĕphas*, [(1) b.] By (2) *longitudĭn-em, longitudĭdi, longitūdo*: *farris, farr, far*: *felle, fell, fel*. By (3) *nub-em, nub-es*; *ret-i, ret-e*. By (4) *latĕr-is, latūs*; *corpōr-is, corpūs*; *capĭt-is, capūt*.



tianus neminem violabit. Fidēles servi dominum suum vindicabunt.

---

Lesson 21.

87. The *Imperative* may be got from the *infinitive* by throwing away *re*, (*amā, monē, regē, audī.*)

88. 'Not' with *imperatives* is *nē*,  
A 'non' is hateful then to see.

Crabrōnes nē irrīta.  
*Hornets do-not irritate.* (Do not irritate hornets.)

89. VOCABULARY 18.

|                     |                |            |
|---------------------|----------------|------------|
| It is,              | est.           |            |
| Wasp,               | vespa.         |            |
| To irritate,        | irrītāre.      |            |
| Hornet,             | crabr-o, ōnis. |            |
| Never,              | nunquam.       |            |
| Useful, profitable, | ūtil-is        | (utility.) |

Exercise 21.

[The 'do' before 'not' is only the *auxiliary* verb belonging to the following verb: thus, "do not shut" is the same as "shut not."]

90. Do not irritate wasps. He has *unwillingly* irritated a wasp. The boys will irritate the wasps. Do not pull-down the house. Do not chastise the slave. The boys will lose *some time*.<sup>4</sup> The figure will have *no stability*.<sup>4</sup> Do not break your word. Wise (men) will condemn avarice. The boys will hear a voice. Do not shut the gates of the city. Do not irritate your master. The boy will fear the hornet. The hornets will irritate the fox.

[Obs. The 'do' of the *imperative* must be put before 'not;' just as if 'nē' were to be translated 'do not.']

Patriæ tuæ leges nē viōla. Veram anīmi\* magnitudīnem laudābunt. *Christiāni est*<sup>7</sup> fidem suam servāre.

---

\* Observe the place of the governed genitive, between the adjective and substantive.

Turpe est, patriæ suæ leges violāre. Poētas nē irrīta. *Christiani est*<sup>7</sup> nemīnem irritare. Invītus saltavērat. Portas urbis *invītus* claudēbat. *Invītus* peccavit. Humanum est peccare. Ne pecca. Nunquam est utile peccare.

### Lesson 22.

On the perfect of verbs whose root ends in a k sound, (in c, g, or qu.)

91. The common way is, to add s to the root of the present; remembering that,

☞ Any k sound with s =<sup>c</sup> x, [that is, for cs, gs, or qus, write x.]

Thus from *cing-ĕre*, *tĕg-ĕre*, *dīc-ĕre*, *cōqu-ĕre*,<sup>d</sup> we get for the roots of the perfect,

|               |              |              |              |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| (cing-s)      | (teg-s)      | (dīc-s)      | (coqu-s)     |
| <i>cinx</i> , | <i>tex</i> , | <i>dix</i> , | <i>cox</i> . |

### 92. VOCABULARY 19.

|                                  |   |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| Attack,                          | oppugnāre.  |  |
| Greatest,                        | { summus; properly <i>highest</i> , but<br>the general word for <i>greatest</i> ,<br>when <i>qualities</i> are spoken of. |  |
| To surround,                     | cing-ĕre  | ( <i>cincture.</i> )   |
| To cover,                        | tĕg-ĕre   | ( <i>pro-TECT.</i> )   |
| To say,                          | dīc-ĕre   | ( <i>DICTION.</i> )  |
| To cook; bake; ripen,            | cōqu-ĕre  | ( <i>de-coCTION.</i> )   |
| Fault,                           | culpa   | ( <i>culpable.</i> )   |
| Lie,                             | mendācium   | ( <i>mendacious.</i> )   |
| Cloak,                           | pallium   | { (to <i>palliate</i> an offence :<br><i>i. e.</i> to cloak it.) |
| Food,                            | cibus.  |  |
| The sun,                         | sol, sōl-is, m.   | (the <i>solar rays.</i> )  |
| To fill,                         | complĕre  | ( <i>complement</i> of men.)                                     |
| All,                             | { omnis: cunctus, (the latter<br>word means ' <i>all taken to-<br/>gether.</i> ')   |  |
| To illuminate,                   | illūstrāre  | ( <i>illustrate.</i> )   |
| Light,                           | lux, lūc-is   | ( <i>lucid.</i> )  |
| River,                           | { flūmen, flumīn-is. What <i>gen-<br/>der?</i> [See page 24, g.]  |  |
| Assumed-appearance;<br>pretence, | { simulatio, G. simulatiōnis  | ( <i>dis-simulation.</i> )                                       |
| Whole,                           | { totus, a, um: but G. <i>totū</i> s, D.<br><i>toti</i> . In other cases, regular.<br>See Appendix, 10.                   |  |

<sup>c</sup> This mark means 'equals,' or, "is the same as."

<sup>d</sup> Qu = kw; pronounce *kokwĕre*.

93. Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat.  
*The sun all (things) with his light illuminates.*

94. ☞ 'Thing,' 'things,' are often untranslated: the adjective must then be put in the neuter.

### Exercise 22.

95. He surrounds his head with a garland. He had surrounded the city with a wall. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. The boy had said nothing. The girl had cooked the food. Do not cover (your) fault with a lie. The slave has said many (things.) The sun fills all (things) with its light. The assumed-appearance of folly covered great wisdom. It is the business<sup>7</sup> of the slave to cook the food for his master. It is never useful to lose time. How much<sup>4</sup> pleasure has he had?

Sol *cuncta* suâ luce illustravêrat. Christiâni<sup>7</sup> non est, mendacio culpam tegere. Puëri dixêrunt. Flumen urbem cingit. *Totam hiëmem*<sup>12)\*</sup> ursus in antro dormiëbat. Amicus amïci corpus suo pallio tegëbat. Summam prudentiam simulatiõe stultitiæ texêrat. Hannibal Saguntum oppugnabat. Turpe est peccare. Biennium Romæ manebunt. Carthagine *inviti* manëbant.

---

### Lesson 23.

*On finding the root of the perfect for verbs whose root ends in a t sound, (d̄ or t.)*

96. Here too the root of the perfect is generally got from the root of the present by adding *s*.

The *t* sound must be thrown away before this *s*, and the preceding vowel, *if short*, made long.

|          |          |               |
|----------|----------|---------------|
| Claud-o, | claud-s, | <i>claus.</i> |
| Divid-o, | divid-s, | <i>divis.</i> |

---

\* These numerals, when followed by a curve, refer to the *Questions* after the Appendix.

## 97. The remaining cases of the plural.

In the plur. the *dative* and *ablative* are alike.

|        |     |       |       |                                   |    |              |
|--------|-----|-------|-------|-----------------------------------|----|--------------|
|        | 1.  | 2.    | 3.    | 4.                                | 5. |              |
| Dat. } | īs, | ībūs, | ēbūs. | (In the <i>fourth</i> it is some- |    |              |
| Abl. } |     |       |       |                                   |    | times ūbus.) |

## 98. VOCABULARY 20.

|            |  |                                  |
|------------|--|----------------------------------|
| To divide, | divīd-ĕre.   |                                  |
| Part,      | pars, partis. Gender? (p. 24, g.)                                      |                                  |
| Three,     | { tres, <i>neut.</i> tria, (declined regularly :<br>gen. <i>ium.</i> ) |                                  |
| A man,     | { vir,* G. viri, (declined like a noun of<br>second.)                  |                                  |
| To accuse, | accūsāre.  |                                  |
| Theft,     | furtum   | ( <i>furtive.</i> )              |
| Bribery,   | ambītus, G. ūs.  |                                  |
| To acquit, | absolvĕre  | ( <i>absolve ; absolution.</i> ) |
| Treachery, | proditio, G. ōnis.   |                                  |
| To death,  | may be translated by <i>capītis</i> , (' <i>of the head.</i> ')        |                                  |
| Into,      | in, <i>with the accusative.</i>  |                                  |
| Because,   | quia.  |                                  |
| Always,    | semper.  |                                  |

|     |              |                           |                |
|-----|--------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| 99. | Puer         | eximiâ                    | pulchritudĭne. |
|     | <i>A boy</i> | <i>of singular</i>        | <i>beauty.</i> |
|     | Caium        | proditio <sup>e</sup> nis | accūsant.      |
|     | Caius        | <i>of treachery</i>       | they accuse.   |

100. OBS. Where we *describe* a person or thing by a *substantive* and *adjective* governed by 'of,' the Romans used either the *genitive* or the *ablative*.

101. (Eng.) To condemn a person to death.  
(Lat.) To condemn a person of the head,<sup>f</sup> (*capītis.*)

*Exercise 23.*

102. The slave has shut the gates of the city. Balbus had divided all (the things) into three parts. He

\* *Homo*, G. *homĭnis*, and *vir* are both 'man.' but *homo* is 'man' as opposed to other animals; that is, 'a human being:' whereas '*vir*' is 'man' as opposed to 'woman.'

When 'men' means 'human beings,' 'men' generally, (including both sexes,) it should be translated by *homĭnes*.

When 'man' is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by '*homo*,' because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.

When 'man' is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by '*vir*,' because *man* is superior to *woman*.

<sup>e</sup> ☞ Verbs of *accusing*, *acquitting*, and *condemning*, take a *genitive* of the charge.

As transitive verbs they, of course, take an accusative of the person accused.

<sup>f</sup> We may suppose that it was originally 'to condemn a person to the loss of the head,' or rather 'to a punishment of the head.'

will divide all (*neut. plur.*) into three parts with his (own) hand. Do *not* divide the food. Balbus, a man of *the greatest virtue*, has praised the fidelity of the slave. The sun was illuminating (all) things with his light. He will accuse Balbus of theft. They have written the letters with their own hands. The queen was writing a letter with her own hand. He had covered his face with a cloak. It is always disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romæ<sup>11)</sup> vivit. Balbum ambītūs accusavērant. *Quantum cibi*<sup>4</sup> amittunt! Balbum proditionis absolvent. Balbum *capitis* damnābunt. Hiēme<sup>9, b)</sup> ursi in antris dormiunt. Triennium<sup>9, c)</sup> Romæ manēbit. Caium ne accūsa. Invitus *Caium* accusavit. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditionis accusavērat. Portas urbis clausērat. Balbi est, omnia in tres partes dividēre. Facile est saltare. Nunquam utīle est peccare, quia semper est turpe.

---

### Lesson 24.

*Root of the perfect with lengthened (and often changed) vowel.*

103. Other verbs form the root of the perfect by *lengthening* the *vowel* of the present: as *ēd-ere, ēd.*

104. If the vowel of the present is *ā*, the root of the perf. will have *ē*. Thus *cāp-ere, cēp.*

105. Several of these verbs drop an *n* or *m* before the final mute.

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Thus frang-ēre, frāg, frēg. | (break.)                |
| rump-ēre, rup, rūp.         | (burst; break through.) |
| vinc-ēre, vic, vīc.         | (conquer.)              |

### 106. VOCABULARY 21.

|          |                 |                |
|----------|-----------------|----------------|
| Buy,     | } ēm-ēre, r. ēm | (pre-emption.) |
| Take,    |                 |                |
| Receive, |                 |                |
| Arm,     |                 |                |
|          | brāchium.       |                |



|         |   |                  |
|---------|---|------------------|
| Treaty, | fœdër-, nom. fœd-ūs, (neut.,) by 84, 4. | (con-feder-ate.) |
| Chain,  | vincŭlum.                               |                  |
| Prison, | carcer-, (nom. carcer, 84.)             | (in-carcer-ate.) |
| Gaul,   | Gallus.                                 |                  |
| Enemy,  | hostis, G. hostis                       | (hostile.)       |
| From,   | (after receive, capere,) ex with abl.   |                  |

### Exercise 24.

107. Caius had broken his arm. The Gauls had broken the treaty. They had broken-through the treaty. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. Cæsar conquered the Gauls. It is not easy to conquer the Gauls. He had appeased Balbus with the greatest prudence. They will break-through their chains. They had broken-through the chains of their prison. It is easy to break (one's) arm. They are losing much<sup>4</sup> money. He was losing much pleasure. They will condemn Balbus to death. He had conquered his enemies. Balbus has broken his arm at Rome.

Nunquam utile est fœdus rumpĕre. Nunquam ũtile est fidem fallĕre, quia semper est turpe. Facile est puerorum anĭmos donis placare. Turpe est fœdĕra negligĕre. Galli negligĕbant fœdĕra. ũtile est omnĭbus laborare. Nemo semper labōrat. Caius brachium suum Carthagĭne frĕgĕrat. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis textit. Quantum<sup>4</sup> mellis ĕmĕrunt! Quantum voluptatis ceperunt! Multum voluptatis ex meo dolōre cĕpĕrant.

---

### Lesson 25.

#### 108. VOCABULARY 22.

|                    |   |                |
|--------------------|---|----------------|
| Color,             | color, G. colōr-is. Gender ?              |                |
| An estate,         | fundus.                                   |                |
| Large,             | grandis, grandis, grande.                 |                |
| Immense ; huge,    | ingens, G. ingent-is.                     |                |
| Conquered,         | victus, a, um                             | (victory, &c.) |
| To dwell,          | habitāre                                  | (habitation.)  |
| To reign,          | regnāre.                                  |                |
| Sardis, or Sardes, | Sardes, (a plural noun,) G. Sardinum, &c. |                |
| Thebes,            | Thĕbæ, G. Thĕbārum : plur. noun.          |                |
| Victory,           | victōria.                                 |                |

|              |                      |  |                     |
|--------------|----------------------|--|---------------------|
| Nightingale, | luscīnia.            |  |                     |
| Much,        | multus.              |  |                     |
| To flourish, | florēre, r.g. floru. |  |                     |
| Often, .     | sæpe.                |  |                     |
| Peace,       | pax, pācis           |  | ( <i>pacific.</i> ) |

109. Spem            pretio            non            emo.  
*Hope            for a price            not            do I buy.*

110. ¶ After a verb of *buying*, 'for' may be considered a *sign* of the ablative.

That is to say, 'for' is to be untranslated; and the noun that expresses the price, put in the ablative.

### Exercise 25.

[In what case is the price *for which* put?]

111. He has bought the estate *for* a large sum-of-money. *The conquered* often buy peace for an immense sum of money. He had dwelt *many years at Athens*.<sup>11)</sup> Cræsus reigned *at Sardis*. He has bought a victory *with*<sup>h</sup> much blood. He will have dwelt *many years*<sup>12)</sup> *at Rome*. The nightingale changes (her) color *in the autumn*.<sup>12)</sup> It is impious, not to love (one's) parents. Caius had broken his arm. Cæsar has conquered the Gauls.

[When is the place *where* put in the *gen.*? when in the *abl.*?]

*Thebis* Pindārus floruit. *Multos annos* Romæ habitavērant. Impium est, leges patriæ violāre. *Invītus* legem violāvit. *Invīti* leges violavissent. *Balbus* capitis damnavērunt. *Biennium* Romæ habitabunt. *Patriæ tuæ* leges ne viōla. *Caium* proditiōnis accusabunt.

### Lesson 26.

112. Since, in the *third* conjugation, both the *present* and the *perfect* have their third person in 'it,' it is well to learn how to distinguish a third person of the *perfect* from a third person of the *present*.

g OBS. R. means 'root of *present*;' and r. 'root of *perfect*.'

h That is, 'for' much blood.

113. a) If 'it' has *s* or *x* before it, the tense is the *perfect*.  
 b) If 'it' has *u* or *v* before it, and the word is of more than two syllables, the tense is very likely to be the *perfect*.<sup>k</sup>  
 c) If the first two consonants of the root are *the same*, the tense is the *perfect*.  
 (Thus 'tetendit,' 'momordi,' is the *perfect*.)  
 d) If the root is of one syllable, and has a *long vowel*, the tense is *very often* the *perfect*.

## 114. VOCABULARY 23.

Some verbs that form root of perfect by prefixing a syllable, which is called reduplication, that is *redoubling*.

|                |                             |              |
|----------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| Bite,          | mord-ĕre, r. mōmord         | (re-morse.)  |
| Hang, (neut.,) | pend-ĕre, r. pēpend         | (sus-pense.) |
| Shear, shave,  | tond-ĕre, r. tōtond         | (tonsure.)   |
| —————          |                             |              |
| Shoulder,      | humĕrus, G. i.              |              |
| Beard,         | barba                       | (barber.)    |
| Sheep,         | ovis, G. ovis.              |              |
| Flay,          | de-glūb-ĕre, (see 75.)      |              |
| Shepherd,      | past-or, G. ōris            | (pastor.)    |
| Wolf,          | lūpus, G. i.                |              |
| From,          | ab, governing the ablative. |              |

*Exercise 26.*

115. The wolf had bitten the sheep. The shepherd will shear his sheep. A shepherd does not shear his sheep in the winter. The wolves have bitten my dog. Caius will shave (his) beard. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. The dog has bitten the wolf. They wrote the letter at Carthage. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. The girls will walk in the garden. The queen was walking through the city. They have surrounded the city with walls. They have *unwillingly* offended against the laws of their country.

Boni pastōris<sup>7</sup> est tondĕre oves, non deglubĕre. Sagittæ ab humĕro pependĕrunt. Malus pastor deglupsit oves, non totondit. Pastōres agricōlas risĕrunt. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordĕrit. Boni canis non est,<sup>7</sup> oves mordĕre. Tonde oves; ne deglūbe. Servus portas urbis clausĕrit. Puĕri regis sceptrum vidĕbunt. Luscinix colōrem mutabunt. Auctumno lusciniæ colorem suum mutavĕrint.

<sup>k</sup> This is *certain*, in the case of *āv-it*, *iv-it*. But *arguit*, *congruit*, *imbuit*, *statuit*, &c., are of the *present*.

## Lesson 27.

## 116. Personal Pronouns.\*

|                    | N.            | G.   | D.    | Ac.Ab. | N.A. | G.                                 | D.Abl. |
|--------------------|---------------|------|-------|--------|------|------------------------------------|--------|
| I,                 | ēgo,          | meī, | mīhi, | mē,    | nōs, | nostrum or nostri,                 | nōbīs, |
| Thou,              | tū            | tuī, | tibi, | tē,    | vōs, | vestrum or vestri,                 | vōbīs. |
| Him, her, it,      | } (none) suī, |      |       | sībi,  | sē,  | (Plural the same as the singular.) |        |
| Them, <sup>1</sup> |               |      |       |        |      |                                    |        |

☞ *Myself; thyself; himself, herself, itself; themselves*, are also expressed (respectively) by these pronouns.

117. 'He gave *him* a book,' means 'he gave a book  
to *him*.'

'He is like *him*,' — 'he is like to *him*.'

118. ☞ After verbs of *giving, paying, costing, &c.*, put in 'to' before one of the *accusatives*, and translate it by the *dative*.

119. ☞ Adjectives of *likeness* take the *dative*<sup>m</sup> after them.

This means, that what seems in English the *accusative* after 'like,' must be translated into Latin by the *dative*.

## 120. VOCABULARY 24.

|                 | R. | r. (r means root of perfect.)        |                        |
|-----------------|----|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| To give,        | {  | d-āre, dēd.                          | This verb has ā in the |
| To sell,        | {  | last syll. but one.)                 |                        |
| To stand; cost, |    | vend-ēre, vendīd.                    |                        |
| Prison,         |    | st-āre, stēt                         | (station.)             |
| Gold,           |    | carc-er, G. ěris                     | (incarcerate.)         |
| Silver,         |    | aurum.                               |                        |
| Blood,          |    | argentum.                            |                        |
| Roman,          |    | sanguis, sanguīn-is, mas.            | (sanguinary.)          |
| Beast,          |    | Romānus.                             |                        |
| Chain,          | {  | bellua, (of large beasts; elephants, |                        |
|                 | {  | whales, &c.)                         |                        |
|                 |    | vincūlum.                            |                        |

121. Isocrātes orātor<sup>n</sup> unam oratiōnem  
Isocrates the orator one oration

viginti talentis vendīdit.  
for twenty talents sold.

(The orator Isocrates sold one oration for twenty talents.)

\* See Appendix. § 25.

<sup>1</sup> *Him, her, it, them*, are not translated by *sui*, &c., unless they stand for the same person or thing that the *nominative* (or other *principal noun*) of the sentence stands for.

<sup>m</sup> But often the *genitive*. 'Similis mei,' means, he is like me in *character*; 'similis mihi,' that he is like me in *face*.

<sup>n</sup> When two nouns are spoken of the *same thing*, the second is put in the *same case* as the first.

The second is then said to be 'in *apposition*' to the first.—Hence '*apposition*' is when the *second noun* is a *name, or title, or description* of the preceding one.

## Exercise 27.

122. The Hippotāmus,<sup>o</sup> a great beast, dwells in the Nile.<sup>p</sup> Caius, a wicked *man*, (98 note,) will sell his country for gold. He has sold his country for gold. *How much*<sup>4</sup> silver had he given his slave? Victory cost the Romans (117) much blood.<sup>q</sup> Do not sell your honor for gold. It is *the part*<sup>r</sup> of a Christian to *think little of*<sup>s</sup> gold and silver. Balbus had burst the chains of his prison. It is the part of a Christian to praise the good.

Improbōrum est,<sup>7</sup> patriam auro vendēre. Anīmus carcēris sui vincūla rumpēbat. Fidem suam auro vendidērunt. Turpe est, fidem suam auro vendēre. *Quantum* tibi *argenti*<sup>4</sup> dedērat? \* Pastor ovem tondēbat. Agricōla labōrem finivērat.

## Lesson 28.

*Tenses of the verb 'esse,' to be.*

|               | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 123. Present, | est,         | sunt.        |
| Imperfect,    | ērāt.        |              |
| Future,       | ērīt,        | ērunt.       |

Root of perfect *fu*; and therefore the tenses with root of perfect formed regularly, *fuit*, *fuerat*, *fuērit*, *fuisset*.

124. The verb 'to be' takes a nominative (of either a *substantive* or an *adjective*) after it.

☞ An adjective *after* the verb agrees with the nominative *before* the verb.

<sup>o</sup> Hippopotāmus.

<sup>p</sup> Nilus.

<sup>q</sup> Remember that the *blood* was the *price* paid.

\* Remember that in a *question*, the auxiliary verb stands before the nominative case.



## 125. VOCABULARY 25.

|             |  |                           |
|-------------|--|---------------------------|
| Happy,      | { felix, <sup>r</sup> G. felic-is                | ( <i>felicity.</i> )      |
|             | { beātus   | (the <i>beatitudes.</i> ) |
| Contented,  | contentus, <sup>s</sup> governs the <i>abl.</i>  |                           |
| Worthy,     | dignus, <sup>s</sup> governs <i>abl.</i>         | ( <i>dignity.</i> )       |
| Unworthy,   | indignus, <sup>s</sup> governs <i>abl.</i>       | ( <i>indignity.</i> )     |
| Endued,     | præditus, <sup>s</sup>                           |                           |
| Relying on, | frētus, <sup>s</sup>                             |                           |
| Strength,   | vires, G. virium, &c. Plural of <i>vis.</i>      |                           |
| A little,   | parvum, <i>neut. adj.</i> used as a substantive. |                           |
| Free,       | liber, <sup>s</sup> libera, liberum              | ( <i>liberty.</i> )       |
| Never,      | nunquam.   |                           |

126. Terra est rotunda.  
The earth is round.

(*Rotunda* nom. fem. to agree with *terra.*)

Plurimæ stellæ soles sunt.  
Very many stars suns are (are suns.)

## Exercise 28.

127. No-one is always happy. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. Caius, a man (98) endued with the greatest virtue, praised my fidelity. Caius is not free from blame. Balbus, a man unworthy of life, does *no good*<sup>4</sup> (thing.) Balbus, relying on his strength, will burst the chains of his prison. It is unworthy of a Christian to praise the bad. The slaves are not free from blame. Christians are contented with a little. The boys have covered their faults with lies.

127.\* (What does *luce* come from?—See 84, (1) a.)

Virtus parvo contenta est. Quam multi indigni luce sunt! Caius, homo vitâ indignus, patriam auro vendidit. Patris mei servus laude dignus est. Improborum est<sup>7</sup> malos laudare. Tarquinius Romæ regnavit. Arbor florebat. Caium boni omnes laudabant. Balbus multâ laude florebat.

<sup>r</sup> *Beātus* relates more to *true, inward* happiness than *felix*, which means *successful in one's undertakings, &c.*

<sup>s</sup>  $\int$  Dignus, indignus, præditus, contentus, fretus, liber, &c., govern the *ablative.*

That is, the *abl.* follows them without a preposition: so that the English '*with,*' '*from,*' &c., must not be translated after them.

## Lesson 29.

128. ☞ The compounds of *esse* (except *posse*) govern the dative.

## 129. VOCABULARY 26.

(Compounds of *esse*; governing the *dative*.)

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| To do good; to be serviceable, | prod-esse, <sup>t</sup> profu.                       |
| To be prejudicial,             | ob-esse, <sup>t</sup> obfu.                          |
| To be engaged in,              | inter-esse, <sup>t</sup> interfu.                    |
| Very many,                     | plurīmi, æ, a, (plural.)                             |
| As many as possible,           | quam <sup>u</sup> plurīmi, æ, a.                     |
| The greatest possible,         | quam <sup>u</sup> maxīmus, a, um.                    |
| _____ he can, or could, }      |  |
| To raise (forces.)             | compārāre,   |
| Forces,                        | copiæ, ārum, plur.                                   |
| State,                         | civītas, G, tātis.                                   |
| Battle,                        | prælium.   |
| Anger,                         | ira.   |
| Human,                         | humānus.   |
| Race,                          | gēnūs, G. genēr-is. What gender? ( <i>generic</i> .) |
| Becomes,                       | fit, followed by the nominative.                     |

## Exercise 29.

130. Balbus was engaged in the battle. *It is the part of a Christian*<sup>7</sup> to do-good to *as many as possible*. Cæsar raises the *greatest forces he can*. Anger has cost the human race much blood. Anger has often been prejudicial to states. Very-many men are unworthy of life. The Christian will do-good to *as many as possible*. Very-many cities were raising forces. Many states, relying on their strength, are raising forces. They condemned Caius, a man unworthy of life. The conquered will dwell at Sardes. Peace cost me a great sum-of-money. The son will avenge his father's blood.

Cæsar *quam maxīmas* copias comparavērat. Caius, vir summo ingenio præditus, Romæ habitat. Servus meus prælio interfuit. Fides plurīmis profuit. Nemo fit casu bonus. Christianorum est<sup>7</sup> avaritiam damnare. Caius multis præliis interfuērat.

<sup>t</sup> These forms follow the conjugation of *esse* exactly: but *prodesse* drops its *d* before these tenses of *esse* that begin with a consonant. Thus *pro-sunt*: not *prod-sunt*.

<sup>u</sup> How *quam* gives the meaning of 'as possible' to a superlative, is explained in the 'Differences of Idiom,' number 9.

## Lesson 30.

## Subjunctive Verb.

| 131.                       | 1.     | 2.    | 3.    | 4.     | } The third plural is formed regularly from all these forms by the insertion of an <i>n</i> before the <i>t</i> . |
|----------------------------|--------|-------|-------|--------|---|
| PRESENT (R. <sup>v</sup> ) | ēt,    | ēāt,  | āt,   | īāt.   |   |
| IMPERFECT (R.)             | ārēt,  | ērēt, | ērēt, | īrēt.* |   |
| Perfect (r. <sup>v</sup> ) | ērīt.  |       |       |        |   |
| Pluperfect (r.)            | issēt. |       |       |        |   |

132. The *subjunctive present* in a principal sentence, is an *imperative*, or expresses a *wish*.

Hence, after *ut* (*that*) the subjunctive present is to be rendered, 'he, &c., may —' without *ut*, it must be 'let him —, &c.,' or 'may he —, &c.'


133. The *subjunctive present* used as an *imperative*, takes *nē* for 'not,' (*ne putet, do not let him think.*)

## Exercise 30.

134. Write down in Latin: That<sup>w</sup> he may shut. He would have shut. He would sleep. That he might irritate. That he may hear. That he may break. He may have broken. He would have burst. He would have divided.

Translate: Floreat. Ut florēret. Floruisset. Profuisset. Irritet. Ut irritet. Irritavisset. Divisisset. Ut cingēret. Cingat. Scribat. Ut scribat. Scripsisset. Ut scribēret. Plācet pueri animum. Ut filium suum sepeliret. Sepeliat filium. Iram meam placavissent. Servus nē claudat portas. Docet pueros, ut sapēre discant.

## Lesson 31.

135.  The infinitive in English often expresses a *purpose*: but the infinitive in Latin *never* does.

v R. means *with root of present*.

r. ———— *root of perfect*.

\* OBS. The 3d *sing.* of the *imperfect subjunctive* may be formed from the *infinitive* by adding *t*.

w 'Ut' is 'that.'

- (Eng.) I am come to see you.  
 (Lat.) I am come that I may see you.  
 (Eng.) I came to see you.  
 (Lat.) I came that I might see you.

136. ¶ The English infin. expressing a *purpose* may be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive.

137. The *imperfect* subjunctive must be used, when the verb is of a *past* tense ;<sup>x</sup> the *present* follows the other tenses.

138. ¶ The 'perfect with *have*' (or 'perfect definite,' which denotes that something *has been done* in a *still present* period of time) is considered a *present tense*, and followed by the *present subjunctive*.<sup>y</sup>  
 Obs. Neuter verbs of *motion* form their perfect definite *act.* with 'am : ' so that 'He is come' = 'He has come,' and is followed by *pres. subjunctive*.<sup>z</sup>

### 139. VOCABULARY 27.

|           |                      |                   |            |
|-----------|----------------------|-------------------|------------|
| To eat,   | R.<br>ěd-ěre,        | r.<br>ēd (103)    | (edible.)  |
| To come,  | věn-ire,             | věn (103)         | (ad-vent.) |
| To learn, | disc-ěre,            | didic,* (113, c.) |            |
| To read,  | lég-ere, lēg, (103.) |                   |            |

140. (1) Věnit            ut            portas            claudat.  
           *He is coming*    that        *the gates*        he may shut.  
           (*He is coming* to shut *the gates.*)
- (2) Věnit            ut            portas            clauderet.  
           *He came*        that        *the gates*        he might shut.  
           (*He came* to shut *the gates.*)
- (3) Věnit            ut            portas            claudat.  
           *He is come*     that        *the gates*        he may shut.  
           (*He is come* to shut *the gates.*)

### Exercise 31.

[What tense is 'he was come?' 138, z.]

141. He will come to surround the boy's head with a garland. He was come to surround the girl's head with a garland. He came to irritate the wasps. They

<sup>x</sup> That is, of the *imperfect*, *perfect*, or *pluperfect*.

<sup>y</sup> It is just so in English :

I write, or am writing, }  
 I shall write,            } that I may, &c.  
 I have written,            }

I was writing,            }  
 I wrote,                    } that I might, &c.  
 I had written,            }

<sup>z</sup> So too 'was come' is the pluperf.

\* The syllable prefixed is called a *reduplication*.

were come to pull-down Sulla's house. He was come to give me an estate. They had come to condemn me to death.<sup>8</sup> Do not shut the gate. He was come to raise the greatest forces he could.<sup>9</sup> Let the girls sing. Let the boys learn<sup>a</sup> to read. The boy has learned to play.

[Render *ut* and the *subjunctive* by the *infinitive*.]

Veniat servus, *ut* portas urbis claudat. Vēnit,<sup>b</sup> *ut* quam maxīmas<sup>9</sup> copias compāret. Lēgit, *ut* discat. Edit, *ut* vivat. Edit, *ut* vivēret. Non edunt, *ut* vivant; sed vivunt, *ut* edant. Romæ plurīmi vivunt, *ut* edant. Veniat Caius, *ut* epistolam suâ manu scribat. Cantet puella. Ludant pueri. Vēnerat Caius, *ut* Balbi animum donis placaret. Quiescant servi. Nemo quiescat. Vēnit, *ut* me audiat. Venerunt, *ut* me audiant. Venerunt, *ut* te audirent. Edunt, *ut* vitam conservent.

### Lesson 32.

142. After 'such,' 'so,' 'of such a kind,' &c., 'that' must be translated by '*ut*,' and the verb after 'that' must be in the *subjunctive* in Latin, though in English it is in the *indicative*.

### 143. VOCABULARY 28.

|                      |   |                                 |
|----------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| So great,            | tantus.   |                                 |
| Mountain,            | mons, mont-is, mas.                               |                                 |
| Highest,             | summus  | ( <i>summit.</i> )              |
| Top of,              | } summus, } <i>in agreement with their subst.</i> |                                 |
| Middle, or midst of, |   | } medius, }                     |
| Snow,                | nix, nīv-is. Gender?                              |                                 |
| Alps,                | Alpes, Alpium, &c.                                |                                 |
| Cold,                | frīg-ūs, ōris. Gender?                            | ( <i>frigid.</i> )              |
| Not-yet,             | nondum.   |                                 |
| Fish,                | piscis, G. pisc-is, mas.                          | ( <i>piscatory.</i> )           |
| Pavement,            | pavimentum.                                       |                                 |
| Wine,                | vinum   | ( <i>vinous fermentation.</i> ) |
| Preserve,            | conservare  | ( <i>conservative.</i> )        |
| To swim,             | nātāre.   |                                 |
| To melt,             | lique-sc-ĕre, licu                                | ( <i>liquid.</i> )              |

<sup>a</sup> *Disco* is followed by the *infinitive*, (not by *ut* with the *subjunctive*.)

<sup>b</sup> Obs. When the *present subjunctive* follows a *perfect*, the *perfect* must be translated by '*has*,' or, if it is a verb of motion, by '*is*;' because the use of the *present* proves it to be the *perfect definite*. See 137.



144. In summis Alpibus tantum est frigus,  
 On the top of the Alps so great is the cold,  
 ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.  
 that the snow there never melts.

145. (Eng.) On the top of the mountain.  
 (Lat.) On the mountain highest. (In summo monte.)  
 (Eng.) In the middle (or midst) of the waters.  
 (Lat.) In the middle waters. (In mediis aquis.)

### Exercise 32.

146. On the top of the mountain<sup>11</sup> the snow never melts. On the top of the Alps the snows never melt. The cold is so-great, that the snow is not-yet melted.<sup>c</sup> The fish is swimming in the middle of the water. Boys swim on the top of the waters. The pavement is swimming with wine. Let the slave come.<sup>d</sup> He was eating, to preserve his life. He will swim, to preserve his life. May the snows melt! The boy is singing on the top of the oak. The boys will dance on the top of the mountain.

Obs. The *subjunctive* after *ut* must be rendered by the indicative, when a *tantus* stands in the former clause.

In *summ̄is montibus* tantum erat frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquesceret. Venit, ut patriam auro vendat. Improbi homines patriam auro vendiderunt. In summo monte tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nondum licuerit.<sup>e</sup> Tanta est pueri industria, ut multa discat. Nix est candida. Venit, ut patriæ suæ leges violaret. Avis in summâ arbore cantabat.

### Lesson 33.

147. Subjunctive of *esse*.

Present, sit.—Imperfect, esset. (Fuërit, fuisset, regular from *fu*.)

<sup>c</sup> 'Is melted,' like 'is come,' is the *perf. active*.

<sup>d</sup> The *third person* of the *present subjunctive* is used as an *imperative*.

<sup>e</sup> What was said of the *present* and *imperfect subjunctive*, may be extended to the *perfect* and *pluperfect*.

☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the *past tenses*.

148. The verb 'can,' 'am able,' is made up of an old adjective 'potis,' meaning 'able,' and the verb 'to be;' but the two words were run together into *one* with some change.

149. To get the third persons of 'to be able' from 'to be.'

Place *pot* before the *third* persons of *to be*; throwing away the *f* from those that begin with that letter; and change *t* into *s* before another *s*, shortening *potess* into *poss*. We thus get, (from the forms in 123,) *potest*, *possunt*: *potērat*: *potērit*, *potērunt*: and *potu* (for *potfu*) for the root of the perfect.

The subjunctive will be *possit*, *posset*, &c. Infin. *posse*.

150. Some verbs whose root ends in a *k* sound, throw away the *k* sound before *s*:

sparg-ěre, spars.  
merg-ěre, mers.

### 151. VOCABULARY 29.

|                           |                                      |         |                |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|----------------|
| Nest,                     | nīdus.                               |         |                |
| Bird,                     | āvis, G. avis                        |         | (aviary.)      |
| Seed,                     | sēmen, semīnis.                      | Gender? | (disseminate.) |
| Dangerous,                | perīcul-ōsus.*                       |         |                |
| Danger,                   | perīcūlum                            |         | (peril.)       |
| Victim,                   | victīma.                             |         |                |
| Altar,                    | āra.                                 |         |                |
| Sprinkle,                 | adspergo, r. adspers.                |         |                |
| Priest,                   | sacerdo-s, ōtis                      |         | (sacerdotal.)  |
|                           | R. r.                                |         |                |
| To plunge into, (trans.,) | immerg-ěre, immers                   |         | (immerse.)     |
| Scatter,                  | sparg-ěre, spars.                    |         |                |
| To build, (of a nest,)    | con-stru-ěre, con-strux <sup>f</sup> |         | (construct.)   |

152. The particles *ně* and *num* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun, or adverb of *place*, *time*, or *manner*, one of these particles should be put in.

*Ně* should always *follow* and be *joined to* a word. If there is a 'not' in the sentence, it should be joined to the 'non,' (nonně.)

|                     |                         |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 153. Nonně scribit? | Is not he writing?      |
| Scribitně Caius?    | Is Caius writing?       |
| Num scribit Caius?  | Is Caius writing? (No.) |
| Arare potest.       | He can plough.          |
| Potestně arare?     | Can he plough?          |

OBS. 'Num' is used when the answer 'no' is expected; so that 'num scribit Caius?' means, 'Caius is not writing, is he?'

\* Adjectives in *ōsus* mean *full of* what the substantive they are derived from denotes.

<sup>f</sup> This seems a very irregular perfect; probably the verb was *struv-ěre* originally.

## Exercise 33.

When the answer 'no' is expected, it will be added thus: [No.]  
 ☞ The 'to' of the infin. is omitted after *can, may, might, &c.*, and *see, hear, feel, bid, dare, make.*<sup>s</sup>

154. Does he live to eat? [No.] Does not he eat to live? The husbandman has scattered seeds. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. They *are come*<sup>29)</sup> to condemn<sup>28)</sup> you *to death*.<sup>8</sup> Can he swim in the *middle of the waters*?<sup>10</sup> [No.] The boy's industry is so-great, that he can learn all things. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? Are you shearing the sheep?

[In rendering, omit the *nē* or *num*, but make the sentence a *question*.]

[In a *question*, the *auxiliary verb* must stand before the nominative case: and the form '*do—does,*' '*did,*' must be used for the *present* and *perfect* respectively. (The *perfect definite* must still be translated by *have, has.*)]

Caius se in flumen immersit. Galli manus in aquam immerserant. Periculōsum est, *hiēme*<sup>12)</sup> se in flumen immergēre. Puer se in flumen immergat.<sup>30)</sup> *Agricolārum est*<sup>7</sup> semina auctumno<sup>9, b)</sup> spargēre. Nonnē in *summis Alpibus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? *Avis in summā quercu* nidum construxerat. Scripsitnē Caius? Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adpersit. Num rex portas urbis suā manu claudet? Nonnē boni est pastōris<sup>7</sup> tondēre oves, non deglubere?

## Lesson 34.

## Root of supine.

155. There are two *su-pines* in Latin: one in *um*, and another in *u*.

156. ☞ The supine in *um* follows verbs of *motion* to express the *purpose*: it must be Englished by the *present infinitive active*, (*amātum, to love.*)

<sup>s</sup> Hence the verb that follows *can, could, &c.*, is in the *infinitive mood*; because "I can see," is the same as "I am able to see."

157. The supine in *u* follows some *adjectives*, and is Englished by the *present infinitive passive*.

But it may be Englished by the *infn. act.* when that gives better English.<sup>h</sup> Both supines are *really active*: *factum* is ('for) doing: 'factu, 'in doing.'

These forms very seldom occur: but they are given in grammars and dictionaries, because two of the participles are formed from the *root of the supine*.<sup>i</sup>

158. The root of the supine (which will be marked by *ꝑ.*) ends in *t*; sometimes in *s*.

159. In the *first*, *second*, and *fourth* conjugations, the *root of supine* is regularly obtained by adding

|            |            |            |                              |
|------------|------------|------------|------------------------------|
| 1.         | 2.         | 4.         |                              |
| <i>āt,</i> | <i>īt,</i> | <i>īt,</i> | to the roots of the present. |
| (amāt)     | (monīt)    | (audīt.)   |                              |

In the *third*, *t* is added to the root: but sometimes *s*, (especially to the *t* sounds.)

160. Obs. Any *p* sound before *t* is *pt*, (or *pt = pt*, or *bt*.)

Any *k* sound ————— *ct*, (or *ct = ct*, *gt*, or *gut*.)

Hence *scrib-tum*, *reg-tum*, must be written *scriptum*, *rectum*. Remember that *d*, and sometimes *g*, will be thrown away before *s*. (See 96, 150.)

## 161. VOCABULARY 30.

|                               |  |            |
|-------------------------------|--|------------|
| To forage, (supine,)          | pabulātum.                             |            |
| To fetch water, (supine,)     | aquātum.                               |            |
| To lie down,                  | cubītum, (sup. from <i>cubāre</i> .)   |            |
| To go to bed; to go to roost, | cubītum īre.                           |            |
| To send,                      | mitt-ēre, r. mīs, (for mit-s; ꝑ. miss) | (re-mit.)  |
| To go,                        | īre, <sup>k</sup>                      |            |
| To go a hunting,              | venātum īre, (venātum, sup. to hunt.)  |            |
| To go away,                   | ab-īre, <sup>k</sup> r. abi.           |            |
| To return,                    | red-īre, <sup>k</sup> r. redi.         |            |
| Hen,                          | gallīna.                               |            |
| Evening,                      | vesp-er, G. ěris                       | (vespers.) |
| Legion,                       | lēgi-o, G. ōnis.                       | Gender?    |
| Fourth,                       | quartus.                               |            |
| Pleasant,                     | jūcundus.                              |            |

162. Mittit legātos pacem petītum.  
He sends ambassadors peace to sue-for.

<sup>h</sup> See 163.

<sup>i</sup> It would be far better to give the *root of the supine*, than a fictitious form.

<sup>k</sup> *īre* is of the *fourth*, but with some irregularities: r. iv: ꝑ. īt.

|         | Indicative. | eunt. | Subjunctive. |   |
|---------|-------------|-------|--------------|---|
| Pres.   | it,         |       | eat.         | The participle, which will be wanted presently, is <i>iens</i> , G. <i>euntis</i> , &c. |
| Imperf. | ībat.       |       | īret.        |   |
| Fut.    | ībit.       |       |              |   |

Gerunds, *eundi*, &c.

The compounds *ab-īre*, *rēd-īre*, are conjugated exactly in the same way, (prefixing *ab*, *red*, to these forms,) but they generally drop *v* from the root of the perf., (*redi-ērit*, *redi-isset*, &c.; not *redivērit*, *redivisset*.)



163. (Eng.) It is hard to say.<sup>1</sup>  
 (Lat.) It is hard (in) saying, (difficile est dictu.)

### Exercise 34.

164. The hens go to roost in the evening. The boy had gone a hunting. Cæsar has sent the fourth legion to forage. Has not Cæsar sent the fourth legion to fetch water? Are not the boys gone<sup>29</sup> a hunting? Cæsar has not-yet returned to Rome.<sup>m</sup> Cæsar had returned from Geneva to Rome. Balbus will go-away in the evening.

[Form the supine in u from aud-ĭre: fac-ĕre, (159.)]

Nonnĕ cubĭtum eunt gallinæ vespĕri? Timĭda avis in summâ quercu nidum construĕbat. Plato Tarentum vĕnit. Servum Athĕnas misĕrat. Caium Athĕnas mittat.<sup>30</sup> Jucundum est audĭtu. Difficile est factu, (163.) Nonnĕ sacerdotĕs aram sanguĭne adspersĕrunt? Sacerdotĭs est, aras omnes victimarum sanguĭne adspĕrgĕre. Vĕnit sacerdos, ut aram sanguine adspĕrgat.

---

### Lesson 35.

#### PARTICIPLES.

##### Active.


- |                   | 1.    | 2.   | 3.   | 4.    |
|-------------------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 165. Present (R.) | ans,  | ens, | ens, | iens. |
| Perfect (none.)   |       |      |      |       |
| Future (ġ.)       | ūrus. |      |      |       |

##### Passive.

- Perfect (ġ.) us.  
 Future (or 'participle of necessity;'<sup>1</sup> R.)

---

<sup>1</sup> Hence after *hard, pleasant, &c.*, the active infinitive is to be translated by the supine in u.

<sup>m</sup>  After a verb of motion, 'to' is never a sign of the dative, but is to be translated by *ad*.

But 'ad' is omitted before the names of towns and small islands.

When the place is a town or small island, the place to which is put in the accusative; the place from which, in the ablative.



|        |        |        |         |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1.     | 2.     | 3.     | 4.      |
| andus, | endus, | endus, | iendus. |

- 165.\* The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ing*.  
 The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed, en, t, &c.*  
 The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*: a crime *to be abhorred*.)  
 The participle in *rus* must be translated by 'about to (write;)' or, 'going to (write.)'

## 166. VOCABULARY 31.

|          |          |         |                 |
|----------|----------|---------|-----------------|
| R.       | r.       | ρ.      |                 |
| frang,   | frēg,    | fract   | (for fragt.)    |
| sparg,   | spars,   | spars   | (for spargs.)   |
| adsparg, | adspers, | adspers | (for adspargs.) |
| claud,   | claus,   | claus   | (for clauds.)   |
| immerg,  | immers,  | immers  | (for immergs.)  |
| rump,    | rūp,     | rupt.   |                 |

### *Exercise*<sup>n</sup> 35.

167. Loving. Surrounding. Being surrounded. Being broken. (A stick) to be broken. About to break. Dwelling. Living. To be dwelt in. About to dwell. Going to break. About to scatter. About to burst the chains of his prison. An altar to be surrounded with flowers. A boy to be loved. Going to disregard. Going to praise.

Immersūrus. Porta claudenda. Semīna spargenda. Agricōla sparsūrus semīna. Violatūrus legem. Claudens portas. Porta clausa. Semīna sparsa. Sacerdos aram adspersurus.

---

### *Lesson* 36.

## 168. VOCABULARY 32.

(Words that are construed like *proper names of towns*.)

|                |   |
|----------------|---|
| On the ground, | hūmi.   |
| At home,       | dōmi, fem.                                      |
| At my house,   | dōmi meæ, (At his own house, <i>domi suæ</i> .) |

---

<sup>n</sup> First find root of supine (1) by adding *t* to *cing*, (159, 160,) and to *frag*, (see 105, 159, and 160;) (2) by adding *s* to *merg*, *sparg*, *claud*, (see 159;) and (3) from the roots of *viol-āre*, *habit-āre*, (by 159.)

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| On service ; in the field, | militiæ.                                |
| Home,                      | dōmum, (after verbs of <i>motion</i> .) |
| From home,                 | dōmo.                                   |
| In the country,            | rūri, <i>abl.</i> (or, <i>rure</i> .)   |
| Into the country,          | rūs, ( <i>neut. acc.</i> )              |
| From the country,          | rūre.                                   |

|                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Both, <sup>o</sup> (adv.) | et; properly <i>and</i> .                               |
| Neither,                  | neque, or nec, } <i>neque</i> is rather to be preferred |
| Nor,                      | neque, or nec, } before a vowel.                        |
| To sing,                  | cān-ēre, (r. cēcin; ρ. cant.)                           |

169. (Eng.) Cæsar *having conquered* his enemies, &c.  
 (Lat.) Cæsar, *when he had conquered* his enemies, &c.  
 (or) Cæsar, his enemies being conquered, &c.

- (a) Cæsar, *quum vicisset* hostes, &c.  
 (b) (or) Cæsar *victis hostibus*, &c.

170. A substantive and participle are said to be put *absolutely*, when they are not governed by the *verb*, or any other word in the sentence.

¶ In Latin, words put *absolutely* are in the *ablative*.

(This construction is called the *ablative absolute*.)

171. OBS. ¶ The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense.

### Exercise 36.

172. Balbus *having crowned*<sup>p</sup> the boy's head with a garland, went away. The slave *having shut*<sup>q</sup> the gate of the city, is going *to bed*.<sup>11</sup> Cæsar having conquered his enemies, (169, b,) will return *to Rome*. The leaves are falling down *on the ground*. Cæsar is remaining at his-own-house. Balbus was with me<sup>r</sup> *both* at home and on-service. Balbus had lived *many years* in the country.

(What is *mecum* made up of?)

Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit.

<sup>o</sup> Thus, instead of 'both Caius and Balbus,' the Romans said, 'and Caius and Balbus,' (*et Caius et Balbus*.)

<sup>p</sup> Translate by 'when he had crowned.'

<sup>q</sup> Translate by 'the gate of the city being shut.'

<sup>r</sup> OBS. *Cum*, 'with,' is written *after*, and *joined to*, the *ablatives* of the personal pronouns, (*mecum*, *tēcum*, *nobiscum*, &c.: not *cum me*, nor *me cum*, separately.)

Folia nondum decidērant. Puer Romam mittendus est. Balbus nec<sup>s</sup> domi nec militiæ mecum fuit. Caius rus ex urbe evolavērit. Caius nondum rure rediit. Et Cæsar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram floribus cingēret. Sacerdos, quum aras sanguine adpersisset, abiit.

[Observe: in rendering an *ablative absolute*, the substantive must be placed first, *without a preposition*, and the participle (if the Latin participle is that of the *perf. pass.*) is to be that compounded with 'being.'

But having so translated it, you may turn the *participle* into that of the *perf. act.* (with 'having') governing the substantive, whenever this change improves your sentence without altering its meaning. Example: "fracto pueri brachio," the arm of the boy *being broken*: this is the same in meaning with, "the boy having broken his arm." Either form of expression may be used.]

Fracto puēri brachio, abii. Alexander, victo Darīo, rediit. Avis, constructo in summâ quercu nido, canit. Violātis patriæ lēgibus, vitâ<sup>24</sup> indignus est. Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Tarentum. Sacerdos, adpersâ sanguine arâ, abiit. Caius, ruptis vincūlis, evolavit. Scriptâ epistolâ, abiit.

---

### Lesson 37.

#### Gerunds.

173. The *Gerunds* in *di* are formed from the root of the present, and end in

|       |       |       |        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1.    | 2.    | 3.    | 4.     |
| andi, | endi, | endi, | iendi. |

(Hence they are always like the *gen.* of the *participle* in *dus*.)

174. The gerund is translated by the '*participial substantive*' in '*ing*.'

☞ When what is in *form* the participle in *ing*, governs or is governed, but has nothing to agree with, it is the *participial substantive*.

---

<sup>s</sup> In translating two *nec*'s or *neque*'s, it is often better to borrow a '*not*' from them for the verb, and then to render them by *either—or*, instead of *neither—nor*.

Thus, 'he was with me *neither* yesterday *nor* the day before,' would become, 'he was *not* with me *either* yesterday *or* the day before.'

175. The *gerund* is a *verbal substantive* of the neuter gender, but must borrow the infinitive mood for its *nominative*; it has no plural.

|      |  |  |
|------|--|--|
| N.   | (occīdēre, <i>killīng.</i> )                                     | } The Gerund governs a noun; in the same case, of course, as the verb it comes from. |
| G.   | occidendi, <i>of killīng.</i>                                    |  |
| D.   | occidendo, <i>to or for killīng.</i>                             |  |
| Acc. | { (occidere) . . . . . } <i>killīng.</i>                         |  |
|      | { occidendum, <i>when governed by</i> }<br><i>a preposition,</i> |  |
| Abl. | occidendo, <i>by killīng.</i>                                    |  |

### 176. VOCABULARY 33.

|                           |                                     |       |                            |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|----------------------------|
| Frugality,                | parsimōnia                          |       | ( <i>parsimony.</i> )      |
| Science,                  | scientia.                           |       |                            |
| Superfluous; unnecessary, | { supervācuus, (from <i>super</i> , |       |                            |
|                           | { above; <i>vacuus</i> , empty.)    |       |                            |
| Expense,                  | sumptus, G. ūs                      |       | ( <i>sumptuary laws.</i> ) |
| Nature,                   | natūra.                             |       |                            |
| Desirous,                 | cupīdus                             |       | ( <i>cupidity.</i> )       |
| New,                      | nōvus                               |       | ( <i>novelty.</i> )        |
| Art,                      | ars, G. artis.                      |       |                            |
| Skilful (in,)             | perītus, (governs <i>gen.</i> )     |       |                            |
| Horse,                    | ēquus, i                            |       | ( <i>equerry.</i> )        |
| Character,                | mōres, G. morum, pl.                |       | ( <i>morals.</i> )         |
| To see,                   | vīd-ēre, vīd, vīs                   |       | ( <i>visible.</i> )        |
|                           | r.                                  | ρ.    |                            |
| To discover; show,        | de-tēg-ēre,                         | tex,  | tect (de-tect.)            |
| To play,                  | lūd-ēre,                            | lūs,  | lūs (de-ludc.)             |
| To teach,                 | dōc-ēre,                            | docu, | doct (doctor.)             |
| To tame; master,          | dōm-āre,                            | dōmu, | domīt (in-dom-itable.)     |

177. (Eng.) While they are playing.  
(Lat.) *During playing*, (inter ludendum.)

### Exercise 37.

178. Economy is the science of *avoiding* unnecessary expenses. Man is by nature desirous<sup>t</sup> of seeing and hearing new (things.) Balbus is skilful *in mastering* a horse. He is come *to master*<sup>28)</sup> the horse. The character of boys discovers itself *while they are playing*. He learns by teaching. *How much pleasure*<sup>4</sup> (there) is in learning!

Nonnē potest docendo discēre? Cupīdi sunt docendi *Sapientis est*<sup>7</sup> supervacuus sumptus vitāre. Discat<sup>30)</sup> puer supervacuus sumptus vitāre. Abeat *Romam*. Discat, ut docēre possit. *Quantum temporis*<sup>4</sup> ludendo amisērunt! Nemo mortem poterit vitare. Inviti vēnē-

<sup>t</sup> Adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, recollection, &c.*, (or their opposites,) govern the *genitive*.

rant, ut Sullæ domum evertērent. Eversâ Sullæ domo, abiit. Num pueri ludendo discunt? Puer cupidus est discendi. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Discrepat a timendo confidēre.

### Lesson 38.

#### Participle in dus.

179. Instead of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with it.

180. Thus, (*Eng.*) The intention of writing a letter.  
 (*Lat.*) Consilium scribendi epistolam.  
 (or) Consilium scribendæ<sup>u</sup> epistolæ.

181. Thus then, '*epistolā scribendā*' may be declined throughout.

#### Sing.

- N. Epistolā scribendā, a letter to be written.  
 G. epistolæ scribendæ, of writing a letter.  
 D. epistolæ scribendæ, to or for writing a letter.  
 Acc. (ad) epistolam scribendam, to write a letter, (or, for writing a letter.)  
 Abl. epistolā scribendā, by writing a letter.

#### Plur.

- N. epistolæ scribendæ, letters to be written.  
 G. epistolārum scribendarum, of writing letters.  
 D. epistolīs scribendis, to or for writing letters.  
 Acc. (ad) epistolās scribendas, to write letters, (or, for writing letters.)  
 Abl. epistolīs scribendis, by writing letters.

### 182. VOCABULARY 34.

[The forms following a verb are r. and ρ.]

|                                |   |              |
|--------------------------------|---|--------------|
| Book,                          | liber, libri  | (library.)   |
| Very fond,                     | studiōsus.  |              |
| Plato,                         | Plato, G. Platōnis.   |              |
| To retain,                     | { re-tin-ere, rētīnu, retent<br>{ (re, back; tenēre, hold.) | (retentive.) |
| Barbarous,                     | barbārus.   |              |
| Custom,                        | consuetūd-o, G. īnis. Gender?                               |              |
| To sacrifice, <sup>v</sup>     | im-mōlare   | (immolatic.) |
| Fonder,                        | cupīdi-or, G. ōris.   |              |
| To buy,                        | ēm-ēre, ēm, empt.   |              |
| To snatch; seize, <sup>w</sup> | { arripēre, arripu, arrept, (ad, to;<br>{ rapere, snatch.)  |              |

<sup>u</sup> The real meaning of 'consilium epistolæ scribendæ' is, 'the design of (= about) a letter to be written.'

<sup>v</sup> Properly, 'to strew the sacred flour or cake (*mola salsa*) on the victim's head:' from *in, on, and mola*.

<sup>w</sup> This verb, though of the third, follows the fourth in the imperfect, &c., as will be explained below. See note x.



|                    |                                  |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| Opportunity,       | ocasi-o, G. ōnis. <i>Gender?</i> |                      |
| To practise,       | exercēre.                        |                      |
| Desire,            | cupidīt-as, ātis                 | ( <i>cupidity.</i> ) |
| To rule,           | rēgēre, rex, rect                | ( <i>di-rect.</i> )  |
| War,               | bellum.                          |                      |
| To carry on; wage, | gēr-ēre, gess, gest.             |                      |
| Time,              | temp-ūs, ōris. <i>Gender?</i>    | ( <i>temporal.</i> ) |

### Exercise 38.

183. The boy is very-fond of writing letters. Demosthēnes was very-fond of hearing Plato. In the times of Cicero the Gauls retained the barbarous custom of sacrificing men. Seize every opportunity of practising virtue. Do not lose the opportunities of practising virtue. Nature has given us a desire of seeing the truth. The Romans were fond of waging war. Timotheus was skilful<sup>39)</sup> in governing a state.

[OBS. Any case of the *partic. in dus*, except the nominative, must be rendered by the same case of the *participial substantive*; and the substantive it agrees with, must stand as the accusative after it. Thus: "Balbus seized every opportunity of practising virtue."]

Nonnē fundum *ingenti pecuniā*<sup>21)</sup> ēmērat? Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendæ virtūtis* arripiēbat. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum*, quam *legendōrum*. Cæsar belli gerendi perītus fuit. Nonne mores puerorum se inter ludendum (177) detēgunt?

### Lesson 39.

184. OBS. After 'is,' 'are,' and the other parts of the verb 'to be,' the form of the *infinitive passive* is used as a participle of the future passive, to signify duty, necessity, &c.

185. Hence, what is in form the *passive infinitive*, is to be translated by the *participle in dus*, when it follows 'is,' 'are,' &c.

186. Virtus colenda est.  
*Virtue to-be-cultivated is.*  
 [Virtue is to be cultivated.]

☞ The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the

*dative* with the *part. in dus*; with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

## 187. VOCABULARY 35.

|                        |   |                 |
|------------------------|---|-----------------|
| By accident,           | cāsu; <i>abl.</i> of casus  | (casual.)       |
| Some,                  | nonnulli. æ, a, (non, <i>not</i> ; nullus, <i>none</i> .)   |                 |
| To sharpen,            | acuēre, acu, acūt   | (acute.)        |
| Unprofitable,          | inutilis, (in, <i>not</i> ; utilis, <i>useful</i> .)  |                 |
| A game,                | lūsus, G. ūs.   |                 |
| Inclined,              | propensus   | (propensity.)   |
| To understand,         | intelligēre, intellex, intellect  | (intelligence.) |
| To do; act,            | āgēre, ēg, act.   |                 |
| Born,                  | nātus.  |                 |
| To undertake,          | { sus-cīpēre, <sup>x</sup> suscep, suscept, (sub, <i>un-</i><br>{ <i>der</i> ; capēre, <i>take</i> .) |                 |
| To impel,              | impellēre, impūl, impuls  | (impulse.)      |
|                        | Not only — but also.  |                 |
|                        | Non solum — verum etiam.  |                 |
| To spend, (time, &c.,) | { impendēre, impend, impens, (followed<br>{ by <i>dat.</i> of participle <i>in dus</i> .)             |                 |

188. *Ne Balbus quidem.*  
Not *Balbus* even, (not even *Balbus*.)

*Ne patrem quidem amat.*  
Not *his father* even *does he love!*

Obs. 'Not' with 'even,' (*quidem*.) in the sentence, must be translated by *nē*; and *quidem* must follow the word to which the *even* belongs; the *nē* being put before that word.

## Exercise 39.

189. Every opportunity of practising virtue<sup>14</sup> is to be seized.<sup>x</sup> Even *Caius* did not seize every opportunity of practising virtue. The gate is to be shut in the evening.<sup>12)</sup> *Balbus* having flown<sup>35)</sup> to the country<sup>37)</sup> from the town, bought an estate for an immense sum-of-money. The boys are fonder of playing than of learning. How much time<sup>4</sup> do they spend in reading books?<sup>14</sup> Let him buy the estate for a large sum-of-money.

[Obs. After *ad*, the *gerund* or *part. in dus* may be rendered by the *infinitive*.]

Nemo est casu bonus: discenda est virtus. Sunt nonnulli *acuendis* puerōrum *ingeniis* non inutiles *lusus*. Non solum ad discendum propensi sunt, verum etiam ad docendum. Homo ad intelligendum et agendum natus

<sup>x</sup> Some verbs of the *third* have the terminations of the *fourth*, (in the parts hitherto given,) except in the *imperfect subjunctive*, the *infinitive*, and the *imperative*. Thus *arripere* has *arripiebat*, *arripiet*, *arripiat*, *arripiens*, *arripiendus*.

est. Multa nos ad suscipiendum discendi labōrem impellunt. Multa impellunt Caium, *ut* discendi labōrem suscipiat.<sup>x</sup> Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detexērant. Omnem dicendi\* elegantiam augēbit legendis oratoribus et poētis.

### Lesson 40.

#### *Verbs followed by the dative.*

190. Some verbs are followed by the *dative*, where we use no preposition; and should therefore be led by the English to put an *accusative*.

191. A *dative* put—remember pray—  
 After *envy, spare, obey,*  
*Persuade, believe, command;* to these  
 Add *pardon, succor, and displeas,*  
 With *vacāre* ‘to have leisure,’  
 And *placēre* ‘to give pleasure :’  
 With *nubēre*, (of the *female* said,)  
 The English of it is ‘to *wed* :’  
*Servīre* add, and add *studēre,*  
*Heal, favor, hurt, resist, and indulgēre.*†

#### 192. VOCABULARY 36.

|                    |  |                      |
|--------------------|--|----------------------|
| Good for ; useful, | utīlis   | ( <i>utility.</i> )  |
| Fit for,           | idōneus ; governs <i>dative</i> .                    |                      |
| To envy,           | { invidēre, invīd, invīs, (in, <i>into</i> ; vidēre, |                      |
|                    | { to see.)   |                      |
| To spare,          | parcēre, pēperc.                                     |                      |
| To obey,           | pārēre.  |                      |
| To believe,        | crēdēre, credīd, credīt                              | ( <i>credible.</i> ) |
| To pardon,         | { ignoscēre, ignōv, (in, <i>not</i> ; noscēre,       |                      |
|                    | { to know.)  |                      |
| To succor,         | { succurrēre, <sup>y</sup> succurr, succurs, (sub,   |                      |
|                    | { <i>under</i> ; currēre, to run.)                   |                      |
|                    | { subvēnīre, <sup>y</sup> subvēn, subvent, (sub,     |                      |
|                    | { <i>under</i> ; venīre, to come.)                   |                      |

<sup>x</sup> See note p. 66.

\* *In* speaking.

† This mode of arranging the rules by rhymes, for the purpose of aiding the memory, though very common in England, is quite novel in this country. Such teachers as do not approve of this method, (among whom the editor confesses himself to be,) can easily put them in the usual form as contained in the Grammar. At the suggestion of those whose judgment is entitled to great weight, they have been left just as Mr. Arnold has given them in the English edition.—AM. ED.

<sup>y</sup> Of these, *succurrēre*, ‘to run to support,’ is stronger than *subvēnīre*, ‘to come to support.’

|                                  |  |             |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------|
| To please,                       | placēre.   |             |
| To displease,                    | displīcēre.  |             |
| To have leisure for,             | vācāre.  |             |
| To marry, (properly, 'to veil,') | nubēre, nups, nupt   | (nuptials.) |
| To command,                      | impērare.  |             |
| To persuade.                     | { persuādēre, persuās, (per, thoroughly ;<br>suadēre, advise.) |             |

### Exercise 40.

193. How do you translate *not only—but also* ? (187.)

194. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. Do not envy the good. It is pleasant to succor the miserable. Atticus pleased me. Nobody will believe the wicked. Death spares nobody. They had spared the gate of the city. Portia will marry Caius. Drusilla married Caius *in the autumn*. He spares himself in the winter. He does not spare even himself. He spares *not only* himself, *but also* his slave. You will never have persuaded me. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

195. OBS. *Est, sunt*, may be rendered 'must,' 'ought,' or 'should,' when they have a participle in *dus* with them ; the part. in *dus* being translated by the *infn. passive*.

Cæsar legendo libro vacābit. Christiāni est patriæ suæ legibus parēre. Ignosce mihi. Nemo tibi credet. Imprōbus patriæ legibus non parēbit. Num legibus parēbunt imprōbi, violātâ fide? Discant Christiāni animis suis imperāre. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

### Lesson 41.

196. The most common terminations of the persons in the active voice are :—

| <i>Sing.</i> |    |    | <i>Plur.</i> |      |     |
|--------------|----|----|--------------|------|-----|
| 1.           | 2. | 3. | 1.           | 2.   | 3.  |
| m,           | s, | t. | mus,         | tis, | nt. |

197. By changing *t* into these terminations, we may



get all the persons of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *indicative*, and of *all the subjunctive*.<sup>z</sup>

198. But observe the vowel before *mus, tis*, is long in these tenses, except in the *perf. subjunctive*, in which it is *common*.<sup>a</sup>

### 199. VOCABULARY 37.

[Verbs governing the *dative* continued.]

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| To be the slave of,              | servīre, servī, (or servīv, servīv.) servīt. |
| To devote one's self to; aim at, | stūdēre.                                     |
| To hurt, injure,                 | nōcēre.                                      |
| To resist,                       | resistēre, restīt.                           |
| To favor,                        | fāvēre, fāv, faut.                           |
| To indulge; humor,               | indulgēre, indulc.                           |

*Exercise 41.* [See question 28, of "Questions."]

200. I would have favored Caius. You would have resisted anger. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. We would have indulged the desire. I was hurting myself. You were hurting me. You were flaying the sheep, not shearing (them.) Come to *shut* the gates of the city. Was he come, to *shut* the gates of the city? You had hurt Caius. You had been-the-slave-of passion. Do not be-the-slave-of passion. You were come to *surround* the girl's head with a crown. He had displeased Caius. You were sparing the enemies.

[What is the *imperative* of *vēnīre*? What tense is used as an *imperative*? (The subj. present.)]

Violābas legem. Barbāram consuetudīnem immo-landōrum homīnum retinuissetis. Iræ *multos annos* serviēras. Ne violētis fidem. Portas urbis ne claudātis. Vēni, ut mihi succurras. Regendis anīmi cupiditatibus studeāmus. Homo magna habet adju-menta ad obtinendam sapientiam. Tondendæ sunt oves, non deglubendæ. Nonnē claudendæ sunt urbis portæ? Exercenda est virtus.

<sup>z</sup> Refer to the table in the Appendix, § 23.

<sup>a</sup> That is, *long* or *short*. The old grammarians made it short in the *perf.*, *long* in the *fut. perfect*.



## Lesson 42.

201. 'Is,' properly 'that,' is used for *he, she, it*, plur. *they*,<sup>b</sup> when they do not mean the *same person or thing* that the nominative case means.

202. 'Is' has neuter *id*.  
The other cases are formed as if from 'eus, ea, eum,' making the gen. *eius*, written *ējus*, and dat. *ei*.  
But in the plural, the *nom. masc.* and the *dative* are generally *ii*, and *iis*, instead of *eis*.<sup>c</sup>

## 203. VOCABULARY 38.

|             |                               |                    |
|-------------|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| Long,       | diu. Longer, <i>diutius</i> . |                    |
| To sin,     | peccāre.                      |                    |
| To recall,  | revocāre.                     |                    |
| King,       | rex, rēgis.                   |                    |
| Literature, | lītēræ, (plur.)               |                    |
| So,         | tam.                          |                    |
| So great,   | tantus.                       |                    |
| Multitude,  | multitūd-o, G. īnis.          |                    |
| To count,   | nūmērāre.                     |                    |
| Star,       | stella,                       | (con-stella-tion.) |

204. Si diutius vixisset, nemīnem habuisset parem.  
*If longer he had lived, nobody he would have had equal.*  
(*If he had lived longer, he would have had no equal.*)

205. OBS. ¶ After 'if' the *pluperf. indicative* must be translated by the *pluperfect subjunctive*.

## Exercise 42.

206. If they had lived longer, they would have done that. If Caius had lived longer, he would have given *me*<sup>22</sup> an estate. If they had obeyed you, they would be

<sup>b</sup> *Is*, 'that person' = *he*.  
*Ea*, 'that female' = *she*.  
*Id*, 'that thing' = *it*, &c.

<sup>c</sup> Hence the cases are,  
*Is*, *eā*, *id*: *G.* *ējus*: *D.* *ei*: *Acc.* *eum*, *eam*, *id*: *Abl.* *eo*, *eā*, *eo*.  
*Plur.* *ii*, *eæ*, *eā*: *G.* *eōrum*, *eārum*, *eōrum*: *D.* and *Abl.* *iis*, (or *eis*): *Acc.* *eos*, *eas*, *eā*. See Appendix, § 25.

Obs. When *his, her, its; theirs*, are to be translated by 'is,' they are translated by the genitive.

When *his, her, its; theirs*, are translated by *suus*, *suus* must agree with its substantive.

*Ejus libri*, his books; *eōrum libri*, their books; *sui libri*, his or their books.

alive.<sup>d</sup> So-great is the multitude of the stars, *that*<sup>31)</sup> you cannot count them. I would have pardoned you, if you had done that. They were aiming *at recalling the kings*.<sup>42)</sup>

⚡ [When the pluperf. subjunctive has *si*, it must be translated by 'had,' not by 'would have.']

Peccavissent, si id fecissent. Pareat animus, non impēret.<sup>e</sup> Nonnē Caius scribendæ epistolæ vācavit? Patriam auro, si potuisses, vendidisses. Nonnē mores puerōrum se *inter ludendum* detēgunt? Malus pastor deglupsisset oves, non totondisset. Si oratōres et poētas legisset, auxisset elegantiam dicendi.

### Lesson 43.

207. *Sing.* Mihī scribendum est, *I must or should write.*  
 Tibi scribendum est, *you must or should write.*  
 Illi scribendum est, *he must or should write.*  
*Plur.* Nobis scribendum est, *we must or should write.*  
 Vobis scribendum est, *you must or should write.*  
 Illis scribendum est, *they must or should write.*

208. (*Eng.*) I must (or should) write.  
 (*Lat.*) It is *to-be-written* by me.

209. ☞ After the part. in *dus*, the person *by whom* is put in the *dative*.

(a) If *we* or *you* means 'everybody,' or 'people in general,' the pronoun is left out.

(b) Hence '*edendum est*' is  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{'we should eat,}' \\ \text{or 'you should eat.'} \end{array} \right.$

(c) The dative is also left out, whenever the persons meant are not likely *to be mistaken*.

### Exercise 43.

210. Caius<sup>g</sup> must not sleep. (We) must remain at Rome the whole winter.<sup>12)</sup> We must live well. We

<sup>d</sup> Translate as if it were '*they would live.*'

<sup>e</sup> The *auxiliary verb* is omitted with the second of *two verbs*. Not, '*let him come, and let him take it;*' but, '*let him come and take it.*'

<sup>f</sup> Explanation. The real meaning of '*scribendum est mihi*' is, '*it is to-be-written by me.*'

<sup>g</sup> In doing the exercise, remember,

(1.) That the *English nominative* is to be put in the *dative*, if a *particular person* (or *persons*) is meant; but *left untranslated*, if what is said holds good of *people in general*.

(2.) The *participle* in *dus* is to be formed from the verb, and written down in the *neuter gender* with *est*.

must dwell *in the country*. We must remain *at home*. We must fly from the city (into) the country.<sup>37)</sup> The wicked *think little of*<sup>3)</sup> virtue. Does not the avaricious man *value money very highly*?<sup>2)</sup> Will a Christian fear death? [No.]

Evolandum est ex urbe. Manendum est Romæ. Totam hiemem manendum est Carthagine. Quiescendum est, ut vitam conservēmus. Ambulandum est per urbem. Laborandum est, ut discas. Discrēpat a ludendo laborare. Nonne laborandum est, ut discamus? Num semper ludendum est? Epistōla suâ manu scribenda est. Crabrōnes non sunt irritandi. Crabrōnem ne irrītes. Irritasne crabrōnem?

### Lesson 44.

211. The third persons of the *pres.* and *imperf. subj.* of *esse* (*to be*) are *sit*, *esset*, from which the other persons may be formed by 196.

|            |        |        |        |  |          |          |         |
|------------|--------|--------|--------|--|----------|----------|---------|
| 212. Pres. | sim,   | sis,   | sit,   |  | sImus,   | sItis,   | sint.   |
| Imperf.    | essem, | esses, | esset, |  | essēmus, | essētis, | essent. |

213. From these forms those of *posse* may be got, as before explained: 149.

Present subj. possit. [(that) he *may be able*.]

Imperf. subj. posset. [(that) he *might be able*.]

### 214. VOCABULARY 39.

|                       |   |  |                           |
|-----------------------|---|--|---------------------------|
| Self,                 | } | ipse, <sup>h</sup> ipsa, ipsum,<br>G. ipsius, D. ipsi, &c. |                           |
| I myself,             |   |  |                           |
| You yourself,         |   |  |                           |
| Itself, &c.           |   |  |                           |
| To fight,             |   | pugnāre  | ( <i>pugnacious.</i> )    |
| Rightly; well,        |   | rectē; <i>adv.</i> from <i>rectus</i> , right.             |                           |
| To hold one's tongue, |   | tacēre   | ( <i>tacit consent.</i> ) |
| Even,                 | } | etiam; placed <i>before</i> the word<br>it belongs to.     |                           |
| Bad,                  |   |  |                           |
| Crop,                 |   | sēgēs, segēt-is, f.  |                           |
| To sow,               |   | sērere, sēv, sāt.  |                           |

<sup>h</sup> 'Ipse' is declined throughout as if it were *ipsus*, making Gen. *īus*. *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum*. G. *ipsius*. D. *ipsi*. Acc. *ipsum, ipsam, ipsum*, &c. It must be construed as 'I myself,' when the verb is of the *first person*; 'you yourself,' when the verb is of the *second person*.

But ☞ it is better sometimes to place the 'myself,' 'yourself,' after the verb and its *accusative*, &c. 'I was breaking the law *myself*.'

## Exercise 44.

215. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. Is it *the business*<sup>7</sup> of a shepherd to scatter seeds? [No.] The boy must rest, that he may-be-able to play. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. Boys must hold-their-tongues. The girls must walk through the city. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price.

Impröbis<sup>i</sup> metuendum est. Discendum est,<sup>k</sup> ut possis docere. Edendum est, ut possimus vivere. Tacendum est. Etiam post malam segem serendum est. Nonne eam legem ipse violabas? Nonne fundum ingenti pecuniâ emeras? Nonne Christianorum est miseris succurrere? Scriptâ epistolâ, legit.

## Lesson 45.

216. If the verb governs *the dative*, (191,) 'we' or 'you' should be untranslated :<sup>1</sup>

Crëdendum est Caio.  
We should believe Caius. (Not, 'Caius should believe.')

## 217. VOCABULARY 40.

|                        |                                   |                |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| Sea-water; salt water, | aqua marîna.                      |                |
| To invent,             | in-venire, <sup>m</sup> ven, vent | (invention.)   |
| Lust,                  | lubîd-o, G. înis. Gender?         |                |
| Old man,               | sênex, G. sênîs, G. plur. senum   | (senility.)    |
| Ignorant,              | ignârus. (See 178, t.)            |                |
| To abstain (from,)     | abstinere                         | (abstinence.)* |

<sup>i</sup> (a) To read off such sentences at sight, take the *dative* as the nominative to 'should' or 'must;' and add the verb unaltered:

Omnibus, all men must, moriendum est, die.

(b) If no *dative* is expressed, put 'we' or 'you' for the nominative before 'must.'

<sup>k</sup> If the next verb is of the *second person*, put *you* for the nom. of *must*.

<sup>1</sup> If it be necessary to express the *agent*, (the person *who is to do the action*.) it must be either expressed by the preposition *a*, (or *ab*.) or the form of the expression must be altered. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* expressed the agent.

<sup>m</sup> From in, upon; venire, to come.

\* Governs the *abl.* of the thing *from which*.



## Exercise 45.

218. We should spare the conquered. We should injure nobody. We should resist anger. Should we not resist anger? We should envy nobody. We should obey the laws of our country. We should succor the miserable. We must not spare even Balbus. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. We must not believe even Cæsar himself.\* We must injure neither the good nor the bad. Having written his letter, (169, *b*,) he will go a-hunting. He has flown into the country<sup>37)</sup> to go<sup>28)</sup> a-hunting. We must go to Rome. We must fly out of the country into the city.

Aqua marīna inutilis est bibendo. Nonne resistendum est<sup>n</sup> iræ? Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. Artem scribendi Phœnicēs<sup>o</sup> invēnērunt. Semper pugnandum est contra cupiditātes et lubīdīnem. Etiam senībus discendum est. Inutiles sunt libri ignāro legendi. Num puēri regendæ civitatīs perītī esse possunt? Abstinentum est inhonestis voluptatibus. Nonne resistendum est animo? Num credendum est imprōbis?

## Lesson† 46.

219. If the Latin verb is a *transitive verb* governing the accusative, (8,) we must not *govern* this accusative

\* Ne Cæsāri quidem ipsi, which must *begin* the sentence.

<sup>n</sup> When there is only *one dative* to a verb which *governs the dative*, supply 'we' as the nominative to 'must,' 'should,' and put the dative (of course, without a preposition) after the verb.

<sup>o</sup> The Phœnicians.

† The *present* and *fut. perfect* have their first pers. sing. in *o*.

The *fut.* has its *first sing.* in *o* in the *first two* conjugations:

|                        |       |       |                |                |        |
|------------------------|-------|-------|----------------|----------------|--------|
| Present, o,            | ās,   | āt,   | āmus,          | ātis,          | ant.   |
| eo,                    | ēs,   | ēt,   | ēmus,          | ētis,          | ent.   |
| o,                     | īs,   | īt,   | īmus,          | ītis,          | unt.   |
| io,                    | īs,   | īt,   | īmus,          | ītis,          | iunt.  |
| Future, ābo,           | ābis, | ābit, | ābīmus,        | ābītis,        | ābunt. |
| ēbo,                   | ēbis, | ēbit, | ēbīmus,        | ēbītis,        | ēbunt. |
| am,                    | ēs,   | ēt,   | ēmus,          | ētis,          | ent.   |
| iam,                   | iēs,  | iēt,  | iēmus,         | iētis,         | ient.  |
| Future Perf. (r.) ēro, | ēris, | ērit, | { ērīmus, or } | { ērītis, or } | ērint  |



by the neuter participle ; but the *acc.* must be made the *nominative*, and the participle in *dus* put in agreement with it :

*We must cultivate virtue* { *Colenda est virtus.*  
 { *Not, colendum est virtutem.*

220. To determine whether you should put the *part.* in *dus* in the neut. governing the noun, or in agreement with the nominative of that noun, ask yourself two questions :

(1.) Can I turn the sentence into the form '*Virtue is to-be-loved?*'<sup>p</sup>

(2.) If you *can*, ask yourself whether the verb is one of those which govern the dative, (191.)

(If the verb governs the *dat.*, the *dative* must be retained, and the *participle* in *dus* put in the *neuter*. The *dative*, that is, *must not* become the *nominative* to the verb.)<sup>q</sup>

221. ☞ 'Of,' after 'rob,' 'defraud,' 'deprive,'  
 Is but a sign of *ablative*.<sup>r</sup>

## 222. VOCABULARY 41.

|   |   |                        |
|---|---|------------------------|
| To rob,   | spoliāre  | ( <i>spoliation.</i> ) |
| To defraud,   | fraudāre.   |                        |
| To deprive,   | privāre.  |                        |
| To deceive,   | decipere, <sup>s</sup> decēp, decept  | ( <i>deception.</i> )  |
| To remove, (for the<br>purpose of settling<br>elsewhere,) | migrāre   | ( <i>emigrant.</i> )   |
| Because,  | quia.   |                        |
| Eye,  | ocūlus, i   | ( <i>oculist.</i> )    |
| Apollo,   | { Apoll-o, īnis, (son of Jupīter and Latōna ;<br>the heathen god of archery, prophecy,<br>and music.) |                        |
| Hunger,   | fām-es, G. is   | ( <i>famished.</i> )   |
| Temple,   | templum.  |                        |
| Grain,  | grānum.   |                        |
| One,  | ūnus, G. unūus, &c.   | ( <i>unit.</i> )       |
| Poor,   | paupēr, G. paupēris   | ( <i>pauper.</i> )     |
| Judge,  | jūdex, jūdicis  | ( <i>judicial.</i> )   |
| Before, <i>preposition</i> ,                              | ante, ( <i>governing acc.</i> )   |                        |
| Before, <i>conjunction</i> ,*                             | antēquam, priusquam.  |                        |
| Before, <i>adverb</i> ,                                   | antea.  |                        |

<sup>p</sup> If you answer '*No*' to this question, you need not ask yourself the second, except for the purpose of determining *what case* is to be used after the verb.

<sup>q</sup> Thus : '*We must spare our enemies.*'

(1.) Can we say, '*our enemies are to-be-spared?*' *Ans.* Yes.

(2.) Does '*to spare*' govern the dative in Latin? *Ans.* Yes.

We must therefore *not* say '*inimīci parcendī sunt,*' but (leaving to *parcere* the dative it requires) say, '*parcendum est inimīcis.*'

<sup>r</sup> That is, '*of*' is not to be translated, but to serve as a *sign* or *hint* that the following noun is to be in the *ablative*.

<sup>s</sup> From *de*, from; *capere*, take : this verb is one of those which prefix an *i* to the termination, (that is, take the terminations of the fourth,) except in the *present infinitive*, and the two tenses which we have shown how to get from the *present infinitive*; that is, the *imperf. subjunctive*, and the *imperative*. See 187, x. In the *pres. indic.* they follow the *fourth*, but have *i* short, (*io, is, it, imus, itis, iunt.*) See Appendix, § 24.

\* Or *conjunctive adverb*; standing *first* in its sentence, and connecting it with another sentence.

Obs. In *antēquam*, *priusquam*, the words are often separated; *ante—quam*, *prius—quam*.

### Exercise 46.

[The *pres. subj.* is used as an *imperative*.]

223. We should favor the good. We should believe Caius, because he has never deceived us. We must surround the boy's head with a crown. We must shut the gate of the city *in the evening*. Do not defraud (*plur.*) me of my praise. Do not deprive me of my eyes. Having written his letter, (169, *a*,) he *went to bed*. Do not the wicked deprive virtue herself of her praise? You are depriving (*pl.*) me of my praise. Will you break the laws of your country? Virtue must be cultivated, that you may live well and happily. (*Translate as if it were*, may-be-able to live.)

[When 'ante' or 'prius' is in one sentence, and the next begins with 'quam,' take no notice of the word till you get to *quam*, and translate *ante-quam*, *prius-quam*, by 'before.']

Non est *ante* edendum, *quam* fames impērat. Apollinis templum omni argento spoliāvit. Ne grano quidem uno paupēres fraudētis. Ne me luce privētis. Ocūlisnē me, iudices, privabitis? Ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt paupēres. Athēnis habitandum est, ut discāmus recte vivēre. Romam migrandum est, ut discātis civitātem regere. Etiam post malam segētem serēmus. Leges patriæ violātis. Violātis patriæ legibus, (169,) meā me laude spoliātis. Num meā me laude spoliabitis? Dicendi elegancia legendis oratoribus et poētis augenda est.

---

### Lesson 47.

#### 224. Infinitive Mood.

|                 |  | 1.                                       | 2.  | 3.  | 4.  |            |
|-----------------|--|--|-----|-----|-----|------------|
| Present, } (R.) |  | ārē                                      | ērē | ērē | īrē | (Active)   |
| Imperf. } (R.)  |  | ārī                                      | ērī | ī   | īrī | (Passive)  |
| Perfect, } (r.) |  | issē                                     | .   | .   | .   | (Active)   |
| Pluperf. }      |  | past partic. with <i>esse</i> , 'to be,' |     |     |     | (Passive.) |

- (a) The *future infinitive active* is made up, as in English, of 'to be,' with the *future participle active*.

In the *passive*, the *future infinitive* is made up of the *supine* with *iri*.

- (b) Thus from *amāre* the infinitives are *am-āre*, *am-av-isse*; *amatūrum esse*, *amātum esse*, and *amātum iri*.

225. ¶ The infinitives made up of *two words* are called *compound infinitives*.

¶ The *participles* of the *compound infinitives*\* must *agree* with their *substantives*; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*.

- (a) Videt te esse beātum  
He sees that you are happy.
- (b) Sperat se victūrum esse.  
He hopes that he shall live.

226. *Two English sentences*, joined by the conjunction '*that*,' are often made *one Latin sentence*, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the *nominative* into the *accusative*, and the verb into the *infinitive*.

227. To turn such a sentence into Latin,

- (1.) take no notice of '*that* ;'
- (2.) translate the English *nominative* by the Latin *accusative* ;
- (3.) translate the English verb by the *infinitive* of the *same tense*.

### Exercise 47.

228. He sees, that you are happy. If he had come, he would have seen that you are happy. He says, that you have surrounded the girl's head with a garland. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly*.<sup>2</sup> It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly*. It is certain, that the father will avenge the death of his son. It is certain, that Caius has removed *to Athens*,

---

\* They are set down in the *acc. masc.*

that he may learn to live well. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death*.

Certum est, in summis Alpibus tantum esse frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat. Certum est, stellārum tantam esse multitudinē, ut numerāri non possint. Certum est, Balbum patriam auro vendidisse. Certum est, avem in summā quercu nidum constructūram esse. Certum est, Cæsārem belli gerendi peritum fuisse. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superavērit.

### Lesson 48.

*Forms of the passive.* (Tenses from the root of the present.)

229. The third persons of the passive are formed from the third persons of the active by adding *ur*.<sup>1</sup>

(a) But the vowel before the *t* is *long*, except from *it*, (of the *third*,) *ābit*, and *ēbit*.

230. ☞ The *Imperative pass.* is like the *infinitive active*.

| Thus,            | Indicative, |       |       |  | Passive. |         |         |          |
|------------------|-------------|-------|-------|--|----------|---------|---------|----------|
|                  | 1.          | 2.    | 3.    | 4.                                     | 1.       | 2.      | 3.      | 4.       |
| Present,         | at,         | et,   | it,   | it,                                    | ātur,    | ētur,   | itur,   | itur.    |
| Imperfect,       | ābat,       | ēbat, | ēbat, | iēbat,                                 | ābātur,  | ēbātur, | ēbātur, | iēbātur. |
| Future,          | ābit,       | ēbit, | et,   | iet,                                   | ābitur,  | ēbitur, | etur,   | iētur.   |
| <i>Subjunct.</i> |             |       |       |  |          |         |         |          |
| Present,         | et,         | eat,  | at,   | iat,                                   | ētur,    | eātur,  | atur,   | iatur.   |
| Imperfect,       | āret,       | ēret, | ēret, | iret,                                  | ārētur,  | ērētur, | ērētur, | irētur.  |
|                  |             |       |       | Infinitive,                            | ari,     | eri,    | i,      | iri.     |
|                  |             |       |       | Imperative, (like <i>Infjn. act.</i> ) | āre,     | ēre,    | ere,    | ire.     |

The *third persons plural* are formed from the corresponding *third persons plural* of the *active*, by adding '*ur*,' without any further change.

☞ The third sing. of the *imperfect subjunct.* may also be got by adding *tur* to the *infjn. act.* with its final *e* lengthened.

|             | 1.       | 2.       | 3.       | 4.       |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| Inf. pres., | āre,     | ērē,     | ērē,     | irē.     |
| Imp. Subj., | ārē-tur, | ērē-tur, | ērē-tur, | irē-tur. |



## 231. VOCABULARY 42.

|                           |                                     |                      |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| To beg for,               | } pětěre, <sup>u</sup> petiv, petit | (petition.)          |
| To make for, <sup>u</sup> |                                     |                      |
| To pray; pray for,        | ōrāre.                              |                      |
| Ambassador,               | } legātus                           | (the Pope's legate.) |
| Lieutenant,*              |                                     |                      |
| Ship,                     | nāv-is, is                          | (navy.)              |
| To consult,               | consülēre, consülü, consult.        |                      |

## 232. Abit visūrus.

*He goes away to see.*

(Eng.) He goes to see.  
 (Lat. sometimes) He goes about-to-see,<sup>v</sup> (part. in rus.)

*Exercise 48.*

The English *infinitive* expressing the *purpose*, may often be translated by the *future participle*.

233. Ambassadors are sent to beg for peace.<sup>18, b)</sup> Ambassadors will be sent, to pray for peace.<sup>18, b)</sup> He goes away to consult<sup>18, c)</sup> Apollo. The law will be broken. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men?) It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked both at Rome and at Athens. Let your word be kept. We must remove to Rome, that our faith may be kept. Money must not be valued at a great price. Let the state be ruled by the wise. The Persians<sup>w</sup> make-for their ships.

[Obs. The participle in *rus* may often be translated by the *English infinitive*.]

Cæsar Romam rediit, copias *quam maximas*<sup>9</sup> comparātūrus. Patrem suum consultūrus, abit. Mittantur legāti, pacem petītum. Virtus ab omnibus colātur.<sup>30)</sup> Omnis occasio exercendæ virtūtis arripiātur. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendæ virtūtis a Christiāno arripi. Paupēres ne grano quidem uno fraudulentur. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratoribus et poetis. Abiit dormiturus.

<sup>u</sup> *Pětěre* expresses the *moving towards* or *aiming at* some object; whether the *motion* is actual motion towards a *place*, or a *movement* of the mind towards that for which it *sues*.

\* By '*lieutenant*' is meant the *second in command*: a lieutenant-general.

<sup>v</sup> Or, '*intending to see*,' which is often the meaning of this participle.

<sup>w</sup> Persæ, *G.* Persārum.



## Lesson 49.

## 234. Relative Pronoun. (Qui, who, which, that.)

| Singular. |       |        |      |       |      | Plural. |         |         |      |       |
|-----------|-------|--------|------|-------|------|---------|---------|---------|------|-------|
|           | N.    | G.     | D.   | Acc.  | Abl. | N.      | G.      | D.      | Abl. | Acc.  |
| Mas.      | Qui,  | cujus, | cui, | quem, | quo, | qui,    | quōrum, | quibūs, |      | quos. |
| Fem.      | Quæ,  |        |      | quam, | quâ, | quæ,    | quārum, |         |      | quas. |
| Neut.     | Quod, |        |      | quod, | quo, | quæ,    | quōrum, |         |      | quæ.  |

235. ¶ The *substantive* (or *pronoun*) that the relative *stands for*, is to be looked for in the sentence before.

(a) The relative must be put in the same *gender*, *number*, and *person*, as its *antecedent*.<sup>x</sup>

236. ¶ The *case* of the relative has *nothing to do* with the other sentence.

¶ The relative must be *governed*, as to *case*, by the verb (or some other *governing* word) of *its own sentence*.<sup>y</sup>

¶ *Is, ea, id*, is the regular antecedent pronoun to *qui*.

237. ¶ The verbs which govern the *dative* in the active, can only be used *impersonally*<sup>z</sup> in the *passive*.

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Mihi creditur, <sup>a</sup> | <i>I am believed.</i>     |
| Tibi creditur,              | <i>Thou art believed.</i> |
| Illi creditur,              | <i>He is believed.</i>    |
| Nobis creditur,             | <i>We are believed.</i>   |
| Vobis creditur,             | <i>You are believed.</i>  |
| Illis creditur,             | <i>They are believed.</i> |

## 238. VOCABULARY 43.

|         |                                  |         |                  |
|---------|----------------------------------|---------|------------------|
| No,     | nullus, G. nullius               |         | (null and void.) |
| Animal, | animā, <sup>b</sup> G. animālis. | Gender? |                  |
| Heart,  | cor, G. cordis, n.               |         | (cordial.)       |

<sup>x</sup> The *ante-cedent* (that is, *going-before* noun) is the substantive or pronoun *for which* the relative stands.

<sup>y</sup> The use of the relative is, to prevent the same substantive from being expressed in each clause.

The apple which you gave me. (The apple, *which* apple you gave me.) The mountain on *whose* top, &c. (The mountain, on the top of *which* mountain.) The man *who* did this, &c. (The man, *which* man did this.)

<sup>z</sup> To be used *impersonally*, is to be used only in the *third person* singular, and without a nominative case.

<sup>a</sup> Hence,

(Eng.) *I am pardoned, favored, persuaded, &c.*

(Lat.) *It is pardoned, favored, persuaded to me.*

<sup>b</sup> Neuters, in *e, al, ar*, make their ablatives in *i*; nom. plur. *ia*; gen. *ium*.

Tree,  
Fruit,  
To behold,

arbor, G. arbōris, f.  
fructus, G. ūs  
adspicere, adspex, adspect

(arbor.)  
(fructify.)  
(aspect.)

### Exercise\* 49.

239. The good are envied. Have you not spared the conquered? He gave me the crown, with which he had surrounded the girl's head. Let anger be resisted, which has been prejudicial to many states. Caius, who sold his country for gold, should be condemned to death. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treachery. Caius, whose mother lives<sup>e</sup> in the country, has himself removed to Rome. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered.

[When a *pass.* verb is one that governs the *dative*, take this *dat.* as if it were the *nom.* to the verb.]

Nullum animal, quod sanguinem habet, sine corde esse potest. Arbōres serit agricōla, quārum fructus ipse adspiciet nunquam. Pauperibus, qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. Parcātur victis. Pepercisti victis. Caio ignoscite. Violavistis fidem. Iræ resistitur. Nihil facile persuadētur invitis.

### Lesson 50.

240. 'He who,' 'those who,' are generally translated by 'qui' only, instead of by 'is qui,' 'ii qui.'

241. A deponent verb is a verb that has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

242. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles.

\* The *second person* plural of the imperative may be got by adding *te* to the second singular; but in the third, *ē* must be changed into *ī* before this addition is made.

|      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1.   | 2.   | 3.   | 4.   |
| āte, | ēte, | īte, | īte. |

The terminations of the perfect are for all the conjugations:

|    |       |     |  |       |        |        |
|----|-------|-----|--|-------|--------|--------|
| i, | isti, | it. |  | īmus, | istis, | ērunt. |
|----|-------|-----|--|-------|--------|--------|

<sup>e</sup> Dwells, habitat.

☞ The past participle of a deponent verb is the participles of the *perfect active*, which other verbs have not got.

[(1.) Loquens, *speaking*; (2.) locūtus, *having spoken*; (3.) locūturus, *about to speak*; (4.) loquendus, *to be spoken*.]

## 243. VOCABULARY 44.

|                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| To recollect,       | remīnisci.                               |
| To remember,        | recordāri.                               |
| To enjoy,           | frui.                                    |
| To use,             | ūti, ūsus.                               |
| To discharge,       | fungi, functus.                          |
| To get possession,  | potīri, potītus, ( <i>but pōtītur.</i> ) |
| To pity,            | miserēri.                                |
| To forget,          | oblīvisci, oblītus.                      |
| A benefit,          | beneficium.                              |
| An injury,          | injūria.                                 |
| Duty,               | officium.                                |
| Arms,               | arma, <i>G. ōrum.</i>                    |
| Some time or other, | aliquando.                               |
| Eternal,            | sempiternus.                             |
| Crime,              | flagitium                                |

(*flagitious.*)

244. After to 'pity,' 'remember,' 'forget,'  
A genitive case is properly set.<sup>d</sup>

245. With 'use,' 'discharge,' 'possession get,' and also with 'enjoy,'  
An ablative correctly stands: remember this, my boy.

*Exercise 50.*

246. *He* who sins *unwillingly*, is free from blame. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. Let us use our arms and horses. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? Is the life, *that* we now enjoy, eternal? Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life.

Christianōrum est miserēri paup̄rum. Homo imprōbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabitur. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. Vincāmus odium, paceque potiāmur. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. Beātus est, qui omnibus vitæ officiis fungitur. Elegantiā loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxērant.

---

<sup>d</sup> But 'remember' and 'forget' often govern the accusative.

## Lesson 51.

247. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *mas.* and *fem., ius* for the *neuter*.

[Doctus, doct-*ior*; sapiens, *G.* sapient-is, sapient-*ior*; tener, tener-*ior*;<sup>e</sup> pulcher, (pulchr,) pulchr-*ior*.<sup>e</sup>]

248. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(a) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rimus* (*a, um*) to the nominative.

(Pulcher, pulcherrimus.)

249. *Similis*, (*like*), *facilis*, (*easy*), and a few more in *lis*, make the superlative in *limus*.

(Simillimus, facillimus.)

250. The following are quite irregular:—

|  |  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Bonus, ( <i>good</i> ), melior, optimus. |  | magnus, ( <i>great</i> ), major, maximus   |
| Malus, ( <i>bad</i> ), pejor, pessimus.  |  | parvus, ( <i>little</i> ), minor, minimus. |

## 251. VOCABULARY 45.

|                     |   |                        |
|---------------------|---|------------------------|
| Air,                | aër, <i>G.</i> aëris, <i>m.</i>                           |                        |
| Light,              | lëvis   | ( <i>levity</i> .)     |
| Heavy,              | grāvis  | ( <i>gravity</i> .)    |
| It is well known, } | constat. <sup>f</sup>                                     |                        |
| It is allowed, }    |   |                        |
| It is better,       | præstat, ( <i>præ, before</i> : stat, <i>it stands</i> .) |                        |
| Sound,              | sōnus, <i>G.</i> i.                                       |                        |
| Swift,              | vël-ox, <i>G.</i> õcis                                    | ( <i>velocity</i> .)   |
| Slow,               | tardus  | ( <i>tardy</i> .)      |
| Summer,             | æst-as, <i>G.</i> âtis.                                   |                        |
| Dog,                | cānis.  |                        |
| Wolf,               | lūpus, <i>G.</i> i.                                       |                        |
| The moon,           | lūna.   |                        |
| Nearer,             | prōpior, ( <i>with dat.</i> )                             |                        |
| Excellent,          | præstan-s, <i>G.</i> tis.                                 |                        |
| Strength,           | rōbūr, <i>G.</i> robōr-is. <i>Gender?</i>                 |                        |
| Ignorance,          | ignoratio.  |                        |
| Knowledge,          | scientia.   |                        |
| To speak,           | lōqui, lōcūtus  | ( <i>e-locution</i> .) |
| Simple,             | simplex, <i>G.</i> simplīc-is.                            |                        |
| Wealth,             | ōpes, <i>G.</i> opum; <i>plur.</i>                        |                        |

<sup>e</sup> Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root; the preceding *e* being often dropped.

<sup>f</sup> Con, *together*, stat, *it stands*: 'it stands together' as a *consistent truth*.



252. Eurōpa minor est quam Asia.

*Europe less is than Asia.*

Nihil est clementiâ divinius.

*Nothing is than clemency more godlike.*

*(Nothing is more godlike than clemency.)*

253. ¶ 'Than,' after a comparative, is either translated by *quam*, or omitted, the following noun being put in the *ablative*.

(a) If '*quam*' is expressed, the following noun will, of course, be in the *same case* as that to which '*quam*' joins it:—thus, in the example above, *Asia* is the same case as *Europa*.

### Exercise 51.

254. (*Quam* expressed.) Air is lighter than water. It is well known that light is swifter than sound.

(*Quam* omitted.) In the spring and summer the days are longer than the nights. Silver is lighter than gold. Is not silver lighter than gold? Is it not well known, that sound is slower than light? Is not a dog very-like a wolf?

Aurum gravius est argento. Luna terræ propior est, quam sol. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. Virtus præstantior est robōre. Ignoratio futurōrum malōrum utilior est, quam scientia. Majus est prodesse omnibus, quam opes magnas habēre. Certum est solem majōrem esse quam terram. Sæpe facēre præstat quam loqui. Simplex cibus puēris utilissimus est.

### Lesson 52.

#### 255. VOCABULARY 46.

[Prepositions governing the accusative.]

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Ad,       | to.  |
| Adversus, | against, towards. (See <i>erga</i> .)                            |
| Ante,     | before.  |
| Apud,     | { at: before a plural name of persons, <i>amongst</i> . Apud me, |
| Circa,    | { 'with me;' that is, 'at my house.'                             |
| Circum,   | about, (of <i>time</i> and <i>place</i> .)                       |
|           | about, (of <i>place</i> only.)                                   |



|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| Cis, citra, | on this side of.  |
| Contra,     | against : over-against.   |
| Erga,       | { towards, (not of <i>motion</i> ; but after words expressing a<br>kind <i>feeling</i> , a <i>duty</i> , &c.) |
| Extra,      | { without, (in the sense of <i>not within</i> .) out of ; beyond.   |
| Inter,      | amongst, (inter se, 'to each other,' <sup>g</sup> ) between.  |
| Intra,      | within.   |

---

|                                   |  |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| To observe, ( <i>duties</i> .)    | conservāre   | ( <i>conservative</i> .) |
| To move, ( <i>transitive</i> .)   | mōvēre, mōv, mōt.  |                          |
| To move, ( <i>intransitive</i> .) | mōvēri, mōtus : properly, 'to be moved.'   |                          |
| Saturn,                           | { Sāturnus, father of Jupiter, by whom he was dethroned.   |                          |
|                                   | { He devoured his own children.  |                          |
| Jupiter,                          | { Jūpīter, <sup>h</sup> Gen. Jōvis, (and then formed regularly from<br>{ <i>Jov</i> .) the king of the heathen gods. |                          |
| The moon,                         | luna.  |                          |
| Dutiful-affection,                | piētās, <i>G. ātis</i> .   |                          |
| The Rhine,                        | Rhēnus, <i>i</i> .   |                          |

256. Maris superficies major est, quam  
*The sea's surface greater is than* (that<sup>i</sup>)  
 terræ.  
*of the earth.*

257. When the same noun would be expressed in both clauses, it is left out in that which follows *quam*, (*than*.)

(a) In English it is represented in the second clause by 'that,' 'those.' Hence,

(b)  $\mathfrak{L}$  'That,' 'those,' after 'than,' are to be untranslated.

### Exercise 52.

258. (Our) duties towards (our) parents are to be observed. Do many come to old age? We must fight against the evils of old age. *It is an allowed fact*, that the earth moves round the sun. Your benefits are greater than *those* of your brother. Is not simple food very good for boys? Let us be gentle towards the conquered. The star of Jupiter is nearer the earth than that of Saturn.

Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. Nulla habēmus arma contra mortem. Patrium habet adversus bonos viros

<sup>g</sup> After *contrarius*, *contrary*, &c.

<sup>h</sup> Jupiter and Saturn are two of the planets.

<sup>i</sup> Here 'that' stands for 'the surface.'

animum. Luna circum terram movētur. Nulla est firma amicitia inter malos. Piētas erga patriam conservanda est. Jovis stella infra Saturnum est. Gallis Rhenum habitant. Pisces extra aquam cito expirant. Intra muros habitābat. Inter se contraria\* sunt beneficium et injuria.

### Lesson 53.

259. 'May' and 'might' (when they stand in a *principal* sentence) are translated by *licet*, 'it is allowed.'

|      |   |   |
|------|---|---|
| 260. | <i>May</i> , licet, (= it is allowed.)<br><i>Might</i> , licuit, (= it was allowed.)                              |   |
| 261. | Mihi ire licet,<br>Tibi ire licet,<br>Illi ire licet,<br>Nobis ire licet,<br>Vobis ire licet,<br>Illis ire licet, | <i>I may go.</i><br><i>You may go.</i><br><i>He may go.</i><br><i>We may go.</i><br><i>You may go.</i><br><i>They may go.</i> |
| 262. | Mihi ire licuit,<br>Tibi ire licuit,<br>&c. &c.   | <i>I might have gone.</i><br><i>You might have gone.</i>  |

263. ☞ The *present* infinitive follows 'licuit,' in spite of 'have.'

|      |   |  |
|------|---|--|
| 264. | ( <i>Eng.</i> ) I may go.<br>( <i>Eng.</i> ) I might have gone. | ( <i>Lat.</i> ) it is allowed me to go.<br>( <i>Lat.</i> ) it was allowed me (then) to go. |
|------|---|--|

### 265. VOCABULARY 47.

[Prepositions governing the accusative, continued.]

|           |  |
|-----------|--|
| Juxta,    | close to; by.  |
| Ob,       | on account of, (ob oculos, <i>before</i> one's eyes.)                |
| Pēnēs,    | in the power of.   |
| Per,      | through; by means of.  |
| Pōnē,     | behind.  |
| Post,     | after.   |
| Præter,   | besides, beyond.   |
| Propter,  | near; on account of.   |
| Secundum, | along; according to.   |
| Suprā,    | above.   |
| Trans,    | across, beyond; on the other side of.                                |
| Ultrā,    | beyond.  |
| Usque,    | as far as, (properly an <i>adverb</i> , used with prep. <i>ad</i> .) |

|        |                              |
|--------|------------------------------|
| Fear,  | mētus, <i>G.</i> metūs.      |
| Shore, | lītūs, ōr-is. <i>Gender?</i> |

\* When an adjective agrees with two nouns it is in the plural; here, as they are the names of *things*, it is in the *neuter* gender.

|                |                           |              |
|----------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| A camp,        | castr-a, ōrum, plur.      |              |
| To place,      | pōnēre, pōsū, pōsīt       | (position.)  |
| Journey ; way, | īter, G. ītīnēr-is, neut. | (itinerant.) |

266. He ‘*threatens me with death,*’ should be  
 In Latin, ‘*threatens death to me.*’  
 (Mihī mortem minātur.)

### Exercise 53.

[§ When the answer ‘*yes*’ cannot possibly be expected, ‘*an*’ should be used rather than ‘*num*,’ (153.) for the *interrogative adverb*.]

267. A man may not be-the-slave of glory. A Christian may not be-the-slave of pleasure. May Christians be-the-slaves of pleasure? We must not be-the-slaves of anger. Might he not *have dwelt* at Rome? No one may break the laws of his country. The Germans dwell across the Rhine. We must remove across the Rhine, that we may learn to devote ourselves to literature.

Servi pārent propter metum ; boni propter officium. Navigatio juxta litus sæpe est periculōsa. Cæsar juxta murum castra posuit. Supra nos cælum conspicimus ; infra nos terram. Longum iter est per præcepta ; breve<sup>k</sup> et efficax per exempla. Secundum leges vivendum est. Condita Massilia est prope ostia Rhodāni amnis. Mors propter incertos casus quotidie immīnet. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitare? Janus<sup>l</sup> bis post Numæ<sup>m</sup> regnum clausus fuit. Nonne mortem tibi minabātur? Imperium populōrum est penes magistratus.

### Lesson 54.

(On the translation of ought.)

268. ‘*Ought*’ is translated by the *impersonal verb* ‘*oportet*,’ ‘*it behooves*.’

<sup>k</sup> Of two connected sentences one must borrow its *nominative case* and *verb* from the other. Thus the second will become, *breve et efficax est iter, &c.*

<sup>l</sup> *Janus* was a heathen god, represented with *two faces*, one looking each way; his temple at Rome was *shut* in time of peace.

<sup>m</sup> Numa Pompilius, the second king of Rome.

269. Me ire oportet, *I ought to go.*  
 Te ire oportet, *You ought to go.*  
 &c.  
 Me ire oportuit, *I ought to have gone.*  
 Te ire oportuit, *You ought to have gone.*  
 &c.

270. OBS. When the *infin. perfect* follows 'ought,' *ought* is to be translated by *oportuit*, and the *perfect infinitive* translated by the *present infinitive*.

271. So too after 'could,' the *perfect infinitive* (which will be without 'to') will be translated by the *present infinitive*.  
 [Facere potuit, he could have done (it.)]

272. Cärere, *want or am without,*  
 And egeo, *require*  
 Or need, do both, without a doubt,  
 An ablative desire.

(a) But egeo *sometimes*, and indigeo *often*, takes the genitive.

### 273. VOCABULARY 48.

[Prepositions governing the ablative.]

|                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| A, ab, abs, <sup>n</sup> | from ; by, (before the <i>doer</i> of the action.)  |
| Absquē, <sup>o</sup>     | without.  |
| Clam,                    | without the knowledge of.   |
| Cōram,                   | before ; in the presence of.  |
| Dē,                      | concerning ; about, ( <i>of</i> , when it means <i>about</i> .)   |
| E, ex, <sup>p</sup>      | out of ; from.  |
| Præ,                     | before ; in comparison with.  |
| Prō,                     | for.  |
| Sinē,                    | without.  |
| Tēnus,                   | { as far as, (which follows its noun, and in the <i>plural</i> may govern the genitive.)  |
| To die,                  | { mōri, mortuus, (with terminations of the <i>fourth</i> , except in <i>present</i> , [where it has them in <i>first sing.</i> and <i>third plur.</i> ] <i>infinitive</i> , <i>imperative</i> , and <i>imperf. subjunctive</i> .) |

### Exercise 54.

274. Ought we not to succor the miserable ? Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible* ? Ought not Balbus to have kept his word ? Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death ? I have received many letters from you. The bird has flown away

<sup>n</sup> A before consonants : ab before vowels, and it may stand before any of the consonants in *hujus laris*. Abs only before the consonants in *quot*.

<sup>o</sup> Absque is uncommon.

<sup>p</sup> E before consonants ; ex before vowels or consonants.



from my hands. He is gone-away *without* his father's *knowledge*.

275. [Obs. After *oportuit* the present infinitive is to be rendered by 'to have,' &c. "He ought to have preserved fidelity," *fidem servari oportuit*.]

Dulce est pro patriâ mori. Coram populo loquētur. Argentum præ auro contemnītur. Cæcus de coloribus judicāre non potest. Etiam sine magistro vitia discuntur. Usitātæ res facīle e memoriâ elabuntur. Vapōres a sole ex aquis excitantur. Alexander omnia Oceāno tenus vicit. Caius feбри caret. Omnes<sup>q</sup> paupĕrum auxilio egēmus. Fidem servāri oportuit. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. In illo prælio equītes nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis ?

### Lesson 55.

#### 276. VOCABULARY 49.

[Prepositions, governing acc. or abl.]

|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| In, with <i>acc.</i>    | into, to, towards, against, for.  |
| In, with <i>abl.</i>    | in, upon, among, in the case of.  |
|                         | [The prepositions <i>in</i> and <i>sub</i> govern the <i>acc.</i> in answer to <i>whither</i> ; (that is, after verbs of <i>motion</i> ; ) and the <i>ablative</i> in answer to <i>where</i> , (that is, after verbs of <i>rest</i> .)] |
| Super, with <i>acc.</i> | { above, over, beyond, (generally after verbs of motion,)   |
|                         | { besides.  |
| Super, with <i>abl.</i> | upon ; <sup>r</sup> <i>on</i> or <i>of</i> (a subject <i>inquired</i> or <i>written</i> about.)   |

|                          |   |                      |
|--------------------------|---|----------------------|
| Sub <i>idem tempus</i> , | about the same time.                                      |                      |
| To heal,                 | mĕdĕri, governing dative (by 191)                         | ( <i>medicine</i> .) |
| To seem,                 | vĭdĕri, vĭsus.  |                      |
| To desire,               | cŭpĕre, cŭpĭv, cŭpĭt, (with the added <i>i</i> . 187, x.) |                      |
| More,                    | plus, G. pluris. <sup>s</sup>                             |                      |

| English.                      | Latin.  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 277. <i>How much</i> greater, | <i>By how much</i> greater ; <i>quanto</i> major.     |
| <i>So much</i> greater,       | <i>By so much</i> greater ; <i>tanto</i> major.       |
| <i>Much</i> greater,          | <i>By much</i> greater ; <i>multo</i> major.          |
| <i>Considerably</i> greater,  | <i>By some-deal</i> greater ; <i>aliquanto</i> major. |

<sup>q</sup> When the verb is of the *first* or *second* person, and an adjective is expressed, put *we* or *you* before the adjective. Thus, *omnes*, we all, &c.

<sup>r</sup> This belongs to poetry.

<sup>s</sup> It has no other forms in the sing. In plural *plures*, *plura*, G. *plurium*, &c.



278. (*Eng.*) The more he teaches, the more he learns.  
 (*Lat.*) *By-how-much* more he teaches, *by so much* more he learns.  
 (or) *By-what* more he teaches, *by that* more he learns.

279. ¶ ‘*The*’—‘*the*’ before two comparatives must be translated by ‘*quanto*’—‘*tanto*,’ or by ‘*quo*’—‘*eo*.’

280. OBS. The *tanto* or *eo* goes with that assertion which *follows* from the other.

If you have any doubt, turn it into a sentence with ‘*if*,’ and let the ‘*if*’ sentence have the *quanto* or *quo*.

- (a) Thus in the example, (278,) his *learning* more will *follow*, or be the *consequence*, of his *teaching* more.

‘*If*’ he teaches much, *he will learn more* than he otherwise would.

### Exercise 55.

281. How much greater is the sun than the earth? The earth is much greater than the moon. My estate is considerably bigger than yours. The days are considerably longer. In the summer the days are considerably longer than in the winter. Is not your garden considerably bigger than mine? Is not my garden much bigger than yours? Is my garden much bigger than yours? [No.]

Quo amarior potio, eo sæpe salubrior est. Quanto tempus est felicius, tanto brevius esse videtur. Quo plura habent homines, eo plura cupiunt. Nunquam licet peccare. Juvēni p̃randum est; seni utendum. Nē jures. Jurasnē?

---

### Lesson 56.

#### 282. VOCABULARY 50.

[The comparative of an adverb is the *neuter* of the comparative adjective.]

|                     |   |
|---------------------|---|
| <i>Facīle,</i>      | easily, (from <i>facilis</i> , easy :) <i>facilius</i> , more easily. |
| <i>Cito,</i>        | quickly, (from <i>citus</i> , quick :) <i>citius</i> , more quickly.  |
| Bark,               | cortex, corticis, <i>m</i> .  |
| To cover, surround, | ob-dūcere, dux, duct.   |
| Safe,               | tutus.  |
| Virtuous, upright,  | honestus. Virtuously, <i>honeste</i> .                                |
| Courageously,       | fortiter, (comparative, <i>fortius</i> .)                             |

283. (Eng.) I ploughed it three times, *that* it might produce the *better* crop.  
 (Lat.) I ploughed it three times, *by which* it might produce a *better* crop.
284. (a) When '*that*' is in a sentence that has a comparative in it, it may be translated by *quo* with the subjunctive.  
 (b) '*That*' with comparatives and '*the*,'  
 By '*quo*' may best translated be.
285. (Eng.) Some persons think.  
 (Lat.) There are who think, (sunt qui putent.)  
 (Eng.) Some persons thought.  
 (Lat.) There were who thought, (erant qui putarent.)

### Exercise 56.

286. Some persons think that faith should not be kept against<sup>u</sup> enemies. It is difficult to heal the mind. Hold-your-tongues, *that* you may be the more easily able to learn. He spoke much, *that* he might seem wise. He spoke much, *that* he might seem *the* wiser. He lived virtuously, *that* he might die *the* more courageously. It is certain that Caius lived many years at Carthage. Do not spare me.

[When there is a comparative in the sentence, render *quo* by '*that*,' and put '*the*' before the comparative.]

Trunci arbōrum cortice obducuntur, *quo* sint a frigore et calore tutiores. An licet Christianis glorię servire? Omnibus ignoscendum est. Ne multa loquere. Misere-re nostri. Natūrā omnes propensi sumus ad discendum. An retinenda est barbāra consuetudo immolandōrum hominum? Nonne mors quotidie ob oculos ponenda est?

### Lesson 57.

*English.*  
 287. I repent of my folly,  
 I am vexed at my folly,  
 I am ashamed of my folly,  
 I pity the poor,  
 I am weary of life,

*Latin.*  
 It-repents me of my folly  
 It-vexes me of my folly.  
 It-shames me of my folly.  
 It-pities me of the poor.  
 It-irks me of life.

<sup>t</sup> Arāvi, &c., *quo* posset meliores fruges edere.

<sup>u</sup> Adversus.

- (a) Me meā stultitiā pœnitet.†  
 (b) Me meā stultitiā piget.  
 (c) Me meā stultitiā pudet.  
 (d) Misēret me paup̄erum.  
 (e) Tædet me vitā.

288. When 'ut' the word for 'that' would be,  
 'That-not' may both be done by nē;  
 Unless a 'so' or 'such' preceded,  
 For then a 'non' will still be needed.

289. (a) Palpēbræ molles sunt ne  
*The eye-lids soft are, that*  
 premant ocūlum.  
*they may not press the eye.*

(b) Tanta est multitūdo, ut non possint  
*So great is the multitude, that they cannot*  
 numerāri.  
*be numbered.*

## 290. VOCABULARY 51.

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| Slothful,             | ignāvus, (in, <i>not</i> ; gnavus, <i>active</i> .)   |
| Sloth,                | ignavia.  |
| Some-time-or-other,   | aliquando.  |
| Physician,            | medīcus.  |
| Some,                 | alīquis, (something, <i>aliquid</i> .)  |
| Attentive,            | studiōsus.  |
| To order,             | jubēre, juss, juss, (followed by <i>acc.</i> with <i>infn.</i> )  |
| To learn by heart,    | e-discēre.  |
| Athenian,             | { Atheniensis. ( <i>Ensis</i> is a common termination of names<br>derived (from towns.)   |
| Socrātes,             | { Socrāt-es, G. is, (one of the greatest of heathen men. He<br>taught the <i>immortality</i> of the soul, and was put to death<br>by his countrymen the Athenians.) |
| To value more highly, | pluris facēre.  |
| To cause to be made,  | faciendum curāre, (the partic. to agree with its noun.)   |

## Exercise 57.

291. It is more pleasant to make a friend, than to have (one.) The slothful man will some-time-or-other repent of his sloth. Christians pity the poor. He will give the physician something, *that* he may be *the* more attentive. I order my son never to remember this injury. We give verses to boys to-be-learnt-by-heart. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. Have you not understood, that I do not need money? Anger

† These verbs are regularly conjugated: pœnitet, pœnitēbat, pœnituit, pœnituerat, pœnitēbit, &c.

has cost the state much blood. I *value you more-highly* every day.

292. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennis fovēt pullos, ne frigōre lædantur. Eōrum miserēri oportet, qui propter fortunam, non propter malitiam in miseris sunt. Tui me miseret: mei piget. Raro primi consilii Caium pœnitet. Sapientia semper eo contenta est, quod adest. Scipio dicēbat, malle<sup>w</sup> se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidēre. Sic adhuc vixi, ut nemo unquam me ullius injuriæ accusaverit. Pontem in Istro flumine faciendum curavi. *Inter ambulandum* multa mecum locutus est.

---

### Lesson 58.

293. *Et* followed by another *et*; *tum* or *quum* followed by *tum*, are *both—and*.

294. Non solum—sed etiam, *not only—but also*.

295. Tam—quam,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{so—as : as—as.} \\ \textit{as well—as.} \\ \textit{both—and.} \end{array} \right.$

296. Etiam, *even, also*, (etiam atque etiam, *again and again*;) quoque, *also, too*, (*follows* the word it belongs to.)

### Exercise 58.

297. Amphibia et in aquâ et in terrâ vivunt. Et discet puer, et docebit. Etiam tu hinc abis? Rogo te, et etiam oro. Et Romæ vixi et Carthagine. Ut mihi succurras, etiam atque etiam te rogo, (296.) Lupus quum ovem tum canem momorderat. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. Horti parantur tum ad utilitatem, tum ad jucunditatem. Multæ herbæ quum jucun-

---

<sup>w</sup> That he had rather: infinitive of *mālo*, (which see, Appendix, § 26.)



dissimum tum saluberrimum cibum suppeditant. Tam canes quam lupi cæcos pariunt catūlos. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est.

---

Lesson 59.

298. Aut, or.

aut—aut ; vel—vel, *either—or.*

299. sive—sive } *either—or.*

seu—seu } *whether—or.*

vel is sometimes ‘*even ;*’ with superlatives, ‘*very,*’ ‘*extremely,*’ ‘*possible.*’

300. *Sive*<sup>x</sup> is used, when the speaker or writer leaves it undecided, which of two assertions or names is the right one ; and when a second name is a mere *alias* of the first.

Exercise 59.

301. Quicquid dicam aut erit, aut non. Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites ! Quædam terræ partes incultæ sunt, quod aut frigore rigent, aut uruntur calore. Viri nobiles, vel corrumpere mores civitatis, vel corrigere possunt. Quam sis morosus, vel (299) ex hoc intelligi potest. Romanis sese\* vel persuasuros (esse) existimabant, vel vi coacturos. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, pœnas persolvērunt. Nonnulli, sive felicitate quadam, sive bonitate naturæ, sive parentum disciplinâ, rectam vitæ secuti sunt viam. Sine solis calore nec animalia vivere, nec plantæ crescere possunt. Nec timidus esto, nec audax. Nimius somnus neque animo, neque corpore prodest. Vel (299) iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefero. Caii eo tempore vel maxima erat auctoritas.

---

<sup>x</sup> Sive is si-ve, ‘*or if.*’ Thus, ‘*Caius sive Balbus,*’ is ‘*Caius, or if you like, Balbus,*’ (for that is another name of his.)

\* See Appendix, § 25.



## Lesson 60.

(Adversative conjunctions, or such as mark an *opposition*.)

302. At, sed, autem, verum, vero, *but*.

Tamen, attāmen, }

Veruntāmen, }

Atqui,

*yet ; but ; but yet.*

*but or now, (as used in reasoning.)*

## Exercise 60.

303. Non placet Marco Antonio consulatus meus ; *at* placuit Publio Servilio. Fecit idem Themistocles ; *at* Pericles idem non fecit. Si certum est<sup>y</sup> facere, facias ; *verum* ne post confēras culpam in me. Non deterreor ab incepto, *sed* pudōre impediōr. Aut hoc aut illud est : non *autem* hoc (est ; ) ergo (304) illud (est.) Absolutus est Caius ; mulctatus *tamen* pecuniā. Videtis nihil esse morti tam simile, quam somnum : *atqui* dormientium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam.

## Lesson 61.

304. Nam, namque, enim, *for*.

Igitur, ideo,

Ergo,

Itaque,

Quare,

*therefore.*

*therefore, then.*

*accordingly ; and so ;*

*therefore.*

*wherefore.*

## Exercise 61.

305. In eā re prudentiā adjūtus est : *nam*, quum devicisset hostes, summā æquitate res constituit. Hac pugnā nihil nobilius : nulla *enim* unquam tam exigua manus tantum exercitum devicit.

---

<sup>y</sup> Si certum est, (*if it is fixed,*) *if you are resolved.*

Magno<sup>z</sup> Atilio ea cunctatio stetit, *namque* filium intra paucos dies amisit. Illi *igitur* duodēcim cum canibus venaticis exiērunt. Aristides æqualis fere fuit Themistōcli: *itaque* cum eo de principatu contendit. Nemo *ergo* non miser (est ?) Nihil labōras: *ideo* nihil habes. Intelligebant hæc Lacedæmonii: *quare* eos infirmissimos esse volebant.

---

### Lesson 62.

306. ☞ The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* of the *subjunctive* are the regular attendants of the past tenses of the *indicative*.

(a) But the 'perfect,' when it answers to our *perfect* with 'have,' is not considered a *past* tense.

307. 'Ut' with the *subjunct.* { (1) 'in order that;' 'that;' 'so that.'  
 (2) the *infinitive*, (expressing the *purpose*.)  
 (3) 'as,' with *infinitive*.  
 (4) 'granting that;' 'although.'  
 (5) 'that' and carry 'not,' (after to *fear*.)

(a) (*Ut* with the *indicative* is 'as,' 'when,' 'since,' 'after,' 'how.')

(b) When *ut* introduces a *purpose*, the *subjunctive* verb will be rendered by 'may,' 'might.' When it signifies a *consequence*, (which it regularly does after 'so,' 'such,') the *subjunctive* verb is rendered by the *indicative*: but the *imperfect* by the English perfect.

### Exercise 62.

Obs. *possim* (*is, it, &c.*) = 'can' or 'may.'  
*possem* (*es, et, &c.*) = 'could' or 'might.'

308. (1) Multi alios laudant, *ut* ab aliis *laudentur*. Stellarum tanta multitudo est, *ut* numerari non *possint*. In summis Alpibus<sup>a</sup> tantum est frigus, *ut* nix ibi nun-

---

<sup>z</sup> Stare magno, to cost a man dear. Magno agrees with *pretio* (price) understood.

<sup>a</sup> On the top of the Alps. *Summus, imus, medius, primus, extremus, reliquus, &c.*, agreeing with nouns, are generally rendered by *substantives*, followed by a *genitive* case. *Imus mons*, the bottom or foot of the mountain. *Reliqua Ægyptus*, the rest of Egypt. *Sapientia prima*, the beginning of wisdom. In *extremo tertio libro*, at the end of the third book.

quam *liquescat*. Hominis corpus celsum et erectum est, ut cœlum intueri possit.

Ursi per hiemem tam gravi somno premuntur, *ut nē* vulneribus quidem excitentur. In Indiâ serpentes ad tantam magnitudinem adolescunt, *ut* integros hauriant cervos, taurosque.

(2) Vēnit (*he is come*) ut claudat, (*to shut,*) &c.

Enitar *ut vincam*. Magnopere te hortor, *ut* hos de philosophiâ libros studiōse *legas*. Capram monet, *ut* in pratum *descendat*. Ante senectutem curavi, *ut* bene vivērem. Formīca sitiens ad fontem descendit, *ut* bibēret.

(3) No one is *so* good, *ut* nunquam *peccet*, (*as never to sin.*)

Quis *tam* demens est, *ut* suâ voluntate mœreat? Nulla anus *tam* delīra est, *ut* hæc *credat*.

(4) *Ut desint* vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas. *Ut* circumspeciamus omnia, quæ populo grata atque jucunda sunt, nihil tam populare quam concordiam reperiemus.

☞ For *ut* after *to fear*, see Lesson 66.

### Lesson 63.

309. *Nē* with *subjunctive*,
- |     |   |  |
|-----|---|--|
| (1) | { | ‘lest,’  |
| (2) | { | ‘that,’ and carry ‘not.’   |
| (3) | { | ‘not,’ with the <i>infinitive</i> .  |
| (4) | { | ‘not,’ with <i>imperat.</i> or <i>subjunct.</i> used <i>imperatively</i> . |
| (4) | { | ‘that’ after <i>to fear</i> .  |

### Exercise 63.

(1) I did it, *nē that*, vidēret *he might not see*, &c.

310. (1) Palpēbræ molles sunt, *ne* premant ocūlum. Gallinæ avesque reliquæ pennīs fovēt pullos, *ne* frigōre lædantur. Nix segētes opērit, *ne* frigōre absumantur. Cave *ne* incognita pro cognitis habeas. Cave *ne* quid temere dicas aut *facias* contra potentes. Oculi palpē-





Ex odoratu et adspectu pomorum dubitare non possūmus, *quin* hominibus ea donata sint. Nemo est tam bonus ac providus, *quin* interdum *peccet*. Caius prohiberi non potuit, *quin* (5) *erumpēret*. Non dubito, *quin* *ascenderis* murum. Nemo erit tam stultus, *quin* (3) *hæc fateatur*. Non possum pro dignitate vivere, *quin* (5) *alterūtram partem offendērem*. Negari non potest, *quin* *turpius sit fallēre quam falli*. Nihil in rerum naturā invenitur, *quin* sapientissime institutum *sit*. Qui temere omnibus credit, effugēre non potest,<sup>h</sup> *quin* sæpius fallatur. Infesta concio vix inhiberi potuit, *quin* protinus saxa in Polemōnem *jacēret*. Timoleontem mater, post fratris necem, nunquam adspexit, *quin* eum fratricidam impiumque *compellaret*.

---

### Lesson 65.

313. After verbs of *hindering*, 'quomīnus' with the subjunct. is more common than *ne*. It may generally be translated by '*from*,' the verb being turned into the *participial substantive*: but after '*refuse*,' by the *infinitive*.

### Exercise 65.

- (1) *Nothing deterred him, quomīnus faceret, (from doing,) &c.*  
 (2) *I will not refuse, quomīnus faciam, (to do,) &c.*

314. Nihil impēdit, *quominus* id facere possīmus. Non deterret sapientem mors, *quomīnus*<sup>i</sup> in omne tempus reipublicæ, <sup>k</sup>*suisque consulat*. Rebus terrēnis multa externa, *quominus perficiantur*, possunt obsistere. Quid obstat, *quomīnus* Caius *sit* beatus? Epaminondas non

---

<sup>h</sup> Cannot avoid being often deceived.

<sup>i</sup> Does not deter, &c., from forwarding the interests of the commonwealth, and of his own (friends.) Consulere alicui = to consult a man's welfare; to forward his interests.

<sup>k</sup> Sui = a man's dependents, a man's friends.



*recusavit, quominus legis pœnam subiret. Non me terrēbis quominus illud faciam. Prohibēre Romanos, quominus frumentum sumērent, non poterant. Non me impediēs, quominus ei pecuniam illam numerem.*

(Note. Literally 'quo minus' = *by which the less, or, so that the less.* *Caio nihil obstat, quo minus sit beatus,* is literally, "Nothing stands in the way of Caius, *by which* he should be *the less* happy.")

---

### Lesson 66.

315. After words of '*fearing,*' '*ne*' and '*ut*' appear to change meanings: *ne* = *that*, (or *lest*;) *ut* = *that—not*. (Also the *subjunct. present* must generally be rendered by the *future*.)

|                        |   |   |
|------------------------|---|---|
| Vereor <i>ne</i> ,     | } | I fear he <i>will</i> ; or <i>lest</i> he <i>should</i> , &c. |
| Vereor <i>ut</i> ,     |   |   |
| Vereor <i>ne-non</i> , |   |   |

### Exercise 66.

316. Vereor, *ne* labores tuos *augeam*. Pavor ceperat milites, *ne* mortifērum *esset* vulnus Scipionis. Homo scelestus semper verētur, *ne* peccata sua *patefiant*. Imprōbi semper sunt in *metu*, *ne* pœnâ *afficiantur* aliquando. Vereor, *nē* brevi tempore fames in urbe *sit*. Verebamini, *nē non* id facerem. Vereor, *nē* consolatio *nulla* vera possit reperiri. Timeo, *nē non* impētrem. Metuebant, *nē* dolorem ferre *non* possent.

Timeo, *ut* labores tantos *sustineas*. Avarus semper veretur, *ut* *satis* habeat. Vereor, *ut* pax firma *sit*. Ignavus semper metuit, *ut* *sustineat* labores.

a. In English we often leave out the conjunction 'that' after a verb of *fearing*, as, "I fear he will," for "I fear *that* he will."

*Metuo, ne* artificium tuum tibi parum *prosit*.

## Lesson 67.

## ON INTERROGATIVES.

317. All interrogatives take the indicative, *when the question is put directly*: they then stand at the head of a principal sentence, and are followed, of course, by a note of interrogation.

a. *Num, an, and nē*, (which is always *appended* to another word,) are not rendered in direct sentences.

b. *Num* (in direct questions) expects the answer 'no.' *An* expects the answer 'no,' and expresses *impatience, indignation, &c.*<sup>1</sup> *Nonnē* expects the answer 'yes.'

c. The force of '*an*' may generally be given by adding '*why*' or '*then*' to the question.

An credis ? } *Why*, do you believe . . . ?  
 } *Do* you believe, *then* . . . ?

## Exercise 67.

318. *Quis non paupertatem extimescit? Unde lucem suam habet luna? Quid interest<sup>m</sup> inter hominem et bestiam? Quid feret crastinus dies? Quare vitia sua nemo confitetur? Cur te excrucias? Quid rides?*

*Ubi aut qualis est tua mens? Potesnē dicere?—Num sola maris aqua est salsa? Visne miser esse? Estne animus immortalis? Nonne poētæ post mortem nobilitari volunt? Num scimus, quo se confērant aves peregrinantes? An tu esse me tristem putas? An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?*

Obs. *Nē* is often appended to the other particles; *numnē, annē, &c.*

## Lesson 68.

319. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when they ask *indirectly* or *doubtfully*; especially when another verb goes before the question.

<sup>1</sup> A question with *nē* may be such as to make us confidently expect 'yes' or 'no' for the answer. But the answer is then suggested by the *nature* of the question, not by the *form* of it.

<sup>m</sup> *What difference is there? intetsum, interesse.*

- (a) Such verbs are *ask, doubt, try, know, not know*; it is *uncertain, &c.*  
 (b) *Num, an, nē*, in a dependent sentence, are '*whether*;' and '*num*' does not imply that the answer '*no*' is expected.  
 (c) *An* is never used by Cicero in a single indirect question.

### Exercise 68.

320. *Quis enumeret<sup>n</sup> artium multitudinem? Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. Dic mihi, quem sol nobis adferat usum. Nescimus, quid serus vesper advecturus sit.<sup>o</sup> Quid futurum sit, nescimus. Quid vere nobis prosit,<sup>p</sup> non semper intelligimus. Olim quæstio erat, num terra rotunda esset. Num ægrotum interrogabis, an sanari velit? Cogita tecum, an gratiam retuleris, quibus gratiam debes. Quæritur<sup>q</sup> unquamne fuerint monocerotes. Utrum<sup>\*</sup> velis, elige. Non me terrebis, quominus, utrum velim, eligam. Quid dicam nescio.*

### Lesson 69.

321. In double questions either,

- { (1) the first is introduced by *num, utrum*, or the appended *nē*, and the second by *an, (or:)* or,  
 (2) the first question has *no interrogative adverb*; the second, *an* or the appended *nē*.

### Exercise 69.

322. (1) [*Direct.*] *Utrum<sup>r</sup> major est sol, an minor, quam terra? Casunē mundus est effectus, an vi divinâ? Num sol mobilis est, an immobilis? Sumusne mortales, an immortales? [Indirect or dependent.] Quæritur, unusne sit mundus an plures? Nihil rēfert,<sup>s</sup> utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum.*

(2) [*Direct.*] *Uter est infelicior, cæcus an surdus? Utrum est pretiosius, aurum an argentum? [Indirect.]*

<sup>n</sup> Who can reckon up?

<sup>o</sup> Will bring?

<sup>p</sup> Quid vere prosit (prosum) nobis; what is really beneficial to us.

<sup>q</sup> It is sought = it is a question, or a disputed point: monocerotes, unicorns.

\* Neut. of *uter*.

<sup>r</sup> Is the sun . . ?

<sup>s</sup> It makes no difference.

Stellarum numerus par<sup>t</sup> an impar sit, incertum est. Hominibus prodesse<sup>u</sup> natura jubet: servi liberine sint, quid refert?<sup>v</sup> Dic mihi, æstate<sup>w</sup> grandinet, an hieme. Multum interest,<sup>x</sup> valentes imbecilline simus.

a. *Necne* in the second question is 'or not.'

---

Lesson 70.

323. (Some conjunctions that always take the subjunctive.)

Utinam, *would that.*

O si, (*O! if,*) *O! that, would that.*

licet, *although.*

quasi, tanquam, *as if.*

dum, modo, dummodo, *provided; if only.*

quamvis, *however-much, however.*

Exercise 70.

*Note.*—With most of these conjunctions, the *present* (subjunctive) must be rendered by a *past* tense.

324. *Utinam* pacis amor omnibus inspirari possit! *Utinam* ense nullus magistratus egeat! *O si* quisque virtutem colat! *O si* omnes cogitent, mediocritatem in omnibus rebus esse optimam! Animalibus brutis nulla futuri temporis cognitio est, licet sit aliqua præsentis et præteriti. Impröbus ita vivit, quasi nesciat, rationem vitæ sibi esse reddendam. Nemo, quamvis sit locuples, aliorum ope carere potest. Nulla est regio, quæ non cultores suos, dummodo laborare velint, alat. Ita fac omnia, tanquam spectet aliquis. Si quis nimis obscure dicit, perinde fere est, ac si taceat. Utinam hoc verum sit. Sic agis, quasi me ames.

---

<sup>t</sup> Even: impar, odd.

<sup>u</sup> Prosum.

<sup>v</sup> What matters it, or, what does it signify whether, &c.?

<sup>w</sup> In the summer.

<sup>x</sup> It makes a great difference.







## Exercise 71.

329. Pii homines ad felicitatem perpetuo *duraturam* pervenient. Nemo, cunctam *intuens* terram, de divinâ providentiâ dubitabit. Hæ sunt divitiæ certæ, semper *permansuræ*. Sapiens bona semper *placitura* laudat. Omnes aliud<sup>y</sup> *agentes*, aliud *simulantes*<sup>z</sup> impröbi sunt. PISISTRATUS HOMERI libros, *confūsos* antea, disposuisse dicitur. Male *agentis* (5) animus nunquam est sine metu. Garrūlus tacēre nequit<sup>a</sup> sibi *commissa*, (7.) Adulator aut laudat *vituperanda*, aut vituperat *laudanda*.

## Lesson 72.

330. Render the participles in the following Exercise by verbs with 'when,' 'as.'

- (1) *ridens*, { *when he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.  
                   { *as he is* (or *was*) *laughing*.

331. In a sentence with *when*, we often omit the auxiliary verb: hence

- (2) *ridens* may be construed '*when laughing*.'

332. If the participle stands alone, '*he*,' '*they*,' '*a man*,' '*one*,' '*men*,' &c., must be supplied as the nom. to the verb.

- (3) *ridenti*, { *when he is laughing*.  
                   { *when one is laughing*.

- (4) *ridentibus*, *when men* (or *they*) are laughing.

## Exercise 72.

333. Leo *esuriens* rugit. XERXES a Græcis *victus* in Persiam refūgit. *Esurienti* (3) *gratior est cibus*. Su-

<sup>y</sup> The first *aliud* must be construed '*one thing*:' the second, '*another*.'

<sup>z</sup> Put in a '*but*' before *simulantes*.

<sup>a</sup> Nequeo.

*danti* (3) frigida potio perniciosissima est. DIONYSIUS tyrannus, Syracūsis *expulsus*, Corinthi pueros docebat. *Aranti* QUINCTIO CINCINNATO nuntiatum est, eum Dicitatōrem esse factum. Hæc poma *sedens* decerpsi. Leōnes *satiati* innoxii sunt. Ne mente quidem recte uti possūmus, multo cibo et potione *implēti*. Alit lectio ingenium, et studio *fatigatum* reficit. Elephantes nemini nocent, nisi *laccessiti*.

---

Lesson 73.

334. Render the following participles by verbs with 'if.'

- (1) *ridens*, { *if he\* laughs.*  
                   { *if a man (or one) laughs.*
- (2) *amatus*, { *if I am loved; if I were loved.*  
                   { *if I had been loved.*

Exercise 73.

335. Quis est qui, totum diem *jacūlans*, non aliquando collineet?<sup>b</sup> Equum *empturus*, cave nē decipiaris. Hostes, hanc *adepti* victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confident. *Victi* hostes in Persiam refugient. *Admonitus* (2) venissem. *Liberatus*, rus ex urbe evolabo. Româ *expulsus* Carthagine pueros docebo.

---

Lesson 74.

336. Render the following participles by verbs with

---

\* The nom. to be used will be, *I, we, you, they, &c.*, according to the person of the verb.

<sup>b</sup> Pres. subj. render by pres. indic.

because, for, since; or by the *participial substantive* with *from* or *through*.

dubitans, { (1) because I doubt.  
 (2) for I doubt.  
 (3) since I doubt.  
 (4) from doubting.  
 (5) through doubting.

#### Exercise 74.

337. Nihil affirmo, *dubitans* plerumque, et mihi ipse<sup>c</sup> *diffidens*. Hostes hanc *adepti* (4) victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victōres confidebant. Sine aquâ anātes degere non possunt, magnam victûs partem in aquâ *quærentes*. Respondent se perfidiam *veritos* revertisse. *Stellæ* nobis parvæ videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis *disjunctæ*. Cantus olorinus recte *fabulōsus* habētur, nunquam *auditus*.

---

#### Lesson 75. [See note p. 106.]

338. Render the following participles by verbs with *though*, *although*.

(1) *ridens*, *though he laughs*.  
*amatus*, { (2) *though he is loved*.  
 (3) *though he was loved*.  
 (4) *even though he should be loved*.

339. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though*. Hence we may sometimes construe

(5) *ridens*, *though laughing*.  
 (6) *amatus*, *though loved*.

---

<sup>c</sup> Render mihi *myself*, and take no further notice of *ipse*.

*Exercise 75.*

340. Homines non statim pœnis afficiuntur, quotidie *delinquentes*. Multa transimus ante oculos *posita*. Oculus, se non *videns*, alia videt. Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum *cupientes* tenere nequeamus. Scripta tua jam diu *expectans*,<sup>d</sup> flagitare non audeo. Quis hoc non intelligit, Verrem *absolutum* (4) tamen ex manibus populi Romani eripi nullo modo posse? Omnia magnâ voce *dicens*, simulabat tantum se furere. Ad cœnam *vocatus*, nondum vênit.

---

*Lesson 76. [Note p. 106.]*

341. Render the following past participles by *after*, with a verb or participial substantive.

(Act.) passus, { (1) *after he has suffered.*  
 (2) *after he had suffered.*  
 (3) *after suffering.*

(Pass.) amatus, { (4) *after he was (or has been) loved.*  
 (5) *after he had been loved.*  
 (6) *after having been loved.*

*Exercise 76.*

342. JOSEPHUS in Ægypto, multa mala *perpessus*, (3,) ad summos honores evector est. Israëlītæ, Ægypto *egressi*, quadraginta annos in Arabiâ sunt commorati. Pleræque scribuntur orationes *habitæ*<sup>e</sup> jam, non ut habeantur. DIONYSIUS, a Syracusis *expulsus*,<sup>f</sup> Corinthi pueros docebat. ALEXANDER ABDOLONIMUM diu *contemplatus* interrogavit, quâ patientiâ inopiam tulisset. *Lauti*<sup>g</sup> cibum capiunt Germani.

---

<sup>d</sup> Use the perf. definite 'have been expecting.'

<sup>e</sup> Habere orationem, to deliver a speech.

<sup>f</sup> Render first by (4); then by (6.)

<sup>g</sup> Partic. from *lavare*, to wash.

## Lesson 77.

343. Render the following participles by verbs, and place 'and' before the verb that stands already in the Latin sentence.

The participle is *generally* to be rendered by the same tense as the other verb.

(1) Ridens *he laughs*, exclamat *and exclaims*.

(2) Ridens *he laughed*, exclamavit *and exclaimed*.

But sometimes by a different tense.

(3) *Correptum* lepōrem, *he has seized* the hare, lacerat, and *is mangling* it.

## Exercise 77.

344. Jussis divinis *obediens* virtuti *studet*. CRÆSUS, a Cyro *victus*, regno *spoliatus est*. Troja, equi lignei ope *capta*, incendio *delēta est*. Persæ *mortuos cerâ circumlitos<sup>h</sup>* *condunt*. Grues, quum loca calidiora *petentes* maria *transmittunt*, triangūli efficiunt formam. Illud ipsum<sup>i</sup> non accidisset, si *quiescens* legibus *paruissem*. Cum legionibus *profectus<sup>k</sup>* celeriter *adereo*. TITUS MANLIUS Gallum, in conspectu duorum exercituum *cæsum*, torque *spoliavit*. *Comprehensum* hominem Romanam *ducēbant*, (3.) Mulier ALCIBIADEM suâ veste *confectum* cremavit.

## Lesson 78.

345. *Non* before a participle may be rendered *without*; the participle being turned into the participial substantive.

*non without*, ridens *laughing*.

*non without*, { amatus *being loved*.  
                          { amatus *loving him*.

<sup>h</sup> From *circumlinere*.

<sup>i</sup> Render *ipse* by *even*.

<sup>k</sup> *Proficisci*.



## Exercise 78.

346. *Non petens* regnum accepit. Romani Græcis *non rogati* ultro offerunt auxilium. Liberalitate utitur, se ipsum *non spolians*. Neminem in familiaritatem recipere *non cognitum*.<sup>1</sup> Multi homines vituperant libros *non intellectos*.<sup>1</sup> Beneficus est, qui non privatis com-  
mōdis *permōtus*, alios adjūvat.

347. OBS. Participles in the ablative absolute may be rendered in the same way : the substantive will be the nom. to the verb ; or the acc. after it.<sup>m</sup>

Thus, Tarquinio regnante,  
te sedente,  
captā Tyro,  
migraturis apibus,  
fele comprehensā,  
adempto pomo,  
radice succīsā,  
fascē sublato, redit,  
te non salutato,

when Tarquinius was king.  
as you were sitting.  
after Tyre was taken.  
when the bees are going to swarm.  
if the cat is caught.  
because his apple was taken away.  
though the root was cut.  
he takes up the bundle AND returns.  
without saluting you.

348. Participles may often be rendered by *substantives* of a kindred meaning. Thus :

| <i>For</i>  | <i>We may say,</i>                  |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| Ciconiæ redeuntes,<br>The <i>returning</i> storks,  | } The <i>return</i> of the storks.  |
| Januario addito,<br>By January <i>added</i> ,       |                                     |
| Leges violatæ,<br>The <i>violated</i> laws,         | } The <i>violation</i> of the laws. |
| Vere appropinquante,<br>Spring <i>approaching</i> , |                                     |
|   | } On the <i>approach</i> of spring. |
|   |                                     |

<sup>1</sup> Use *act. partic.*

<sup>m</sup> It may sometimes be the accusative after the verb ; because ' the bundle being taken *by him*,' = ' the bundle was taken up *by him* ;' which may be turned into ' he took up *the bundle*.'

## APPENDIX.

\* The articles that have an asterisk before them, are not to be learned till the other articles are known perfectly.

### TERMINATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

|    | N.V.   | Sing. |    |                |              | N.V. | Plur.         |                      |      |
|----|--|-------|----|----------------|--------------|------|---------------|----------------------|------|
|    |  | G.    | D. | Acc.           | Abl.         |      | G.            | D. Abl.              | Acc. |
| 1. | ă  | æ     | æ  | am             | ă            | æ    | ărur          | is                   | ăs   |
| 2. | { ūs, ěr }<br>(um neut.)   | ī     | ō  | um             | ō            | ī    | ōrum          | is                   | ōs   |
| 3. | { various<br>(generally not<br>containing the<br>unaltered root) } | is    | ī  | em }<br>(im) } | ě }<br>(ī) } | ēs   | um }<br>ium } | ībūs                 | ēs   |
| 4. | { ūs }<br>(neut. u)  | ūs    | ūī | um             | ū            | ūs   | uum           | { ībūs }<br>{ ūbūs } | ūs   |
| 5. | ēs   | ēī    | ēī | em             | ē            | ēs   | ērum          | ēbūs                 | ēs   |

☞ Obs. In neuters, Acc. is like Nom., and both in the plur. end in *ă*.

\* 2. The Vocative is always like the nominative, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. *ě*. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius*, *genius*, contract *ie* into *i*.

3. Neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur. *ium*.

\* 4. (1) Nouns in *es*, *is*, *er*, not increasing in the gen., make Gen. pl. *ium*.

*But vates, proles, juvĕnis, senex, canis,*

*Take um; with pater, frater, mater, panis.*

(2) Monosyllables take Gen. pl. *ium*. But the following, with a few more, take *um*:

Dux, grex,  
Vox, lex,  
Pes, prex,  
Fur, rex,  
Mos, fraus,  
Flos, laus.

(3) Nouns in *s*, *x*, after a consonant, take Gen. pl. *ium*.

\* 5. The fourth declension is a contracted form of the third declension: G. *ūīs*, *ūs*. Abl. *ūě*, *ū*, &c.

(1) The following words of the fourth have Abl. *ūbus*:

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus *add*, and artus;  
Tribus, lacus, specus *too*, with veru, pecu, partus.

(2) Neuters in *u* have gen. *us*, dat. *u*, pl. *ua*, *uum*, &c.\*

\* 6. In the fifth declension *e* of G. and D. is *long*, if it follows a vowel; *short*, if it follows a consonant. (*faciēi*, *fidēi*.)†

## 7. EXAMPLES.

| Sing.                             | I.<br>(table.) | II.<br>(boy.) | III.<br>(father.) | IV.<br>(chariot.) | V.<br>(day.) |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| Nom. <i>the</i>                   | <i>mensa</i>   | <i>puer</i>   | <i>pater</i>      | <i>currūs</i>     | <i>dies</i>  |
| Gen. <i>of the</i>                | <i>mensæ</i>   | <i>pueri</i>  | <i>patriſ</i>     | <i>currūs</i>     | <i>diēi</i>  |
| Dat. <i>to or for the</i>         | <i>mensæ</i>   | <i>puero</i>  | <i>patri</i>      | <i>currui</i>     | <i>diēi</i>  |
| Acc. <i>the</i>                   | <i>mensam</i>  | <i>puerum</i> | <i>patrem</i>     | <i>currum</i>     | <i>diem</i>  |
| Voc. <i>O</i>                     | <i>mensa</i>   | <i>puer</i>   | <i>pater</i>      | <i>currus</i>     | <i>dies</i>  |
| Abl. <i>by, with the, &amp;c.</i> | <i>mensā</i>   | <i>puero</i>  | <i>patre</i>      | <i>curru</i>      | <i>die</i>   |

## Plur.

|                                     |                 |                 |                 |                 |               |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| Nom. } <i>the</i>                   | <i>mensæ</i>    | <i>pueri</i>    | <i>patres</i>   | <i>currūs</i>   | <i>dies</i>   |
| Voc. } <i>O the</i>                 |                 |                 |                 |                 |               |
| Gen. } <i>of the</i>                | <i>mensārum</i> | <i>puerorum</i> | <i>patrum</i>   | <i>curruum</i>  | <i>dierum</i> |
| Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>           | <i>mensis</i>   | <i>pueris</i>   | <i>patribus</i> | <i>curribus</i> | <i>diebus</i> |
| Abl. } <i>by, with the, &amp;c.</i> |                 |                 |                 |                 |               |
| Acc. } <i>the</i>                   | <i>mensas</i>   | <i>pueros</i>   | <i>patres</i>   | <i>currūs.</i>  | <i>dies</i>   |

## Sing.

|                                   | I.<br>(hour.) | II.<br>(food.) | III.<br>(cloud.) | IV.<br>(fruit.) | V.<br>(thing.) |
|-----------------------------------|---------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Nom. <i>the</i>                   | <i>hora</i>   | <i>cibus</i>   | <i>nubes</i>     | <i>fructūs</i>  | <i>res</i>     |
| Gen. <i>of the</i>                | <i>horæ</i>   | <i>cibi</i>    | <i>nubis</i>     | <i>fructūs</i>  | <i>rēi</i>     |
| Dat. <i>to or for the</i>         | <i>horæ</i>   | <i>cibo</i>    | <i>nubi</i>      | <i>fructui</i>  | <i>rei</i>     |
| Acc. <i>the</i>                   | <i>horam</i>  | <i>cibum</i>   | <i>nubem</i>     | <i>fructum</i>  | <i>rem</i>     |
| Voc. <i>O</i>                     | <i>hora</i>   | <i>cibe</i>    | <i>nubes</i>     | <i>fructus</i>  | <i>res</i>     |
| Abl. <i>by, with the, &amp;c.</i> | <i>horā</i>   | <i>cibo</i>    | <i>nube</i>      | <i>fructu</i>   | <i>re</i>      |

## Plur.

|                                     |                |                |                |                  |              |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| Nom. } <i>the</i>                   | <i>horæ</i>    | <i>cibi</i>    | <i>nubes</i>   | <i>fructūs</i>   | <i>res</i>   |
| Voc. } <i>O the</i>                 |                |                |                |                  |              |
| Gen. } <i>of the</i>                | <i>horarum</i> | <i>cīborum</i> | <i>nubium</i>  | <i>fructuum</i>  | <i>rerum</i> |
| Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>           | <i>horis</i>   | <i>cibis</i>   | <i>nubibus</i> | <i>fructibus</i> | <i>rebus</i> |
| Abl. } <i>by, with the, &amp;c.</i> |                |                |                |                  |              |
| Acc. } <i>the</i>                   | <i>horas.</i>  | <i>cibos.</i>  | <i>nubes.</i>  | <i>fructūs.</i>  | <i>res.</i>  |

## NEUTER NOUNS.

| Sing.                               | II.<br>(egg.) | III.<br>(song.) | IV.<br>(horn.) |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Nom. } <i>the</i>                   |               |                 |                |
| Acc. } <i>the</i>                   | <i>ovum</i>   | <i>carmen</i>   | <i>cornu</i>   |
| Voc. } <i>O the</i>                 |               |                 |                |
| Gen. } <i>of the</i>                | <i>ovi</i>    | <i>carminis</i> | <i>cornus</i>  |
| Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>           | <i>ovo</i>    | <i>carmini</i>  | <i>cornu</i>   |
| Abl. } <i>by, with the, &amp;c.</i> | <i>ovo</i>    | <i>carminē</i>  | <i>cornu</i>   |

## Plur.

|                                     |               |                    |                  |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Nom. } <i>the</i>                   |               |                    |                  |
| Acc. } <i>the</i>                   | <i>ova</i>    | <i>carmina</i>     | <i>cornua</i>    |
| Voc. } <i>O the</i>                 |               |                    |                  |
| Gen. } <i>of the</i>                | <i>ovorum</i> | <i>carminum</i>    | <i>cornuum</i>   |
| Dat. } <i>to, for the</i>           | <i>ovis.</i>  | <i>carminibus.</i> | <i>cornibus.</i> |
| Abl. } <i>by, with the, &amp;c.</i> |               |                    |                  |

\* See note on page 16.

† See note on page 25.

## 8. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

|   |  |                            |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |
|---|--|----------------------------|----|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|---|--------------------------|---------------------------|-----|---|----|----|---------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| I.  | <table style="border: none; width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2. (<i>neut.</i>)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Bonus<br/>Boni,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">bonā,<br/>bonæ,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">bonum,<br/>boni,<br/>&amp;c.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Or,<br/>Unus,<br/>Unius,*<br/>Unī,<br/>Unum,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">unā,<br/><br/>unam,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">unum,<br/><br/>unum,<br/>&amp;c.</td> </tr> </table> | 2.                         | 1. | 2. ( <i>neut.</i> ) | Bonus<br>Boni,<br>&c. | bonā,<br>bonæ,<br>&c. | bonum,<br>boni,<br>&c. | Or,<br>Unus,<br>Unius,*<br>Unī,<br>Unum,<br>&c. | unā,<br><br>unam,<br>&c. | unum,<br><br>unum,<br>&c. | II. | <table style="border: none; width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2. (<i>neut.</i>)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">tenēr,<br/>tenēri,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">tenēra,<br/>tenēræ,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">tenērum,<br/>tenēri,<br/>&amp;c.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">Or,<br/>æger,<br/>ægri,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">ægrā,<br/>ægræ,<br/>&amp;c.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">ægrium,<br/>ægri,<br/>&amp;c.</td> </tr> </table> | 2. | 1. | 2. ( <i>neut.</i> ) | tenēr,<br>tenēri,<br>&c. | tenēra,<br>tenēræ,<br>&c. | tenērum,<br>tenēri,<br>&c. | Or,<br>æger,<br>ægri,<br>&c. | ægrā,<br>ægræ,<br>&c. | ægrium,<br>ægri,<br>&c. |
| 2.  | 1.   | 2. ( <i>neut.</i> )        |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |
| Bonus<br>Boni,<br>&c.                           | bonā,<br>bonæ,<br>&c.  | bonum,<br>boni,<br>&c.     |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |
| Or,<br>Unus,<br>Unius,*<br>Unī,<br>Unum,<br>&c. | unā,<br><br>unam,<br>&c.   | unum,<br><br>unum,<br>&c.  |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |
| 2.  | 1.   | 2. ( <i>neut.</i> )        |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |
| tenēr,<br>tenēri,<br>&c.                        | tenēra,<br>tenēræ,<br>&c.  | tenērum,<br>tenēri,<br>&c. |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |
| Or,<br>æger,<br>ægri,<br>&c.                    | ægrā,<br>ægræ,<br>&c.  | ægrium,<br>ægri,<br>&c.    |    |                     |                       |                       |                        |   |                          |                           |     |   |    |    |                     |                          |                           |                            |                              |                       |                         |

9. These adjectives are of the second declension in the *mas.* and *neut.*; of the first in the *fem.*

10. The following are declined like *unus*.

With *ius, i*, do nullus, ullus,  
Totus, solus, uter,  
Alter *but with shortened i*,  
Alius, unus, neuter.

11. Alius, *G.* aliūs, (= ali-ius.) Neut. aliud.  
Alter, *G.* alteriūs. ——— Uter, *G.* utriūs.

12.  $\text{ḡ}$  I of Gen. may be used *short* in poetry.

13. *Liber, prosper, tener, miser, asper*, with a few more, and adjectives in *fer, ger*, (from *fero, gero*), retain the *e*: the rest drop it.

## ADJECTIVES OF ONE AND TWO TERMINATIONS

(which are all of the *third* declension.)

14. Adjectives in *is*.—Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e*; Abl. *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; *G.* *ium*.

15. Comparatives in *or*.—Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us*; Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *a*; *G.* *um*.

16. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*, (except in *Nom. sing.*)

17. They have Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*, *G.* *ium*.

For participles abl. *e* }  
For adjectives abl. *i* } is the more common.

18. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of two and three terminations, are,—

|      | <i>Two Termin.</i> |          |             |           | <i>Comparatives.</i> |           |               |            | <i>One Termin.</i> |      |             |           |
|------|--------------------|----------|-------------|-----------|----------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|--------------------|------|-------------|-----------|
|      | S.                 |          | P.          |           | S.                   |           | P.            |            | S.                 |      | P.          |           |
|      | M.F.               | N.       | M.F.        | N.        | M.F.                 | N.        | M.F.          | N.         | M.F.               | (N.) | M.F.        | N.        |
| N.V. | <i>is</i>          | <i>e</i> | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> | <i>or</i>            | <i>ūs</i> | <i>ores</i>   | <i>ora</i> | <i>is</i>          |      | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> |
| G.   | <i>is</i>          |          | <i>ium</i>  |           | <i>oris</i>          |           | <i>orum</i>   |            | <i>i</i>           |      | <i>ium</i>  |           |
| D.   | <i>i</i>           |          | <i>ibus</i> |           | <i>ori</i>           |           | <i>oribus</i> |            | <i>i</i>           |      | <i>ibus</i> |           |
| Acc. | <i>em</i>          | <i>e</i> | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> | <i>orem</i>          | <i>us</i> | <i>ores</i>   | <i>ora</i> | <i>em as nom.</i>  |      | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> |
| Abl. | <i>i</i>           |          | <i>ibus</i> |           | <i>ore (ori)</i>     |           | <i>oribus</i> |            | <i>(e) or i</i>    |      | <i>ibus</i> |           |

\* *Solius* appears to have *ī*, though commonly considered as *long*.

19. An adjective must agree with its substantive in case, gender, and number.

## 20. EXAMPLES.

*Singular.*

|                              |                                 |                               |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| M.<br>( <i>A good boy.</i> ) | F.<br>( <i>A good mother.</i> ) | N.<br>( <i>A good work.</i> ) |
| N. bonus puer                | bona mater                      | bonum opus                    |
| G. boni pueri                | bonæ matris                     | boni opëris                   |
| D. bono puero                | bonæ matri                      | bono operi                    |
| A. bonum puerum              | bonam matrem                    | bonum opus                    |
| V. bone puer                 | bona mater                      | bonum opus                    |
| Ab. bono puero.              | bonā matre.                     | bono opere.                   |

*Plural.*

|                       |                          |                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| ( <i>Good boys.</i> ) | ( <i>Good mothers.</i> ) | ( <i>Good works.</i> ) |
| N. boni pueri         | bonæ matres              | bona opera             |
| G. bonorum puerorum   | bonarum matrum           | bonorum operum         |
| D. bonis pueris       | bonis matribus           | bonis operibus         |
| A. bonos pueros       | bonas matres             | bona opera             |
| V. boni pueri         | bonæ matres              | bona opera             |
| Ab. bonis pueris.     | bonis matribus.          | bonis operibus.        |

*Singular.*

|                           |                          |                         |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| ( <i>A green field.</i> ) | ( <i>A green herb.</i> ) | ( <i>Green grass.</i> ) |
| N. campus viridis         | herba viridis            | gramen viride           |
| G. campi viridis          | herbæ viridis            | graminis viridis        |
| D. campo viridi           | herbæ viridi             | gramini viridi          |
| A. campum viridem         | herbam viridem           | gramen viride           |
| Ab. campo viridi.         | herbā viridi.            | gramine viridi.         |

*Plural.*

|                       |                    |                       |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| N. campi virides      | herbæ virides      | gramina viridia       |
| G. camporum viriditum | herbarum viriditum | graminum viriditum    |
| D. campis viridibus   | herbis viridibus   | graminibus viridibus  |
| A. campos virides     | herbas virides     | gramina viridia       |
| Ab. campis viridibus. | herbis viridibus.  | graminibus viridibus. |

*Singular.*

|                        |                          |                           |
|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| ( <i>A bold man.</i> ) | ( <i>A bold woman.</i> ) | ( <i>A bold animal.</i> ) |
| N. audax vir           | audax femina             | audax animal              |
| G. audācis viri        | audācis feminæ           | audācis animalis          |
| D. audaci viro         | audāci feminæ            | audāci animalī            |
| A. audacem virum       | audacem feminam          | audax animal              |
| Ab. audaci viro.       | audāci feminā.           | audāci animalī.           |

*Plural.*

|                      |                    |                       |
|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| N. audaces viri      | audaces feminæ     | audacia animalia      |
| G. audacium virorum  | audacium feminarum | audacium animalium    |
| D. audacibus viris   | audacibus feminis  | audacibus animalibus  |
| A. audaces viros     | audaces feminas    | audacia animalia      |
| Ab. audacibus viris. | audacibus feminis. | audacibus animalibus. |

|                       |        |        |                          |       |
|-----------------------|--------|--------|--------------------------|-------|
| N. duo ( <i>two</i> ) | duæ    | duo    | N. tres ( <i>three</i> ) | tria  |
| G. duorum             | duarum | duorum | G. trium                 |       |
| D. duobus             | duabus | duobus | D. tribus                |       |
| Acc. duos (duo)       | duas   | duo.   | Acc. tres                | tria. |



21.

## THE VERB.

Terminations of the third persons of the Active Verb, &amp;c.\*

|     |                       | 1.                      | 2.     | 3.     | 4.      | Verb, to defend.   |
|-----|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------|--------|---------|--|
| (1) | Present,              | at,                     | et,    | it,    | it,     | { defends; is defend-<br>ing; does defend.<br>was defending.                                   |
|     | Imperfect,            | (R) ābat,               | ēbat,  | ēbat,  | iēbat,  | { (often defended; did<br>defend.)   |
|     | Future,               | (R) ābit,               | ēbit,  | et,    | iet,    | { shall or will defend.<br>defended; did defend;   |
|     | Perfect,              | (r) it,                 |        |        |         | { has defended.<br>had defended.   |
| (2) | Pluperfect,           | (r) ērat,               |        |        |         | { shall or will have de-<br>fended.  |
|     | Future perf.          | (r) ērit,               |        |        |         | { defend; do you de-<br>fend. [fend.<br>may (or should) de-<br>might, should, would<br>defend. |
|     | Imperat. (pers. 2. R) | ā,                      | ē,     | ē,     | ī,      | { may (or should) have<br>defended.<br>might, should, would<br>have defended.                  |
|     | Pres. subj.           | (R) et,                 | eat,   | at,    | iat,    | { to defend.<br>to have defended.<br>to be going (or about)<br>to defend.                      |
|     | Imperf. subj.         | (R) āret,               | ēret,  | ēret,  | īret,   | { of defending.<br>to defend.<br>defending. [defend.<br>going (or about) to                    |
|     | Perf. subj.           | (r) ērit,               |        |        |         | { (Passive Participles.)<br>defended; being de-<br>fended.                                     |
|     | Pluperf. subj.        | (r) isset,              |        |        |         | { to defend.   |
|     | Infin. Pres. Imp.     | (R) āre,                | ēre,   | ēre,   | īre,    |  |
|     | Infin. Perf. Plu.     | (r) isse,               |        |        |         |  |
|     | Infin. Future,        | part. in rus with esse, |        |        |         |  |
|     | Gerunds,              | (R) andi,               | endi,  | endi,  | iendi,  |  |
|     | Supine,               | (ρ) um,                 |        |        |         |  |
|     | Part. Pres.           | (R) ans,                | ens,   | ens,   | iens,   |  |
|     | Part. Fut.            | (ρ) ūrus,               |        |        |         |  |
|     |                       | (Passive Participles.)  |        |        |         |  |
|     | Past partic.          | (ρ) us,                 |        |        |         |  |
|     | Part. in dus,         | (R) andus,              | endus, | endus, | iendus, | { to defend.   |

☞ OBS. 1. *Shall*, in the first person, simply *foretells*; in the other persons, it *commands*. *Will*, in the first person, declares the *speaker's intention* in a positive manner; in the other persons, it simply *foretells*.

\* OBS. 2. The *Imperfect* is rendered by the *perf.* when it expresses *habits* or *repeated actions*.

\* OBS. 3. The pres. '*does defend*,' and the perf. '*did defend*,' are used after *negative words*, and in *questions* and *strong affirmations*.

\* OBS. 4. Remember that '*am come*' is perf. act.: '*is building*' pres. pass.: '*is built*' perfect pass.

\* OBS. 5. The *pres. subj.* is often to be rendered by *should, would*; and, in *questions*, by *can, shall, &c.*

\* OBS. 6. The *imperf. subj.* is sometimes to be rendered by *should have, would have*; and, in *questions*, by *could, &c.*

\* OBS. 7. In sentences with *if, when, until, &c.*, a *future* is often to be rendered by a *present*, and a *future perfect* by a *perfect*. This is when the verb of the principal sentence is *future*.

22.

## Terminations of the Persons.

|          |          | (Sing.)       |      |      | (Plur.) |       |  |
|----------|----------|---------------|------|------|---------|-------|--|
|          | 1.       | 2.            | 3.   | 1.   | 2.      | 3.    |  |
| Active,  | o, i, m, | s,            | t,   | mus, | tis,    | nt.   |  |
| Passive, | r,       | { ris,<br>re, | tur, | mur, | mīni,   | ntur. |  |

(1) This does not apply to the *Imperative*.

(2) *Perf. Indic. Act.* has 2 sing. and plur. *isti, istis*, respectively, and 3 plur. *ērunt* or *ēre*.

\* R, r, ρ, stand respectively for '*root of present*,' '*root of perfect*,' '*root of supine*.' In repeating the table, the pupil should always say *which root* the termination is to be added to. Thus: '*Pluperfect*; *root of perfect*; *it*.'

## 23. (ACTIVE VOICE.) INDICATIVE

PRESENT, [*defend; do defend; am defending.*]

|      |                 |     |     |       |       |       |
|------|-----------------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| am-  | ō, <sup>k</sup> | ās, | āt, | āmūs, | ātīs, | ant.  |
| mon- | eō,             | ēs, | ēt, | ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent.  |
| reg- | ō,              | īs, | īt, | īmūs, | ītīs, | unt.  |
| aud- | iō,             | īs, | īt, | īmūs, | ītīs, | iunt. |

IMPERFECT, (R) [*was defending; often, defended, or did defend.*]

|      |        |        |        |          |          |         |
|------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| am-  | ābam,  | ābās,  | ābāt,  | ābāmūs,  | ābātīs,  | ābant.  |
| mon- | ēbam,  | ēbās,  | ēbāt,  | ēbāmūs,  | ēbātīs,  | ēbant.  |
| reg- | ēbam,  | ēbās,  | ēbāt,  | ēbāmūs,  | ēbātīs,  | ēbant.  |
| aud- | iēbam, | iēbās, | iēbāt, | iēbāmūs, | iēbātīs, | iēbant. |

FUTURE, (R) [*shall or will defend.*]

|      |      |       |       |         |         |        |
|------|------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| am-  | ābō, | ābīs, | ābīt, | ābīmūs, | ābītīs, | ābunt. |
| mon- | ēbō, | ēbīs, | ēbīt, | ēbīmūs, | ēbītīs, | ēbunt. |
| reg- | am,  | ēs,   | ēt,   | ēmūs,   | ētīs,   | ent.   |
| aud- | iam, | iēs,  | iēt,  | iēmūs,  | iētīs,  | ient.  |

PERFECT, [*defended; did defend—have defended,\* (perf. def.)*]

|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |   |                           |
|---|---|----|-------|-----|-------|--------|---|---------------------------|
| amāv-<br>monu-<br>rex- (= regs)<br>audīv- | } | ī, | istī, | īt, | īmūs, | istīs, | } | ērun-<br>t,<br>or<br>ērē. |
|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |   |                           |
|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |   |                           |
|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |   |                           |

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*had defended.*]

|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|----------------------------------|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| amāv-<br>monu-<br>rex-<br>audīv- | } | ēram, | ērās, | ērāt, | ērāmūs, | ērātīs, | ērant. |
|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |

FUTURE PERFECT, (r) [*shall or will have defended.*]

|                                  |   |      |   |                      |   |       |   |                                       |   |                          |   |        |
|----------------------------------|---|------|---|----------------------|---|-------|---|---------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|---|--------|
| amāv-<br>monu-<br>rex-<br>audīv- | } | ēro, | { | ērīs,<br>or<br>ērīs, | } | ērīt, | { | ērīmūs, <sup>1</sup><br>or<br>ērīmūs, | } | ērītīs,<br>or<br>ērītīs, | } | ērint. |
|                                  |   |      |   |                      |   |       |   |                                       |   |                          |   |        |
|                                  |   |      |   |                      |   |       |   |                                       |   |                          |   |        |
|                                  |   |      |   |                      |   |       |   |                                       |   |                          |   |        |

## IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE, (R) [*defend;—do you defend.*]

|      |         |      |             |        |
|------|---------|------|-------------|--------|
|      | 2.      | 3.   | 2 pl.       | 3 pl.  |
| am-  | ā, āto, | āto, | ātē, ātōtē, | anto.  |
| mon- | ē, ēto, | ēto, | ētē, ētōtē, | ento.  |
| reg- | ē, īto, | īto, | ītē, ītōtē, | unto.  |
| aud- | ī, īto, | īto, | ītē, ītōtē, | iunto. |

<sup>k</sup> O of verbs is sometimes *short*. In the golden age, it first (after the comic writers) appears short in Ovid, *e. g.* in *nesciō, rependō, putō, estō*.

<sup>1</sup> See note, p. 118.

\* The perfect *definite* (perf. with *have*) is used of an action *done* in a present time,

## MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

(Obs. 𐬰𐬀 Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *o*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. Obs. The (e) after 2d person sing. means that the termination is *re* or *ris*.)

PRESENT, [*am defended—is building.*]

|      |      |          |       |       |        |         |
|------|------|----------|-------|-------|--------|---------|
| am-  | ōr,  | ārīs(e), | ātūr, | āmūr, | āmīnī, | antūr.  |
| mon- | eōr, | ērīs(e), | ētūr, | ēmūr, | ēmīnī, | entūr.  |
| reg- | ōr,  | ērīs(e), | ītūr, | īmūr, | īmīnī, | untūr.  |
| aud- | iōr, | īrīs(e), | ītūr, | īmūr, | īmīnī, | iuntūr. |

IMPERFECT, [*was defended\* (not strictly imperf.)—was building.*]

|      |        |             |          |          |           |           |
|------|--------|-------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| am-  | ābār,  | ābārīs(e),  | ābātūr,  | ābāmūr,  | ābāmīnī,  | ābantūr.  |
| mon- | ēbār,  | ēbārīs(e),  | ēbātūr,  | ēbāmūr,  | ēbāmīnī,  | ēbantūr.  |
| reg- | ēbār,  | ēbārīs(e),  | ēbātūr,  | ēbāmūr,  | ēbāmīnī,  | ēbantūr.  |
| aud- | iēbār, | iēbārīs(e), | iēbātūr, | iēbāmūr, | iēbāmīnī, | iēbantūr. |

FUTURE, [*shall or will be defended.*]

|      |       |            |         |         |          |          |
|------|-------|------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| am-  | ābōr, | ābērīs(e), | ābītūr, | ābīmūr, | ābīmīnī, | ābuntūr. |
| mon- | ēbōr, | ēbērīs(e), | ēbītūr, | ēbīmūr, | ēbīmīnī, | ēbuntūr. |
| reg- | ār,   | ērīs(e),   | ētūr,   | ēmūr,   | ēmīnī,   | entūr.   |
| aud- | iār,  | iērīs(e),  | iētūr,  | iēmūr,  | iēmīnī,  | ientūr.  |

PERFECT, [*was defended; have been defended—is built.*]

Made up of the *past partic.* with *sum*—(sometimes *fui*.)

PLUPERFECT, [*had been defended.*]

Made up of the *past partic.* and *eram*—(sometimes *fuëram*.)

FUTURE PERFECT, [*shall or will have been defended.*]

Made up of *past partic.* with *ëro*—(sometimes *fuëro*.)

## MOOD.

(R.) [*be defended: 2 sing. like Infin. act.*]

|      |       |       |        |         |         |
|------|-------|-------|--------|---------|---------|
| 2.   |       | 3.    | 2 pl.  |         | 3 pl.   |
| ārē, | ātōr, | ātōr, | āmīnī, | āmīnōr, | antōr.  |
| ērē, | ētōr, | ētōr, | ēmīnī, | ēmīnōr, | entōr.  |
| ērē, | ītōr, | ītōr, | īmīnī, | īmīnōr, | untōr.  |
| irē, | itōr, | itōr, | imīnī, | imīnōr, | iuntōr. |

(no matter of what length,) or *still continuing* in its completed state. *Am come* is the *perf. def.* of a neut. verb of motion.

\* 'Was being defended' is sometimes used, but is not a correct form.

## (ACTIVE VOICE.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT, (R) [*may, should defend.*]

|      |      |      |      |        |        |       |
|------|------|------|------|--------|--------|-------|
| am-  | em,  | ēs,  | ēt,  | ēmūs,  | ētīs,  | ent.  |
| mon- | eam, | eās, | eāt, | eāmūs, | eātīs, | eant. |
| reg- | am,  | ās,  | āt,  | āmūs,  | ātīs,  | ant.  |
| aud- | iam, | iās, | iāt, | iāmūs, | iātīs, | iant. |

IMPERFECT, (R) [*might, would, should defend.*]

|      |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|------|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| am-  | ārem, | ārēs, | ārēt, | ārēmūs, | ārētīs, | ārent. |
| mon- | ērem, | ērēs, | ērēt, | ērēmūs, | ērētīs, | ērent. |
| reg- | ěrem, | ěrēs, | ěrēt, | ěrēmūs, | ěrētīs, | ěrent. |
| aud- | īrem, | īrēs, | īrēt, | īrēmūs, | īrētīs, | īrent. |

PERFECT, (r) [*may, should have defended.*]

|        |         |                        |         |   |                            |          |
|--------|---------|------------------------|---------|---|----------------------------|----------|
| amāv-  | } ěrim, | { ěrīs,<br>or<br>ěrīs, | } ěrīt, | { ěrīmūs, <sup>1</sup><br>or<br>ěrīmūs, | } ěrītīs,<br>or<br>ěrītīs, | } ěrint. |
| monu-  |         |                        |         |   |                            |          |
| rex-   |         |                        |         |   |                            |          |
| audīv- |         |                        |         |   |                            |          |

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*might, should, would have defended.*]

|        |          |        |        |          |          |         |
|--------|----------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| amāv-  | } issem, | issēs, | issēt, | issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| monu-  |          |        |        |          |          |         |
| rex-   |          |        |        |          |          |         |
| audīv- |          |        |        |          |          |         |

## INFINITIVE

PRESENT, { (R) [*to defend: to be defending.*]  
 IMPERF. { 1. ārě, 2. ěrě, 3. ěrě, 4. ěrě.

PERFECT, } (r) [*to have defended.*]  
 PLUPERFECT, } isse.

FUTURE, [*to be going or about to defend.*]  
 Part. of fut. (in *rus*) with *esse*.

## PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

GERUNDS, (R) [*of, &c. defending.*]  
 andi, endi, endi, iendi.

SUPINE, (root of its own,) { [*to defend*—after verbs of *motion.*] um.  
 { [*to defend\**—after some adjectives.] u.

PARTIC. PRESENT, (R) [*defending.*]  
 ans, ens, ens, iens.

PARTIC. PERFECT, [*having defended.*]  
 None. [Supplied by *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.* or by *abl. absolute.*]

PARTIC. FUTURE, (ρ) [*going or about to defend.*] ūrus.

\* Often rendered, *to be defended.*

<sup>1</sup> The old grammarians are at variance respecting the quantity of *i* in *rimus, ritīs*, of *fut. perf.* and *perf. subj.* Poets use these syllables both as *long* and *short*, but

## MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT, [*may, should be defended.*]

|      |      |           |        |        |         |         |
|------|------|-----------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| am-  | ēr,  | ērīs(e),  | ētūr,  | ēmūr,  | ēmīnī,  | entūr.  |
| mon- | eār, | eārīs(e), | eātūr, | eāmūr, | eāmīnī, | eanūr.  |
| reg- | ār,  | ārīs(e),  | ātūr,  | āmūr,  | āmīnī,  | antūr.  |
| aud- | iār, | iārīs(e), | iātūr, | iāmūr, | iāmīnī, | iantūr. |

IMPERFECT, [*might, would, should be defended.*]

|      |       |            |         |         |          |          |
|------|-------|------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| am-  | ārēr, | ārērīs(e), | ārētūr, | ārēmūr, | ārēmīnī, | ārentūr. |
| mon- | ērēr, | ērērīs(e), | ērētūr, | ērēmūr, | ērēmīnī, | ērentūr. |
| reg- | ērēr, | ērērīs(e), | ērētūr, | ērēmūr, | ērēmīnī, | ērentūr. |
| aud- | irēr, | irērīs(e), | irētūr, | irēmūr, | irēmīnī, | irentūr. |

PERFECT, [*may, should have been defended.*]Past partic. with *sim*—(sometimes *fuērīm*.)PLUPERFECT, [*might, should, would have been defended.*]Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuissem*.)

## MOOD.

|          |   |                            |      |    |      |
|----------|---|----------------------------|------|----|------|
| PRESENT, | { | [ <i>to be defended.</i> ] |      |    |      |
| IMPERF.  |   | 1.                         | 2.   | 3. | 4.   |
|          |   | ārī,                       | ērī, | ī, | irī. |

PERFECT, { [*to have been defended.*]  
 PLUPERFECT, { Past partic. with *esse*—(sometimes *fuisse*.)

FUTURE, [*to be going or about to be defended.*]  
 Supine (in *um*) with *iri*.

## PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

{ PAST PARTIC. (*ρ*) { *defended.*  
 { *being defended.* } us.  
 { *having been defended.* }

PARTIC. FUTURE. (R.) (implying *duty, necessity, &c.*)  
 [*to be defended.*]

|        |        |        |         |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1.     | 2.     | 3.     | 4.      |
| andus, | endus, | endus, | iendus. |

the preponderance of usage appears to be in favor of *ī*, in both tenses. (Zumpt.)  
 Grotefend marks *érimus*, &c.



24. Some verbs of the third end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative*, *infinitive*, and *imperfect subjunctive* of both voices.

|     |          |            |            |             |
|-----|----------|------------|------------|-------------|
|     |          | Imperat.   | Infin.     | Impf. Subj. |
| (a) | Active,  | suscipio,  | suscīpe,   | suscipere,  |
|     | Passive, | suscipior, | suscipere, | suscipi,    |
|     |          |            |            | suscipere.  |

(b) In the present of both voices they retain the *i* in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons :

|          |            |             |           |                               |
|----------|------------|-------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| Active,  | suscipio,  | suscīpis,   | it, &c.   | 3 plur. <i>suscipiunt</i> .   |
| Passive, | suscipior, | suscipēris, | itur, &c. | 3 plur. <i>suscipiuntur</i> . |

Esse, *to be*.

INDICATIVE.

|  |         |            |        |  |                |          |         |
|--|---------|------------|--------|--|----------------|----------|---------|
| Present ( <i>I am</i> .)                   | sum,    | ēs,        | est,   |  | sūmus,         | estis,   | sunt.   |
| Imperf. ( <i>I was</i> .)                  | eram,   | eras,      | erat,  |  | erāmus,        | erātis,  | erant.  |
| Fut. ( <i>I shall or will be</i> .)        | ero,    | eris,      | erit,  |  | erīmus,        | erītis,  | erunt.  |
| Imperat. ( <i>be thou</i> .)               |         | ēs, (esto) | esto,  |  | este, (estote) | sunto.   |         |
| Subj. Pres. ( <i>I may be</i> .)           | sim,    | sīs,       | sit,   |  | sīmus,         | sītis,   | sint.   |
| Subj. Imp. ( <i>I might, &amp;c. be</i> .) | essem,* | esses,     | esset, |  | essēmus,       | essētis, | essent. |

Infinitive: *esse*: *perf. fuisse*: *fut. fore or futurum esse*.

*Perf. fui, (was, have been.)* Tenses from *r.*, regular.

## 25. PRONOUNS.

### (Personal Pronouns.)

|     |               |        |       |         |         |                    |         |
|-----|---------------|--------|-------|---------|---------|--------------------|---------|
|     | Sing.         |        |       |         | Plur.   |                    |         |
|     | N.            | G.     | D.    | A. Abl. | N. Acc. | Gen.               | D. Abl. |
| (a) | ego,          | mei,   | mihi, | me,     | nos,    | nostrum or nostri, | nōbis.  |
|     | tu,           | tui,   | tibi, | te,     | vos,    | vestrum or vestri, | vōbis.  |
|     | Sing. & Plur. | } sui, | sibi, | se      |         |                    |         |
|     |               |        |       | (sese.) |         |                    |         |

(Possessive Pronouns. All regular, except that for *mee*, (voc. masc.,) *mi* is used.)

|     |         |       |      |       |  |  |         |                   |
|-----|---------|-------|------|-------|--|--|---------|-------------------|
| (b) | (mine)  | meus, | mea, | meum, |  | noster,  | nostra, | nostrum, (ours.)  |
|     | (thine) | tuus, | tua, | tuum. |  | vester,  | vestra, | vestrum, (yours.) |
|     |         | suus, | sua, | suum, |  | { <i>his, hers, its</i> ; or <i>his own, &amp;c.</i> |         |                   |
|     |         |       |      |       |  | { <i>theirs</i> ; or <i>their own, &amp;c.</i>       |         |                   |

### (c) (Demonstrative.)

[*Hic*, (*this, † the latter*;) *ille*, (*that, the former*;) *is*, (*that, antecedent to qui*;) *ipse*, (*-self, myself, thyself, himself, &c.*;) *iste*, (*that, that of yours*;) *idem*, (*the same.*)]

|       |    |      |        |       |       |      |
|-------|----|------|--------|-------|-------|------|
|       |    | N.   | G.     | D.    | Acc.  | Abl. |
| Sing. | m. | hic, | hujus, | huic, | hunc, | hoc, |
|       | f. | hæc, |        |       | hanc, | hac, |
|       | n. | hoc, |        |       | hoc,  | hoc. |
| Plur. | m. | hi,  | horum, | his,  | hos,  | his. |
|       | f. | hæ,  | harum, |       | has,  |      |
|       | n. | hæc, | horum, |       | hæc,  |      |

\* *Forem, fores, &c.*, is also used as imperf. subj.

† The pronouns that mean '*that*' become *he, she, it, &c.*, when they agree with *man, woman, or thing* understood.

|              | N.   | G.                                  | D.      | Acc.  | Abl.                                  |
|--------------|--|-------------------------------------|---------|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>m.</i> is,<br><i>f.</i> ea,<br><i>n.</i> id,          | ejus,                               | ei,     | eum,<br>eam,<br>id,<br>eos,<br>eas,<br>eā,                  | eo,<br>eā,<br>eo.<br>iis.†            |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>m.</i> ii,*<br><i>f.</i> eæ,<br><i>n.</i> eā,         | eorum,<br>earum,<br>eorum,          | iis,†   |   |                                       |
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>m.</i> ille,<br><i>f.</i> illa,<br><i>n.</i> illud,   | illius,                             | illi,   | illum,<br>illam,<br>illud,<br>illos,<br>illas,<br>illā,     | illo,<br>illā,<br>illo.<br>illis.     |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>m.</i> illi,<br><i>f.</i> illæ,<br><i>n.</i> illā,    | illorum,<br>illarum,<br>illorum,    | illis,  |   |                                       |
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>m.</i> iste,<br><i>f.</i> ista,<br><i>n.</i> istud,   | istius,                             | isti,   | istum,<br>istam,<br>istud,<br>istos,<br>istas,<br>istā,     | isto,<br>istā,<br>isto.<br>istis.     |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>m.</i> isti,<br><i>f.</i> istæ,<br><i>n.</i> istā,    | istorum,<br>istarum,<br>istorum,    | istis,  |   |                                       |
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>m.</i> ipse,<br><i>f.</i> ipsa,<br><i>n.</i> ipsum,   | ipsius,                             | ipsi,   | ipsum,<br>ipsam,<br>ipsum,<br>ipsos,<br>ipsas,<br>ipsā,     | ipso,<br>ipsā,<br>ispo.<br>ipsis.     |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>m.</i> ipsi,<br><i>f.</i> ipsæ,<br><i>n.</i> ipsā,    | ipsorum,<br>ipsum,<br>ipsorum,      | ipsis,  |   |                                       |
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>m.</i> idem,<br><i>f.</i> eādem,<br><i>n.</i> idem,   | eiusdem,                            | eidem,  | eundem,<br>eandem,<br>idem,<br>eosdem,<br>easdem,<br>eādem, | eodem,<br>eādem,<br>eodem.<br>iisdem. |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>m.</i> iidem,<br><i>f.</i> eādem,<br><i>n.</i> eādem, | eorundem,<br>earundem,<br>eorundem, | iisdem, |   |                                       |

## (d) (Relative.)

|              |   |                               |         |   |                                 |
|--------------|---|-------------------------------|---------|---|---------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>m.</i> qui,<br><i>f.</i> quæ,<br><i>n.</i> quod, | cujus,                        | cui,    | quem,<br>quam,<br>quod,<br>quos,<br>quas,<br>quæ, | quo,<br>quā,<br>quo.<br>quibus. |
| <i>Plur.</i> | <i>m.</i> qui,<br><i>f.</i> quæ,<br><i>n.</i> quæ,  | quorum,<br>quarum,<br>quorum, | quibus, |   |                                 |

(e) The interrogative pronoun is,

- { (1) quis, quæ, quid, (generally used as a *substantive*.)  
(2) qui, quæ, quod, (————— an *adjective*.)

The second is gone through exactly like the relative ; and so is the first, with the exception, of course, of the neut. sing. *quid*.

(f) *Quis* is also 'any,' (indefinite ;) the fem. sing. and neut. pl. are then sometimes *qua*.

\* Or *ei*.† Or *eis*.

(g) The compounds of *qui*, *quis*, follow the declension of those pronouns. In the following list the appended syllables in italics are added unaltered to the case of *quis* or *qui*.

|                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| Qui-dam,                   | a certain one.  |
| Qui-vis, }<br>Qui-libet, } | any you please.   |
| Quis-quam,                 | any; any single one, (when it is denied that there are any.)  |
| Aliquis,                   | { any; some, (though not much or many: ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod. Neut. pl. -qua.)             |
| Quis-piam,                 | some, somebody.   |
| Quis-que,                  | each. (Unusquisque, each one.)  |
| Quisquis,                  | whoever, (used without a substantive: neut. <i>quicquid</i> .)                                      |
| Qui-cunque,                | whoever; whatever, (used with a subst.)   |
| Ecquis?                    | { (does) any? (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always <i>ecqua</i> . It expects the answer none.) |
| Uter,                      | which, (of two:) uterque, each, (utraque, utrumque; G. -iusque.)                                    |
| Alius, (a, ud),            | another; other. (The first of two <i>alii</i> 's is some.)  |
| Alter,                     | the other, (of two;) another; one more.   |
| Talis,                     | such; antecedent to <i>qualis</i> , (as.)   |
| Tantus,                    | so great; antecedent to <i>quantus</i> , (as.)  |
| Tot,                       | so many; antecedent to <i>quot</i> , (as.)  |

¶ The compounds of *quis* have generally

Neuter *quid* when used *without* } a substantive.  
Neuter *quod* when used *with* }

¶ The *quid* is generally written *quic* before *q*. Thus, *quicquam*, (*quidquam*), 'any thing;' *quicquid*, (*quidquid*), 'whatever.'

## 26. IRREGULAR VERBS.

(1.) Possum, Infin. *posse*, I am able; I can.

|               |                           |         |         |           |           |          |
|---------------|---------------------------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| Pres. Ind.    | possum,                   | potes,  | potest, | possūmus, | potestis, | possunt. |
| Pres. Subj.   | possim,                   | possis, | possit, | possimus, | possitis, | possint. |
| Imp. Subj.    | possem,                   | posses, | posset, | possemus, | possetis, | possent. |
| Root of Perf. | potu. (See page 56, 149.) |         |         |           |           |          |
| Imp. Ind.     | poteram. Fut. potero.     |         |         |           |           |          |

(2.) { Völo, am willing; wish.  
Nölo, am unwilling, (for non volo.)  
Mälo, had rather, (for magis or mage volo.)

|               |         |          |           |                            |             |         |
|---------------|---------|----------|-----------|----------------------------|-------------|---------|
| Pres.         | völo,   | vis,     | vult,     | volūmus,                   | vultis,     | volunt. |
|               | nölo,   | non vis, | non vult, | nolūmus,                   | non vultis, | nolunt. |
|               | mälo,   | mavis,   | mavult,   | malūmus,                   | mavultis,   | malunt. |
| Subj. Pres.   | vëlim,  | nölim,   | mälim.    | (is, it: imus, itis, int.) |             |         |
| Subj. Imperf. | vellēm, | nollem,  | malle.    | (es, et: emus, etis, ent.) |             |         |
| Infinitive,   | velle,  | nolle,   | malle.    |                            |             |         |

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles, (except *volens*, *nolens*,) nor imperative, except *noli*, *nolito*,—*nolite*.

Noli putare (be unwilling to think =) do not think.

(3.) Fero,\* tūli, lātum, to bear. *Infin.* ferre. *Imper.* fer; ferte.

*Pres. Indic.* fero, fers, fert; ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.

*Imp. Subj.* ferrem, ferres, &c. [*Pass.* ferret.]

☞ Fertur for feritur; ferris for fereris.

(4.) Fio, become; am made or done: partly used as *pass.* of facio.

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has *fīērem* for *fīrem*, and an irregular *infin.* *fieri*. It has no *perf.*; *factus sum, eram, &c.*, being in use.

*Imperf. Subj.* fīērem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.

*Infin. Pres.* fīeri.

(5.) Eo, (ivi, itum, ire,) go.

*Pres. Indic.* eo, is, it; imus, itis, eunt.

*Pres. Subj.* eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.

*Partic.* iens, euntis, eunti, &c.

*Gerunds,* eundi, eundo, eundum.

*Imp.* ibam. *Fut.* ibo. *Imper.* i. *Imperf. Subj.* irem. *Perfect,* ivi: in the compounds generally ii.

(6.) { Queo, am able, can. | These verbs are conjugated like *eo*, as far as  
 { Nequeo, am unable, cannot. | they are in use: 3 plur. *queunt, nequeunt*.  
 Subj. pres. *queam, nequeam, &c.*

## 27. SUBSTANTIVES.

|              |   |
|--------------|---|
| Deus,        | { God. <i>Voc.</i> Deus. <i>Nom.</i> and <i>Dat. plur.</i> generally take <i>i</i><br>{ for <i>e.</i> Dii or Dī; Diis or Dīs.               |
| Jupiter,     | Jupiter. G. Jovis, &c.  |
| Bos,         | bull, cow, ox. G. bovis; G. pl. boum; D. bōbus or būbus.  |
| Respublica,  | { republic, commonwealth. G. <i>reipublicæ</i> , &c.; the substan-<br>{ tive <i>res</i> , and the adj. <i>publica</i> in agreement with it. |
| Jusjurandum, | { oath. G. <i>jurisjurandi</i> , &c., <i>jus</i> neut., with the partic. <i>juran-</i><br>{ dum in agreement.                               |
| Vis,         | strength: —, vim, vi: vīres, vīrium, vīribus.   |
| Vir,         | man: vīri, &c., as 2d: vīri, vīrōrum, &c.   |

☞ *Aër, æther*, have generally the acc. *æra, æthëra*.

## 28. GENDERS.

I. DECL. FEMININE, except names of men and designations of men.

II. DECL. MASCULINE, except *um* neuter.

But *alvus, humus, vannus, colus*,  
 Though belonging to the second,  
 Are feminine: and *virus*, (juice,)  
 And *pelagus* are neuter reckoned:  
*Vulgus* mostly goes with these,  
 But may be masculine, if you please.†

\* This verb has *fers, fert, fertur*, for *feris, ferit, feritur*; and drops *c* whenever it would stand before two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem, ferre, &c.*, for *ferērem, ferēre*.

† See note on page 67.



## III. DECL. (A.) Masculine terminations :

{ er, or, os,  
 { es *increasing*,  
 { o, when not *do, go, io*.

- er) Neuters many end in *er*,  
 As *verber, iter, uber, ver* ;  
 With plants in *er*, as *acer* and *papaver*,  
 With many others : add to these *cadaver*.
- or) Of neuters, there are four in *or*,  
*Marmor, æquor, ador, cor* :  
 A feminine is *arbor*, (tree,)  
 A second you will hardly see.
- os) Neuters are *chaos, melos, os* :  
 But feminine are *cos* and *dos*.
- es) Of *es* increasing, neuter *æs*  
 Is found : and feminine are these ;  
*Quies, merces, merges, seges*,  
 With *compes, inquires, and teges*.
- o) *Caro* is *flesh* : remember this  
 As *feminini generis*.

## (B.) Feminine terminations :

{ do, go, io,  
 { as, is, aus, x,  
 { es *not increasing*,  
 { s *impure*.

- do, go, io) *Cardo, ordo, and papilio*,  
 With *ligo, margo, vespertilio*,  
 Are masculine : add to these *quaternio*,  
*Pugio, stellio, scipio, ternio*.\*
- as) Three are the *masculines* in *as*,  
*As, adamas, and elēphas* :  
 Three are the *neuters* too in *as*,  
*Vas, (vasis.)* with *nefas* and *fas*.
- is) Many words that end in *is*  
 Are *masculini generis* :  
*Panis, piscis, crinis, finis*,  
*Ignis, lapis, pulvis, cinis*,  
*Orbis, amnis, and canalis*,  
*Sanguis, unguis, glis, annalis*,  
*Fascis, axis, funis, ensis*,  
*Fustis, vectis, vomis, mensis*,  
*Vermis, torris, cucūmis*,  
*Postis, follis, mugilis*,  
*Cassis, cossis, callis, collis*,  
 Add *sentis* ;—*caulis* too, and *pollis*.
- x) *Calix, and codex, (codicis.)*  
 Are *masculini generis* :  
 So *vertex, cortex*, and the same the case is  
 With *pollex, grex*, and with *thorax, (thorācis.)*
- s impure) *Dodrans, quadrans, mons, and pons*,  
 Are *masculine*, with *rudens, dens, and fons* :  
 Add *adeps, (fat.)* with *confluens*,  
*Oriens, hydrops, occidens*.

---

\* With a few more : such as *unio, (pearl.) optio, (a military substitute,) &c.* : those which are *abstract nouns* are all feminine.



## (C.) Neuter termination :

{ c, a, t, e, l, n,  
 { ar, ur, us.

- l) *Sol*, the sun that brightly shines,  
*Mugil* and *sal* are masculines.
- n) The masculines that end in *n*  
 Are *pecten*, *lien*, *ren*, and *splen*.
- ur) These are the masculines in *ur*,  
*Vultur*, *turtur*, *furfur*, *fur*.
- us) Two names of beasts that end in *us*  
 Are masculine, *lepus* (hare) and *mus*.
- These too are feminines in *us*,  
*Juventus*, *virtus*, *servitus*.\*  
*Tellus*, *senectus*, *incus*, *salus*,  
 With *pecus*, (*pecūdis*), and *palus*.

IV. DECL. *Us* masculine : *u* neuter.

- us) But these are feminines in *us*,  
*Tribus*, *acus*, *porticus*,  
*Domus*, *nurus*, *socrus*, *anus*,  
*Idus*, (*iduum*), and *manus*.

## V. DECL. Feminine. But,

*Meridies* is masculine ; and so  
 Is *dies* in plurali numero.†

OBS. ☞ Some nouns have a particular gender, from their *meaning*.

The names of *males*, of *rivers*, *months*, and *winds*,  
 Remember well ; for masculine are these.

The names of *females*, *countries*, *islands*, *towns*,  
 Are feminine ; so are the names of *trees*.

But to these rules there are many exceptions : for instance, the names of  
*trees*, *plants*, &c., in *er* of the third are *neuter*, (see *rule* under A :) and the  
*plural* names of towns in *i* are *masc.* ; those in *um*, and in *er*, *ur*, of the  
*third*, are *neut*.

\* With the exception of these four words, nouns in *tus*, *sus*, without *personal*  
 meaning, are mostly nouns of the *fourth decl.* from the *supine* root.

† In the singular it is commonly *masc.* ; seldom feminine, except when a *fixed*  
*day* is spoken of, or when it is equivalent to a *length of time*.

## 29. TABLE OF GENDERS.

Obs.—*Mas.* exceptions are in *capitals*; *fem.* in the common type; *neut.* in *italics*.

| <i>Mas. terminations.</i>  |  | THIRD DECLENSION.   |   | <i>Neut. terminations.</i>  |  |
|--|--|---|---|---|--|
| ER, OR, OS,<br>ES <i>increasing</i> ,<br>O, <i>when not do, go, io.</i>  |  | <i>Fem. terminations.</i><br>do, go, io, <sup>1</sup><br>as, is, aus, x,<br>es <i>not increasing</i> ,<br>s <i>impure</i> . |   | c, a, t, e, l, n,<br>ar, ur, us.  |  |
| Principal Exceptions.  |  | Principal Exceptions.   |   | Principal Exceptions.   |  |
| er) <i>cadaver</i><br><i>iter</i><br><i>papaver</i><br><i>tuber.</i>   | <i>uber</i><br><i>ver</i><br><i>verber</i>                   | do } ORDO<br>go } CARDO<br>io } LIGO<br>MARGO (f) <sup>3</sup>  | is) AMNIS LAPIS<br>ANGUIS (f) MENSIS<br>AXIS ORBIS<br>CASSIS (is) PANIS<br>COLLIS PISCIS<br>CINIS POSTIS<br>CRINIS PULVIS<br>ENSIS SANGUIS<br>FASCIS TORRIS<br>FINIS (f) UNGUIS<br>FOLLIS VECTIS<br>FUNIS VERMIS<br>IGNIS | l) SAL<br>SOL<br>n) LIEN<br>REN<br>SPLEN<br>PECTEN  |  |
| or) arbor<br><i>æquor</i><br><i>marmor</i><br><i>cor.</i>  |  | x) CALIX<br>CODEX<br>CORTEX<br>GREX<br>POLLEX<br>THORAX<br>VERTEX   |   | ur) FUR<br>FURFUR<br>TURTUR<br>VULTUR   |  |
| es) <i>compes</i><br><i>merces</i><br><i>merges</i><br><i>quies</i>  | <i>requies</i><br><i>seges</i><br><i>teges</i><br><i>æs.</i> |   |   | us) <i>pecus</i> (ūdis)<br><i>incūs</i> <sup>5</sup><br><i>juventūs</i><br><i>palūs</i><br><i>salūs</i><br>LEPUS<br>MUS<br><i>grus</i> (m)<br><i>sus</i> (m). | <i>senectūs</i><br><i>servitūs</i><br><i>tellūs</i><br><i>virtūs</i> |
| os) <i>cos</i><br><i>dos</i><br><i>os</i> (ossis)<br><i>os</i> (oris)<br><sup>2</sup> <i>chaos</i><br><sup>2</sup> <i>epos</i><br><sup>2</sup> <i>melos</i>                  |  |   |   |   |  |
| o) <i>caro</i><br><sup>2</sup> <i>echo</i>   |  |   |   |   |  |
| FIRST DECLENSION.  |  | es, pari- }<br>syll. } ACINACES   |   | FOURTH DECLENSION.  |  |
| <i>Fem.</i> except names of <i>men.</i>  |  | s } MONS<br>im- } PONS<br>pure } FONS<br>DENS<br>QUADRANS<br>RUDENS<br><sup>2</sup> HYDROPS                                 | (us.)<br><i>Mas.</i> except<br><i>acus</i><br><i>idus</i> (pl.)<br><i>manus</i><br><i>porticus</i><br><i>tribus</i> .   |   |  |
| SECOND DECLENSION.   |  | as) AS<br>ELEPHAS<br><i>vas</i> ( <i>vasis</i> )<br><i>fas</i><br><i>nefas</i> .  |   |   |  |
| (us, ER. <sup>4</sup> )<br><i>Mas.</i> —except<br><i>alvus</i><br><i>domus</i><br><i>humus</i><br><i>vannus</i><br><i>pelagus</i><br><i>virus</i><br><i>vulgus</i> (also m.) |  |   |   | FIFTH DECLENSION.<br><i>Fem.</i> except<br><i>DIES</i> (also <i>f.</i> in <i>sing.</i> )<br><i>MERIDIES</i> .   |  |

<sup>1</sup> Words in *io*, that are not *abstract nouns*, are *mas.* e. g. PAPILO, PUGIO, SCIPIO, SEPTENTRIO, STELLIO, UNIO, (pearl,) with the numeral nouns TERNIO, QUATERNIO, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Properly Greek words.

<sup>3</sup> Those with (f), (m), are sometimes *fem.* and *mas.* respectively.

<sup>4</sup> *Greek nouns* in *ōdus*, (*exōdus*, *methōdus*, &c.,) with *dialectus*, *diphthongus*, &c., are *fem.*

<sup>5</sup> Hence *us* with *long u* is a *fem.* termination.

These rules depend on the terminations; but some words have a particular gender from their *meaning*.

A. The names of *male persons*, and *winds*, are masculine.

B. The names of *female persons*, *countries*, and *islands*, *towns*, *plants*, and *trees*, are fem.

(a) But of *towns*, these are *mas*.

(1) Some in *o*, (CROTO, HIPPO, NARBO, SULMO, FRUSINO;) and

(2) all plurals in *i*: VEII, DELPHI.

These are neuter:

(1) All in *um*, or plur. *a*:

(2) those in *e* or *ur* of the third: *Præneste*, *Tibur*.

(b) Of *trees* and *plants*,

(1) Those in *er* (and many in *us*) of the second are *mas* :

(2) those in *er*, *ur* of the third are *neut*.: *acer*, *siler*, *robur*, &c.

C. Several are *common*: *comes*, *conjux*, *custos*, *dux*, *hospes*, *juvenis*, *parens*, *princeps*, *sacerdos*, &c.

### 30. DECLENSIONS OF THE ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

|                               |         | Nom.                                  | Genitive.                                  | Accusative.                   |
|-------------------------------|---------|---------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Pers. 1.                      | { Sing. | <i>I</i>                              | <i>my</i> or <i>mine</i>                   | <i>me</i>                     |
|                               | { Plur. | <i>we</i>                             | <i>our</i> or <i>ours</i>                  | <i>us</i> .                   |
| Pers. 2.                      | { Sing. | <i>thou</i>                           | <i>thy</i> or <i>thine</i>                 | <i>thee</i>                   |
|                               | { Plur. | { <i>ye</i> }<br>{ <i>you</i> }       | <i>your</i> or <i>yours</i>                | <i>you</i> .                  |
| Pers. 3.                      | { Sing. | { mas.                                | <i>he</i>                                  | <i>his</i>                    |
|                               |         | { fem.                                | <i>she</i>                                 | <i>her</i> or <i>hers</i>     |
|                               | { Plur. | { neut.                               | <i>it</i>                                  | <i>its</i>                    |
|                               |         |                                       | <i>they</i>                                | <i>their</i> or <i>theirs</i> |
| Relative and Interrogative. } |         | <i>who</i>                            | <i>whose</i>                               | <i>whom</i>                   |
|                               |         | <i>which</i>                          | { <i>of which</i> }<br>{ <i>or whose</i> } | <i>which</i> .                |
| Demonstrative. }              |         | { <i>this</i> , plural <i>these</i> . |  |                               |
|                               |         | { <i>that</i> , plural <i>those</i> . |  |                               |

### 31. TABLE OF THE ENGLISH VERB.

#### Indicative Mood.

|                   | ACTIVE VOICE.  | PASSIVE VOICE.                                     |
|-------------------|--|--|
| Present.          | { <i>I defend</i> }<br>{ <i>I am defending</i> }<br>{ <i>I do defend</i> } | ..... <i>I am defended</i> .                       |
| Imperfect.        | <i>I was defending</i> .....   | (none.)  |
| Perfect-Definite. | <i>I have defended</i> .....   | <i>I have been defended</i> .                      |
| Perfect.          | { <i>I defended</i> }<br>{ <i>I did defend</i> }                           | ..... <i>I was defended</i> .                      |
| Pluperfect.       | <i>I had defended</i> .....  | <i>I had been defended</i> .                       |
| Future.           | <i>I shall</i> or <i>will defend</i> .....                                 | <i>I shall</i> or <i>will be defended</i> .        |
| Future-Perfect.   | <i>I shall</i> or <i>will have defended</i> .....                          | <i>I shall</i> or <i>will have been defended</i> . |

## Imperative Mood.

| ACTIVE VOICE.         |                     | PASSIVE VOICE.           |                        |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| S.                    | P.                  | S.                       | P.                     |
| <i>Defend (thou.)</i> | <i>Defend (ye.)</i> | <i>Be thou defended.</i> | <i>Be ye defended.</i> |

## Forms that often answer to the Tenses of the Latin Subjunctive.

|             |  |   |
|-------------|--|---|
| Present.    | <i>I may or can defend . . . . .</i>                   | <i>I may or can be defended.</i>                            |
| Imperfect.  | <i>I might, could, should, or would defend.</i>        | <i>I might, could, should, or would be defended.</i>        |
| Perfect.    | <i>I may or can have defended.</i>                     | <i>I may or can have been defended.</i>                     |
| Pluperfect. | <i>I might, could, should, or would have defended.</i> | <i>I might, could, should, or would have been defended.</i> |

## Infinitive Mood.

|          |   |   |
|----------|---|---|
| Present. | <i>To defend . . . . .</i>                    | <i>To be defended.</i>                      |
| Perfect. | <i>To have defended . . . . .</i>             | <i>To have been defended.</i>               |
| Future.  | <i>To be going or about to defend . . . .</i> | <i>To be going or about to be defended.</i> |

## Participles.

|          |   |  |
|----------|---|--|
| Present. | <i>Defending . . . . .</i>                | { <i>Defended, (past part.,)</i><br><i>Being defended.</i> |
| Perfect. | <i>Having defended . . . . .</i>          | <i>Having been defended.</i>                               |
| Future.  | <i>Going or about to defend . . . . .</i> | <i>Going or about to be defended.</i>                      |

## 32. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

|         |                |                |           |
|---------|----------------|----------------|-----------|
| bonus,  | <i>good,</i>   | melior,        | optimus.  |
| malus,  | <i>bad,</i>    | pejor,         | pessimus. |
| parvus, | <i>little,</i> | minor,         | minimus.  |
| magnus, | <i>great,</i>  | major,         | maximus.  |
| multus, | <i>much,</i>   | plus, (neut.,) | plurimus. |

*Nom. Acc. Plus. Gen. pluris, (no other case in sing.) Plural, N. A. plures, plura. Gen. plurium. D. pluribus.*

## 33. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.

Absque, a, ab, abs, and de,  
Coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,  
Tenus, sine, pro, and præ.

## QUESTIONS.

---

[Those on the *Syntax* have an asterisk before them.]

N. B. The pupil should learn the Terminations of Substantives, (p. 111,) and of the 3d persons of the Verb, (p. 115,) as soon as possible.

---

1. Give the accusative endings. (9.)
2. Repeat the terminations of the third persons. (32.)
3. Give the genitive endings. (40.)
- \*4. In what case is the *price* or *value* put sometimes? [*The Gen.* 47.]
5. What are the endings of nouns expressing *virtues, vices, dispositions, &c.*? (47, h.)
- \*6. By what case are some *neuter* adjectives followed? *What* adjectives are so used? (*Ans.* Indefinite numerals.)  
What substantive is so used? (*Ans.* The indeclinable substantive '*nihil*,' 'nothing,' 56.)
- \*7. What often stands as the nominative case to the verb? (60, n.)  
When an *infinitive mood* (or *sentence*) is the nominative case to the verb, where is it placed in *English*? (*Ans.* After the verb, being represented by the pronoun '*it*,' which is not to be translated. 60, n.)  
In what *gender* is the adjective then put? (*Ans.* In the *neuter*.)
8. How is the *acc. plur.* got from the *acc. sing.*? What must '*um*' be turned into, to give the *acc. plur.* of the second? What is always the termination of the *acc. neut. plural*? (64.)
9. By what *prepositions* is the *dat.* rendered? [67. N. B. These prepositions are called *signs* of the *dative*.]  
a) What are the signs of the *ablative*? (67.)  
b) By what preposition is an *ablative* of time rendered? (*Ans.* By *in* or *at*.)  
c) How is an *acc.* of time rendered? (*Ans.* By '*for*,' or without any *prepos.* 72.)
10. To what declension do adjectives in '*is*' belong? [*The third.*] Of what *gender* are they? [*m. and f.*] What is their *neuter* form? [*e.*] Is their *ablative e* or *i*? [*i.*]<sup>a</sup>
- \*11. In what case do you put the name of a town *where* a thing was done? When is the town *where* put in the *abl.*? When in the *gen.*? (72, s.)
- \*12. In what case do you put a noun of time, when it answers to *when*? [In the *abl.*]

---

<sup>a</sup> The manner of declining the other adjectives of the *third* is explained at p. 113, 14.





- \*35. How is the want of the *perfect* participle† *active* supplied? (*Ans.* By *quum* with the *perf.* or *pluperf.* of the subjunctive; or by the *abl. absol.*.)
- \*36. What is the *ablative absolute*? \*Is the substantive of the *abl. absol.* to be rendered by a *preposition*? [No.] \*By what participle *governing* its noun may the *ablative absolute* often be rendered, when the participle is of the *perf. pass.*? [By the *partic.* with 'having'.]
- \*37. What substantives follow the rules for the proper names of towns? [*Ans.* *Domus* and *rus*: also the genitives *humi* and *militiæ*. See 33.]
38. Where is 'cum' placed with the *ablatives* of personal pronouns? [*After them and joined to them*: *mecum*, &c.]
- \*39. What case do adjectives signifying *desire*, &c., govern? [*Gen.*]
- \*41. In what case is the *agent* or *person by whom* put? (*Ans.* In the *ablative* with *a* or *ab*: but after the *part.* in *dus*, in the *dative*.)
42. Mention some words, &c., after which the *gerund* or *part.* in *dus* follows in the *dat.* [*Utilis, profitable* or *good for*; *inutilis, unprofitable*; *idoneus, fit for*; *tempus impendēre, to spend time in or on*; *vacāre, to have leisure*; *studere, aim at*; *devote one's self to.*]
- \*43. How is what is in *form* the *pass. infin.* to be translated after 'is,' 'are'? [*Ans.* By the *part.* in *dus*.]
- \*44. What verbs govern the *dative*? (191.) \*How is the *pluperf. indic.* to be translated after 'if'? [By *plup. subj.*]
45. In the infinitives made up of *two words*, is the participle to agree with its substantive or not? (*Ans.* To agree.) Is the word in *um* in the *fut. infin. pass.* a participle? What is it? [*Supine.*]  
Can it then agree with the substantive? [*No.*]
- \*46. Must you look for the *antecedent* to the relative in the relative sentence or not? [*Generally not.*] \*Is the *case* of the relative determined by a word in its own, or in the preceding sentence?
47. Can the verbs that govern the *dative* be used in the *first* or *second* persons in the *passive*? In what person only can they be used in the *passive*? [*In the third sing.*]
48. How is the present *infin.* rendered after *licuit*? *oportuit*? [*Generally by the perf.*]
- \*49. What verbs govern the *gen.*? (244.)
- \*50. \_\_\_\_\_ *abl.*? (221, 245.)
- \*51. What cases do *pœnitet*, *pu-det*, &c., take after them? (*Ans.* An *accusative* of the *person, feeling*; a *gen.* of the *thing* or *person* about which the emotion is felt.)
- \*52. How is 'must' translated? [By the *part.* in *dus* with the *verb esse*.] When is the *part.* in *dus* to agree with the *subst.*? [When the *verb* governs the *accusative*.] When the *verb* does not govern the *acc.*, in what case, &c., must the participle stand? [In the *nom. neut.*, and then *esse* will always stand in the *third singular*.]

Go through *prodesse*, (129, p. 51.)

\_\_\_\_\_ *occidēre, killing*, (175, p. 63.)

\_\_\_\_\_ *epistōla scribenda*, (181, p. 64.)

\_\_\_\_\_ *scribendum est mihi*, (207, p. 71.)

\_\_\_\_\_ *mihi creditur*, (237, p. 80.)

\_\_\_\_\_ *mihi ire licet*, (261, p. 86.)

\_\_\_\_\_ *me ire oportet*, (269, p. 88.)

Mention the participles of *loquor*, (242, p. 82.)§

† What English participle answers to the *partic.* in *ns*? [*Part.* in *ng.*] in *us*? [*Part.* in *d, t, or n.*] *rus*? [*Going to—*; or, *about to—*.] in *ndus*? [*Form of inf. pass.*]

‡ The *subst.*, that is, which is governed by the *verb* that follows *must*. The *nom.* before *must* becomes the *dat.* after *esse*, but is often omitted.

§ The *fut. inf.* of a deponent *verb* is the *fut. in rus* with *esse*.



## DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

---

### ENGLISH.

1. To think nothing of.
2. To value highly.<sup>a</sup>
3. { To think little of.<sup>b</sup>  
  { To hold cheap.
4. *No* stability.  
  *Some* time.  
  *Much* good.  
  *How much* pleasure.

☞ Hence 'no,' 'some,' (when they denote quantity, not number,) 'much,' 'how much,' are to be translated by 'nihil,' 'aliquid,' 'multum,' 'quantum,' followed by the *gen.*

5. He did it *unwillingly*.
6. *It* is disgraceful to lie.
7. It is the *part*

|                        |   |                |
|------------------------|---|----------------|
| _____ <i>duty</i>      | } | of a wise man. |
| _____ <i>business</i>  |   |                |
| _____ <i>mark</i>      |   |                |
| _____ <i>character</i> |   |                |
8. To condemn a man *to death*.
9. As many as *possible*.
 

|                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| _____ <i>he can or could</i> .       | } |
| _____ <i>The greatest possible</i> . |   |
| _____ <i>he can or could</i> .       | } |

10. On the *top* of the mountain.  
  In the *middle* of the water.
11. Is going to bed.
12. It is hard *to say*.
13. While they were (are, &c.) play-  
  ing.

### LATIN.

- To reckon at nothing, (*nihili ducere* or *facere*.)  
 To value at a high price, (*magni aestimare*.)  
 To value at a little price, (*parvi aestimare*.)  
*Nothing* of stability, (*nihil stabilitatis*.)  
*Something* of time, (*aliquid temporis*.)  
*Much* of good, (*multum boni*.)  
*How much* of pleasure, (*quantum voluptatis*.)

He, *unwilling*, did it.  
 To lie is disgraceful.

It is of a wise man.

To condemn a man of the head.

As the most, (*quam plurimi*.)

As the greatest, (*quam maximus*.)

[That is, 'as many as the most,' 'as great as greatest,' &c.]

On the mountain *highest*.

In the water *middle*, (in *summo monte*;  
in *mediâ aquâ*.)

Is going to *lie down*, (*cubitum*, sup.)

It is hard *in saying*, (*difficile est dictu*;  
supine.)

During playing, (*inter ludendum*.)

---

<sup>a</sup> To value *very highly*, (*maximi aestimare*.)

<sup>b</sup> The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the 'of,' for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.



## ENGLISH.

14. The intention of writing a letter.  
 15. We must cultivate virtue.  
 16. Caius must write.  
 17. We must believe Caius.  
 18. The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,

He comes to see the games.

19. (a) I may go.  
 (b) I might *have gone*.  
 20. (a) I ought to go.  
 (b) I ought to have gone.

## LATIN.

The intention of a letter *to-be-written*,  
 (scribendæ epistolæ.)  
 Virtue is *to-be-cultivated*, (*colenda est*  
 virtus.)  
 It is *to-be-written* by Caius, (*Caio scriben-*  
*dum est.*)  
 It is *to-be-believed* to Caius, (*credendum*  
*est Caio.*)

- { (a) Venit ut ludos spectet.  
 (b) Venit ludos spectatum, (*sup.*)  
 (c) Venit ludos spectaturus.  
 (d) Venit ad ludos spectandos.  
 To which add,  
 (e) Venit causâ (*for the purpose*) ludõ-  
 rum spectandõrum; and  
 (f) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be  
 used:

He sent ambassadors, *qui pacem petē-*  
*rent*, (*to sue for peace.*)

Mihi ire licet, (*it is permitted to me to go.*)  
 Mihi ire licuit, (*it was permitted to me to*  
*go.*)  
 Me ire oportet.  
 Me ire oportuit.



PART II.

A SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.



A

SECOND LATIN BOOK

AND

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR.

BY

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M. A.,

RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND LATE FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

CAREFULLY REVISED AND CORRECTED

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A. M.

FROM THE THIRD LONDON EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & CO., 200 BROADWAY.

PHILADELPHIA:

G. S. APPLETON, 148 CHESNUT-STREET.

CINCINNATI: DERBY, BRADLEY, & COMPANY, 113 MAIN-STREET.

M DCCC XLVI.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1846, by

D. APPLETON & COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court for the Southern District of New York.

## PREFACE

TO THE FIRST ENGLISH EDITION.

---

THE following work is founded on Augustus Grotefend's *Lateinisches Elementarbuch*, from which the Latin portions are taken without alteration.

The work is a Practical Latin Grammar, with Reading Lessons and Exercises. It assumes that the pupil can decline and conjugate with accuracy; at which stage of his progress it is of great importance that he should be made acquainted with the principles on which derivative words are formed. For this purpose I have given a list of the principal terminations employed, and added to the earlier Exercises Vocabularies, in which the principles of *Word-building* are practically applied.

T. K. A.

[Consult Preface to Part I., or First Latin Book.]

J. A. S.



# INDEX

CONTENTS

CHAPTER I. THE HISTORY OF THE  
INDIAN NATIONS IN AMERICA  
CHAPTER II. THE PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY  
OF THE CONTINENT  
CHAPTER III. THE CLIMATE AND  
VEGETATION OF THE CONTINENT  
CHAPTER IV. THE ANIMALS OF THE  
CONTINENT  
CHAPTER V. THE INDIAN NATIONS  
OF THE CONTINENT  
CHAPTER VI. THE HISTORY OF THE  
DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT OF  
THE CONTINENT  
CHAPTER VII. THE HISTORY OF THE  
WAR OF INDEPENDENCE  
CHAPTER VIII. THE HISTORY OF THE  
REPUBLICAN GOVERNMENT  
CHAPTER IX. THE HISTORY OF THE  
CIVIL WAR  
CHAPTER X. THE HISTORY OF THE  
RECONSTRUCTION  
CHAPTER XI. THE HISTORY OF THE  
PRESENT TIMES

APPENDIX

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## PART II.

---

|   | Page       |
|---|------------|
| I. SKETCH OF LATIN ACCIDENCE .....              | 143        |
| § 1. Terminations of Substantives .....         | <i>ib.</i> |
| 2. First Declension .....                       | 144        |
| 3. Second do. ....                              | 145        |
| 4. Third do. ....                               | 147        |
| 5. Fourth do. ....                              | 148        |
| 6. Fifth do. ....                               | <i>ib.</i> |
| 7. Adjectives of Three Terminations .....       | 149        |
| 8. do. One and Two .....                        | <i>ib.</i> |
| 9. Declension of the First three Numerals ..... | 151        |
| 10. The Verb.....                               | 152        |
| Terminations of the Third Person Singular ..... | <i>ib.</i> |
| do. do. Persons .....                           | 153        |
| Table of the Verb .....                         | 154        |
| Verbs of the Third in <i>io</i> .....           | 158        |
| 11. First Conjugation of Verbs.....             | 159        |
| 12. Second do. do. ....                         | <i>ib.</i> |
| 13. Third do. do. ....                          | 161        |
| 14. Fourth do. do.....                          | 164        |
| Neuter Passive Verbs.....                       | <i>ib.</i> |
| 15. The Verb <i>Esse</i> .....                  | <i>ib.</i> |
| 16. Irregular Verbs .....                       | 165        |
| 17. Deponent do.....                            | 166        |
| 18. Impersonal do.....                          | 167        |
| 19. Irregular Substantives .....                | 168        |
| 20. Pronouns .....                              | <i>ib.</i> |

|   | Page       |
|---|------------|
| 21. Comparison of Adjectives .....  | 170        |
| 22. Various Vocabularies .....  | 171        |
| Adjectives in <i>er, is, e</i> .....  | <i>ib.</i> |
| Adverbs of Place .....  | <i>ib.</i> |
| “ Time .....  | 172        |
| “ Order .....   | <i>ib.</i> |
| The Numerals .....  | <i>ib.</i> |
| Prepositions governing Ablative .....   | 173        |
| Genders .....   | 174        |
| Principles of Word-Building .....   | <i>ib.</i> |
| II. EXERCISES .....   | 179        |
| III. READING LESSONS .....  | 229        |
| IV. VOCABULARIES ON THE EXERCISES .....   | 239        |
| V. QUESTIONS ON THE LATIN ACCIDENCE .....   | 258        |
| VI. QUESTIONS ON LATIN SYNTAX, (including Answers, and the principal Rules in Latin from the Eton Grammar.) ..... | 265        |
| VII. CAUTIONS .....   | 288        |
| VIII. DISTINCTION OF SYNONYMES .....  | 289        |
| Appendix I.—Verbs with Dative, &c. ....   | 290        |
| “ II.—Greek Nouns, &c. ....   | 291        |
| “ III.—Conjunctions .....   | 292        |
| Latin Index .....   | 295        |
| English-Latin Index .....   | 318        |

---

#### EXPLANATION OF ABBREVIATIONS.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| S. refers to the Rules of Syntax ..... | 265 |
| C. “ Cautions .....                    | 288 |
| Syn. “ Synonymes distinguished .....   | 289 |

# I. SKETCH OF LATIN ACCIDENCE.

## § 1. TERMINATIONS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

| <i>Sing.</i>     | I.   | II.    | <i>neut.</i> | III.                         | IV.    | <i>neut.</i>   | V.   |
|------------------|------|--------|--------------|------------------------------|--------|----------------|------|
| 1. N.            | ă    | ŭs, ěr | um           | <i>various.</i> <sup>1</sup> | ŭs     | u <sup>2</sup> | es   |
| G.               | æ    | ī      |              | īs                           | ŭs     |                | ei   |
| D.               | æ    | ō      |              | ī                            | uī     |                | ei   |
| Acc.             | am   | um     | um           | em (im)                      | um     | u              | em   |
| Abl.             | ā    | ō      |              | ě (ī)                        | ŭ      |                | ě    |
| <br><i>Plur.</i> |      |        |              |                              |        |                |      |
| N.               | æ    | ī      | ă            | ēs                           | ŭs     | uă             | ēs   |
| G.               | ārum | ōrum   |              | um <i>or</i> ium             | uum    |                | ōrum |
| D. Abl.          | īs   | īs     |              | ībŭs                         | { ĩbŭs | { ũbŭs         | ěbŭs |
| Acc.             | ās   | ōs     | ă            | ēs                           | ŭs     | uă             | ēs.  |

☞ OBS. In neuters the Acc. is like the Nom., and both in the plur. end in ā.

2. The Vocative is always like the nominative, except in nouns in *us* of the second, which make V. ě. Proper names in *ius*, with *filius*, *genius*, contract *ie* into *i*.

3. In the third, *vis*, with *sitis*, *tussis*, *amussis*, and a few more, have Acc. *im*, Abl. *i* only.

*Febris, puppis, secūris, turris, &c.*, prefer *im*, *i*.  
Neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, have Abl. *i*, N. plur. *ia*, G. plur. *ium*.

4. Besides the neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, the following classes of words generally make G. plur. *ium*:

<sup>1</sup> In repeating the Table, let the pupil say, "Nom. various, generally not containing the unaltered root."

<sup>2</sup> It may be considered certain, that the gen. of neuters in *u* was *us*. (See note, First Latin Book, p. 16.)

- (a) Nouns in *es, is, er*, not increasing in the Gen.  
 (b) Nouns in *s, x*, after a consonant, except words of more than one syllable in *ps*.  
 (c) Monosyllables.  
 (d) National names in *as, is*, that make their genitives in *ātis, itis*, respectively.

## EXCEPTIONS.

- (e) *But vates, proles, juvĕnis, senex, canis,*  
*Take um; with pater, frater, mater, panis.*
- (f) Of monosyllables, the following, with a few more,<sup>1</sup> take *um* :

Dux, grex,  
 Vox, lex,  
 Pes, prex,  
 Fur, rex,  
 Mos, fraus,  
 Flos, laus.

5. The fourth declension is a *contracted* form of the third declension: G. *ũis, ũs*. Abl. *ũĕ, ũ, &c*. The dat. is often *u*, (for *ui*.)

6. The following words of the *fourth* have Abl. *ũbus* :

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,  
*Et tribus, et partus; specus adde, veruque, pecuque.*

7. In the fifth declension, *e* of G. and D. is *long*, if it follows a vowel; *short*, if it follows a consonant, (*faciĕi, fidĕi*.)

## § 2. FIRST DECLENSION.

## GENDER.

8. Nouns of this declension are feminine, with the exception of a few names of *men* and *designations of men*, which are masculine; as, *poĕta*,<sup>2</sup> a poet; *agricōla*, a husbandman.

---

The following lines give a more complete list:

*ren, fur, and lar, with æs, dux, fraus, and dos,*  
*grus, laus, and pes, with sus, crux, fax, and mos;*  
 Add *grex* with *bos* and *flos*; add *fæx* and *frux*,  
*lex, prex, and rex, with crus, and vox and nux.*

<sup>2</sup> The two dots over the *e* are a *separation-mark*, (*diæresis*), meaning that the two vowels are to be pronounced separately. The *e* is long.



|                |   |   |                            |
|----------------|---|---|----------------------------|
| 9. terra ..... | earth, land.  | lana .....  | wool.                      |
| āqua .....     | water.  | libra .....   | a balance.                 |
| aquila .....   | an eagle.   | lingua .....  | tongue.                    |
| arēna .....    | sand.   | lītera, a letter; līteræ, plur. a letter, (i. e. an epistle,) literature. |                            |
| barba .....    | the beard.  | lūna .....  | the moon.                  |
| catēna .....   | a chain.  | mōra .....  | delay.                     |
| cēra .....     | wax.  | Mūsa .....  | Muse; goddess of learning. |
| copia .....    | plenty.   | patria .....  | country.                   |
| corōna .....   | crown.  | pecunia .....   | money.                     |
| culpa .....    | a fault.  | pœna .....  | a punishment.              |
| cura .....     | care.   | porta .....   | a gate.                    |
| fēmina .....   | a woman.  | præda .....   | booty, plunder.            |
| farīna .....   | meal.   | rīpa .....  | bank.                      |
| flamma .....   | flame.  | rōta .....  | a wheel.                   |
| forma .....    | form, beauty.                                       | sāgitta .....   | arrow.                     |
| galea .....    | helmet.   | stella .....  | a star.                    |
| gratia .....   | (1) agreeableness, elegance, (2) favor, (3) thanks. | turba .....   | tumult, a crowd.           |
| hasta .....    | spear.  | vacca .....   | a cow.                     |
| hora .....     | hour.   | via .....   | way.                       |
| insūla .....   | island.   | umbra .....   | shade.                     |
| ira .....      | anger.  | unda .....  | wave.                      |
| lacryma .....  | a tear.   |   |                            |

10. The following words are plurals with a singular meaning:—

*Divitiæ*, riches; *tenēbræ*, darkness; *līteræ*, a letter, (in the sense of an epistle); *nundinæ*, a market or fair; *nuptiæ*, a wedding.

Also, some names of towns:—

*Athēnæ*, Athens; *Syracūsæ*, Syracuse; *Thēbæ*, Thebes.

### § 3. SECOND DECLENSION.

11. In nouns in *er* of this declension, the whole nominative is the *root*; but most of them throw away the *e*: as, *Magister*, *magistri*, &c., not *magisteri*.

*Puer*, boy; *gener*, son-in-law; *socer*, father-in-law; *Liber*, Bacchus; *libēri*, children: with *adulter*, and those in *fer*, *ger*, &c., retain the *e*.

12. Nouns in *us*, *er* of this declension are masculine: except—

(1) Feminine:

|             |              |              |                |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| alvus ..... | belly.       | humus .....  | ground.        |
| domus ..... | house, home. | vannus ..... | winnowing fan. |

(2) Neuter:

*virus*, juice, poison. *pelagus*, sea. *vulgus*, [also mas.] common people

Obs. This list does not contain the names of *females* and *female designations*; nor those of trees, of which many are feminine.

|                                     |  |   |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| 13. <i>ācervus</i> . . . . .        | <i>heap.</i>   | <i>ancients used to write on this inner rind.</i> |
| <i>āger</i> . . . . .               | <i>field.</i>  | <i>līnum</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>agnus</i> . . . . .              | <i>lamb.</i>   | <i>lōcus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>āmīcus</i> . . . . .             | <i>a friend.</i>                                     | [ <i>pl. loci and loca.</i> ]                     |
| <i>angūlus</i> . . . . .            | <i>corner.</i>                                       | <i>lūdus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>animus</i> . . . . .             | <i>mind.</i>   | <i>marītus</i> . . . . .                          |
| <i>annus</i> . . . . .              | <i>year.</i>   | <i>mendīcus</i> . . . . .                         |
| <i>arbīter</i> . . . . .            | <i>an umpire.</i>                                    | <i>mōdus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>asīnus</i> . . . . .             | <i>an ass.</i>                                       | <i>morbus</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>astrum</i> . . . . .             | <i>constellation.</i>                                | <i>mundus</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>āvus</i> . . . . .               | <i>grandfather.</i>                                  | <i>mūr</i> . . . . .                              |
| <i>bellum</i> . . . . .             | <i>war.</i>  | <i>nāsus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>cancer</i> . . . . .             | <i>a crab.</i>                                       | <i>nīdus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>cāper</i> . . . . .              | <i>a goat.</i>                                       | <i>nōdus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>cāpillus</i> . . . . .           | <i>the hair of the human head; a hair.</i>           | <i>nūmērus</i> . . . . .                          |
| <i>cælum</i> . . . . .              | <i>heaven.</i>                                       | <i>nummus</i> . . . . .                           |
| [ <i>plur. cæli.</i> ]              |  | <i>nuntius</i> . . . . .                          |
| <i>cumūlus</i> . . . . .            | <i>heap.</i>   | <i>ōculus</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>Deus</i> <sup>1</sup> . . . . .  | <i>God.</i>  | <i>plumbum</i> . . . . .                          |
| <i>digītus</i> . . . . .            | <i>finger, toe.</i>                                  | <i>pōpūlus</i> . . . . .                          |
| <i>domīnus</i> . . . . .            | <i>a master, a lord.</i>                             | <i>prētium</i> . . . . .                          |
| <i>dōmus</i> <sup>2</sup> . . . . . | <i>a house, home.</i>                                | <i>rādīus</i> . . . . .                           |
| (partly of decl. 4.)                |  | <i>rāmus</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>dōnum</i> . . . . .              | <i>gift.</i>   | <i>scopūlus</i> . . . . .                         |
| <i>ēquus</i> . . . . .              | <i>a horse.</i>                                      | <i>servus</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>ferrum</i> . . . . .             | <i>iron.</i>   | <i>socius</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>filīus</i> . . . . .             | <i>a son.</i>  | <i>somnus</i> . . . . .                           |
| ( <i>voc. fili.</i> <sup>3</sup> )  |  | <i>taurus</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>fōcus</i> . . . . .              | <i>hearth.</i>                                       | <i>tēlum</i> . . . . .                            |
| <i>fōlium</i> . . . . .             | <i>leaf.</i>   | <i>termīnus</i> . . . . .                         |
| <i>fūmus</i> . . . . .              | <i>smoke.</i>  | <i>ventus</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>glādīus</i> . . . . .            | <i>a sword.</i>                                      | <i>verbum</i> . . . . .                           |
| <i>hāmus</i> . . . . .              | <i>hook.</i>   | <i>vestigium</i> . . . . .                        |
| <i>hortus</i> . . . . .             | <i>a garden.</i>                                     | <i>vir</i> <sup>4</sup> . . . . .                 |
| <i>jūgum</i> . . . . .              | <i>a yoke.</i>                                       |   |
| <i>lētum</i> . . . . .              | <i>death.</i>  |   |
| <i>liber</i> . . . . .              | <i>the inner bark of a tree; a book. Because the</i> |   |

#### 14. (*Plural words with sing. meaning.*)

|   |                |                        |                      |
|---|----------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>castra</i> . . . . .                   | <i>a camp.</i> | <i>fasti</i> . . . . . | <i>the calendar.</i> |
| And the towns <i>Gabii, Veii, &amp;c.</i> |                |                        |                      |

<sup>1</sup> *Voc. sing. Deus*; plur. nom. *Dii, Di*; dat. abl. *Diis, Dis*.

<sup>2</sup> *Gen. domi, (at home;)* *domūs, (of a house;)* *dat. domo and domui*; *acc. domum*; *voc. domus*; *abl. domo.*—*Plur. domus*; *gen. domorum and domuum*; *dat. and abl. domibus*; *acc. domos and domus*.

<sup>3</sup> So proper names in *ius*: *Virgili, Pompei*, from *Virgilius, Pompejus*. *Meus* has *voc. mas. mi*.

<sup>4</sup> This word must be distinguished from *vis*, strength:

|             |              |              |  |               |                 |                 |               |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|--|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>vis,</i> | <i>vim,</i>  | <i>vī,</i>   |  | <i>vīres,</i> | <i>virium,</i>  | <i>viribus,</i> | <i>vires.</i> |
| <i>vir,</i> | <i>vīri,</i> | <i>viro,</i> |  | <i>vīri,</i>  | <i>virorum,</i> | <i>viris,</i>   | <i>viros.</i> |

## § 4. THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENDER OF THE THIRD.

15. The following are the masculine terminations :

ER, OR, OS, ES, when the gen. increases; and any termination in *o*, except *do, go, io*.

16. The following are the feminine terminations :

*do, go, io, as, is, aus, x, es* not increasing in the *genitive, s* impure.

17. The other terminations are neuter : that is,

*c, a, t, e, l,<sup>1</sup> nar, ur, us.*

(For the exceptions, see Table of Genders, Appendix to First Latin Book, p. 126.)

|   |   |
|---|---|
| 18. <i>āēr, aēris<sup>2</sup></i> ..... <i>the lower air.</i> | <i>hospēs, hospītis, c.</i> ..... <i>a host,</i>  |
| <i>æther, ēris<sup>2</sup></i> ..... <i>the upper and</i>     | <i>a guest.</i>                                   |
| <i>purē air.</i>  | <i>ignis, m.</i> ..... <i>fire.</i>               |
| <i>arbor, ōris, f.</i> ..... <i>tree.</i>                     | <i>īter, itinēris, n.</i> ..... <i>a journey,</i> |
| <i>āpis, [g. pl. ium and um,].</i> <i>a bee.</i>              | <i>a road.</i>                                    |
| <i>āvis</i> ..... <i>bird.</i>                                | <i>jūvēnis</i> ..... <i>a young man.</i>          |
| <i>cālor, ōris</i> ..... <i>heat.</i>                         | <i>hostis, c.</i> ..... <i>an enemy.</i>          |
| <i>calx, calcis</i> ..... <i>lime; the heel.</i>              | <i>index, indīcis</i> ..... <i>an informer,</i>   |
| <i>cāput, cāpītis</i> ..... <i>head.</i>                      | <i>a sign.</i>                                    |
| <i>carbo, ōnis<sup>3</sup></i> ..... <i>coal.<sup>2</sup></i> | <i>laus, laudis</i> ..... <i>praise.</i>          |
| <i>carcer, ēris</i> ..... <i>a prison.</i>                    | <i>lāpis, īdis, m.</i> ..... <i>a stone.</i>      |
| <i>cāro, carnis, f.</i> ..... <i>flesh.</i>                   | <i>lātus, ēris</i> ..... <i>side.</i>             |
| <i>cīnis, cinēris, m.</i> ..... <i>ashes.</i>                 | <i>legio, ōnis</i> <i>a body of Roman sol-</i>    |
| <i>cīvis, c.</i> ..... <i>a citizen.</i>                      | <i>diers; 6000 men, and 300 horse.</i>            |
| <i>cīvitas, ātis</i> ..... <i>a state.</i>                    | <i>lex, lēgis</i> ..... <i>law.</i>               |
| <i>classis</i> ..... <i>a class, a fleet.</i>                 | <i>lis, litis</i> ..... <i>strife.</i>            |
| <i>cor, cordis, n.</i> ..... <i>heart.</i>                    | <i>lūmen, īnis</i> ..... <i>light.</i>            |
| <i>corpus, corpōris</i> ..... <i>body.</i>                    | <i>lux, lūcis</i> ..... <i>light.</i>             |
| <i>crīmen, īnis</i> ..... <i>a crime, a charge.</i>           | <i>māre</i> ..... <i>sea.</i>                     |
| <i>crux, crūcis</i> ..... <i>a cross.</i>                     | <i>māter, matris</i> ..... <i>mother.</i>         |
| <i>custos, ōdis</i> ..... <i>a keeper.</i>                    | <i>frāter, fratris</i> ..... <i>brother.</i>      |
| <i>dens, dentis, m.</i> ..... <i>a tooth.</i>                 | <i>pāter, patris</i> ..... <i>father.</i>         |
| <i>fæx, fæcis</i> ..... <i>dregs.</i>                         | <i>mens, mentis</i> ..... <i>mind.</i>            |
| <i>dōlor, ōris</i> ..... <i>pain, sorrow.</i>                 | <i>merx, mercis</i> ..... <i>merchandise.</i>     |
| <i>febris</i> ..... <i>a fever.</i>                           | <i>mīlēs, mīlītis</i> ..... <i>a soldier.</i>     |
| <i>fīnis, m. f.</i> ..... <i>end.</i>                         | <i>mons, montis, m.</i> ..... <i>mountain.</i>    |
| <i>flos, flōris</i> ..... <i>a flower.</i>                    | <i>mors, mortis</i> ..... <i>death.</i>           |
| <i>fons, fontis, m.</i> ..... <i>fountain.</i>                | <i>mūnus, munēris</i> ..... <i>a gift.</i>        |
| <i>foedus, ēris</i> ..... <i>a treaty.</i>                    | <i>nāvis</i> ..... <i>a ship.</i>                 |
| <i>frīgus, frīgōris</i> ..... <i>cold.</i>                    | <i>nōmen, īnis</i> ..... <i>name.</i>             |
| <i>fūnus, ēris</i> ..... <i>a funeral, death.</i>             | <i>nox, noctis</i> ..... <i>night.</i>            |
| <i>frons, frontis</i> ..... <i>forehead.</i>                  | <i>ōnus, onēris</i> ..... <i>a burden.</i>        |
| <i>grex, grēgis, m.</i> ..... <i>flock.</i>                   | <i>ōpus, opēris</i> ..... <i>work.</i>            |
| <i>jūdex, īcis</i> ..... <i>a judge.</i>                      | <i>os, oris, n.</i> ..... <i>mouth.</i>           |
| <i>hæres, herēdis</i> ..... <i>an heir.</i>                   | <i>os, ossis, n.</i> ..... <i>bone.</i>           |

<sup>1</sup> These letters are contained in the word *cattle*.

<sup>2</sup> These words have mostly the Greek acc. in *ā*: *aērā, ætherā,*

<sup>3</sup> Properly, *a dead, extinguished coal.*

|   |                 |                                |                       |
|---|-----------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| pastor, ōris . . . . .                                  | a shepherd.     | sanguis, sanguīnis, m. . . . . | blood.                |
| pax, pācis . . . . .                                    | peace.          | semen, īnis . . . . .          | seed.                 |
| pes, pēdis . . . . .                                    | a foot.         | tempus, ōris . . . . .         | time.                 |
| pondus, ēris . . . . .                                  | weight.         | testis, c. . . . .             | a witness.            |
| pons, pontis, m. . . . .                                | bridge.         | tīmor, ōris . . . . .          | fear.                 |
| pulvis, ēris, m. . . . .                                | dust.           | urbs, urbis . . . . .          | city.                 |
| quies, ētis, f. . . . .                                 | rest, quiet.    | uxor, ōris . . . . .           | a wife.               |
| rādix, radīcis . . . . .                                | root.           | venter, ventris . . . . .      | the belly.            |
| requies, (gen. ētis and ei: acc.<br>requiem) f. . . . . | rest.           | vesper, ēris . . . . .         | the evening.          |
| rūs, rūris . . . . .                                    | country.        | vōluntas, ātis . . . . .       | will,<br>inclination. |
| salūs, salūtis, f. . . . .                              | safety, health. | voluptas, ātis . . . . .       | pleasure.             |

### § 5. FOURTH DECLENSION.

#### GENDER.

19. Nouns in *us* of the Fourth are masculine, except these feminines :

|                       |           |                    |          |
|-----------------------|-----------|--------------------|----------|
| acus . . . . .        | needle.   | mānus . . . . .    | hand.    |
| Idus, (pl.) . . . . . | the Ides. | portīcus . . . . . | portico. |

20. This declension is really a contracted form of the third :

gen. gradūis, *gradūs* ; acc. gradūem, *gradum* ; abl. gradue, *gradū*, &c.

|                     |           |                   |                  |
|---------------------|-----------|-------------------|------------------|
| 21. cornu . . . . . | horn.     | lācus . . . . .   | lake.            |
| gēlu . . . . .      | ice.      | fīcus . . . . .   | fig.             |
| gēnu . . . . .      | the knee. | grādus . . . . .  | a step ; degree. |
| mānus, f. . . . .   | hand.     | quercus . . . . . | oak.             |
| portus . . . . .    | a port.   | victus . . . . .  | food             |
| passus . . . . .    | a pace.   |                   |                  |

### § 6. FIFTH DECLENSION.

22. REM. The *e* of the gen. is *long*, when it follows a *vowel* ; *short*, when it follows a *consonant* ; *rēi, fidēi, faciēi*.\*

#### GENDER.

23. All nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dies* ; which is masculine or feminine in the singular ; *masculine only* in the plural. Its compound *meridies* (noon) is masculine.

|                    |          |                   |                   |
|--------------------|----------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 24. dies . . . . . | day.     | species . . . . . | appearance, form. |
| fīdes . . . . .    | faith.   | spes . . . . .    | hope.             |
| res . . . . .      | a thing. |                   |                   |

\* See note, First Latin Book, p. 25.



## § 7. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS,

in { *us, a, um,*  
*er, a, um.*

25. In the *mas.* and *neut.* these adjectives are declined like substantives of the *second declension*; in the *fem.* like substantives of the first declension.

26. A few make the gen. in *ius* and the dat. in *i* for all genders.

## 27. Terminations :

|      | Sing. |    |    | Plur. |      |      | A few are declined thus : |    |    |
|------|-------|----|----|-------|------|------|---------------------------|----|----|
|      | 2     | 1  | 2  | 2     | 1    | 2    | us                        | a  | um |
| Nom. | us    | a  | um | i     | æ    | ã    | ius                       |    |    |
| Gen. | i     | æ  | i  | orum  | arum | orum |                           |    |    |
| Dat. | o     | æ  | o  | is    |      |      | i                         |    |    |
| Acc. | um    | am | um | os    | as   | a    | um                        | am | um |
| Voc. | e     | a  | um | i     | æ    | a    | e                         | a  | um |
| Abl. | o     | ã  | o  | is    |      |      | o                         | ã  | o. |

## 28. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS.

| I.  | 2.                       | 1.                        | 2. ( <i>neut.</i> )          | II.                       | 2.                         | 1.                         | 2. ( <i>neut.</i> )        |
|---|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
|   | Bõnus<br>Bõni,<br>&c.    | bõnä,<br>bõnæ,<br>&c.     | bõnum,<br>bõni,<br>&c.       |                           | tener,<br>tenëri,<br>&c.   | tenëra,<br>tenërxæ,<br>&c. | tenërum,<br>tenëri,<br>&c. |
| Or,<br>Unus,<br>Unius, <sup>1</sup><br>Unī,<br>Unum,<br>&c. | unã,<br><br>unam,<br>&c. | unum,<br><br>unum,<br>&c. | Or,<br>æger,<br>ægri,<br>&c. | ægrã,<br>ægræ,<br><br>&c. | ægnum,<br>ægri,<br><br>&c. |                            |                            |

29. See Appendix to First Latin Book, p. 113.

## § 8. ADJECTIVES OF ONE AND TWO TERMINATIONS,

(which are all of the *third declension.*)

30. Adjectives in *is*.—Adjectives in *is* have neut. *e*; Abl. *i*. Neut. plur. *ia*; G. *ium*.

31. Comparatives in *or*.—Comparatives in *or* have neut. *us*; Abl. *e* or *i*. Neut. plur. *a*; G. *um*.

<sup>1</sup> *Solius* appears to have *ĩ*, though commonly considered as *long*.



32. The other terminations have no peculiar form for the *neut. sing.*, and are generally called adjectives of *one termination*, though they have *two* in the *Nom.* and *Acc.*, (except in *Nom. sing.*)

33. They have *Abl. e* or *i*. *Neut. plur. ia*; *G. ium*.

For participles *abl. e* }  
For adjectives *abl. i* } is the more common.

34. But

Pauper, superstes, cælebs, ales, hospes,  
Have *e*, with *compos*, *puber*, *index*, *sospes*,

and a few more : these have also *G. plur. um*. *Vetus* (*G. veteris*) has *n. pl. vetëra*.

35. Hence the Terminations for adjectives of two and three terminations, are,—

|      | Two Termin. |          |             |           | Comparatives. |              |               |            | One Termin. |                |             |           |
|------|-------------|----------|-------------|-----------|---------------|--------------|---------------|------------|-------------|----------------|-------------|-----------|
|      | S.          |          | P.          |           | S.            |              | P.            |            | S.          |                | P.          |           |
|      | M.F.        | N.       | M.F.        | N.        | M.F.          | N.           | M.F.          | N.         | M.F.        | (N.)           | M.F.        | N.        |
| N.V. | <i>is</i>   | <i>e</i> | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> | <i>or</i>     | <i>ūs</i>    | <i>ores</i>   | <i>ora</i> | —           | —              | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> |
| G.   | <i>is</i>   |          | <i>ium</i>  |           | <i>oris</i>   |              | <i>orum</i>   |            | <i>is</i>   |                | <i>ium</i>  |           |
| D.   | <i>i</i>    |          | <i>ibus</i> |           | <i>ori</i>    |              | <i>oribus</i> |            | <i>i</i>    |                | <i>ibus</i> |           |
| Acc. | <i>em</i>   | <i>e</i> | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> | <i>orem</i>   | <i>us</i>    | <i>ores</i>   | <i>ora</i> | <i>em</i>   | <i>as nom.</i> | <i>es</i>   | <i>ia</i> |
| Abl. | <i>i</i>    |          | <i>ibus</i> |           | <i>ore</i>    | <i>(ori)</i> | <i>oribus</i> |            | <i>e</i>    | <i>or i</i>    | <i>ibus</i> |           |

36. An adjective must agree with its substantive in case, gender, and number.

37. See Appendix to First Latin Book, p. 114.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| 38. <i>acerbus</i> ..... <i>sour</i> .   | <i>crūdus</i> ..... <i>raw, unripe</i> .                                     |
| <i>acūtus</i> <sup>1</sup> ..... <i>sharp</i> .  | <i>curvus</i> ..... <i>bent</i> .  |
| <i>æmulus</i> ..... <i>rivalling</i> .   | <i>densus</i> ..... <i>thick</i> .   |
| <i>āmārus</i> ..... <i>bitter</i> .  | <i>difficilis</i> ..... <i>difficult</i> .                                   |
| <i>æquus</i> ..... <i>even, equal, just</i> .  | <i>dignus</i> ..... <i>worthy, deserving</i> .                               |
| <i>āmœnus</i> ..... <i>pleasant, delightful,</i><br><i>(to the sight.)</i>                                   | <i>dubius</i> ..... <i>doubtful</i> .  |
| <i>altus</i> ..... <i>high; deep</i> .   | <i>dūrus</i> ..... <i>hard</i> .   |
| <i>asper</i> ( <i>ëra, erum</i> ) ..... <i>rough</i> .   | <i>ebrius</i> ..... <i>drunk, drunken</i> .                                  |
| <i>bonus</i> ..... <i>good</i> .   | <i>felix</i> ( <i>felicitis</i> ) ..... <i>prosperous,</i><br><i>happy</i> . |
| <i>brëvis</i> ..... <i>short</i> .   | <i>facilis</i> ..... <i>easy</i> .   |
| <i>candīdus</i> ..... <i>bright, white</i> .   | <i>festus</i> ..... <i>festive, joyful</i> .                                 |
| <i>cāvus</i> ..... <i>hollow</i> .   | <i>fortis</i> ..... <i>brave, strong</i> .                                   |
| <i>clārus</i> ..... <i>clear, illustrious</i> .  | <i>frīgidus</i> ..... <i>cold</i> .  |
| <i>clēmens</i> ..... <i>mild, clement</i> .  | <i>grāvis</i> ..... <i>heavy, important,</i><br><i>serious</i> .             |
| <i>commōdus</i> ..... <i>suitable, con-</i><br><i>venient; (of persons)</i><br><i>agreeable, pleisasant.</i> | <i>intēger</i> ..... <i>whole, (hence</i><br><i>upright, honest.)</i>        |
| <i>crassus</i> ..... <i>thick, coarse</i> .  | <i>lātus</i> ..... <i>broad</i> .  |

<sup>1</sup> *Acuo, to sharpen.*

|                         |               |                        |                     |
|-------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| longus .....            | long.         | par .....              | equal, like.        |
| laxus .....             | loose.        | stērilis .....         | barren.             |
| magnus .....            | great.        | sēnex (g. senis) ..... | old.                |
| matūrus .....           | ripe.         | (of persons.)          |                     |
| mīser (era, &c.) .....  | miserable.    | senior .....           | older.              |
| mollis .....            | soft.         | sollicitus .....       | disturbed, unquiet, |
| prōbus .....            | honest, good. |                        | anxious.            |
| plus <sup>1</sup> ..... | more.         | vērus .....            | true.               |
| plēnus .....            | full.         | vētus, veteris .....   | old.                |

|                           |                       |                          |        |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------|
| alter <sup>2</sup> .....  | the other, (of two ;) | totus <sup>2</sup> ..... | whole. |
|                           | one more.             | solus <sup>2</sup> ..... | alone. |
| neuter <sup>2</sup> ..... | neither of the two.   | unus <sup>2</sup> .....  | one.   |

39. There are some adjectives, such as, summus, (*highest*,) medius, (*middle*,) imus, (*lowest*,) reliquus, (*remaining*,) ultimus, extremus, (*last*,) &c., which are generally translated into English by substantives : as,

|                               |                           |                            |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| (The top of the<br>mountain.) | (The foot of the<br>oak.) | (The rest of the<br>work.) |
| N. summus mons                | ima quercus               | reliquum opus              |
| G. summi montis               | imæ quercus               | reliqui operis             |
| D. summo monti.               | imæ quercul.              | reliquo operi.             |
|                               | and so on.                |                            |

## § 9. DECLENSION OF THE FIRST THREE NUMERALS.

40.

|      |        |        |                  |      |        |        |        |
|------|--------|--------|------------------|------|--------|--------|--------|
| N.   | unus   | a      | um               | D.   | duobus | duabus | duobus |
| G.   | unius  |        |                  | Acc. | duos   | } duas | } duo  |
| D.   | uni    |        |                  |      | (duo)  |        |        |
| Acc. | unum   | am     | um               | N.   | tres   |        | tria   |
|      | &c.    | &c.    |                  | G.   | trium  |        |        |
| N.   | duo    | duæ    | duo <sup>3</sup> | D.   | tribus |        |        |
| G.   | duorum | duarum | duorum           | Acc. | tres   |        | tria.  |

<sup>1</sup> SING. Nom. Acc. Neut. *plus*; gen. *pluris*; no other cases. PLUR. *plures*; neut. *plura*; gen. *plurium*; dat. abl. *pluribus*.

<sup>2</sup> These make gen. *ius*; dat. *i*. So *ullus*, (*any*;) *nullus*, (*none*;) *uter*, (*which of two*;) with its compounds; *uterque*, (*each*;) *utervis*, (*which of the two you please*;) gen. *utriusque*, *utriusvis*, &c.—In *unusquisque*, both words are declined; gen. *uniuscujusque*. *Alius*, neut. *aliud*; gen. *alius*; dat. *alii*, &c. *Alter*, gen. *alterius*.

<sup>3</sup> So *ambo*, *both*.

## § 10. THE VERB.

41. Terminations of the third persons sing. of the Active Verb, &c.<sup>1</sup>

(Indicative Mood.)

|     |                   | 1.  | 2.    | 3.    | 4.    |        |  |
|-----|-------------------|-----|-------|-------|-------|--------|--|
| (1) | Present,          |     | at,   | et,   | it,   | it,    | Verb, to defend.<br>defends; is defend-<br>ing; does defend.<br>was defending:<br>(often defended; did<br>defend.)<br>shall or will defend.<br>defended; did defend;<br>has defended.<br>had defended.<br>shall or will have de-<br>fended.<br>defend; do you de-<br>fend. |
|     | Imperfect,        | (R) | ābat, | ēbat, | ēbat, | iēbat, |  |
|     | Future,           | (R) | ābit, | ēbit, | et,   | iet,   |  |
|     | Perfect,          | (r) | it,   |       |       |        |  |
| (2) | Pluperfect,       | (r) | ērat, |       |       |        |  |
|     | Future perf.      | (r) | ērit, |       |       |        |  |
|     | Imperat. pers. 2. | (R) | ā,    | ē,    | ē,    | ī,     |  |

(Subjunctive Mood.)

|   |                   |     |                         |       |       |        |   |  |
|---|-------------------|-----|-------------------------|-------|-------|--------|---|--|
| { | Present,          | (R) | et,                     | eat,  | at,   | iat,   | { | [fend<br>may (or should) de-<br>might, should, would<br>defend.  |
|   | Imperf.           | (R) | āret,                   | ēret, | ēret, | īret,  |   |  |
| { | Perf.             | (r) | ērit,                   |       |       |        | { | may (or should) have<br>defended.  |
| { | Pluperf.          | (r) | isset,                  |       |       |        | { | might, should, would<br>have defended.<br>to defend.<br>to have defended.<br>to be going (or to be<br>about) to defend.<br>of defending.<br>to defend.<br>defending. [defend.<br>going (or about) to |
|   | Infin. Pres. Imp. | (R) | āre,                    | ēre,  | ēre,  | īre,   |   |  |
|   | Infin. Perf. Plu. | (r) | isse,                   |       |       |        |   |  |
|   | Infin. Future,    |     | part. in rus with esse, |       |       |        |   |  |
|   | Gerunds,          | (R) | andi,                   | endi, | endi, | iendi, |   |  |
|   | Supine,           | (ρ) | um,                     |       |       |        |   |  |
|   | Part. Pres.       | (R) | ans,                    | ens,  | ens,  | iens,  |   |  |
|   | Part. Fut.        | (ρ) | ūrus,                   |       |       |        |   |  |

(Passive Participles.)

|               |     |        |        |        |         |  |   |                                |
|---------------|-----|--------|--------|--------|---------|--|---|--------------------------------|
| Past partic.  | (ρ) | us,    |        |        |         |  | { | defended; being de-<br>fended. |
| Part. in dus, | (R) | andus, | endus, | endus, | iendus, |  | { | to be defended.                |

(Passive Participles.)

42. ☞ Obs. (1) *Shall*, in the first person, simply foretells; in the other persons, it commands.

*Will*, in the first person, declares the speaker's intention in a positive manner; in the other persons, it simply foretells.

(2) After a past tense, *shall*, *will*, become *should*, *would*.

He says that he *will*, &c.

He said that he *would*, &c.

<sup>1</sup> R, r, ρ, stand respectively for 'root of present,' 'root of perfect,' 'root of supine.' In repeating the table, the pupil should always say which root the termination is to be added to. Thus: 'Pluperfect; root of perfect, it.'

43.

## Terminations of the Persons.

| (Singular) |          |        | (Plural) |      |       |       |
|------------|----------|--------|----------|------|-------|-------|
|            | 1.       | 2.     | 3.       | 1.   | 2.    | 3.    |
| Active,    | o, i, m, | s,     | t,       | mus, | tis,  | nt.   |
| Passive,   | r,       | { ris, | tur,     | mur, | mīni, | ntur. |
|            |          | { re,  |          |      |       |       |

(1) This does not apply to the *Imperative*.(2) *Perf. Indic. Act.* has 2 sing. and plur. *isti, istis*, respectively and 3 plur. *ērunt* or *ēre*.

44.

(ACTIVE VOICE.)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT, [*defend; do defend; am defending.*]

|      |                 |     |     |       |       |       |
|------|-----------------|-----|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| am-  | ō, <sup>1</sup> | ās, | āt, | āmūs, | ātīs, | ant.  |
| mon- | eō,             | ēs, | ēt, | ēmūs, | ētīs, | ent.  |
| reg- | ō,              | īs, | īt, | īmūs, | ītīs, | unt.  |
| aud- | iō,             | īs, | īt, | imūs, | ītīs, | iunt. |

IMPERFECT, (R) [*was defending; often, defended, or did defend.*]

|      |        |        |        |          |          |         |
|------|--------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| am-  | ābam,  | ābās,  | ābāt,  | ābāmūs,  | ābātīs,  | ābant.  |
| mon- | ēbam,  | ēbās,  | ēbāt,  | ēbāmūs,  | ēbātīs,  | ēbant.  |
| reg- | ēbam,  | ēbās,  | ēbāt,  | ēbāmūs,  | ēbātīs,  | ēbant.  |
| aud- | iēbam, | iēbās, | iēbāt, | iēbāmūs, | iēbātīs, | iēbant. |

FUTURE, (R) [*shall or will defend.*]

|      |      |       |       |         |         |        |
|------|------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| am-  | ābō, | ābīs, | ābīt, | ābīmūs, | ābītīs, | ābunt. |
| mon- | ēbō, | ēbīs, | ēbīt, | ēbīmūs, | ēbītīs, | ēbunt. |
| reg- | am,  | ēs,   | ēt,   | ēmūs,   | ētīs,   | ent.   |
| aud- | iam, | iēs,  | iēt,  | iēmūs,  | iētīs,  | ient.  |

PERFECT, [*defended; did defend—have defended,\* (perf. def.)*]

|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |                       |
|---|---|----|-------|-----|-------|--------|-----------------------|
| amāv-<br>monu-<br>rex- (= regs)<br>audīv- | } | ī, | istī, | īt, | īmūs, | istīs, | { ērunt,<br>or ērē. } |
|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |                       |
|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |                       |
|   |   |    |       |     |       |        |                       |

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*had defended.*]

|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|----------------------------------|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| amāv-<br>monu-<br>rex-<br>audīv- | } | ēram, | ērās, | ērāt, | ērāmūs, | ērātīs, | ērant. |
|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|                                  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |

FUTURE PERFECT, (r) [*shall or will have defended.*]

|                                  |   |      |                          |       |   |                          |   |        |
|----------------------------------|---|------|--------------------------|-------|---|--------------------------|---|--------|
| amāv-<br>monu-<br>rex-<br>audīv- | } | ēro, | { ērīs,<br>or<br>ērīs, } | ērīt, | { ērīmūs, <sup>2</sup><br>or<br>ērīmūs, | ērītīs,<br>or<br>ērītīs, | } | ērint. |
|                                  |   |      |                          |       |   |                          |   |        |

IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE, (R) [*defend;—do you defend.*]

|      |         |         |       |        |        |
|------|---------|---------|-------|--------|--------|
|      | 2 sing. | 3 sing. | 2 pl. |        | 3 pl.  |
| am-  | ā,      | āto,    | ātē,  | ātōtē, | anto.  |
| mon- | ē,      | ēto,    | ētē,  | ētōtē, | ento.  |
| reg- | ē,      | īto,    | ītē,  | ītōtē, | unto.  |
| aud  | ī,      | īto,    | ītē,  | ītōtē, | iunto. |

<sup>1</sup> O of verbs is sometimes *short*. In the golden age, it first (after the comic writers) appears short in Ovid, *e. g.* in *nesciō, rependō, putō, estō*.

<sup>2</sup> See note, p. 156.

\* The perfect *definite* (perf. with *have*) is used of an action *done* in a present time,



## MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

(Obs.  $\text{ŕ}$  Passive adds *r* to the tenses that end in *o*; changes *m* into *r* in those that end in *m*. Obs. The (e) after 2d person sing. means that the termination is sometimes *re* instead of *ris*.)

PRESENT, [*am defended—is building.*]

|      |      |          |       |       |        |         |
|------|------|----------|-------|-------|--------|---------|
| am-  | ör,  | ārīs(e), | ātūr, | āmūr, | āmīnī, | antūr.  |
| mon- | eör, | ērīs(e), | ētūr, | ēmūr, | ēmīnī, | entūr.  |
| reg- | ör,  | ērīs(e), | ītūr, | īmūr, | īmīnī, | untūr.  |
| aud- | iör, | īrīs(e), | ītūr, | īmūr, | īmīnī, | iuntūr. |

IMPERFECT, [*was defended<sup>1</sup> (not strictly imperf.)—was building.*]

|      |        |             |          |          |           |           |
|------|--------|-------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| am-  | ābār,  | ābārīs(e),  | ābātūr,  | ābāmūr,  | ābāmīnī,  | ābantūr.  |
| mon- | ēbār,  | ēbārīs(e),  | ēbātūr,  | ēbāmūr,  | ēbāmīnī,  | ēbantūr.  |
| reg- | ēbār,  | ēbārīs(e),  | ēbātūr,  | ēbāmūr,  | ēbāmīnī,  | ēbantūr.  |
| aud- | iēbār, | iēbārīs(e), | iēbātūr, | iēbāmūr, | iēbāmīnī, | iēbantūr. |

FUTURE, [*shall or will be defended.*]

|      |       |            |         |         |          |          |
|------|-------|------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| am-  | ābör, | ābörīs(e), | ābītūr, | ābīmūr, | ābīmīnī, | ābuntūr. |
| mon- | ēbör, | ēbörīs(e), | ēbītūr, | ēbīmūr, | ēbīmīnī, | ēbuntūr. |
| reg- | ār,   | ērīs(e),   | ētūr,   | ēmūr,   | ēmīnī,   | entūr.   |
| aud- | iār,  | iērīs(e),  | iētūr,  | iēmūr,  | iēmīnī,  | ientūr.  |

PERFECT, [*was defended; have been defended—is built.*]

Made up of the *past partic.* with *sum*—(sometimes *fui*.)

PLUPERFECT, [*had been defended.*]

Made up of the *past partic.* and *eram*—(sometimes *fuëram*.)

FUTURE PERFECT, [*shall or will have been defended.*]

Made up of *past partic.* with *ëro*—(sometimes *fuëro*.)

## MOOD.

(R.) [*be defended: 2 sing. like Infm. act.*]

| 2 sing. |       | 3 sing. | 2 pl.  |         | 3 pl.   |
|---------|-------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| ārē,    | ātör, | ātör,   | āmīnī, | āmīnör, | antör.  |
| ērē,    | ētör, | ētör,   | ēmīnī, | ēmīnör, | entör.  |
| ērē,    | ītör, | ītör,   | īmīnī, | īmīnör, | untör.  |
| irē,    | itör, | itör,   | imīnī, | imīnör, | iuntör. |

(no matter of what length,) or *still continuing* in its completed state. *Am come* is the *perf. def.* of a neut. verb of motion.

<sup>1</sup> 'Was being defended' is sometimes used, but is not a correct form.

## (ACTIVE VOICE.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT, (R) [*may, should defend.*]

|      |      |      |      |        |        |       |
|------|------|------|------|--------|--------|-------|
| am-  | em,  | ēs,  | ēt,  | ēmūs,  | ētīs,  | ent.  |
| mon- | eam, | eās, | eāt, | eāmūs, | eātīs, | eant. |
| reg- | am,  | ās,  | āt,  | āmūs,  | ātīs,  | ant.  |
| aud- | iam, | iās, | iāt, | iāmūs, | iātīs, | iant. |

IMPERFECT, (R) [*might, would, should defend.*]

|      |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|------|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| am-  | ārem, | ārēs, | ārēt, | ārēmūs, | ārētīs, | ārent. |
| mon- | ērem, | ērēs, | ērēt, | ērēmūs, | ērētīs, | ērent. |
| reg- | ĕrem, | ĕrēs, | ĕrēt, | ĕrēmūs, | ĕrētīs, | ĕrent. |
| aud- | īrem, | īrēs, | īrēt, | īrēmūs, | īrētīs, | īrent. |

PERFECT, (r) [*may, should have defended.*]

|        |         |   |       |         |   |                      |           |   |        |         |         |
|--------|---------|---|-------|---------|---|----------------------|-----------|---|--------|---------|---------|
| amāv-  | } ĕrim, | { | ĕrīs, | } ĕrīt, | { | ĕrīmūs, <sup>1</sup> | } ĕrītīs, | } | ĕrint. |         |         |
| monu-  |         |   | or    |         |   | ĕrīmūs,              |           |   |        | ĕrītīs, |         |
| rex-   |         |   | ĕrīs, |         |   | ĕrīt,                |           |   |        | ĕrīmūs, | ĕrītīs, |
| audīv- |         |   | ĕrīs, |         |   | ĕrīt,                |           |   |        | ĕrīmūs, | ĕrītīs, |

PLUPERFECT, (r) [*might, should, would have defended.*]

|        |   |       |        |        |          |          |         |
|--------|---|-------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| amāv-  | } | isse, | issēs, | issēt, | issēmūs, | issētīs, | issent. |
| monu-  |   |       |        |        |          |          |         |
| rex-   |   |       |        |        |          |          |         |
| audīv- |   |       |        |        |          |          |         |

## INFINITIVE

|          |   |  |         |         |
|----------|---|--|---------|---------|
| PRESENT, | { | (R) [ <i>to defend: to be defending.</i> ] |         |         |
| IMPERF.  |   | 1. ārē,                                    | 2. ĕrē, | 3. ĕrē, |

|             |   |                                  |
|-------------|---|----------------------------------|
| PERFECT,    | { | (r) [ <i>to have defended.</i> ] |
| PLUPERFECT, |   | isse.                            |

FUTURE, [*to be going or to be about to defend.*]  
Part. of fut. (in rus) with *esse*.

## PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

GERUNDS, (R) [*of, &c. defending.*]

andi,                      endi,                      endi,                      iendi.

SUPINE, (root of its own,) { [*to defend*—after verbs of *motion.*] um.  
  { [*to defend*\*—after some adjectives.] u.

PARTIC. PRESENT, (R) [*defending.*]

ans,                              ens,                              ens,                              iens.

PARTIC. PERFECT, [*having defended.*]

None. [Supplied by *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.* or by *abl. absolute.*]

PARTIC. FUTURE, (ρ) [*going or about to defend.*] ūrus.

\* Often rendered, *to be defended.*

<sup>1</sup> The old grammarians are at variance respecting the quantity of *i* in *rimus, ritis*, of *fut. perf.* and *perf. subj.* Poets use these syllables both as *long* and *short*, but

## MOOD.

(PASSIVE VOICE.)

PRESENT, [*may, should be defended.*]

|      |      |           |        |        |         |         |
|------|------|-----------|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| am-  | ēr,  | ērīs(e),  | ētūr,  | ēmūr,  | ēmīnī,  | entūr.  |
| mon- | eār, | eārīs(e), | eātūr, | eāmūr, | eāmīnī, | eantūr. |
| reg- | ār,  | ārīs(e),  | ātūr,  | āmūr,  | āmīnī,  | antūr.  |
| aud- | iār, | iārīs(e), | iātūr, | iāmūr, | iāmīnī, | iantūr. |

IMPERFECT, [*might, would, should be defended.*]

|      |       |            |         |         |          |          |
|------|-------|------------|---------|---------|----------|----------|
| am-  | ārēr, | ārērīs(e), | ārētūr, | ārēmūr, | ārēmīnī, | ārentūr. |
| mon- | ērēr, | ērērīs(e), | ērētūr, | ērēmūr, | ērēmīnī, | ērentūr. |
| reg- | ērēr, | ērērīs(e), | ērētūr, | ērēmūr, | ērēmīnī, | ērentūr. |
| aud- | irēr, | irērīs(e), | irētūr, | irēmūr, | irēmīnī, | irentūr. |

PERFECT, [*may, should have been defended.*]Past partic. with *sim*—(sometimes *fuērim*.)PLUPERFECT, [*might, should, would have been defended.*]Past partic. with *essem*—(sometimes *fuisse*.)

## MOOD.

|          |   |                            |      |    |      |
|----------|---|----------------------------|------|----|------|
| PRESENT, | { | [ <i>to be defended.</i> ] |      |    |      |
| IMPERF.  |   | 1.                         | 2.   | 3. | 4.   |
|          |   | ārī,                       | ērī, | ī, | irī. |

PERFECT, { [*to have been defended.*]  
 PLUPERFECT, { Past partic. with *esse*—(sometimes *fuisse*.)

FUTURE, [*to be going or to be about to be defended.*]  
 Supine (in *um*) with *iri*.

## PARTICIPLES, &amp;c.

{ PAST PARTIC. (*ρ*) { *defended.*  
 { *being defended.* } us.  
 { *having been defended.* }

PARTIC. FUTURE, (R.) (implying *duty, necessity, &c.*)  
 [*to be defended.*]

|        |        |        |         |
|--------|--------|--------|---------|
| 1.     | 2.     | 3.     | 4.      |
| andus, | endus, | endus, | iendus. |

the preponderance of usage appears to be in favor of *ī*, in both tenses. (Zumpt.)  
 Grotendorf marks *ērimus*, &c.

45. Some verbs of the third end in *io*. They drop the *i* in the *imperative*, *infinitive*, and *imperfect subjunctive* of both voices :

|   | Imperat.   | Infm.       | Impf.      | Subj.                        |
|---|------------|-------------|------------|------------------------------|
| (a) Active,   | suscipio,  | suscĭpe,    | suscipĕre, | suscipĕrem.                  |
| Passive,  | suscipior, | suscipĕre,  | suscĭpi,   | suscipĕrer.                  |
| (b) In the present of both voices they retain the <i>i</i> in the third person plural, and drop it in the other persons : |            |             |            |                              |
| Active,   | suscipio,  | suscĭpis,   | it, &c.    | 3 plur. <i>suscipiunt.</i>   |
| Passive,  | suscipior, | suscipĕris, | itur, &c.  | 3 plur. <i>suscipiuntur.</i> |

---

(Formation of the roots of Perfect and Supine from root of Present.)

46. The root of perfect is got from the root of the present<sup>1</sup> by adding

- (1) *s, u, or v* to the root ; or,
- (2) by *lengthening the vowel* of the root ; or,
- (3) by *prefixing a reduplication* to the root.—A reduplication is a syllable made up of the first consonant of the word with either *e* or the vowel of the root.

47. The root of the supine is got by adding either *t* or *s* to the root of the present.<sup>1</sup>

48. Obs. (1) Any *k* sound (*c* or *g*) with *s* is written *x*.  
 (2) Any *p* sound (*p* or *b*) with *s* is written *ps*.  
 (3) Any *t* sound (*t* or *d*) before *s* or *t* either falls away or is changed into *s*.  
 (4) *m, r* before *s* are *sometimes* changed into *s*, (*prem-o, press-i; ger-o, gess-i.*)  
*Obs.* When *m* is retained, a *p* is inserted between it and the *s* ;  
*sūm-o, sumpsi.*  
 (5) When a root ends in two consonants, the second is thrown away before *s* : *as, mulc-eo, mul-si; sparg-o, sparsi.*  
 (6) Obs. *h, v, qu, ct,* are treated like *k* sounds, and the root of their perfect ends in *x*.  
*(vēh-o, vexi; vĭv-o, vix-i; cōqu-o, cox-i; flect-o, flexi.)*

---

<sup>1</sup> In the first conjugation the full root of the present is, *amā* ; *amo* being contracted from *ama-o*.

## § 11 FIRST CONJUGATION.

## 49. I. am-o, amāv-i, amāt-um.

So āro, *to plough*; crēmo, *burn-down*; rōgo, *ask*; ligo, *bind*; pāro, *procure*; jūro, *swear*; no, *swim*; ōro, *pray*; pecco, *sin*; postūlo, *demand*; gūberno, *govern*; vīto, *avoid*.

50. I. *With reduplication.*

Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre, *give*. [Obs. the short a.]  
Sto, stēti, stātum, stāre, *stand*. Verbs compounded with *sto* and a dissyllable take *stēti*; the rest *stīti*. Their future participles take *a*: constaturus, exstaturus.

II. -ui, -tum, (ītum.)<sup>1</sup>

Crēpo, crepui, crepītum, crepare, *make a noise*. *Just so, concrepo, but increpo, discrepo, have also increpavi, discrepavi; increpo both increpatum and increpitem.*  
Cūbo, cubui, (*seldom cubavi,*) cubītum, cubare, *lie down*.  
Dōmo, domui, domītum, domare, *tame*.  
Plico, plicui, plicītum, and plicavi, plicatum, *fold*. (Duplicare, supplicare, and other verbs derived from adjectives in -plex, are regular.)  
Sōno, sonui, sonītum, sonare, *sound*.  
Tōno, tonui, tonītum, (*seldom tonatum,*) tonare, *thunder*.  
Vēto, vetui, vetītum, vetare, *forbid*.  
Frico, fricui, fricatum and frictum, fricare, *rub*.  
Jūvo, jūvi, jutum, juvare, *help*.  
Lāvo, lavavi, lavatum, and lavi, lautum or lotum, lavare, *wash*.  
Sēco, secui, sectum, secare, *cut*. Part. Fut. Pass. secaturus.  
Mico, micui, micare, *move quickly or tremulously; glitter*. The compounds take the regular supine in atum.  
Pōto, potavi, potatum, *generally potum, potare, drink*. Its partic. perf. pass. is generally potus.

## § 12. SECOND CONJUGATION.

51. The only verbs that take the regular ēvi, ētum, are leo (obsolete) with its compound deleo, (*blot out; destroy utterly;*) fleo, *weep*; neo, *spin*; pleo, (obsolete,) *fill*—with its compounds; and (from the obsolete oleo, *grow*) aboleo, *abolish*; adoleo, generally adolesco, *grow up*; obsoleo, generally obsolesco, *grow out of date*. Ōleo, *smell*, has olui without supine.

## I. -ui, -ītum.

Cāleo, *am warm*: cāreo, *am without, want*; dēbeo, *owe*; dōleo, *am pained, grieve*; hābeo, *have*; jāceo, *lie low*; mēreo, *deserve*; mōneo, *warn*; nōceo, *hurt*; pāreo, *obey*; plăceo, *please*; prābeo, *afford, supply*; tāceo, *hold my tongue*; terreo, *terrify*; vāleo, *am well*.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that all these, except *pōto*, have the first syll. *short*.



## II. -ui, -tum.

Dōceo, docui, doctum, *teach.*  
 Misceo, miscui, mistum *or* mixtum, *mix.*  
 Tēneo, tenui, tentum, *hold.*  
 Torreo, torrui, tostum, *parch, roast.*

## III. -ui, -sum.

Censeo, censui, censum, *value, am of opinion.* Recenseo *has also recensitum.*

IV. -ui, *without supine.*

Arceo, *ward off, keep off*; āreo, *am dry*; ēgeo, *need*; flōreo, *flower, flourish*; horreo, *shudder*; languo, *am languid*; lāteo, *lie hid*; mādeo, *am wet*; mæreo, *mourn*; nīteo, *shine*; ōleo, *smell*; palleo, *am pale*; pāteo, *stand open*; rīgeo, *am stiff*; rūbeo, *am red*; sīleo, *am silent*; sorbeo, *suck in or up, (sorbui and sorpsi)*; splendo, *glitter*; stūdeo, *pursue as a study*; stūpeo, *am astounded*; tīmeo, *fear*; torpeo, *am torpid*; tūmeo, *swell, (neut.)*; vīgeo, *am vigorous, flourish*; vīreo, *am green.*

V. -si, -tum, (*and* -xi, -ctum.)

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, *indulge.*  
 Torqueo, torsi, tortum, *twist.*  
 Augeo, auxi, auctum, *increase.*  
 Lūgeo, luxi, luctum, *mourn.*

*Without supine are*

Algeo, alsī, *feel cold, am cold.*  
 Fulgeo, fulsi, *shine, glitter.*  
 Frīgeo, frixi, *am cold.*  
 Lūceo, luxi, *am bright, shine.*

## VI. -si, -sum.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, *burn, am on fire.*  
 Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum, *cling to, stick, hesitate.*  
 Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, *bid, order.*  
 Māneo, mansi, mansum, *remain.*  
 Mulceo, *soothe, and* mulgeo, *milk, mulsi, mulsum.*  
 Rīdeo, rīsi, risum, *laugh.*  
 Suadeo, suasi, suasum, *advise, persuade.*

## VII. -i, -sum.

Mordeo, momordi, morsum, *bite.*  
 Pendeo, pependi, pensum, *hang, (intrans.)*  
 Spondeo, sponpondi, sponsum, *promise solemnly.*  
 Tondeo, totondi, tonsum, *shear, shave.*  
 Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, *sit. Of the compounds, dissideo and præsideo have no supines.*  
 Video, vīdi, visum, *see. (Videor, generally seen.)*

## VIII. -i, -tum.

Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, *beware of, beware.*  
 Fāveo, fāvi, fautum, *favor.*  
 Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, *cherish.*  
 Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, *move.*  
 Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, *vow.*

IX. -i, *without supine.*

Ferveo, fervi *and* ferbui, *glow; am hot.*

## X. without perfect or supine.

Albeo, *am white*; ãveo, *long*; hēbeo, *am blunt*; hūmeo, *am moist*; liveo, *am livid*; renīdeo, *glitter*; scāteo, *gush out*; abound.

## § 13. THIRD CONJUGATION.

52. I. Roots with a *p* sound: *b* or *p*.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum, *pluck*. *Comp.* discerpo, &c.  
 Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, *veil*; *marry*, (of the female.)  
 Rēpo, repsi, reptum, *creep*.  
 Scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum, *grave, cut*  
 Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, *write*.  
 Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, *carve*.  
 Serpo, serpsi, serptum, *crawl*.  
 Cāpio, cēpi, captum, capere, *take*. *Compounds*, -cipio, -cepi, -ceptum.  
 Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum, *burst*.  
 Bībo, bībi, bibitum, *drink*.  
 Lambo, lambi, lambitum, *lick*.  
 Rapio, rapui, raptum, rapēre, *snatch*.  
 Sāpio, sapui, (*sup. doubtful*.) sapere; *taste*, (*intrans.*;) *am wise*. *Compounds*, resipui, &c.  
 Strēpo, strepui, strepitum, *make a noise*; *roar*.  
 Cūpio, cupivi, cupitum, cupere, *desire*.

53. II. Roots with a *t* sound: *d* or *t*.

Claudo, clausi, clausum, *shut*. *Comp.* -clūdo, -clūsi, -clūsum.  
 Divīdo, divīsi, divīsum, *divide*.  
 Lædo, læsi, læsum, *injure, hurt*. *Comp.* -līdo, -līsi, -līsum.  
 Lūdo, lusi, lusum, *play*.  
 Trūdo, trusi, trusum, *thrust, push*.  
 Vādo, vasi, vasum, *go*. *Perf. and sup. only found in its compounds*.  
 Cēdo, cessi, cessum, *yield*.  
 Mitto, misi, missum, *send*.  
 Quātio, (quassi,) quassum, quatēre, *shake*. *The perfect is only found in the compounds*: e. g. concussi.  
 Flecto, flexi, flexum, *bend*, } from simpler roots with a *k*  
 Necto, nexi and nexui, nexum, *knit, join together*, } sound, (*flec. nec.*)  
 Accendo, accendi, accensum, *light*. *So incendio*.  
 Edo, ēdi, esum, *eat*.  
 Defendo, defendi, defensum, *ward off, defend*. *So offendo*.  
 Fundo, fūdi, fusum, *pour*.  
 Prehendo, prehendi, prehensum, *take hold of*.  
 Scando, scandi, scansum, *climb*.  
 Verto, verti, versum, *turn*.  
 Cādo, cecīdi, cāsum, *fall*. *The compounds take i, as incīdo, incīdi, incāsum: so occīdo and recīdo. The rest have no supine*.  
 Cædo, cecīdi, cæsum, *cut, fell, hew*. *The compounds take i, as accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*.  
 Pendo, pependi, pensum, *hang, (trans.)*  
 Tendo, tetendi, tensum and tentum, *stretch*.  
 Fōdio, fōdi, fossum, fodēre, *dig*.  
 Pando, pandi, pansum, and passum, *spread open*.  
 Scindo, scīdi, scissum, *cut*.  
 Sīdo, sīdi, sessum, *settle down*.  
 Peto, petivi, petitum, *aim at, seek*.

54. III. Roots with a *k* sound : *c, g, qu, h*.

Cingo, cixi, cinctum, *gird, surround.*

Cōquo, coxi, coctum, *cook.*

Dico, dixi, dictum, *say, call.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, *lead, think.*

Flīgo, flixi, flictum, *strike. Generally only the compounds, afflīgo, &c.*

Lācio, (*obsolete*), entice, allure. Hence allicio, allexi, (allicui,) allectum; elicio, elicui, elicium; illicio, illexi, illectum; pellicio, pellicui and pellexi, pellectum.

Rēgo, rexi, rectum, *direct, govern. Comp. -rigo.*

Specio, (*obsolete*), behold, see. Hence adspicio, conspicio, inspicio, perspicio, -spexi -spectum, -spicere.

Tēgo, texi, tectum, *cover.*

Tingo, tinxī, tinctum, *dip, dye.*

Trāho, traxi, tractum, *draw, drag.*

Ungo, unxi, unctum, *anoint.*

Vēho, vexi, vectum, *carry, (in a ship, carriage, &c.)*

Fingo, finxi, fictum, *fashion, feign.*

Jungo, junxi, junctum, *join.*

Pango, panxi and pepigi, pactum, *drive in, fasten—bargain.*

Pingo, pinxi, pictum, *paint.*

Stringo, strinxī, strictum, *bind, compress, grasp tight.*

Ango, anxi, *throttle, torment.*

Mergo, mersi, mersum, *dip or plunge into, (trans.)*

Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, *scatter. Comp. dispergo, &c.*

Figo, fixi, fixum, *fix.*

Ago, ēgi, actum, *drive, do. Comp. -igo, -egi, -actum: cōgo has coēgi, coactum.*

Fācio, fēci, factum, facere, do. Fio is used for its passive. The compounds with prepositions take ficio, feci, factum: pass. ficior. The rest retain facio: pass. fio

Jācio, jēci, jactum, *throw. Comp. adjicio, jeci, jectum, &c.*

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, *gather, choose, read. Some of the compounds retain e, (allēgo, perlēgo, relēgo;) some take i, (collīgo, delīgo, elīgo.) Diligo, intelligo, negligo, take perf. -lexi.*

Frango, frēgi, fractum, *break. Comp. -fringo.*

Pungo, pupūgi, punctum, *prick. The compounds have punxi.*

Tango, tetīgi, tactum, *touch. The compounds attingo, attīgi, &c.*

Vinco, vīci, victum, *conquer.*

Fūgio, fūgi, fugitum, fugere, *fly from.*

Parco, peperci and parsi, parcitum and parsum, *spare.*

55. IV. Roots with *l, m, n*.

Cōlo, colui, cultum, *cultivate.*

Consulo, consului, consulum, *consult.*

Alo, alui, alitum and altum, *nourish.*

Fallo, fefelli, falsum, *deceive.*

Pello, pepūli, pulsum, *drive away.*

(Cello, move, drive on.) Percello, percūli, perculsum, *strike down. Antecello and excello have no supine: excelsus is an adj., and means high.*

Vello, velli and vulsi, vulsum, *pluck.*

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, *deck.*

Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, *take away.*

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, *draw forth.*

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, *take.*

Prēmo, pressi, pressum, *press. Comp. opprīmo.*

Emo, ēmi, emptum, *take, buy. Comp. adīmo, redīmo.*

Frēmo, fremui, fremitum, *murmur.*

Gēmo, gemui, gemitum, *groan, sigh.*

Trēmo, tremui, *tremble.*

Cāno, cecīni, cantum, *sing. Comp. occīno, accīno, &c.*

Temno, generally contemno, contempsi, contemptum, *despise.*

Gigno, gēnui, genitum, *beget, bring forth.*

Pōno, pōsui, positum, *place, put down.*

Cerno, crēvi, cretum, see, perceive. The perfect and supine have not this meaning; the real meaning is to separate.

Sino, sivi, sĭtum, *suffer*. Desino, *leave off*.  
 Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, *despise*.  
 Serno, strāvi, strātum, *throw down, strew*.  
 Gero, gessi, gestum, *carry, bear*.  
 Uro, ussi, ustum, *burn*.  
 Pario, pepēri, partum, *bring forth*. Part. Fut. pariturus.  
 Curro, cucurri, cursum, *run*.  
 Sero, serui, sertum, *connect, join*.  
 Sero, sēvi, sātum, *sow*.  
 Quero, quāsvi, quāsitum, *seek*. Comp. Acquirō, &c.  
 Tero, trīvi, trītum, *rub*.

## 56. V. Roots with *s*, *x*, (= *cs*.)

Texo, texui, textum, *weave*.  
 Arcesso, arcessivi, arcessitum, *send for*.  
 Capesso, capessivi, capessitum, *seize hold of, undertake*.  
 Laccio, laccessivi, laccessitum, *provoke, harass*.  
 Viso, visi, *visit*.

## 57. VI. Roots in *u* and *v*.

Acuo, acui, acūtum, *sharpen*.  
 Arguo, argui, argūtum, *prove, convict*.  
 Exuo, exui, exūtum, *put off*.  
 Imbuo, imbui, imbūtum, *dip, imbue*.  
 Induo, indui, indūtum, *put on*.  
 Minuo, minui, minūtum, *lessen*.  
 Ruo, rui, rūtum, *rush*; and (*trans.*) *hurl down*. Fut. Part. ruiturus.  
 Statuo, statui, statūtum, *establish, determine*.  
 Suo, sui, sūtum, *sew*.  
 Tribuo, tribui, tribūtum, *allot to*.  
 Solvo, solvi, solūtum, *loosen, pay*.  
 Volvo, volvi, volūtum, *roll*.  
 Struo, struxi, structum, *pile up, build*.  
 Vivo, vixi, victum, *live*.  
 Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, *flow*.  
 (*Without supine.*)  
 Metuo, metui, *fear*.  
 Pluo, plui, *rain*.

58. VII. Roots with *sc* in the present. The perf. shows that these verbs are derived from pure roots. The only exceptions are *disco, didici*, learn; *posco, poposci*, demand.

Cresco, crēvi, crētum, *increase, (intrans.)*  
 Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, *make myself acquainted with, (novi = I know.) In the compounds the fut. part. is iturus, except ignosco, pardon; ignoturus.*  
 Pasco, pāvi, pastum, *feed, (trans.)*  
 Quiesco, quiēvi, quiētum, *rest*.  
 Suesco, suevi, suetum, *accustomed, to grow accustomed.*

*To this class belong the Inchoatives which express the beginning of an action or state. They either borrow the perfect and supine from their roots, or are without supine. Of the former kind are—*

Coalesco, coalui, coalitum, (alo,) *grow together*.  
 Concupisco, concupivi, concupitum, (cupio,) *desire*.  
 Condolesco, condolui, condolitum, (doleo,) *feel pain*.  
 Convalesco, convalui, convalitum, (valeo,) *get well*.



**Exardesco, exarsi, exarsum, (ardeo,) take fire.**  
 (Olesco,) hence **adolesco, adolevi, adultum, grow up.**  
**Revivisco, revixi, revictum, come to life again.**

*Of the other kind are—*

**Calesco, calui, grow warm.**

**Conticesco, conticui, hold my tongue.**

**Contremisco, contremui, tremble.**

**Extimesco, extimui, dread.**

**Horresco, horrui, shudder.**

**Tepesco, tepui, grow warm.**

**Ditesco, grow rich, pinguesco, grow fat, and a few more, have neither perf. nor supine.**

### 59. § 14. FOURTH CONJUGATION. NEUT. PASSIVES.

**Sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum, bury.**

**Farcio, farsii, fartum, stuff.**

**Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, prop.**

**Sarcio, sarsii, sartum, patch, repair.**

**Sēpio, sepsi, septum, hedge in.**

**Sancio, sanxi and sancivi, sancitum, confirm, make binding.**

**Vincio, vinxii, vinctum, bind.**

**Amicio, amictum, clothe.**

**Sentio, sensi, sensum, feel, perceive by the senses.**

**Comperio, compēri, compertum, ascertain.**

**Haurio, hausii, haustum, draw, (of liquids.)**

**Reperio, repēri, repertum, find.**

**Vēnio, vēni, ventum, come.**

**Aperio, aperui, apertum, open.**

**Sālio, salui and salii, saltum, spring, leap. The compounds have -silio, silui.**

**Cæcutio am blind, ferio strike, prurio itch, have no perf. and supine.**

60. Neuter-passives : or, neuters with a perfect that is passive in form.

[Their past participle is the part. of perfect active. Ausus, having dared.]

audeo ausus sum...to dare.

gaudeo gavīsus sum...rejoice.

soleo solītus sum...am wont.

61. § 15. The verb *esse* with irregular and other verbs.

| Esse, to be. |                          | INDICATIVE.           |        |        |  |                           |
|--------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------|--|---------------------------|
| Present,     | (I am,)                  | sum,                  | ēs,    | est,   |  | sūmus, estis, sunt.       |
| Imperf.,     | (I was,)                 | eram,                 | eras,  | erat,  |  | erāmus, erātis, erant.    |
| Fut.,        | (I shall or<br>will be,) | } ero,                | eris,  | erit,  |  | erīmus, erītis, erunt.    |
| Imperat.,    | (be thou,)               |                       |        |        |  |                           |
| Subj. Pres., | (I may be,)              | sim,                  | sīs,   | sit,   |  | sīmus, sītis, sint.       |
| Subj. Imp.,  | (I might, &c.<br>be,)    | } essem, <sup>1</sup> | esses, | esset, |  | essēmus, essētis, essent. |

Infin. esse : perf. fuisse : fut. fore, or futurum esse.

Perf. fui, (was ; have been.) Tenses from perf., regular.

<sup>1</sup> Forem, fores, &c., is also used as imperf. subj.



## 62. The compounds of *sum* are conjugated exactly in the same way.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| absum, <i>am absent.</i>                    | desum, <i>am wanting.</i>                    |
| adsum, <i>am present.</i>                   | præsum, <i>am before; or at the head of.</i> |
| intersum, <i>am amongst; am engaged in.</i> | prosum, <i>profit; do good to.</i>           |
| obsum, <i>am in the way of; hinder.</i>     |  |

(1.) *Prosum* inserts a 'd' before those tenses of *sum* that begin with a vowel:—

Not *pro-es, pro-eram*: but *prodes, proderam*.

(2.) *Absum, præsum* have present participle *absens, præsens*: but the latter only in the sense of 'present.'

## 63. § 16. IRREGULAR AND OTHER VERBS.

(1.) Possum, { I am able; I can. (*Possum, potēs, potest; possūmus, potestis, possunt.* Imp. *potēram.* Fut. *potēro.* Subj. pres. *possim.* Imp. *possem.* Root of perf. *potu.* See First Lat. Book, p. 56.)

(2.) { *Vōlo,* am willing; wish.  
 { *Nōlo,* am unwilling, (*for non volo.*)  
 { *Mālo,* had rather, (*for magis or miage volo.*)

|                      |                          |                              |
|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i>         | vōlo, vis, vult,         | volūmus, vultis, volunt.     |
|                      | nōlo, non vis, non vult, | nolūmus, non vultis, nolunt. |
|                      | mālo, mavis, mavult,     | malūmus, mavultis, malunt.   |
| <i>Subj. Pres.</i>   | vēlim, nōlim, mālim.     | (is, it: imus, itis, int.)   |
| <i>Subj. Imperf.</i> | vellem, nollem, mallem.  |                              |
| <i>Infinitive,</i>   | velle, nolle, malle.     |                              |

The other tenses are all formed regularly. They have no gerunds, supines, or participles, (except *volens, nolens,*) nor imperative, except *noli, nolito, — nolite.*

*Noli putare,* (be unwilling to think, =) *do not think.*

(3.) *Fēro,* (*tūli, lātum,*) bear. (*Imperative, fer — ferte.*)

This verb has *fers, fert, fertur,* for *feris, ferit, feritur*; and drops *e* whenever it would stand between two *r*'s. Hence *ferrem, ferre, &c.,* for *ferērem, ferēre.*

(4.) *Fio,* become; am made or done: *partly used as pass. of facio.*

It is conjugated regularly, except that it has *fīrem* for *fīrem*, and an irregular infin. *fīeri*. It has no *perf.*; *factus sum, eram, &c.,* being in use.

(5.) *Edo,* (*ē,*) eat.

This verb is conjugated regularly after the third; but has *also* some forms which are common to it and *sum*.

|                |                      |           |               |                              |    |
|----------------|----------------------|-----------|---------------|------------------------------|----|
| Present,       | <i>ēdo, &amp;c.,</i> | and also, | <i>ēs,</i>    | <i>est, — estis</i>          | —— |
| Imperative,    | <i>ede, &amp;c.,</i> | and also, | <i>es,</i>    | <i>esto, — este, estote.</i> |    |
| Subj. Imperf., | <i>edērem,</i>       | and also, | <i>essem,</i> | <i>esses, &amp;c.</i>        |    |
| Infinitive,    | <i>edēre,</i>        | and       | <i>esse.</i>  |                              |    |

N. B. These forms must be distinguished from those of *sum* by their transitive meaning. *ēs, thou eatest: ēs, thou art.*

(6.) *Eo*, (*ivi*,<sup>1</sup> *itum*,) *go*. (Pres. *eo*, *is*, *it*; *imus*, *itis*, *eunt*. Imp. *ibam*. Fut. *ibo*. Imperat. *i*. Subj. pres. *eam*. Imp. *irem*. Part. *iens*, *euntis*, &c. Ger. *eundi*, &c.)

(7.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Queo,} \quad \text{am able, can.} \\ \text{Nequeo,} \quad \text{am unable; cannot.} \end{array} \right. \left. \begin{array}{l} \text{These verbs are conjugated like } \textit{eo}, \\ \text{as far as they are in use: 3 plur.} \\ \textit{queunt, nequeunt. Subj. pres. queam,} \\ \textit{nequeam, \&c.} \end{array} \right.$

(8.)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Memini,} \\ \text{Cœpi,} \\ \text{Odi,} \end{array} \right. \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I remember; with only the tenses derived from the } \textit{perf.}, \text{ which} \\ \text{has the meaning of a } \textit{present. Imperat. memento.} \\ \text{I have begun, (} \textit>cœptus est} \text{ before pass. infin.)} \\ \text{I hate, (with meaning of } \textit{present. See memini.)} \end{array} \right.$

(9.) *Inquam*, I say: *inquit*, says he: *inquiunt*, say they, &c.

## § 17. DEPONENT VERBS.

64. The first conjugation has a vast number of deponent verbs, of which all are *regular*.—The following are the most common :

|   |  |   |  |
|---|--|---|--|
| abominor.....                                 | <i>regard as a bad omen ;</i><br><i>abhor, abominate.</i>          | gratulor <sup>3</sup> .....               | <i>to congratulate.</i>  |
| adversor.....                                 | <i>oppose myself.</i>  | hortor (acc. <i>ut</i> ) .....            | <i>exhort.</i>   |
| adūlor (dat. or acc.) .....                   | <i>flatter.</i>  | imitor .....                              | <i>imitate.</i>  |
| æmulor .....                                  | <i>emulate, rival.</i>   | insidiōr (dat.) .....                     | <i>plot against.</i>   |
| alucinor.....                                 | <i>play the fool ; talk idly.</i>                                  | interpretor .....                         | <i>interpret.</i>  |
| arbitror .....                                | <i>think.</i>  | jōcor .....                               | <i>jest.</i>   |
| aspornor.....                                 | <i>despise.</i>  | lætōr (abl. <i>de, in</i> ) .....         | <i>rejoice.</i>  |
| astipulor (dat.) ....                         | <i>to join in an en-</i><br><i>gagement ; to consent, approve.</i> | mētōr <sup>4</sup> .....                  | <i>measure.</i>  |
| aversor.....                                  | <i>turn away from, dislike.</i>                                    | mīnōr { dat. <i>pers.</i> } .....         | <i>threaten.</i>   |
| auxilior (dat.) .....                         | <i>help.</i>   | minōr { acc. <i>thing</i> } .....         | <i>threaten.</i>   |
| bacchor ....                                  | <i>revel (as a Bacchanalian.)</i>                                  | miror, (acc. and infin., <i>quod</i> ) .. | <i>wonder.</i>   |
| calumniōr .....                               | <i>calumniate.</i>   | moderor (dat. acc.) .....                 | <i>moderate, rule.</i>   |
| cavillor.....                                 | <i>banter, cavil.</i>  | mōrōr <sup>5</sup> ....                   | <i>delay, (intrans. and trans.)</i>  |
| causor.....                                   | <i>allege as an excuse.</i>  | opīnōr .....                              | <i>think.</i>  |
| cōmissor.....                                 | <i>revel, feast.</i>   | pōpūlor { .....                           | <i>lay waste.</i>  |
| comitor .....                                 | <i>accompany.</i>  | depopulor } .....                         | <i>lay waste.</i>  |
| commentor .....                               | <i>to meditate upon, contrive.</i>                                 | prēcor .....                              | <i>pray.</i>   |
| conciōnōr ..                                  | <i>harangue.</i>   | prelior.....                              | <i>to fight ; battle.</i>  |
| cōnōr .....                                   | <i>endeavor.</i>   | recordor (gen., acc., or <i>de</i> ) ..   | <i>remember.</i>   |
| contemplor .....                              | <i>contemplate.</i>  | sōlor { .....                             | <i>console.</i>  |
| crimīnōr .....                                | <i>accuse.</i>   | consolōr } .....                          | <i>console.</i>  |
| cunctor .....                                 | <i>delay.</i>  | suspīcor .....                            | <i>suspect</i>   |
| dignor (abl.) .....                           | <i>deem worthy.</i>  | testor....                                | <i>bear witness ; call to witness.</i>                                       |
| dedignor } .....                              | <i>disdain.</i>  | testifīcor .....                          | <i>bear witness.</i>   |
| indignor } .....                              | <i>disdain.</i>  | veneror .....                             | <i>venerate.</i>   |
| dominor (dat., <i>in</i> <sup>2</sup> ) ..... | <i>rule.</i>   | vēnōr .....                               | <i>hunt.</i>   |
| glorior (abl. <i>de</i> ) .....               | <i>boast.</i>  | versor ....                               | <i>to be turned in or among ; to</i><br><i>dwell ; to be employed about.</i> |

<sup>1</sup> In the compounds of *eo*, the *perf.* is generally *ii*.

<sup>2</sup> The mention of a preposition or conjunction after a verb shows that it is followed by that preposition or conjunction.

<sup>3</sup> Dat. of *person* ; the *thing* in acc. or with *de*.—*quod*.

<sup>4</sup> *Castra metari* ; *to measure out the ground for a camp ; to pitch a camp.*

<sup>5</sup> (*Illud*) *nihil moror*, (do not *detain* it, as a thing to be regarded or valued, =) *do not care for.*

## 65. SECOND CONJUGATION.

|                                       |                           |  |                                      |                            |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| fateor fassus.....                    | <i>confess.</i>           |  | misereor miseritus misertus (gen.).. | <i>pity.</i>               |
| liceor licitus.....                   | <i>bid for any thing.</i> |  | reor ratus.....                      | <i>think.</i>              |
| medeor (no perf., dat.).....          | <i>heal</i>               |  | tueor tuitus.....                    | <i>look at; protect.</i>   |
| mereor meritus (acc., de aliquo)..... | <i>deserve.</i>           |  | vereor veritus.....                  | <i>be shy of; to fear.</i> |

## 66. THIRD CONJUGATION.

|                                   |                                 |  |  |                            |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|----------------------------|
| adipiscor adeptus.....            | <i>obtain.</i>                  |  | nascor natus.....                          | <i>am born.</i>            |
| amplector amplexus, }             | ..... <i>embrace.</i>           |  | nitor nisus or nixus.. (abl. in with acc.) | <i>rely on; strive.</i>    |
| complector complexus, }           |                                 |  | obliviscor oblītus (gen., acc.)..          | <i>to forget.</i>          |
| divertor diversus.....            | <i>put up at an inn; lodge.</i> |  | paciscor pactus.....                       | <i>bargain, (intrans.)</i> |
| expergiscor experrectus.....      | <i>awake.</i>                   |  | pascor pastus.....                         | <i>feed, (intrans.)</i>    |
| fruor fruitus fractus (abl.)..... | <i>enjoy.</i>                   |  | pātiōr passus.....                         | <i>suffer.</i>             |
| fungor functus (abl.).....        | <i>discharge.</i>               |  | proficiscor profectus..                    | <i>set out; to march.</i>  |
| gradior gressus.....              | <i>step, walk.</i>              |  | quēōr questus.....                         | <i>complain.</i>           |
| invēhor invectus.....             | <i>inveigh against.</i>         |  | revertor reversus.....                     | <i>return.</i>             |
| irascor iratus (dat.).....        | <i>be angry.</i>                |  | sēquor secūtus.....                        | <i>follow.</i>             |
| lābor lapsus.....                 | <i>to slip down; glide.</i>     |  | vescor (without perf.) (abl.).....         | <i>feed on.</i>            |
| moriōr mortuus.....               | <i>die.</i>                     |  | ulciscor ultus.....                        | <i>revenge; punish.</i>    |
| nanciscor nactus.....             | <i>get.</i>                     |  | ūtor, usus (abl.).....                     | <i>use.</i>                |

67. FOURTH CONJUGATION.<sup>1</sup>

|                                |                          |  |  |                                       |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|--|--|---------------------------------------|
| adsentior adsensus (dat.)..... | <i>assent to.</i>        |  | oppērior oppertus (opperītus).....       | <i>wait for.</i>                      |
| blandior (dat.).....           | <i>fawn on; flatter.</i> |  | ordior orsus.....                        | <i>begin.</i>                         |
| experior expertus.....         | <i>try.</i>              |  | ōrior ortus orīri <sup>2</sup> .....     | <i>arise.</i>                         |
| largior.....                   | <i>give money.</i>       |  | partior.....                             | <i>divide.</i>                        |
| mentior.....                   | <i>lie.</i>              |  | pōtiōr, <sup>3</sup> (gen. or abl.)..... | <i>to get possession of.</i>          |
| mētiōr mensus.....             | <i>measure.</i>          |  | sortior.....                             | <i>to cast lots; obtain (by lot.)</i> |
| mōliōr.....                    | <i>plan.</i>             |  |  |                                       |

## § 18. IMPERSONALS.

68. Impersonals that are never used *personally*.<sup>4</sup>

|                       |                                  |  |                                  |                                    |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|--|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| oportet oportuit..... | <i>it behooves; one ought.</i>   |  | *pōnitēt pōnituit.....           | <i>it repents.</i>                 |
| libet libuit.....     | <i>it pleases.</i>               |  | *pudet puduit.....               | <i>(one) is ashamed.</i>           |
| licet licuit.....     | <i>it is permitted; one may.</i> |  | *miseret.....                    | <i>one pities.</i>                 |
| *piget.....           | <i>it grieves (one.)</i>         |  | *tādet.....                      | <i>it irketh; one is tired of.</i> |
|                       |                                  |  | rēfert (gen.) <sup>5</sup> ..... | <i>it concerns.</i>                |

69. Impersonals that are also used *personally* in the third person sing. or plur.

<sup>1</sup> When the *partic.* is not set down, it is *ītus*.

<sup>2</sup> So *orīrer*, &c., but in the *present* it is of the third; *oreris*, *oritur*.

<sup>3</sup> *Pōtri*, *potitus*: but *potēris*, *potitur*, &c., in *pres.* like the third; and so *poteris*, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Those that have an *asterisk* prefixed take acc. of person, gen. of the *thing*, (or object of the feeling.) It *repenteth* me of my folly.

<sup>5</sup> Abl. sing. fem. of a possessive pronoun.





## (2.) Possessive Pronouns.

Mens, *mine*, (voc. mas. *mi* :) tuus, *thine* : noster, (tra, trum,) *ours* : vester, *yours* ; suus, *his, hers, its, theirs*, (or, *his own, her own, &c.*)

(3.) Demonstrative (or, *pointing-out*) Pronouns.

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| Is,                    | { (antecedent to <i>qui</i> ) <i>that</i> , pl. <i>those</i> : when without a noun, <i>he, she, it</i> ; pl. <i>they</i> . <sup>1</sup> It has neuter <i>id</i> . The other cases are formed <i>as if</i> from <i>eus, ea, eum</i> , making the gen. <i>eius</i> , written <i>ejus</i> , and dat. <i>ei</i> . |
| Iste,                  | { <i>that of yours</i> ; <i>that by you</i> , (the demonstrative of the second person.) Iste, ista, istud, G. istius, &c., (reg. as if <i>us, a, ud</i> , G. ius.)  |
| Ille,                  | <i>that</i> ; <i>the former</i> . Ille, illa, illud. G. illius, &c.   |
| Iipse,                 | { <i>-self</i> , ( <i>myself, thyself, himself, &amp;c.</i> , according to the person or thing meant.) Iipse, ipsa, ipsum, G. ipsius, &c.   |
| Hic,                   | <i>this</i> , (pl. <i>these</i> ;) <i>the latter</i> , { Hic, hæc, hoc : hujus : huic : hunc, hanc, hoc : hoc, hac, hoc   hi, hæ, hæc : horum, harum, horum : his : hos, has, hæc.  |
| Idem,                  | { <i>the same</i> . Idem <i>ac</i> or <i>qui</i> , 'the same as,' (Idem, eadem, idem, G. ejusdem, <sup>2</sup> &c.)   |
| Qui,                   | <i>who, which</i> , { qui, quæ, quod : cuius : cui : quem, quam, quod : quo, quâ, quo   qui, quæ, quæ : quorum, quarum, quorum : quibus : quos, quas, quæ.  |
|                        | ☞ <i>Qui</i> is sometimes the indefinite 'any.'   |
| Quis ?                 | <i>who</i> ? <sup>3</sup> ( <i>interrogative</i> .)   |
| Quis,                  | any, ( <i>indefinite</i> : after <i>si, nisi, nē, num, quo, quanto</i> .)   |
| Quidam,                | <i>a certain one</i> .  |
| Quivis,                | { <i>any you please</i> .   |
| Quilibet,              |   |
| Quisquam, <sup>4</sup> | <i>any</i> ; <i>any single one</i> , (when it is <i>denied</i> that there are any.)   |
| Aliquis,               | { <i>any</i> ; <i>some</i> . (though not much or many : ali-quis, -qua, -quid or -quod. Neut. pl. -qua.)  |
| Quispiam,              | <i>some, somebody</i> .   |
| Quisque,               | <i>each</i> . (Unusquisque, stronger, <i>each one</i> .)  |
| Quisquis,              | <i>whoever</i> , (used without a substantive : neut. <i>quicquid</i> .)   |
| Quicumque,             | <i>whoever</i> ; <i>whatever</i> , (used <i>with</i> a subst.)  |
| Ecquis ?               | { ( <i>does</i> ) <i>any</i> ? (fem. sing. generally, neut. plur. always <i>ecqua</i> . It expects the answer <i>none</i> .)  |
| Uter,                  | <i>which</i> , (of two ;) <i>uterque, each</i> , ( <i>utraque, utrumque</i> ; G. -iusque.)  |
| Alius, (a, ud,)        | <i>another</i> ; <i>other</i> . (The first of two <i>alii</i> 's is <i>some</i> .)  |
| Alter,                 | <i>the other</i> , (of two :) <i>another</i> ; <i>one more</i> .  |
| Talis,                 | <i>such</i> ; antecedent to <i>qualis</i> , ( <i>as</i> .)  |
| Tantus,                | <i>so great</i> ; antecedent to <i>quantus</i> , ( <i>as</i> .)   |
| Tot,                   | <i>so many</i> ; antecedent to <i>quot</i> , ( <i>as</i> .)   |

<sup>1</sup> Nom. plural may be *ei* ; Dat. pl. *eis*.

<sup>2</sup> Idem = *is-dem* : 'is' must be declined, and *dem* appended : *m* before *d* is generally written *n* : *eundem, eorundem, &c.*

<sup>3</sup> *Quis* is declined like *qui* ; but has also neut. *quid* : and *quis, any*, has *nom. fem. sing.* and *neut. plur. quæ* or *quæ*.

The compounds of *quis* have also neut. *quid* and *quod* : of which *quid* is used without a substantive, *quod* with one.

*Quicumque* has only *quodcumque* in the neuter.

<sup>4</sup> Neut. *quicquam* ; very rarely *quodquam*. Zumpt. *Quisquam* is used as a subst., *nullus* as an adj.



## § 21. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

73. The usual way of forming the *comparative* is by adding *ior* to the *root* for the *mas.* and *fem.*, *ius* for the *neuter*.

[Doctus, doct-*ior*; sapiens, G. sapient-*is*, sapient-*ior*; tener, tener-*ior*;<sup>1</sup> pulcher, (pulchr,) pulchr-*ior*.<sup>1</sup>]

74. The superlative is formed by adding *issimus* (*a, um*) to the root.

(*a*) But the superlative of adjectives ending in *er*, is formed by adding *rimus* (*a, um*) to the nominative.

(Pulcher, pulcherrimus.)

75. Facilis *easy*, difficilis *difficult*, similis *like*, dissimilis *unlike*, gracilis *slender*, humilis *low*, make the superlative in *limus*.

(Simillimus, facillimus.)

76. The following are quite irregular:—

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| (1) Bonus, ( <i>good</i> .) melior, optimus.                      |  | magnus, ( <i>great</i> .) major, maximus.                      |
| Malus, ( <i>bad</i> .) pejor, pessimus.                           |  | parvus, ( <i>little</i> .) minor, minimus.                     |
| Multus, ( <i>much</i> , pl. <i>many</i> .)—plurimus,              |  | Plus, ( <i>neut.</i> .) G. pluris, are the only forms in sing. |
| Multum, ( <i>much</i> .) plus, plurimum.                          |  | Plures, <i>neut.</i> , plura: G. plurium, &c.                  |
| Plerique (-æque, -aque) is used for 'most' without a substantive. |  |  |

(2) *Defectives.*

|                                | <i>Comparative.</i>                   | <i>Superlative.</i>                    |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|
| (citra, <i>on this side</i> .) | citerior, <i>nearer</i> ,             | citimus, <i>nearest</i> . <sup>2</sup> |
| (intus, <i>within</i> .)       | interior, <i>inner</i> ,              | intimus, <i>inmost</i> .               |
| (prope, <i>near</i> .)         | propior, <i>nearer</i> ,              | proximus, <i>nearest</i> .             |
| (ultra, <i>beyond</i> .)       | ulterior, <i>further</i> ,            | ultimus, <i>furthest off, last</i> .   |
| ὠκύς, <i>swift</i> ,           | ocior, <i>swifter</i> ,               | ocissimus, <i>swiftest</i> .           |
|                                | prior, <i>former</i> ,                | primus, <i>first</i> .                 |
| [deter, (obsolete.)]           | deterior, <i>worse</i> , <sup>3</sup> | deterimus, <i>worst</i> .              |

(3) *Abundant.*

|           |            |            |  |
|-----------|------------|------------|--|
| extērus,  | exterior,  | extrēmus,  | seldom extimus, ( <i>outermost, last</i> .)              |
| infērus,  | inferior,  | infimus,   | imus, ( <i>lowest</i> .)                                 |
| supērus,  | superior,  | suprēmus,  | summus, ( <i>highest</i> .)                              |
| posterus, | posterior, | postrēmus, | postumus, (but only in the sense of a posthumous child.) |

<sup>1</sup> Remember that for adjectives in *er* the whole nominative is the root, the preceding *e* being often dropped.

<sup>2</sup> *Nearer* and *nearest* to the speaker, with reference to some *point* or *line* on *this side* of which it is situated. *Uterior, ultimus*, mark remoteness on *the other side*.

<sup>3</sup> In the sense of *less good*.

Also *maturrīmus* and *maturissīmus*.  
*imbecillīmus* — *imbecillissīmus*.

*dives*, (rich,) *divitiōr*, } *divitissīmus*.  
*ditior*, } *ditissīmus*. { Cicero uses the longer forms. The shorter  
 come from *dis*, G. *ditis*: of which the N.  
 pl. *ditia* is now the only proper form for  
 that case.

*Jūvĕnis*, *sĕnex*, have comp. *jūnior*, *sĕnior*. (*Senex*, old man; G. *senis*. G. pl. *um*.)

## § 22. VARIOUS VOCABULARIES.

### 77. Adjectives in *is* with *er* in *nom. sing. masculine*.

|                            |                   |                  |                            |
|----------------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>ācer</i> , <sup>1</sup> | <i>ācris</i> ,    | <i>ācre</i> ,    | <i>sharp, vigorous.</i>    |
| <i>alācer</i> ,            | <i>alācris</i> ,  | <i>alācre</i> ,  | <i>brisk.</i>              |
| <i>celeber</i> ,           | <i>celĕbris</i> , | <i>celĕbre</i> , | <i>celebrated.</i>         |
| <i>celer</i> ,             | <i>celĕris</i> ,  | <i>celĕre</i> ,  | <i>quick.</i>              |
| <i>salūber</i> ,           | <i>salubris</i> , | <i>salubre</i> , | <i>wholesome, healthy.</i> |

### 78. 1. ADVERBS OF PLACE<sup>2</sup> are fivefold, *viz.* *Adverbs signifying Motion* (or *Rest*.)

#### (1) *In a place.*

|                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Ubi</i> ?     | <i>Where</i> ?                 |
| <i>Hic</i> ,     | <i>Here.</i>                   |
| <i>Illic</i> ,   | <i>There.</i>                  |
| <i>Istic</i> ,   | <i>There, where you are.</i>   |
| <i>Ibi</i> ,     | <i>There.</i>                  |
| <i>Intus</i> ,   | <i>Within.</i>                 |
| <i>Foris</i> ,   | <i>Without.</i>                |
| <i>Ubique</i> ,  | <i>Everywhere.</i>             |
| <i>Nusquam</i> , | <i>Nowhere.</i>                |
| <i>Alicūbi</i> , | <i>Somewhere.</i>              |
| <i>Alībi</i> ,   | <i>Elsewhere.</i>              |
| <i>Ubivis</i> ,  | <i>Anywhere, (you please.)</i> |
| <i>Ibidem</i> ,  | <i>In the same place.</i>      |

#### (2) *To a place—(o, uc.)*

|                 |                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Quo</i> ?    | <i>Whither</i> ?                  |
| <i>Huc</i> ,    | <i>Hither.</i>                    |
| <i>Illuc</i> ,  | <i>Thither.</i>                   |
| <i>Istuc</i> ,  | <i>Thither, to where you are.</i> |
| <i>Intro</i> ,  | <i>To within.</i>                 |
| <i>Foras</i> ,  | <i>To without.</i>                |
| <i>Eo</i> ,     | <i>To that place.</i>             |
| <i>Alio</i> ,   | <i>To another place.</i>          |
| <i>Aliquo</i> , | <i>To some place.</i>             |
| <i>Eōdem</i> ,  | <i>To the same place.</i>         |

#### (3) *Towards a place.*

*Quorsum* ? *Whitherward* ?

|                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>Versus</i> ,       | <i>Towards.</i>           |
| <i>Sursum</i> ,       | <i>Upwards.</i>           |
| <i>Deorsum</i> ,      | <i>Downwards.</i>         |
| <i>Retrorsum</i> ,    | <i>Backwards.</i>         |
| <i>Dextrorsum</i> ,   | <i>To the right hand.</i> |
| <i>Sinistrorsum</i> , | <i>To the left hand.</i>  |

#### (4) *From a place—(nc, nde.)*

|                   |                                    |
|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>Unde</i> ?     | <i>Whence</i> ?                    |
| <i>Hinc</i> ,     | <i>Hence.</i>                      |
| <i>Illic</i> ,    | <i>Thence.</i>                     |
| <i>Istinc</i> ,   | <i>Thence, from where you are.</i> |
| <i>Inde</i> ,     | <i>Thence.</i>                     |
| <i>Aliunde</i> ,  | <i>From elsewhere.</i>             |
| <i>Alicunde</i> , | <i>From some place.</i>            |
| <i>Sicunde</i> ,  | <i>If from any place.</i>          |
| <i>Utrinque</i> , | <i>On both sides.</i>              |
| <i>Superne</i> ,  | <i>From above.</i>                 |
| <i>Inferne</i> ,  | <i>From below.</i>                 |
| <i>Cœlītus</i> ,  | <i>From heaven.</i>                |
| <i>Fundītus</i> , | <i>From the ground.</i>            |

#### (5) *Through or by a place.*

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Qua</i> ?   | <i>Which way</i> ?       |
| <i>Hac</i> ,   | <i>This way.</i>         |
| <i>Illac</i> , | <i>That way.</i>         |
| <i>Istac</i> , | <i>That way, by you.</i> |
| <i>Alia</i> ,  | <i>Another way.</i>      |

<sup>1</sup> *So volūcer, equester, pedester, paluster, terrester, campester, silvester.*

<sup>2</sup> From Ruddiman.

## 2. ADVERBS OF TIME are threefold, viz. such as signify,

|                                       |                    |  |                  |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------|--|------------------|
| (1) <i>Being in time, either</i>      |                    | Semper, <i>Always.</i>                         |                  |
| 1. <i>Present.</i>                    |                    | Nunquam, <i>Never.</i>                         |                  |
| Nunc, <i>Now.</i>                     |                    | Int̄erim, } <i>In the mean time.</i>           |                  |
| Hodie, <i>To-day.</i>                 |                    | Interea, }                                     |                  |
|                                       |                    | Quotidie, <i>Daily.</i>                        |                  |
| 2. <i>Past.</i>                       |                    | (2) <i>Continuance of Time.</i>                |                  |
| Tunc, } <i>Then.</i>                  |                    | Quamdiu? <i>How long?</i>                      |                  |
| Tum, }                                |                    | Diu, <i>Long.</i>                              |                  |
| Heri, <i>Yesterday.</i>               |                    | Tamdiu, <i>So long.</i>                        |                  |
| Dudum, }                              |                    | Jamdiu, }                                      |                  |
| Pridem, }                             | <i>Heretofore.</i> | Jamdūdum, }                                    | <i>Long ago.</i> |
| Pridie, <i>The day before.</i>        |                    | Jampridem, }                                   |                  |
| Nudiustertius, <i>Three days ago.</i> |                    |  |                  |
| Nuper, <i>Lately.</i>                 |                    |  |                  |
| 3. <i>Future.</i>                     |                    | (3) <i>Vicissitude, or Repetition of Time.</i> |                  |
| (Very near.)                          |                    | 1. <i>Indefinite.</i>                          |                  |
| Jamjam, { <i>Presently.</i>           |                    | Quoties? <i>How often?</i>                     |                  |
| Mox, { <i>Immediately.</i>            |                    | Sæpe, <i>Often.</i>                            |                  |
| Statim, { <i>By-and-by.</i>           |                    | Raro, <i>Seldom.</i>                           |                  |
| Protinus, { <i>Instantly.</i>         |                    | Toties, <i>So often.</i>                       |                  |
| Illico, <i>Straightway.</i>           |                    | Aliquoties, <i>For several times.</i>          |                  |
|                                       |                    | Vicissim, <i>By turns.</i>                     |                  |
|                                       | (Remote.)          | Rursus, <i>Again.</i>                          |                  |
| Cras, <i>To-morrow.</i>               |                    | It̄erum, <i>A second time.</i>                 |                  |
| Postridie, <i>The day after.</i>      |                    | Subinde, <i>Immediately after.</i>             |                  |
| Perendie, <i>Two days hence.</i>      |                    | Ident̄em, <i>Several times.</i>                |                  |
| Nondum, <i>Not yet.</i>               |                    |  |                  |
| 4. <i>Indefinite.</i>                 |                    | 2. <i>Definite, or in Number.</i>              |                  |
| Quando? <i>When?</i>                  |                    | Semel, <i>Once.</i>                            |                  |
| Aliquando, } <i>Sometimes.</i>        |                    | Bis, <i>Twice.</i>                             |                  |
| Nonnunquam, }                         |                    | Ter, <i>Thrice.</i>                            |                  |
| Interdum, }                           |                    | Quater, <i>Four times.</i>                     |                  |

## ADVERBS OF ORDER: as,

|                            |                                |  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| Inde, <i>Then.</i>         | Deinceps, <i>Successively.</i> | Primo, <sup>1</sup> -um, <i>First.</i> |
| Deinde, <i>Thereafter.</i> | Denuo, <i>Anew.</i>            | Secundo, <i>Secondly.</i>              |
| Dehinc, <i>Henceforth.</i> | Denique, <i>Finally.</i>       | &c.                                    |
| Porro, <i>Moreover.</i>    | Postremo, <i>Lastly.</i>       |  |

## 79. THE NUMERALS.

| (1) CARDINALS.<br>(answering to <i>how many?</i> (the first three declinable.)) | ORDINALS.<br>(marking the <i>place</i> any thing holds in a <i>series</i> .) | DISTRIBUTIVES.<br>(answering to <i>how many apiece</i> .) | ADVERBS.   |
|---|--|---|------------|
| 1. unus   | pr̄imus  | sinḡuli ( <i>pl.</i> )                                   | semel.     |
| 2. duo  | secundus   | b̄ini   | bis.       |
| 3. tres   | tertius  | terni   | ter.       |
| 4. quatuor  | quartus  | quaterni  | quater.    |
| 5. quinque  | quintus  | qūini  | quinquies. |
| 6. sex  | sextus   | s̄eni   | sexies.    |
| 7. septem   | septimus   | sept̄eni  | septies.   |
| 8. octo   | oct̄avus   | oct̄oni   | octies.    |

<sup>1</sup> Primo, 'at first : ' primum, 'in the first place ; ' first.

|  |  |   |                          |
|--|--|---|--------------------------|
| 9. novem                               | nōnus  | novēni  | novies.                  |
| 10. decem                              | dēcīmus  | dēni  | decies.                  |
| 11. undēcim                            | undecimus  | undēni  | undecies.                |
| 12. duodēcim                           | duodecimus   | duodēni   | duodecies.               |
| 13. tredēcim                           | } <i>the two forms used</i><br>( <i>tertius decimus,</i><br>&c.) | } <i>the two forms</i><br><i>used (terni</i><br><i>deni, &amp;c.)</i> | tredecies.               |
| 14. quatuordēcim                       |  |   | quatuordecies.           |
| 15. quindēcim                          |  |   | quindecies. <sup>1</sup> |
| 16. sedēcim                            |  |   | sedecies.                |
| 17. septendēcim                        |  |   | septiesdecies.           |
| 18. duodeviginti                       | duodevicesimus   | duodevicies.  |                          |
| 19. undeviginti                        | undevicesimus  | undevicies.   |                          |
| 20. viginti                            | { vicesimus }<br>{ vigesimus }                                   | vicēni  | vicies.                  |
| 100. centum                            | centesimus   | centēni   | centies.                 |
| 1000. mille                            | millesimus   | millēni   | millies.                 |
| 2000. { bis mille }<br>{ bina millia } | bis millesimus   | bis millēni   | bis millies.             |

(2) Terminations of the multiples of *ten* and a *hundred*.

|            | CARD.                  | ORD.                             | DISTRIB.             | ADV.                       |  |
|------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|--|
| (Tens)     | ginta                  | { gesimus }<br>{ cesimus }       | { gēni }<br>{ cēni } | { gies }<br>{ cies }       | { added to <i>tri, quadra, quingua, sexa, septua, octo, nona.</i> The forms in <i>c</i> are used for 30 only.  |
| (Hundreds) | { genti }<br>{ centi } | { gentesimus }<br>{ centesimus } | { gēni }<br>{ cēni } | { genties }<br>{ centies } | { added to <i>du, tre, quadrin, quin, sex, septin, octin, non,</i> (for <i>adv.</i> also <i>nonin.</i> ) The forms in <i>c</i> are for 2, 3, 6, (2 × 3 = 6.) |

Obs. (1.) The terminations of so many *tens* and so many *hundreds* are alike in the distributive series. But  $\text{☞}$  the *hundreds* have a *consonant*, the *tens* a *vowel* before the termination, except for the multiples by three, in which observe that the *hundreds* have the *earlier* vowel (*tre* for *hundreds*; *tri* for *tens*.) The forms in *genteni, centeni*, are also used for the *hundreds*.

Obs. (2.) The intermediate forms are made up of two or more of the forms given: *unus et viginti, or viginti unus*, (one and twenty, or twenty-one; as in English;) but the forms *duode-, unde-, (two-from, one-from)* are mostly used for the *two before every ten or hundred*. Above 100 (in the *cardinal numbers*) the *larger precedes*, with or without *et*; but *et* is never used *twice*.

(*Trecenti sexaginta sex*; or, *trecenti et sexaginta sex*.)

*Mille* is an indeclinable *adj.*: but *millia* (thousands) is a *plural substantive*; *millia, millium, millibus*.

$\text{☞}$  With substantives used in the plural only, the *distributives* are used instead of the *cardinals*: *binae literae, two letters*. But *uni, æ, a*, is used, (not *singūli*.) and *trini* is used for *three*, not *terni*.

## 80. The following lines give the prepositions that govern the ablative:

absque, a, ab, abs, and de,  
coram, clam, cum, ex, and e,  
tenus, sine, pro and prae.

<sup>1</sup> Various forms are used besides those set down: especially two uncombined forms are often used where *one compound form* is given. Thus in the adverbs, for *quindecies, quinque decies* and *quinquies decies* may be used: so *sexies decies, &c.*



(See Appendix to First Latin Book, p. 123.)

## PRINCIPLES OF WORD-BUILDING.

## DIVISION OF THE CONSONANTS.

|                 | Mutes.   |      |          | Liquids. | Spirants. | Organ by which they are formed. |
|-----------------|--|------|----------|----------|-----------|---------------------------------|
|                 | SMOOTH.  | MID. | ASP.     |          |           |                                 |
| 1. p sounds,    | p  | b    | (ph,) f  | m        | v         | lip, (labials.)                 |
| t sounds,       | t  | d    | (th.)    | n   l    | s   j     | tongue, (dentals.)              |
| k sounds,       | c  | g    | (ch,) qu | r        | h         | throat, (gutturals.)            |
| Double letters, | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} x \text{ is equivalent to cs.} \\ z \text{ } \underline{\hspace{1cm}} \text{ ss or cs.} \end{array} \right.$ |      |          |          |           |                                 |

## (1) Prefixes.

## (Change of form.)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 2. Ab, away from,  | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a, (m,^1 v, \text{ and sometimes } f; \text{ but } au \\ \text{ before } fero, fugio.) \\ ab, (sc, t,) \text{ as } (p.) \end{array} \right.$ |
| 3. ad, to,   |  |
| 4. amb, } round; about; on both sides.   |  |
| ambi-, }   |  |
| 5. ante, before.   |  |
| 6. circum, around.   |  |
| 7. con, with; in some words completely.  | co, (h and vowels;) com, (m, b, p; <sup>2</sup> ) assimilated before l, r.   |
| 8. contra, against.  |  |
| 9. de, down; way; in some words it adds the notion of disagreeableness or deterioration.     |  |
| 10. dis, <sup>3</sup> asunder, in different directions; away from; un-                       | di, (d, g, l, m;) assimilated before f.  |
| 11. ex, out of, thoroughly.  | e, (liquids and b, d, g, v,) ef, (f.)  |
| 12. in, into, on, against; with adjectives, not.   | im, (b, p, m;) i, (gn;) assimilated before l, r. <sup>4</sup>  |
| 13. inter, between, amongst.   | assimilated in intelligo.  |
| 14. intro, within.   |  |
| 15. ob, against; sometimes about. <sup>5</sup>   | assimilated before c, f, g, p; but may stand before p.   |
| 16. per, through, thoroughly; (with adj.) very. It sometimes adds a bad meaning to the word. | assimilated before l.  |

<sup>1</sup> The letters in parentheses are those before which it undergoes the change.

<sup>2</sup> And sometimes vowels, as in *comedo*.

<sup>3</sup> The meaning of *dis* is generally separative; sometimes *deprivative*, (as in *displicere, dissuadere*.) Döderlein.

<sup>4</sup> 'In' may, however, stand before *l, r*.

<sup>5</sup> In which meaning it is an abbreviation, perhaps from *amb*. D.



## Prefixes.

17. post, after.
18. præ, before; (with adj.) very.
19. præter, by.
20. pro, forth, forwards.
21. re, back, again, away, un-; (sometimes very, or forth from within.)
22. retro, backwards.
23. sē, without, apart from.
24. sub, under, away from beneath, from below upwards, somewhat.
25. subter, underneath, away from underneath.
26. super, above.
27. trans, across, through, over to the other side.
28. nē, not.
29. vē, not, ill.
30. bene, well.
31. male, ill.
32. satis, enough.

## Change of form.

prod before vowel. pol, por, before l, r.  
red before vowel.

assimilated before c, f, g, m, p, r. (But before m, p, r, and n, it is better to retain the b.)

trā, (d, j,) but trans preferred by Cæsar.

## (2.) Suffixes.

## (a) VERBS.

33. are, from nouns: to make, produce, employ oneself about, procure, show oneself as: -ire (from nouns) are also trans.
34. are, from root of supine: to do, strengthening the meaning of the primitive verb, (intensives.)
35. it-are, from root of present or supine: to do frequently, continually, (frequentatives.)
36. sc-ēre, to begin to—(inchoatives.)  
a, e, are the connecting vowels for the first and second conjugations; i for the third and fourth. Some are from nouns: their perfect is in *ui*, *sc* and the connecting vowel being thrown away.
37. ūr-ire, to wish or want to—(desideratives.)
38. ill-are, to do in a little degree or trifling way.
39. ēre, from nouns, generally intransitive; to be, or become.
40. ari, from substantives; (same meaning as *āre*, 33.)

## (b) SUBSTANTIVES.

41. or, from root of supine, a man who does—fem. *rix*.
42. or, from root of present, express the action or state of the verb.
43. io,
44. us, of the fourth, } action or state of the verb: *io* especially the doing of the action.
45. ūra,
46. ido, (G. *īdin* for *idon*), }
47. igo, (G. *igin* for *igon*), } are also abstract substantives from verbs.
48. men, } the thing done.
49. mentum, } the thing by which—is done: that which does. *ī* is the connecting vowel of the third, but the termination is often added without a connecting vowel. In the first and fourth, the terminations are added to the *ā*, *ī*.
50. būlum, }
51. ūlum, } that which is, that which is used for, that by which.
52. ēla, }
53. ēna, } also denote that by which.
54. crum, }
55. strum, } a place or thing prepared for.
56. um, the action of a verb as a thing: then the action itself.
57. mōnia, the habit or continued state of.
58. o, }
59. a, } express the person who.

## From Nouns, (including Participles.)

60. *tas*, Gen. *tātis*: [generally has *i* for the connecting vowel: }  
 from adjectives in *ius* are formed substantives in *iētās*; } are terminations  
 from adjectives in *stus*, substantives in *stas*.] } of abstract sub-  
 61. *ia*, (from adj. of one termination<sup>1</sup>) } stantives, deno-  
 62. *īia*, (from adjectives in *us*) } ting a *property*,  
 63. *tūdo*, (connecting vowel *i*) } *disposition*, *state*,  
 64. *ēdo*, (a rare termination) } &c.  
 65. *tus*, Gen. *tūtis* (only in four words)  
 66. *lus*, { diminutives;<sup>2</sup> connecting vowel generally *u*, which sometimes takes a  
*la*, { *c* before it. Some have *ō* or *ī* as their connecting vowel. Others end  
*lum*, { in *illus*, *ellus*. Some in *leus*.  
 67. *ium*, denotes a *body* or *assemblage of*, or an *office abstractedly*.  
 68. *ātus*, }  
 69. *ītas*, } answer to 'hood,' 'ship' denoting either an *office* or a *body of men*.  
 70. *ūra*, }  
 71. *ētum*, a place where *trees* grow together.  
 72. *arium*, a *receptacle*.  
 73. *ile*, a place where *animals* are kept.

## Patronymics.

74. *īdes*, son or (male) descendant of.  
 75. *īdes*, is for *e-īdes*, from nouns in *eus*.  
 76. *ādes*, }  
 77. *iades*, } are from words of the first decl. in *as* or *es*; *iādes* also from *ius*.  
 78. *is*, fem. form of *īdes*, Gen. *īdis*.  
 79. *as*, ————— *ades*, Gen. *ādis*.

## (c) ADJECTIVES (1) from Verbs.

80. *bundus*, has the strengthened meaning of the present participle used ad-  
 jectively.  
 81. *cundus*, has in a few words the same meaning as *bundus*.  
 82. *īdus*, (chiefly from intrans. verbs,) denotes the quality of the root ad-  
 jectively.  
 83. *uus*, has the same meaning as *īdus*: from *transitive* verbs it generally has a  
*passive* meaning.  
 84. *īlis*, }  
*bīlis*, } *capable of being*; *fit to be*.  
 85. *ax*, having such a *habit*, *inclination*, &c.; generally of *faulty ones*.

## (d) Adjectives signifying of, belonging or related to.

86. *ius*, mostly from substantives in *or*.  
 87. *īcus*, generally from names of *places*, *countries*, and *persons*.  
 88. *ēus*, from Greek names of persons.  
 89. *īlis*.  
 90. *ālis*, (*āris* after another *l*; and in *militaris*.)  
 91. *ēlis*.  
 92. *īnus*, describing the *flesh* of such an animal.  
 93. *īnus*, (from *ia*, *ium*,)  
 94. *ensis*, }  
 95. *as*, (Gen. *ātis*: from *um*,) } of such a town, &c., (*ānus*, *ensis*, from other places  
 96. *ānus*, *iānus*, } also, as *montānus*, *castrensis*.)  
 97. *æus*, (from *a*, *æ*,)

<sup>1</sup> And sometimes from substantives, (custod-ia.)

<sup>2</sup> Observe, the diminutive ends in *lus*, *la*, or *lum*, according as the word from which it is formed is *mas.*, *fem.*, or *neuter*.

(c) Adjectives meaning of *such a substance or material.*

98. ĕnus.

99. ĭnus, (especially of *trees, plants, &c.*)[When the root is not the name of a *material or substance, ĭnus* denotes *likeness* only.]100. cuis, (used also as *ius*, a simple *genitive* meaning.)101. ceus, (denotes *likeness* only, when the root is not the name of a *substance or material*.)(f) Adjectives signifying *fulness, abundance.*

102. ōsus.

103. lentus, (often with connecting vowel *u*.)

104. idus.

105. arius denotes of *such an occupation*; generally used as substantives. Sometimes *pertaining to*, (agrarius.)106. atus, }  
107. ĭtus, } (English 'ed') provided, furnished with.  
108. utus, }109. stus, *being in*; or *having* (such a property) *in oneself*.110. stis, *being in* such a place.111. ster, } dwelling in such a place.  
112. stris, }113. tĭlis, } describe an object from the place where it lives.  
114. timus, }115. ĭvus mostly denotes *manner, circumstance, &c.*116. ernus marks *descent*, and relations of *time*.117. urnus denotes *time*.

## ADVERBS.

118. ĕ, from adjectives in *us, er*.

119. ĕ, from adjectives of the third.

120. ō, from some adjectives in *us, er*; and from *past participles*.121. ter, (with connecting vowel *i*, except after *n*.) from adjectives of the *third* and participles in *ns*.[A few are from adjectives in *us*, but there is generally an adverb in *e* too.]122. (s)im, } from root of supine, denoting the *manner*; but also from substan-123. (t)im, } tives, generally with connecting vowel *a*.124. ĭtus, (from substantives, adjectives, and prepositions,) denoting *whence*.

## (g) Common terminations of compound words.

125. dĭcus, one who }  
126. lŏquus, ——— } *speaks*, }  
127. ficus, one who *does*, } as adjectives.  
128. vŏlus, one who *wishes*, }Corresponding subst. of *thing*.

137. dĭcium.

138. cipium.

139. ficium.

140. cinium.

129. dĭcus, one who *speaks*.130. ceps, (cipĭtis,) one who *takes*.131. fex, (fĭcis,) one who *does*.132. cen, (cĭnis,) one who *sings*.133. fer, } one who *bears*.

134. ger, }

135. gĕna,<sup>1</sup> one who is *born of*.136. cŏla, one who *dwells in*.[When the first half of the compound word is a noun, the connecting vowel is short *i*.]

To these may be added,

141. spex, (spĭcis,) one who *looks at*; *examines*.142. spĭcium, corresponding substantive of *thing*.<sup>1</sup> So *gnus*, for *gen-us*, (gĭgno,) of *such a nature*.



## II. EXERCISES.

---

### EXERCISE 1.

IN the first six exercises, the object of which is to try the pupil's readiness and accuracy in forming and translating the tenses of the Latin Verb, the meaning of the verbs used is to be learned from the corresponding English Exercise. Wherever the conjugation is not told at once by the termination, it is marked by an added numeral.

☞ In the notes, S. refers to the Questions on Latin Syntax at the end of the volume: C. to the Cautions: Syn. to the Synonymes.

Sentences to which \* is prefixed are not to be translated literally.

a. Araturus est. b. Juraverant. c. Migremus, (1.) d. Silētis, (2.) e. Nocuisses, (2.) f. Manendi, (2.) g. Quærent, (3.) h. Metuant, (3.) i. Venīmus. k. Serviant, (4.) l. Sitītis, (4.) m. Tonabat. n. Ego vituperabo. o. Tu laudaveris. p. Rideat. q. Nos cadimus. r. Vos stetissetis.<sup>1</sup> s. Illi dormiebant, (4.) t. Pater doceat. u. Filius discet, (3.) v. Puella canat, (3.) w. Patres diligunt. x. Filii gaudent, (2.) y. Puellæ saltaverunt.

a. We should have ploughed. b. Let him swear. c. They had removed. d. I will be silent. e. They will hurt. f. Ye will remain. g. Seek. h. Let him fear. i. They are come. k. They would-have-been-slaves. l. He is thirsty. m. It thunders. n. They were blaming. o. We must praise virtue.<sup>2</sup> p. They will laugh. q. Ye were falling. r. They were standing. s. He will sleep. t. The fathers will teach. u. Let the sons learn. v. The girls were singing. w. Let the fathers love. x. The son will rejoice. y. Let the girls dance.

<sup>1</sup> From stare.

<sup>2</sup> Virtus, *g.* virtutis. S. 163.



## EXERCISE 2.

a. Ludendum est,<sup>1</sup> (3.) b. Cantabitis. c. Stupuissent,<sup>2</sup> (2.) d. Vivant, (3.) e. Nos postulabimus. f. Detis, (1.) g. Accipiant, (3.) h. Jubebo. i. Parentum est, (2.) k. Nē recūsa. l. Mater nutrit. m. Accipitres<sup>3</sup> rapiebant, (3.) n. Lupus ululaverat. o. Equi hinniebant, (4.) p. Asini rudunt. q. Aquila volat, (1.) r. Ranæ natavissent. s. Nos patres senescimus. t. Filii adolescebant. u. Illi pueri garriebant, (4.) v. Arbōres crescunt.

a. Ye are playing. b. Let us sing. c. They are astounded. d. They will live. e. They would have demanded. f. Of giving. g. Ye were receiving. h. He will order. i. He will obey. k. He will have refused. l. The earth<sup>4</sup> will nourish. m. Let the hawk snatch. n. The wolf will howl. o. The horses will neigh. p. The ass was braying. q. The eagles will have flown. r. A frog was swimming. s. My father was growing-old. t. Ye are growing-up. u. The boys chatter. v. The tree was growing.

<sup>1</sup> S. 164.<sup>2</sup> Stupēre, to be astounded.<sup>3</sup> Nom. Accipiter.<sup>4</sup> Voc. 1. p. 145.

## EXERCISE 3.

a. Clamabas. b. Certabimus. c. Respondebis. d. Fulgebit. e. Plaudebat, (3.) f. Pingant, (3.) g. Obedient, (4.) h. Jacient, (3.) i. Aqua fluebat, (3.) k. Arēna urebat, (3.) l. Aquilæ rapiant, (3.) m. Aves volabunt. n. Amīci veniebant, (4.) o. Famuli serviebant, (4.) p. Agricōlæ araturi sunt. q. Cantandum est. r. Vos nautæ navigabitis. s. Illi viri ridebant, (2.) t. Non est garriendum, (4.) u. Lupi ululabant.

a. Ye were crying-out. b. (We) should not contend.<sup>1</sup> c. They answer. d. The moon was shining. e. Let the boys clap, (= applaud.) f. The boys will paint. g. Let a good boy obey. h. Let them throw. i. The waters will flow. k. The fire will burn, (*trans.*) l. Ye eagles are snatching. m. Let the birds fly. n. My friend will

come. o. The domestics will perform-their-service. p. The husbandman would have ploughed. q. The poet will have sung. r. The sailor will sail. s. Do not laugh. t. Boys will chatter. u. Of howling.

<sup>1</sup> S. 164.

#### EXERCISE 4.

a. Feminæ nebant. b. Viri pugnabitis. c. Speravisset. d. Tu metuebas. e. Ille fidebat. f. Puer ille ridebit. g. Puellæ plorabunt. h. Aurum illud micat, (1.) i. Pueri peccaverant. k. Vos puellæ ludētis. l. Patres jubebunt. m. Filiæ pareant. n. Hoc argentum splendebit. o. Discipuli non discebant. p. Illæ matres nutrient. q. Illa metalla fulgebant. r. Hi omnes current. s. Hæ aves cantillabant. t. Hæc membra dolebant.

a. The woman will spin. b. Do not fight. c. Ye were hoping. d. (We) must not fear. e. We must be-confident. f. Let the boy laugh. g. Those boys cried. h. Let that gold shine. i. Let not the boy do wrong. k. For the sake (*causâ*) of playing. l. Let the fathers order. m. To obey. n. This silver was shining. o. Let the pupils learn. p. That mother was nourishing. q. That metal was shining. r. These boys will run. s. This bird was trilling. t. This limb is-in-pain.

#### EXERCISE 5.

a. Hic liber delectabit. b. Gloria illa durabit. c. Hæc stella occidet. d. Bellum illud nocebit. e. Nos magistri erudiemus, (4.) f. Vos ministri venietis, (4.) g. Hi fabricudent, (3.) h. Ager meus virebit. i. Sententia mea valebit. k. Auxilium meum juvabit. l. Tu tiro disces. m. Leo sæviet, (4.) n. Pavo ille superbiet, (4.) o. Ego præceptor vetabo. p. Vos oratores dicetis. q. Hic custos custodiet, (4.) r. Forma tua placebit. s. Animus tuus gaudebit. t. Brachium tuum vincet.

a. These books will delight. b. Thy glory will last.

c. Will not<sup>1</sup> these stars set? d. That war had hurt. e. Your teacher will teach. f. My servant was coming. g. Let that smith forge. h. Will not<sup>1</sup> my fields grow-green? i. My opinions will prevail. k. My auxiliaries will help. l. These beginners will learn. m. The lion was raging. n. These peacocks will be-proud. o. Has not<sup>1</sup> the teacher forbidden? p. That orator had spoken. q. These guards will guard. r. You will please by your beauty. s. My mind was rejoicing. t. He shall be conquered by my arm.

<sup>1</sup> Nonnē: *to be the first word.*

---

### EXERCISE 6.

a. Rex imperabit. b. Regina regnabit. c. Hæ leges non semper valebunt. d. Duces nostri fortiter pugnabunt. e. Non semper vivemus. f. Mox rosæ florebunt. g. Vos sorores vigilabitis. h. Nos fratres dormiemus. i. Uxor tua narrabit. k. Tu maritus auscultabis. l. Miles sitiet et esuriet, (4.) m. Pedites nostri fugient, (3.) n. Equites vestri manebunt. o. Hic mons frigebit. p. Vallis illa tepebit. q. Dentes mei dolebunt. r. Tu homo sæpe peccabis. s. Hi ordinēs cadent.

a. The kings will command. b. The queen was reigning. c. This law will not always be-in-force. d. Our general fought bravely. e. Will<sup>1</sup> you live forever? [No.] f. Your roses are-in-flower. g. My sister was-awake. h. My brother was-sleeping. i. Our wives had related. k. My husband was listening. l. The soldiers are-thirsty and hungry. m. The foot-soldier was-flying. n. Let the horse-soldier remain. o. These mountains are-cold. p. The valleys will be-warm. q. My teeth ache.<sup>2</sup> r. The man had often sinned. s. This row<sup>3</sup> was falling.

<sup>1</sup> Num : S. 46.

<sup>2</sup> Dolēre, *to be in pain.*

<sup>3</sup> What is the nom. from which ordin-es comes ?

---

### EXERCISE 7.

Mater laudabat filiam. Agricōla arat agrum. Soror fratrem diligit. Accipies hodie nuntium. Piscis natat

per aquam. Puella nebat fila. Columba metuit accipitrem. Nauta navigabat per undas. Aves per aërem volabant. Hic homo postulabit pecuniam. Nos præceptores erudiemus pueros. Vos discipuli discetis pensa vestra. Faber cudit metallum. Vulpes timet leones. Ægyptii canem et felem colebant ut deos. Equites volabant in hostes. Silvæ decōrant montes. Equi currunt per silvas et agros. Cervus descendit in vallem.

[See S. 16. Learn Adverbs of past time, p. 172.]

It is certain that<sup>1</sup> my father will write the letter. We have received letters to-day. It is manifest that he is a moneyed man, (*say*, that the man is moneyed.) It is plain that<sup>1</sup> the sailors are steering the vessel to our bank. The father and mother educate their children. Who will relate a tale to us? The Greeks and Romans worshipped<sup>2</sup> many gods. The husbandmen are going to plough<sup>3</sup> the field. The mountains are adorned with woods. The daughter was lately praised by her mother. The letter was written by me three-days-ago. Then I was writing: now I am relating a tale to my children. It is certain that<sup>1</sup> the letter was written yesterday. The descent into the valley is easy. Is not<sup>4</sup> the descent into the wood easy? The sailor directed (us) to steer<sup>5</sup> the ship hither. The fox is going to descend into the valley.

<sup>1</sup> S. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Nonnē.

<sup>2</sup> *Imperfect*, because a *habit* is expressed.

<sup>5</sup> That (*ut*) we should steer, (*imperf. subj.*)

<sup>3</sup> C. 37.

---

### EXERCISE 8. (See S. 44.)

Horti nostri multos flores habent. Tu bonam historiam narrabis. Heri per urbem ambulabamus. Boni mores puerum decōrant. Pater tuus te vituperabit, meque laudabit. Sæpe stulti homines se fallunt. Quis nos vocabit? Quid cogitas aut quid times? Quid vos offendet? Tunc illum audies? Egone hunc agrum emam, aut domum illam?<sup>1</sup> Hanc tu habebis pecuniam. Hos bonos pueros amamus, malos illos fugiemus. Has terras possidemus, illas expugnabimus.



The trees blossom in the spring. The trees are-coming-into-blossom. The father is going-to-blame his son. Who will tell us this tale? Let us fly-from bad habits. This hope deceived me. The buyer of this little-garden will be deceived. What houses and what fields does he possess? The ill-humored old-man is blaming his slave. May fortune favor<sup>2</sup> my undertakings. It is certain that<sup>3</sup> my expectation has deceived me. What war are the kings going-to-begin? The Romans will have begun a great task. Will you not<sup>4</sup> relate to us the taking of that city? What do you see? Whom are you going to send? I will irrigate my little-garden with fountains.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that this is *not* a double question; the meaning is not *which of the two shall I buy?* but, shall I buy *either*?

<sup>2</sup> Appendix I.

<sup>3</sup> S. 16.

<sup>4</sup> Nonnē.

---

### EXERCISE 9.

Galli Romam expugnaverunt, (-ēre,<sup>1</sup>) Romani Corinthum. Migravimus per terras et urbes. Multam postulavisti (postulasti) pecuniam. Quos agros aravistis (arastis)? Hos an illos? Milites juraverunt sacramentum. Laborem nostrum finivimus. Præceptores pueros erudiverunt. Vos canes tecta nostra custodivistis. Bellum sæviit per Germaniam. Dormivistine, an vigilasti? Dormivi. Equus hinnivit, rudivit (3) asinus. Quid cupiisti? Equites montem petiverunt, pedites hostem lacessivēre.

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of (-ēre) is, that *expugnāvēre* is another form of that person and tense.

Have you praised or<sup>1</sup> blamed this man? I have neither praised nor blamed (him.) What nations<sup>2</sup> conquered Italy? They were laying-waste the fields of the Gauls. The city being taken, they are laying-waste the fields. When<sup>3</sup> did you finish your labor? Yesterday. It is certain that<sup>4</sup> the husbandman has finished his labors. It is true<sup>4</sup> that the fields have been laid waste by<sup>5</sup> the Gauls. Have<sup>6</sup> you obeyed? What have you sought for? The Tarentines called Pyrrhus into Italy. The general has acted-proudly against the enemy, (*pl.*) We have sung this song to-day on (*say with*) the lyre. The wolf was tearing-the sheep



-to-pieces.<sup>7</sup> We ought<sup>8</sup> to encounter death itself for (*pro* abl.) our country.

<sup>1</sup> S. 52.<sup>2</sup> Populus.<sup>3</sup> P. 172, 4.<sup>4</sup> S. 16.<sup>5</sup> S. 5.<sup>6</sup> S. 44.<sup>7</sup> The hyphens so placed mean that *tear-to-pieces* is to be translated by one verb.<sup>8</sup> S. 61.

## EXERCISE 10.

Pluperfect. (*ſ* *v* is often dropped from perf., and *v* or *ve* from pluperf.)

Tune nomen meum nuncupaveras (-aras)? Poëta carmina sua recitaverat. Hi juvenes magnam spem excitaverant. Corpōra nostra curaveramus. Tempus illud expectaveratis. Hic nuntius adventum tuum nuntiaverat. Equitatus Romanus Gallos laccessiverat. Hic adspectus sensus nostros turbaverat. Per dies noctesque dormiveratis. Milites per agros sævierant. Quid tu cupiveras? Ego aurum quæsieram. Nos res nostras repetiveramus.

Who has mentioned our names? I will ask who<sup>1</sup> has mentioned our names. Have you<sup>2</sup> taken-care-of the body? I will ask, whether<sup>3</sup> the boy has strengthened (*curare*) his body with food. The body must be taken-care-of.<sup>4</sup> Those times had disturbed our affairs. Who had cured those boys? I will ask, who<sup>1</sup> cured those boys? Your labors must be ended.<sup>4</sup> I had ended my labors yesterday. Have not the horses neighed?<sup>5</sup> Are not those asses braying? That-ass -of-yours<sup>5</sup> is braying. The enemy (*plur.*) have not watched the post. I had heard those songs. The motions are impeded. We had impeded your motions. \**Though* a great hope had been raised,<sup>7</sup> (*partic.* S. 168,) we are deceived. I had not-yet sent the slave. I will ask who<sup>1</sup> sent the slave.

<sup>1</sup> S. 49.<sup>2</sup> S. 44.<sup>3</sup> S. 46.<sup>4</sup> S. 163.<sup>5</sup> S. 45.<sup>6</sup> P. 169, (3).<sup>7</sup> Say: 'a great hope having been raised.'

## EXERCISE 11.

[The *fut. perf.* is to be rendered by the English *present* or *perfect*, when the verb of the principal sentence is in the *future*. See S. 205, 206.]

Medicus morbum hodie, sanaverit (-arit). Ego nunquam factum tuum probavero (-aro). Faciam, quod imperaveris

(-aris). Quando in urbem vestram migraverimus, lætas dies agemus. Respondebimus ad id, quod interrogaveritis. Quando hunc librum finieris? Cras. Magnam gloriam acquisiveritis, si liberos vestros bene educaveritis. Is qui corpus suum bene vestierit, frigus non sentiet. Res nostras servabimus, si tecta nostra bene munierimus. Ii pueri, qui lectiones suas finierint, præmia accipient.

Will you not<sup>1</sup> reply to what<sup>2</sup> I ask (you)? If I ask<sup>3</sup> you something, will you not<sup>1</sup> answer? I will wait, till<sup>4</sup> you come. Let him who has received<sup>5</sup> a prize, learn well. If you learn<sup>6</sup> well, you shall receive a prize. \*When our body is well clothed,<sup>7</sup> we shall not feel the cold. The town must be fortified.<sup>8</sup> Let us spend happy days. We must ask the boys.<sup>8</sup> I will come, when I have taken<sup>9</sup> care of my body. \*When our houses are well protected,<sup>7</sup> (*partic.*) we must not fear.<sup>10</sup> Has your father forbidden<sup>11</sup> (it)? [No.] We must rub the body.<sup>8</sup> Anger must be tamed.<sup>8</sup> Do not<sup>12</sup> drink much<sup>13</sup> wine.

<sup>1</sup> S. 45.      <sup>2</sup> Say; to those things which (ad ea quæ) I shall-have-asked you.

<sup>3</sup> Say; shall have asked.

<sup>4</sup> S. 249.

<sup>5</sup> Shall have received.

<sup>6</sup> Shall have learned.

<sup>7</sup> S. 168.

<sup>8</sup> S. 163.

<sup>9</sup> Say; shall have-taken-care-of.

<sup>10</sup> S. 164.

<sup>11</sup> S. 46.

<sup>12</sup> S. 37.

<sup>13</sup> S. 73.

## EXERCISE 12.

[Fut. perf. is often translated by English present or perfect.]

Diligentia tua laborem patris valde adjūvit. Miseria matris valde moverat animum filiæ. Si Cornelii frater te viderit, statim curret ad te. Quando remedium morbi reperero! Ad primam horam diei naves usque ad introitum magni portûs pervenerunt. Id nos comperimus et vos vidistis. Hostes obsederant portas urbis nostræ, quum tu advenisti. Milites gladios jam acuerunt. Si tu hanc pecuniam solveris, accipies aliam; nihil adhuc solvisti. Arcem urbis fortiter defendimus. Num aquam gelidam bibisti? Minime; sed vinum bibi. Tu autem, quid edisti? Si patriæ hostem fortiter vicerimus, bene fecerimus.

I have not-yet<sup>1</sup> seen my father and mother. Why are<sup>2</sup> the soldiers of our army come? Have<sup>3</sup> you already sharp-

ened this knife? I will ask whether<sup>4</sup> he has sharpened that knife. That-knife -of-yours<sup>5</sup> must be sharpened. I have sharpened the knives myself.<sup>5</sup> Cicero, that<sup>6</sup> great orator, defended many accused-persons. Scipio conquered Hannibal at<sup>7</sup> Zama, and put-an-end-to the second Punic war. You shall receive two-oboli -a-piece.<sup>8</sup> Those who learn<sup>9</sup> well shall receive an-obolus -a-piece.<sup>8</sup> The boys, having received<sup>10</sup> two-oboli -a-piece,<sup>8</sup> will rejoice. We had scarcely reached the town, when the enemy laid-siege to it. After the Prætor had mounted<sup>11</sup> the tribunal, the judges acquitted the accused-person. Where did you find this book? I will ask him where<sup>12</sup> he found<sup>13</sup> that book. I will ask, whether he has lighted<sup>14</sup> the torch.

<sup>1</sup> Nondum.<sup>2</sup> What tense is *I am come*? C. 12.<sup>3</sup> S. 44.<sup>4</sup> S. 46.<sup>5</sup> P. 169, (3).<sup>6</sup> S. 189.<sup>7</sup> S. 159.<sup>8</sup> C. 39.<sup>9</sup> S. 205.<sup>10</sup> S. 176.<sup>11</sup> S. 251.<sup>12</sup> S. 49.<sup>13</sup> Syn. 1.<sup>14</sup> Syn. 2.

---

### EXERCISE 13.

[What case does *credo* govern? App. I.]

Quis tibi hunc librum, hanc pennam, hoc atramentum dedit? Imperator exercitui suo magna auxilia addiderat. Ciceronem, quum in forum descendit, magna populi multitudo circumdedit. Sacerdos apud aram stetit, et victimam cecidit. Bene fecerit is, qui amico auxilium præstiterit. Pastor fugavit lupum, qui ovem unam momorderat. Facere debes, quod spondidisti. Quid vobis istæ responderunt mulieres? Num cecidit aliquis? Sol post montes illos in mare occidit. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occidit. Cur incertæ spei credidisti? Frater sorori crediderat, soror fratri. Si bene didiceris linguam Latinam, multa alia disces facilius. Sæpe, rosam qui tetigit, sensit aculeos. Multi philosophi verum non attigerunt.

The body must<sup>1</sup> be well clothed, *that*<sup>2</sup> we may *not* feel the cold. Has any-one<sup>3</sup> afforded you assistance? \*When the sun sets<sup>4</sup> (*partic.*), our labors must be ended.<sup>1</sup> \*Having touched the rose,<sup>5</sup> I felt its thorn. When will the sun set to-day? Has not<sup>6</sup> the priest slain the victim? The priest, having slain<sup>5</sup> the victim, sprinkled the altar with its blood. My brother<sup>7</sup> is not believed. We must not believe<sup>8</sup> Man-

lius's brothers. We have given roses and fruit to the boy and the girl. Who has performed that service for us? After<sup>9</sup> he had performed that service for us, he went-away. I will ask who<sup>10</sup> performed me that service. The wolf, which the shepherds drove-away, had bitten two or three sheep. Who has cut-down this tree? I asked who<sup>10</sup> cut-down that tree. Those trees must be cut down.<sup>1</sup> You will be safe nowhere. You will never be safe. I will give you twelve verses to be learned-by-heart.<sup>11</sup> How many verses am I to learn-by-heart?<sup>12</sup> It is uncertain, how-many<sup>10</sup> there were (*of them.*) No wise man<sup>13</sup> trusts uncertain fortune. The arrow did not hit its mark. How many sheep have been killed by the wolf? I will ask how-many<sup>10</sup> sheep the wolf has bitten. I will wait till<sup>14</sup> you answer me. After<sup>9</sup> the wolf had bitten three sheep, he was driven-away by the shepherds. How many arrows have you?

<sup>1</sup> S. 163.<sup>2</sup> S. 18.<sup>3</sup> Num quis; or an quisquam.<sup>4</sup> S. 168.<sup>5</sup> S. 176.<sup>6</sup> S. 45.<sup>7</sup> S. 134, 135.<sup>8</sup> S. 166.<sup>9</sup> S. 251.<sup>10</sup> S. 49.<sup>11</sup> S. 172.<sup>12</sup> *Are to-be-learned-by-heart by me.*<sup>13</sup> Nemo sapiens.Verbs of trusting govern the *dat.*<sup>14</sup> S. 249.

---

#### EXERCISE 14.

[*Mihi, tibi, sibi*, may sometimes be rendered 'my,' 'your,' 'his,' or 'his own.']

Hanc epistolam meâ manu scripsi. Num glupsisti poma, quæ in horto carpsimus? Hic puer pecuniam sumpsit a patre, eamque inter pauperes distribuit. Pauci milites in acie remanserant. Quid dixisti? Quis vobis futurum prædixit? Cæsar milites in aciem eduxerat. Hic homo me torvo vultu adspexit. Imperator victus ipse sibi pectus gladio transfixit. Athenienses Socratis damnati pedem ferro vinxerunt. Romani provincias suas duro imperio rexerunt. Nauta quidam Britannicus nuper in oceano insulam detexit. Nuntius ille valde auxerat formidinem. Veteres poëtæ tempora sibi lauru cinxerunt. Poëtæ quidam pulchras finxerunt imagines. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum. Telum hostis aurem strinxit militis, qui ipse gladium non strinxerat.

I had written the letter with my own hand, (S. 177). It is certain that<sup>1</sup> the letter was written with his own hand.



It remains that<sup>2</sup> we should write letters with our own<sup>3</sup> hands. Have you plucked a leaf from (*ex*) this tree? How-much money<sup>4</sup> have you spent on (*in*) your work? If<sup>5</sup> you do this, you will spend considerably<sup>6</sup> more<sup>4</sup> money. No-one would have foretold us<sup>7</sup> this calamity. We had remained in the city. Who has led you this road (*abl.*) into the city? We have fastened the picture to the wall with a nail. Cæsar had surrounded the town with a wall and foss. The horse-soldiers have drawn their swords. The horse-soldiers, having drawn<sup>8</sup> their swords, flew on (*in*) the enemy. The safety of the Roman people is at stake.<sup>9</sup> I will ask who<sup>10</sup> painted the picture. I will ask who found-out that-fraud-of-yours.

<sup>1</sup> S. 16.  
<sup>7</sup> C. 13.

<sup>2</sup> S. 17.  
<sup>8</sup> S. 176.

<sup>3</sup> S. 177.

<sup>4</sup> S. 73.

<sup>5</sup> S. 214.

<sup>6</sup> S. 202.

<sup>9</sup> To be at stake, *agi. infn. pass.*

<sup>10</sup> S. 49.

### EXERCISE 15.

[Of what two verbs is *fulsi* the perfect? (p. 160, V. p. 164-59.)]

Rex portas urbis clausit hostibus invadentibus. (*Dat.*) Totum cælum in quatuor regiones divisimus: Orientem, Occidentem, Meridiem, Septentriones. Quando risistis in luctu amicorum? Multi populi senserunt virtutem Romanorum. Senatus Carthaginiensium legatos misit ad Romanos de captivis. Filia blandimentis et precibus patris animum flexit. Consiliis vestris fulsistis rempublicam. Nova lux civitati affulserit, ubi princeps ex terris hostium in urbem redierit. Sacerdos victimarum sanguine aram adpersit. Sagitta hæsit in clipeo. Illis diebus, ubi omnium rerum inopia oppidanos oppresserat, lutulentam aquam ex stagnis hauserunt, idque imperator jusserat. Aqua recessit ex agris. Procellæ concusserunt quercuum cacumina. Hannibal quum bellum in Italiâ gessit, multa tecta combussit. Consul copiarum ex pugnâ reliquias in unum locum contraxit, et classe trans mare in Italiam vexit. Quo loco vixisti?

Christian faith has opened heaven to many mortals. The commander-in-chief has divided his army into three parts. He was slain by the Gauls. There is no doubt, that<sup>1</sup> he is going to join battle<sup>2</sup> with the Romans. We



must<sup>3</sup> join battle with the Germans. The weight of its fruit (*pl.*) has bent-down the boughs of the tree. We have derived new hope from our changed circumstances. The besieged have propped-up their tottering walls with added works. Cicero crushed the Catilinarian conspiracy, which had shaken the whole city. \* When a change of circumstances has taken-place,<sup>4</sup> (*partic.*)<sup>5</sup> our plans should be changed.<sup>3</sup> \* Of how great importance is it to me<sup>6</sup> that<sup>7</sup> the plans of the enemy *should*<sup>3</sup> be changed. \* Of how great importance is it to the citizens,<sup>6</sup> to strengthen their tottering walls with works! The war waged by Hannibal drew after it a change of affairs in Italy. The remains of the forces must<sup>3</sup> be carried<sup>9</sup> in-ships (*abl.*) to Italy. I have often laughed-at the vanity of men. What<sup>10</sup> a multitude of men has flowed-together into the city!

<sup>1</sup> S. 19.

<sup>2</sup> *To join battle with*, *prælium committere* (*mīs, miss*) *cum.*

<sup>3</sup> S. 163.

<sup>4</sup> *Has been made.*

<sup>5</sup> S. 168.

<sup>6</sup> *Quanti meā interest.* S. 91.

<sup>7</sup> S. 16.

<sup>8</sup> C. 3.

<sup>9</sup> Syn. 3.

<sup>10</sup> C. 21.

## EXERCISE 16.

[Perf. in *ui*.—See Syntax, Rules 13, 14.]

Num fores crepuerunt? Multi pauperes nunquam in molli cubili cubuerunt. Eques equum ferocem calcāri domuit et freno. Pedem dolentem manu fricui. Hominum illustrium lacunaria ebōre micuerunt et auro. In sacris Cybēlæ tympana sonuerunt et cornua. Jupiter tonuit. Hoc vetui, illud jussi. Romani pueros exercuerunt acri militiā. Sapientes poētæ admiscuerunt utile dolci. Sæpe te monui, sed tu non audivisti. Cur non tacueras? Non diu Græci incultos mores majorum suorum retinuerunt. Pyrrhus Romanos terruit elephantis in aciem productis. Ver maria aperuit navigantibus. Cæsar togâ caput operuit, et ictibus mucronum se præbuit.

The flame has crackled on the hearth. We have lain-down on (*in*) the soft grass. There was no-one, *but*<sup>1</sup> lay-down on the soft grass. We have rubbed our tables with oil. On that night,<sup>2</sup> no star shone (*in*) the whole heaven. Ought<sup>3</sup> not<sup>4</sup> our desires to be restrained? Hills and valleys resounded with the cries of the combatants. Has it

thundered? What have you forbidden? We have rubbed our bodies with oil. We have exercised our bodies in (*abl.*) childish games. Fate has often mixed joy with sorrow. There is need of<sup>5</sup> a gentle reproof. I will present you with a book. Pity<sup>6</sup> the poor. \*You will repent of your folly.<sup>7</sup> \*It is of very great importance to you,<sup>8</sup> *that*<sup>9</sup> the city *should*<sup>10</sup> be fortified. An eagle flying on-high had terrified the timid doves. Will<sup>11</sup> a dove terrify an eagle? [No.] Some deserters have discovered the plans of the enemy, (*pl.*) It is certain that<sup>9</sup> the plans of the enemy have been discovered by a certain deserter. I have<sup>12</sup> six doves. How-many doves have<sup>12</sup> you? It cannot be doubted, that<sup>13</sup> he pities the poor. There was need<sup>5</sup> of a much<sup>14</sup> gentler reproof.

<sup>1</sup> S. 32.<sup>2</sup> S. 143.<sup>3</sup> S. 164.<sup>4</sup> S. 45.<sup>5</sup> S. 79.<sup>6</sup> S. 88.<sup>7</sup> S. 94.<sup>8</sup> S. 91.<sup>9</sup> S. 16.<sup>10</sup> C. 3.<sup>11</sup> S. 46.<sup>12</sup> S. 114.<sup>13</sup> S. 19.<sup>14</sup> S. 202.

---

### EXERCISE 17.

Græci et Romani veteres multos coluerunt deos. Socrates in carcere de immortalitate animi disseruit. In illo prælio equites nostri audaciâ et virtute excelluerunt. Prudentiâ vestrâ patriam e manibus hostium eripuistis. Romani gentibus fere omnibus tributa imposuerunt. Ex pugniâ Cannensi Pœni annulis aureis occisorum equitum Romanorum modios aliquot compleverunt. Eodem anno L. Mummius Corinthum, P. Scipio Carthaginem delevit (deleverunt.) Pater flevit de morte filii. Filia sub tiliâ nevit subtilia fila. Quid decrevistis? Decrevimus habitare in provinciâ. Has arbôres meâ manu sevi. Quum mihi solatium misisti, flere jam desieram. Cur sprevisi munera a patre tibi promissa? Leo uno impetu prostravit tigridem. Hanc viam jumenta triverunt et homines.

Has not<sup>1</sup> my prudence snatched our country from (*e*) the hands of a tyrant? The boy is going-to-cultivate (*C. 37*) his<sup>2</sup> little-garden. He has spoken much (*multum*) about the nature of things. Who has distinguished-himself above<sup>3</sup> the rest in this contest? This disease has carried-off many men. I will inquire of the physician how-many<sup>4</sup> are dead.

The state has erected a monument to the soldiers, who were slain in the battle. The wild cry of the soldiers filled the minds of the citizens with fear. May<sup>5</sup> I cultivate my field? Age has destroyed many monuments of ancient art. What hinders (us) \*from<sup>6</sup> cultivating our garden? It remains, that<sup>7</sup> we should fly into the city. The girl has spun coarse threads. If the senate decrees,<sup>8</sup> the consuls will leave their provinces. I feel that<sup>9</sup> roses have<sup>10</sup> their<sup>11</sup> thorns. See that<sup>12</sup> you do not feel the thorns of the roses. Provided<sup>13</sup> that you do not feel the thorns, pluck your roses. Would-that<sup>14</sup> I had a little garden. My little-garden is considerably<sup>15</sup> bigger than my sister's. The<sup>16</sup> more beautiful a rose, the more thorns it has. Why did you not cease to laugh, when I begged you?

1 S. 45.

2 C. 1.

3 Præ.

4 S. 49.

5 S. 57.

6 S. 43.

7 S. 17.

8 *Shall have decreed.*

9 S. 16.

10 S. 114.

11 C. 1.

12 *Vide nē, (subj.)*

13 S. 241.\*

14 S. 242.

15 S. 202.

16 S. 203.

---

### EXERCISE 18.

Luna crescit et decrescit. Quando quiesces a laboribus tuis? Pueri pascebant oves in saltibus, quum lupus ex silvâ prorumpens terruit gregem, et matris ab ubere agnum rapuit. Ut quisque in juventute adsueverit, ita aget, quum ad senectutem pervenerit. Adulta vitia non facile evanescent. Hanc legem quia non probabam, abolevi. Nosti (novisti) hunc hominem? Ignoscam fortasse, quum causam delicti cogovero. Sæpe concupiscimus id, quod nocebit. Quum tempus anni incaluit, terra flores et herbas edit. Magnum bellum exarsit inter Cæsarem et Pompejum, quorum uterque consulatum appetebat.

When the storms of war have cooled-down, the arts of peace revive. The shepherd feeds his flocks upon the hills: the husbandman tills his fields, and fears not invading foes: the inhabitants-of-towns go about<sup>1</sup> their usual employments, and live secure<sup>2</sup> with opened gates. How-greatly shall we rejoice, when the concord of nations again restores<sup>3</sup> peace! But a long peace often corrupts the morals of a state. As-long-as<sup>4</sup> the Romans waged wars

with the neighboring cities and nations, they retained the manners of their forefathers : but after<sup>5</sup> they had subdued the world, they gave-themselves -up to luxury and wickedness.—\*When arms are-at-rest,<sup>6</sup> the arts of peace begin to flourish. \*It is of great importance to the state,<sup>7</sup> that<sup>8</sup> the anger of its citizens *should*<sup>9</sup> cool.—\*It is of great importance to our state,<sup>7</sup> that<sup>8</sup> the manners of our forefathers should be preserved.<sup>9</sup> Who is there, who can deny,<sup>10</sup> that the manners of our forefathers should be preserved?<sup>11</sup> \*When the harmony of its citizens is restored,<sup>6</sup> the state will begin-to-flourish. Did the queen write the letter with her own' (S. 177) hand? 'The boy has lost his book. I have lost his book.

<sup>1</sup> *To go-about a business*, operam dare negotio.

agere, (vitam understood.)

<sup>3</sup> *Shall have restored.*

<sup>2</sup> *To live secure*, securus

<sup>4</sup> (Quamdiu) quam diu.

<sup>5</sup> S. 251.

<sup>6</sup> S. 168.

<sup>7</sup> S. 91.

<sup>8</sup> S. 16.

<sup>9</sup> C. 3.

<sup>10</sup> S. 234.

<sup>11</sup> S. 164.

---

### EXERCISE 19.

Multi scriptorum Romanorum, quorum scripta exstant, magnam laudem meruerunt et rerum ac sententiarum copiâ et verborum elegantia. Inter illos excellit M. (Marcus) Tullius Cicero, cujus epistolâs et orationes ceterosque libros in scholis legimus. Huic omnes concedunt palmam eloquentiæ. Et vere orationes ejus delectant miro ingenii acumine, quo reorum innocentiam defendit, aut utilitatem legis alicujus demonstrat. In epistolâs ad familiares scribit de rebus domesticis et publicis, modo ridens et jocabundus, modo in gravitatem ac severitatem compositus. Tres libros composuit de oratore, in quibus de arte oratoriâ disserit. Perfecti oratoris imaginem in alio libro proposuit. In eis (iis) libris, quos de officiis scripsit, Marcum filium ad vitam honestam instituit.—T. (Titus) Livius non unius ævi aut belli aut hominis historiam descripsit, sed universam rerum Romanarum historiam ab origine gentis ad sua usque tempora deduxit. At illius non omnia scripta exstant.—C. (Caius) Julius Cæsar octo libris bellum Gallicum, tribus civili narravit; et Gallico quidem totius Galliæ civitates Romanorum imperio subjecit, civili Pom-



peium devicit : utriusque belli rebus gestis nomen ejus inclaruit.

Distinguished poets lived in<sup>1</sup> the age of Augustus. We have the writings of Virgilius,<sup>2</sup> Horatius, Ovidius, and others. Asinius Pollio had invited Virgilius to the city, where he became-acquainted with<sup>3</sup> Mæcēnas<sup>4</sup> and Augustus. Virgilius recommended Horatius to Mæcēnas. So the one<sup>5</sup> flourished by the friendship of the other : one obliged the other. A long life did not fall-to-the-lot of either :<sup>6</sup> but posterity has bestowed- equal honors -upon them both.<sup>7</sup> Who would snatch<sup>8</sup> the palm from either this or that, or bestow- greater praise -upon any<sup>9</sup> Roman poet ? Ovidius finished his life in exile on the Black Sea, because he had offended Augustus by his verses. He is distinguished for<sup>3</sup> the fertility of his genius and the beauty of his verses ; but many of (*ex*) his writings displease<sup>10</sup> a modest and pure mind.—Who is there who can deny,<sup>11</sup> *that* great poets lived in the age of Augustus ?—The poets who flourished in the age of Augustus, were much<sup>12</sup> more distinguished than (those) who lived afterwards.

<sup>1</sup> In what case does the *time-when* stand ?      <sup>2</sup> Proper names are given in their Latin forms.      <sup>3</sup> C. 36. Is the prepos. used in English to be used after the Latin word, &c. ?      <sup>4</sup> Gen. ātis.      <sup>5</sup> *The one—the other*, must each be translated by the proper case of *alter*.      <sup>6</sup> Do not-either, by *neuter*, (neither.)      <sup>7</sup> *Uterque*, each : to be used, of course, in the *sing.*      <sup>8</sup> S. 213.      <sup>9</sup> p. 169.      <sup>10</sup> Appendix I.  
<sup>11</sup> S. 234.      <sup>12</sup> S. 202.

## EXERCISE 20.

[Learn the declension of *aloë*, Anchises, *Ænēas*, *poëma*. Appendix II.—What is the Voc. of proper names in *ius* ?—What is the Voc. mas. of *meus* ?]

O benigne Deus, quam multa tibi debemus beneficia ! Quod vivimus, quod valemus, quod ex agris fruges nobis proveniunt, quod lumine suo sol omnia collustrat et fovet, quod pluviam nubes in arva demittunt, quis hæc omnia regit et temperat, nisi Deus ? Cui rerum natura paret, nisi Deo ? Ergo, mi fili, Deum semper coles, eique pio animo habebis gratiam.

Quid fecisti, mi Carole ?—Epitōmen feci orationis ejus, quam heri legimus.—Num jam legisti Ovidii *poëmata* ?—



Non legi.—Æneas, Venēris et Anchisæ filius, patrem ex incendio Trojæ portavit humeris. Succus aloës amarus confirmat stomachum. Ulysses a Philoctète (-â) sagittas postulabat, quas ab Hercule ille acceperat. Marce Tulli, quantas calamitates reipublicæ vidisti!

Why are you crying, my<sup>1</sup> little brother? Who has \*done you any wrong?—Who freed ancient Germany from the dominion of the Romans? Arminius: who conquered and destroyed Quintilius Varus in the Teutoburgian<sup>2</sup> wood. This man, one of Augustus's lieutenant-generals,<sup>3</sup> had treated the Germans proudly and unjustly. O Quintilius<sup>4</sup> Varus, how you deceived yourself! Those whom you despised,<sup>5</sup> destroyed your army and yourself.—If you answer<sup>6</sup> well to these questions, you shall receive praise.—Xerxes, king of the Persians, invaded Greece with an immense army: but the Greeks defeated this army by sea and land, at<sup>7</sup> the island of<sup>8</sup> Salamis, and at Plataeæ in Bœotia. Who found<sup>9</sup> this jewel? I have found a much<sup>10</sup> more beautiful jewel. Who can deny<sup>11</sup> that<sup>12</sup> the lieutenant-general has treated us unjustly?

<sup>1</sup> What is the voc. mas. of *meus*? (p. 169.)    <sup>2</sup> Teutoburgensis.    <sup>3</sup> A lieutenant-general of Augustus.    <sup>4</sup> What is the voc. of a proper name in *ius*?    <sup>5</sup> See Syn. 5.  
<sup>6</sup> *Shall have answered.*    <sup>7</sup> S. 159.    <sup>8</sup> S. 66.\*    <sup>9</sup> Syn. 1.    <sup>10</sup> S. 202.  
<sup>11</sup> S. 213.    <sup>12</sup> S. 19.

## EXERCISE 21.

[Look at *ut*, *nē*, *quomīnus*, *quia*, in Appendix III.]

Cupio, ut factum meum probes. Docemus pueros, ut sapere discant, et bonis moribus animum imbuant. Edimus, ut vivamus, hoc est, ut vitam conservemus: at vos vivitis, ut edatis et bibatis. Cavebimus, ne superstitionem vestram augeamus, quæ prohibet, quomīnus ad veram rerum cognitionem perveniatis. Non dubitatis, quin parentibus tuis multum debeas, quo intelligas, quo jure illi a te obedientiam et pietatem postulent. Nescimus, quæ mala nobis futuro tempore immineant. Dicis nobis, utrum præstet inimico ignoscere, an amicum etiam ultro lædere. Quum nemo sciat, quid quisque cogitet, caveamus, ne

temere cuiquam credamus. Amemus patriam, pareamus magistratibus, consulamus bonis, nutriamus pauperes! Quid faciam? Ne doleam, quum tanta me premat calamitas? Hoc dii bene vertant! Utinam nemo te impediat, quominus ad me venias! Quis credat illud, quod prorsus incredibile est? Metuo, ne vos hoc faciatis, aut illud non faciatis.

We wish that<sup>1</sup> you should always obey<sup>2</sup> your parents, and love your brothers and sisters. It often happens that<sup>3</sup> men commit atrocious crimes for-the-sake<sup>4</sup> of a small gain. The tiger is so cruel, that,<sup>5</sup> though<sup>6</sup> impelled by no hunger, it tears-to-pieces men and beasts. You will take care, that<sup>7</sup> you may not lead a miserable life through your own fault. Do you fear, that<sup>8</sup> we shall betray your secrets? I do not fear, that<sup>8</sup> you will not perform what you have promised. We learn the old languages, that<sup>9</sup> we may practise our judgment, and cultivate our minds. Who doubts that<sup>10</sup> \*we' ought to love even our enemies?<sup>11</sup> I will not prevent you from<sup>12</sup> calling-upon me every day. You shall tell me, how much<sup>13</sup> I owe you. I don't-know whether<sup>14</sup> he is awake or sleeping. We will ask ourselves first, what is-pleasing to the gods; then, what to-men. What shall we say, that we may prove our innocence? Take your arms, and fight for your country. May every one keep a pure conscience. It remains that<sup>9</sup> each man should keep his conscience pure. I have<sup>15</sup> a pure conscience. Balbus is no<sup>16</sup> wiser than (*quam*) Caius. My name is Marcus.<sup>17</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See S. 16, note.<sup>2</sup> App. I.<sup>3</sup> S. 17.<sup>4</sup> Causâ.<sup>5</sup> S. 17.<sup>6</sup> Etiam, even.<sup>7</sup> That—not, nē, subj.<sup>8</sup> S. 22.<sup>9</sup> S. 17.<sup>10</sup> S. 19.<sup>11</sup> S. 163.<sup>12</sup> S. 43.<sup>13</sup> S. 49.<sup>14</sup> S. 51.<sup>15</sup> S. 114.<sup>16</sup> Nihilo. S. 202.<sup>17</sup> S. 113.

---

## EXERCISE 22.

Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut adhuc nemo eum in certamine superaverit. Nemo dubitat, quin Romani omnes populos fortitudine præstiterint. Scisne, quando Scipio Africanus Carthaginem deleverit (delērit)? Videbimus, quid de consilio nostro censueritis. Quum iterum te con-

venero, dices mihi, quid legeris aut scripseris. Incertum est, quo tempore Dido Carthaginem condiderit. Quum neminem offenderimus, non timemus, ne quis nobis succenseat. Quum officia vestra feceritis, nemo vos vituperabit. Metuo, ne verum non dixeris, quum ceteri omnes contradicant. Narrabo vobis, quid audiverim, (audierim,) quidve viderim, ut omnes intelligatis, quanta vobis calamitas acciderit. Non omnes pueri sunt tam stulti, ut nihil curent, quid in moribus et literis profecerint, aut quomodo parentibus suis et præceptoribus placuerint.

These pupils are so industrious, that<sup>1</sup> they have never neglected to learn- their lines -by-heart. Who can doubt<sup>2</sup> that<sup>3</sup> the Greeks excelled the Romans in their intellectual-cultivation? We don't know, at what time Homer lived.<sup>4</sup> It is doubtful, whether<sup>5</sup> Clodius waylaid Milo, or the one<sup>6</sup> met the other on the road by chance: but it is not doubtful, that<sup>3</sup> a slave of Milo's killed Clodius. When you have read<sup>7</sup> our letter, you will know. I fear that<sup>8</sup> your father will not approve-of our plan. You will tell us (= tell us) your meaning, that<sup>1</sup> we may know, why<sup>5</sup> you have changed your plan. What am I to believe?<sup>2</sup> What am I not to believe? All (*pl.*) is so wonderful, that<sup>1</sup> I have not-yet ceased to doubt. \*It was of very great importance to Caius,<sup>9</sup> that no-one should betray his plans.

<sup>1</sup> S. 17.<sup>2</sup> S. 213.<sup>3</sup> S. 19.<sup>4</sup> S. 49.<sup>5</sup> S. 51. Clodiusnē.<sup>6</sup> Alter: followed by *alter* for the other.<sup>7</sup> *Shall have read.*<sup>8</sup> S. 22.<sup>9</sup> S. 91. that no-one: *ne quis* with subj.

---

### EXERCISE 23.

L. (Lucius) Sulla post victoriam, quam a Marianis partibus reportaverat, ita sæviebat, ut ingentem numerum civium trucidaret, et bona eorum venderet. Timebat enim, ne, si adversarii sui viverent, perpetuum sibi periculum immineret. Vetuerat Pompeius, ne quis absens consultum peteret. Eâ lege prohibebat, quominus Cæsar, quum in Galliâ bellum gereret et provinciam administraret, eam dignitatem obtineret. At Cæsar, non dubitans, quin magna

pars populi sibi faveret, et fretus legionibus suis, armis petere constituit, quod inimicorum invidia ei negabat.— Ideo te monui, ut intelligeres, quantopere salutis tuæ consulere. Nisi tantopere vos amarem, profecto non tantâ curâ ingenia vestra excoleremus. Si viveret Cicero, multum de moribus nostris rideret. Hunc librum vobis non darem, nisi scirem, quantum ex eo fructum pueri perciperent. Utinam omnes hunc librum legeretis, et præcepta ejus animis imprimeretis! (S. 242.)

While the Greeks were besieging Troy, a plague raged in the army with-such-violence,<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> it carried-off daily a great number of men and beasts. Wherefore<sup>3</sup> they consulted the oracle, by what offerings-of-atonement they should appease the wrath of the god. The priest answered, that (*ut*) Agamemnon, the leader of the Greeks, should restore \*to Chryses, a priest of Apollo, his daughter who-had-been-violently-carried-off:<sup>4</sup> When Agamemnon refused (*imperf. subj.*) to do *this*,<sup>5</sup> Achilles, the son of Peleus and Thetis, pressed him \*to comply-with<sup>6</sup> the will of the god, and deliver the Greeks from destruction. By this,<sup>7</sup> he so excited the anger of Agamemnon, that he took- Briseis away from him by force. \*The consequence was,<sup>8</sup> that Achilles for-a-long-time did not go-to-battle with the other Greeks, but kept his troops idle in their camp.—Would<sup>9</sup> that you always spoke the truth! Shall we not receive ten- oboli -a-piece? (C. 39.) \*What is your name?<sup>10</sup> This (*ea*) only<sup>11</sup> is true virtue.

<sup>1</sup> Adeo.

<sup>2</sup> S. 17.

<sup>3</sup> Quamobrem, (*or quam ob rem.*)

<sup>4</sup> Say, *should restore his daughter violently-snatched-away from Chryses, (dat.) &c.*

<sup>5</sup> Translate 'this' by *quod*, and place it before the quum. Quod quum *instead of quum hoc.*

<sup>6</sup> That he should comply.

<sup>7</sup> Eâ re.

<sup>8</sup> This brought-it-to-pass: id effecit, ut, &c.

<sup>9</sup> S. 242. To speak the

truth, verum dicere.

<sup>10</sup> S. 113.

<sup>11</sup> Say: at length, demum.

#### EXERCISE 24.

Philippus, Mæcedõnum rex, quum diu consilia sua occultavisset, Græcos adeo deceptus, ut, nihil ab eo timentes, summam ei potestatem concederent. Quod<sup>1</sup> quum fecissent, amissam libertatem armis recuperare sero decreverunt.



Vicit eos Philippus in pugnâ ad Chæronëam anno trecen-tesimo tricesimo octavo ante Christum natum.—Metue-  
bamus, ne in periculum incidissetis, quam nihil audissemus,  
(audivissemus,) nec ubi, nec quando classem appulissetis.  
Si tertium diem exspectavisses, magnum periculum vitasses  
(vitavisses.) Non dubitabam, quin gratum tibi fecissem,  
quod<sup>2</sup> hunc tibi librum donassem. Nisi tu me rogasses, ut  
totam tibi darem pecuniam, partem ejus dedissem alii.  
Cæsar quum ex Galliâ veniens Rubicōnem trajecisset, Pom-  
peius cum senatu aufūgit Brundusium. Utinam me heri  
convenisses, profecto hodie aliter egisses !

<sup>1</sup> A relative at the head of a principal sentence may be rendered by 'this,' 'that.'

<sup>2</sup> (That I had given =) *in* giving.

Miltiades would not have conquered the Persians in the  
battle of-Marathon,<sup>1</sup> *if*<sup>2</sup> he had *not* chosen a very-confined  
ground (*locus*) in-order-that<sup>3</sup> the enemy might not attack  
him at-once in front<sup>4</sup> and on his flanks. When<sup>5</sup> he had  
gained the victory, his grateful country placed a likeness  
of him in the portico, which they called Pæcile.—If<sup>6</sup> you  
had tamed your lusts, you would have avoided the hatred  
of many persons. You feared that<sup>7</sup> we should offend our  
friends : but we knew what (*qualis*) feelings they had<sup>8</sup> to-  
wards us. I did not know \*what to do ;<sup>9</sup> and I should  
have done- very -wrong, *if*<sup>2</sup> you had *not* warned me at the-  
right-time.<sup>10</sup> Had<sup>11</sup> you but defended me at-the-right-time,<sup>10</sup>  
what (*quantus*) dangers should I have escaped ! When<sup>5</sup>  
Cæsar in<sup>12</sup> the forty-ninth year \*before the birth of Christ<sup>13</sup>  
had driven Pompey out of Italy, he returned to<sup>14</sup> Rome and  
named himself<sup>15</sup> Dictator.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by adj. *Marathonius*. <sup>2</sup> *If not, nisi, (unless) with subj.* <sup>3</sup> *Nē,*  
(in order that—not)

<sup>4</sup> In front, *a fronte* : on his flanks, *a latere, (latus side.)*

<sup>5</sup> S. 241.

<sup>6</sup> S. 216.

<sup>7</sup> S. 22.

<sup>8</sup> S. 49.

<sup>9</sup> *What I should do.*

<sup>10</sup> In tempore.

<sup>11</sup> That is, *if* you had but, &c., *si modo*, with subj.

<sup>12</sup> How is *time-when* to be expressed ? S. 143.

<sup>13</sup> *Before Christ born.*

<sup>14</sup> How is the place *to-which* expressed ? S. 155.

<sup>15</sup> S. 178.

## EXERCISE 25.

[How are the *compar.* and *superl.* formed ? p. 170.]

In rebus gravioribus cautio-rem adhibeamus prudentiam,  
sed nec in levioribus temere unquam agamus. Quum



animam ages, tunc intelliges, quæ res vitam vere beatam effecerint, quæque, quamvis ad tempus animum voluptate afficerent, tamen mœrorem ac pœnitentiam reliquerint. Ut bonis artibus ingenium excolatis, non cupimus vehementius, quam ut animos vestros moribus bonis adornetis. Catilina quum videret, quantâ<sup>1</sup> irâ et odio Ciceronis oratio animos senatorum implevisset, in summum furorem concitatus reliquit curiam. Nemo dubitat, quin Catilina eo tempore rempublicam perdidisset, nisi Cicero consul maximâ prudentiâ publicæ salutis consulisset. Optimus et emendatissimus est is, qui ceteris ita ignoscit, tanquam ipse quotidie peccet;<sup>2</sup> ita peccatis abstinet, tanquam nemini ignoscat. Minus illum timeas, qui vitia, quæ habet, ostendit, quam illum, qui extrinsêcus est bonus, et malus intus. Sæpe difficile est judicare, ex duobus utrum meliorem ducamus; multo difficilius, ex pluribus quis præstet ceteris.

<sup>1</sup> *Quantus* may often be rendered 'what.'

<sup>2</sup> Sinned.

Don't<sup>1</sup> you see how<sup>2</sup> the trees are blossoming, how the meadows are growing-green; how \*the whole of nature<sup>3</sup> has put-on, as-it-were,<sup>4</sup> a new dress? These things present a more beautiful appearance than the most beautiful buildings of the city, or the most valuable treasures of kings and princes. Would-that<sup>5</sup> all men recognised the beauty and order of the world, with what (*qualis*) wisdom and goodness God has created and governs all things. Why<sup>6</sup> should not I 'forgive<sup>7</sup> you,' when you have so-often forgiven me? We shall very easily move the softest tempers to do<sup>8</sup> what we desire:<sup>9</sup> but they do not often (*say*, easily) remain in the same mind. If<sup>10</sup> you had written me a longer letter, you would have given me a still (*etiam*) greater pleasure: though-indeed<sup>11</sup> the longest letters are not always the best; nor the shortest the worst. We did not-doubt-in-the-least<sup>12</sup> that<sup>13</sup> you would have received our letter: but we feared that<sup>14</sup> it might not satisfy<sup>7</sup> you.

<sup>1</sup> S. 45.  
(= quam si.)

<sup>2</sup> Ut, subj.  
<sup>5</sup> S. 242.

<sup>3</sup> Universa rerum natura.

<sup>6</sup> Why—not, *quidni*, with subj.

<sup>4</sup> Quasi, *as-it-were*,

<sup>7</sup> Appendix I.

<sup>8</sup> Ut, with subj.

<sup>9</sup> Subj.

<sup>10</sup> S. 216.

<sup>11</sup> Quanquam; *indic.*

<sup>12</sup> Not in the least, ne minimum quidem.

<sup>13</sup> S. 19.

<sup>14</sup> S. 22.

## EXERCISE 26.

O magne Alexander, domuisti tot gentes; age, effrenatam iracundiam doma! Augustus quum nuntium accepisset de clade Varianâ, exclamavit: Quintili Vare, redde mihi legiones meas. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium, et vide, ne levitate animi in perniciem ruas! Vos divites, adjuvate miseros, vestite nudos, satiate famelicos: pro his Deus nobis retribuet gratiam. Credite mihi, perficiemus negotium, si vires omnes intenderimus. Respondete ad interrogationes nostras. Nimium ne crede colori! Ne contemnite deos! Fac, quod tuum est facere! Dic, quid sentias! Educ, centurio, copias, et aciem instrue!

Rouse up the powers of your mind, when they \*happen to be-asleep.<sup>1</sup> Honor your parents, and obey<sup>2</sup> their will. Come into my house, and tell me<sup>3</sup> what<sup>4</sup> you have learned. Take-care not<sup>5</sup> to make a more-powerful person your enemy. \*Be sure to get well<sup>6</sup> as soon as possible.<sup>7</sup> Pardon those who have offended you: and take care to make friends of enemies by kindness and good-conduct. Take-care not<sup>5</sup> to betray confidence. Guard the gates, lest (*nē*) your enemies should suddenly attack the city.

<sup>1</sup> When by-chance (*forte*) they sleep.  
<sup>5</sup> *Nē*.

<sup>6</sup> *Fac ut convalescas.*


<sup>2</sup> *Append. I.*

<sup>3</sup> *C. 13.*

<sup>4</sup> *S. 49.*

<sup>7</sup> *Quam primum, as soon as possible.*

## EXERCISE 27.

[ The second forms of the imperative [*to, tote, nto*] are used in *laws, rules*, and other formal expressions of *duty or permission*.]

Cælestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. Impius ne audeto placare donis iram deorum. Ubi nos laverimus, si placebit, lavato. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, neve urito. Virgines Vestales in urbe custodiunto ignem foci publici sempiternum. Pueros ne laudatote nimium: nam omne nimium nocet. Pueri bonos libros legunto quotidie, sed malis abstinento. Fratres et sorores se invicem amanto, et parentibus obediunto. Memoriam exercetote, et addiscitote quotidie aliquid. Quum hostem profli-gaveritis, ne sævitote in jacentem.

Love thy neighbor as<sup>1</sup> thyself. Honor thy parents, and obey<sup>2</sup> their will. Let the young-man lend an ear to the counsel of the wise, and open his heart to their teaching. Betray not<sup>3</sup> confidence: stand by thy promises. Let not the citizen betray his country; but when (*ubi*) dangers threaten, let him defend it with arms. Ye pupils, vie \*with one-another<sup>4</sup> in virtue. Ye princes, ward-off dangers from the citizens, and protect the cultivation of the arts. Let the husbandman till the fields, that the fruits thereof may support the inhabitants of the land. Let not<sup>3</sup> conquerors behave-proudly, when they have conquered<sup>5</sup> a town or country. Let the soldiers take one portion of the booty, the general another.

<sup>1</sup> Æque ac. *yourselves.*

<sup>2</sup> App. I. p. 164.  
<sup>5</sup> Subj.

<sup>3</sup> S. 37.

<sup>4</sup> Inter vos, *between*

---

### EXERCISE 28.

Ager aratur et occatur, ut fruges inde meliores prove-  
niant. Primo tempore veris sparguntur semina frugum,  
quæ æstate maturescunt, et auctumno metuntur, ut per  
hiemem nutrimenta cultoribus præbeant. Finitur labor  
agricolæ mense Novembri aut Decembri, quum rerum na-  
tura quiescere videtur, et agri frigore rigent.—Erudiuntur  
pueri literis et artibus, et exercentur laboribus, ut ingenio  
validi et corpore robusti evadant. Multi adolescentes ita  
decipiuntur voluptatum illecebris, ut labores omnes fugiant.  
Tempora mutantur, et nos mutamur in illis. Maximâ  
movemur misericordiâ, quum homines rebus maxime neces-  
sariis carere vidimus. Ad res pravas sæpe libidine trahi-  
mur, sæpius inconsiderantiâ; nonnunquam etiam circum-  
venimur artibus malorum hominum, a quibus impellimur et  
cogimur. Tu non ab aliis impellëris aut cogëris, sed tua  
te impellit libido; ergo vituperaris et coërcëris. Nec ab  
ullo impediris, quominus recte agas. Vos laudamini, pueri,  
qui bene didicistis; vos, autem, pigri, punimini. Quotidie  
monemini, ut officia vestra expleatis; at semper ab aliis di-  
ligentiâ et virtute vincimini. Curritur, (S. 141,) saltatur, lu-  
ditur, sed scholæ segnius frequentantur.

Certain kinds-of-corn are sown in the month<sup>1</sup> of September or October: then the seed is covered through the winter, till<sup>2</sup> it shoots-up\* (as) the beams of the sun grow warm, (*abl. abs.*), and ripens its fruit in the summer. \*We often sing,<sup>3</sup> and dance,<sup>3</sup> and play,<sup>3</sup> when in the next hour a great misfortune befalls<sup>4</sup> us. Great treasures are often found<sup>5</sup> in the sea, which swallows-up ships and men. The greatest difficulties are often overcome,<sup>6</sup> if the best means are employed at-the-right-time. Even (*vel*) the most violent sorrow is lessened by time and forgetfulness. You are beloved by your friends, honored by your fellow-citizens, feared by the enemies of your country. We were instructed by our teachers and educated by our parents, that<sup>7</sup> we might become better and wiser men. You are watched over, my son, that<sup>8</sup> bad men may not corrupt your mind. We are often prevented by anger from<sup>9</sup> acting right. See that<sup>10</sup> you be not hurried away by passion. You appear to me not to be well-aware what<sup>11</sup> (*quantus*) advantages these sciences, in which you are instructed, offer. Answer to what (*ad ea quæ*) you are asked, that we may know what<sup>11</sup> each of you has learned. Nothing is to be despised.

<sup>1</sup> How is *time-when* translated?—Mense Septembri, aut Octobri.

<sup>2</sup> S. 249.

<sup>3</sup> S. 141. <sup>4</sup> Syn. 4. <sup>5</sup> Syn. 1. <sup>6</sup> S. 214. <sup>7</sup> S. 21. <sup>8</sup> S. 18. <sup>9</sup> S. 43.

<sup>10</sup> Vide nē, &c. subj. <sup>11</sup> S. 49.

---

### EXERCISE 29.

Saguntum jam summâ vi oppugnabatur ab Hannibale, quum Romani nihildum de bello incepto audiverant. Ego, qui paullo ante acerbissimis pedum doloribus cruciabar, nunc quasi revixisse mihi videor. Quantâ tu misericordiâ commovebaris (-e), quum me tantis malis oppressum videres! Miserrimi esse videbamini, quum fortunas omnes amisissetis, quas nunc recepistis! Quum Neapōlim venissemus, ibique scholas frequentaremus, quotidie conveniebamur ab amicis nostris. Agri ad Tiberim jacentes antiquis temporibus colebantur a populis Latinis, quos Romani vicerunt. Apud Græcos et Romanos veteres festis diebus Diis Deabusque sacra instituebantur. A foro Romano



conspiciebatur Capitolium et signum Jovis, qui custos urbis appellabatur. Equi Romanorum terrebantur subito ad spectu et odore elephantorum, quos Pyrrhus in acie constituerat; sed reperiabantur eo tempore remedia, quibus efficiebant Romani, ut elephanti plus suis, quam hostibus nocerent.

I was requested by your brother to relate<sup>1</sup> my journey to him, (*sibi* :) but I was prevented by much business from<sup>2</sup> obliging him. We were asked how-much<sup>3</sup> property our parents had left to their sons and daughters; but \*we were not permitted<sup>4</sup> to answer. How-often were you reminded not to betray<sup>1</sup> the secrets of others? You were expected through the whole day; for nobody had heard, what<sup>5</sup> a misfortune had befallen<sup>6</sup> you. You were compelled by nobody to come to Constantinople; in which city<sup>7</sup> great dangers threatened your life. The standards of the enemy were seen at-a-distance; and still more (troops) were said to be marching-up from the Arāris,<sup>8</sup> when Cæsar drew-up- his army -in-order-of-battle. Our friends were prevailed-upon (*imperf.*) to come \*as soon as possible<sup>9</sup> into the city. The ropes, by which the vessels were fastened to the bank, did not withstand the violence of the storm: and the ships were blown-off into the deep sea.

<sup>1</sup> S. 41.<sup>2</sup> S. 43.<sup>3</sup> S. 49.<sup>4</sup> S. 58.<sup>5</sup> C. 21.<sup>6</sup> Syn. 4.<sup>7</sup> Quā in urbe.<sup>8</sup> Araris, a river in Gaul; the Saône.<sup>9</sup> Quam celerrime

---

### EXERCISE 30. [See S. 205.]

Donabor clipeo et hastâ, si bene pro patriâ pugnvero. Sæpe admonebëris, ut iram discas compescere; sæpius etiam, ut aliorum iram ne excites. Quum ver redierit, prata et agri pulcherrimis floribus ornabuntur. Memoria clarorum virorum nullâ unquam oblivione delebitur aut obscurabitur. Quo<sup>1</sup> magis vitam honestam et integram egerimus, eo magis Deo probabimur. Non videbimur omni culpâ vacare, nisi etiam suspicionem flagitii summo studio vitaverimus. Tu, discipule, laudabëre, si sapienter vitam institueris; at vos vituperabimini, qui segnius officii vestris satisfacistis. Precibus tuis non commovebor, ut



tibi ignoscam; nec temere adducar, ut pœnam tibi remit-  
tam. Ab imbecilliore vincēris, quem contempseris. Non  
audiēris, nisi sapiens consilium dederis; nam stulta con-  
silia negligentur aut rejicientur. A bonis omnibus dilige-  
mur, si bonis moribus excellemus. O poetæ præclari,  
Virgīli atque Horati, semper in scholis legemini, quamdiu  
adolescentes literis erudientur! Quando hic labor difficilli-  
mus finietur!

<sup>1</sup> S. 203.

This town will be conquered in a short time. You will  
be despised by the lowest men, if you give yourself up<sup>1</sup>  
to the vilest lusts. The very lightest tasks will hardly be  
accomplished, if<sup>2</sup> you do not accustom<sup>1</sup> yourself to perse-  
vere in labor. We shall be deserted both by friends and  
relations, if<sup>3</sup> we put every thing after money. You will  
be laughed-at by all sensible people, if you indulge-in<sup>4</sup>  
vanity. I shall be greatly assisted by your means:<sup>5</sup> but  
you' will receive advantage<sup>6</sup> from your labor, and be  
rewarded with great praise. You will be taught by your  
masters, what road<sup>7</sup> you should<sup>8</sup> take. If you will con-  
tinue in this path, you will be loved by your friends, and  
valued by your fellow-citizens. Whither shall I be led?  
When shall I reach the end of my journey? \*It will not  
so much as be asked,<sup>9</sup> what<sup>7</sup> we have thought, but what  
we have done. We shall be attacked by our opponents;  
but our plans will not be overthrown. The gates of the  
city shall be carefully watched: guards shall be stationed  
on the walls: the enemy (*plur.*) shall be kept-off or driven-  
back. \*It is of great importance to me<sup>10</sup> that you should  
(C. 3) understand this.

<sup>1</sup> Fut. perf.      <sup>2</sup> *If not*, nisi.      <sup>3</sup> S. 214.      <sup>4</sup> App. I.      <sup>5</sup> Opera, (*sing.*)  
<sup>6</sup> Fructum capere (*ex.*)      <sup>7</sup> S. 49.      <sup>8</sup> S. 166. *Take*, of a road, is *insistere*,  
which governs the dat.      <sup>9</sup> Ne rogabitur quidem: 'it will not even be asked.'  
<sup>10</sup> S. 91.

---

### EXERCISE 31.

Hæc narratio adeo est fabulosa, ut a nemine credatur.  
Non sum tam imprudens, ut verbis speciosis decipiar. Vic-

tus es, miles : rogato victorem, ut vita tibi condonetur. Spe fallaci, muliēres, deceptæ estis ; cavete, ne iterum decipiāmini. Quam multa a veteribus scriptoribus nobis tradita sunt, quæ adeo sunt fabulis contexta, ut a nemine sano pro veris habeantur ! Utinam quam primum hoc metu liberer, quo sic crucior, ut pæne delirare videar. Difficillimum est efficere, ut simul omnibus probemur. Ab amicis sic deserti sumus, ut ab inimicis prorsus opprimamur. Discedito ab imprōbis, ne pravitate eorum inficiaris, (-e.) Magistratus sapienter administranto rempublicam, cives autem parento legibus ; ita utrisque optime consultum erit, ut nec publica salus turbetur, nec privati singulorum injustitiā vexentur. Bonæ leges sanciantur a principibus, quibus summum imperium ideo creditum est, ut bene consulatur reipublicæ, (S. 135.)

All men are so formed by nature, that<sup>1</sup> the powers of body and mind are strengthened by exercise. Who is so stupid as not<sup>2</sup> to perceive, with how-much (*quantus*) wisdom and goodness the world is governed !<sup>3</sup> We have asked, whether<sup>4</sup> you were loved or shunned by your schoolfellows. You are \*too sensible to be excited<sup>5</sup> to anger by the invectives of the senseless. You are \*too unfeeling to be moved<sup>6</sup> by our tears. We are \*too-sorely afflicted by these misfortunes to be soon restored<sup>7</sup> to our former state. I am so loaded with business, that<sup>1</sup> I am almost oppressed (by it.) Be content with your lot, that you may be reckoned among the wise. You should<sup>8</sup> be more industrious, that the powers of your mind may be better exercised. What am I to do ?<sup>9</sup> shall I ask,<sup>10</sup> or<sup>11</sup> let-myself-be-asked (*say*, or be asked ?)

<sup>1</sup> S. 17.      <sup>2</sup> Ut (*or qui*) non intelligat.      <sup>3</sup> S. 49.      <sup>4</sup> S. 51.      <sup>5</sup> 'More-sensible than that (*quam ut*) you should be excited,' (*subj.*)—Remember that *should* is a doubtful sign, and that whether the *imperf.* or *pres. subj.* should be used, depends on the tense of the preceding verb.      <sup>6</sup> 'More unfeeling than that you should be moved.'      <sup>7</sup> 'More sorely afflicted than that we should, &c.'      <sup>8</sup> S. 61.      <sup>9</sup> S. 213.      <sup>10</sup> Rogemne.      <sup>11</sup> Anne.

---

### EXERCISE 32.

Minus curare solemus, quod adest, quam quod futurum est, quia, quod adest, oculis videmus, sed nescimus, quid

futurum sit. Metuo, ne in hoc negotio falsâ spe decepti sitis, quoniam nihil vobis succedere videtur. Ubi victoria amissa est, nihil refert, quot in prælio cæsi aut in fugâ capti sint. Ad virtutem nihil interest, quo loco aut quibus parentibus nati simus. Hodie nemo in domo est, a quo non sim interrogatus, quomodo e tanto periculo servatus sim, quique homines auxilium mihi præstiterint. Non ita generati a naturâ sumus, ut ad ludum et jocum facti esse videamur; sed ad severitatem potius, et ad quædam studia graviora et majora. Nam ita est a Deo institutum, ut vita hominis non hoc terrestri curriculo terminetur, sed ut animæ etiam post mortem corporis vita futura sit. Simul ac anima a corpore sejuncta fuerit, illud quidem torpebit, sed hæc in æternum vigebit.

Let us see how-many<sup>1</sup> warriors are left in the city; and how the guards are placed on the walls, and before the gates. Since<sup>2</sup> the town is well fortified both by nature and art,<sup>3</sup> and defended by a strong force, it will not easily be taken. Since<sup>2</sup> we are surrounded on-all-sides by enemies, it will be difficult to find a means-of-escape. You will not be reproached \*for having been invited to dinner by no prince;<sup>4</sup> but you will be justly reproached, if<sup>5</sup> you court the favor of the great, that you may be invited. As soon as<sup>6</sup> this letter is read, (*fut. perf.*) you will perceive whom<sup>7</sup> you have had for<sup>8</sup> friends, and whom for<sup>8</sup> enemies, and from what (*quantus*) danger (App. I.) you have been snatched. We shall at all times be contented with our lot, if we accustom ourselves (*fut. perf.*) to look- not -at those who are placed in a higher rank, but (at) those, to whom fortune has denied still more (than to us): for no one is so miserable, that<sup>9</sup> many do not appear to be more miserable still.

<sup>1</sup> S. 49.<sup>2</sup> Quum with *subj.*<sup>3</sup> *Et opere*, abl. of *opus*.<sup>4</sup> 'That (*quod*) you have been invited.'<sup>5</sup> S. 214.<sup>6</sup> S. 251.<sup>7</sup> S. 49.<sup>8</sup> Omit *for*, and put *friends* and *enemies* in apposition to *whom*.<sup>9</sup> S. 17.

---

### EXERCISE 33.

Romæ aliquamdiu penes reges summum imperium fuit. Quorum postremus, Tarquinius Superbus, quum a Bruto

et Tarquinio Collatino expulsus esset, consules creati sunt bini in annos singulos. Id factum est anno ducentesimo decimo ab urbe conditâ. Sed paullo post, quum a patriciis crudelius sæviretur in plebem, eaque perpetuis bellis occupata ære alieno premeretur, denique seditio mota est. Plebs in montem sacrum secessit anno ducentesimo sexagesimo, nec prius in urbem rediit, quam a patriciis promissa essent, quæ postulabat. Postulabat autem, ut æs alienum omne in tabulis deleteretur, utque tribuni crearentur, qui contra superbiam patriciorum causam plebis agerent, legesque iniquas vetarent. Quæ quum concessa essent, aliquamdiu quidem plebs suâ conditione contenta esse videbatur, sed mox altiora petebat, ut in omni genere jura patriciorum et plebeiorum æquarentur, nec jam ordinum discrimen esset.

Canuleius, a tribune of the people, brought-forward a bill,<sup>1</sup> that mixed marriages of the patricians and the plebeians should be permitted.<sup>2</sup> This law was carried in the 310th year \*from the building of the city.<sup>3</sup> At the same time (some) new tribunes brought forward a bill, that one<sup>4</sup> of the consuls should be chosen from the plebeians. This proposal excited the anger of the patricians to-such-a-degree,<sup>5</sup> that<sup>6</sup> it was resolved to elect, instead of consuls, military tribunes<sup>7</sup> with<sup>8</sup> consular power. Thus it happened,<sup>9</sup> that for many years together<sup>10</sup> no consuls were elected at Rome. But when (*quum*) in the year 378, that proposal<sup>11</sup> was renewed (*plup. subj.*) by Caius Licinius Stolo and Lucius Sextius Lateranus, (two) tribunes of the people, the patricians were at-last compelled to share the consulate with plebeians. But that the pain of this lost privilege might be in-some-measure<sup>12</sup> lessened, the patricians sought-for new honors for themselves. Accordingly in the same year two new magistrates were created, from which the plebeians should be excluded, (*subj.*), the prætorship, and the dignity of Curule Ædile. Nevertheless,<sup>13</sup> sixty years afterwards<sup>14</sup> all the rights were made common to the patricians and the plebeians.

<sup>1</sup> Rogationem promulgare.

<sup>3</sup> From (*ab*) the city built.

<sup>7</sup> Tribunes of the soldiers.

<sup>10</sup> Through many years.

<sup>13</sup> Nihilò secius.

<sup>2</sup> Concēdere, (cess, cess.)

<sup>4</sup> Alter, (one of *two*.) <sup>5</sup> Adeo. <sup>6</sup> S. 17.

<sup>8</sup> S. 78.

<sup>9</sup> Ita factum est, (ut,) S. 17.

<sup>11</sup> Rogatio.

<sup>12</sup> Aliquâ ex parte.

<sup>14</sup> S. 146, 147.



## EXERCISE 34.

[Read Rules of Syntax 215, 216.]

Nisi vehementissimis pedum doloribus cruciarer, jam pridem ad te cucurrissem, ut viderem quid ageres. Per-  
venerat enim ad aures meas, quantâ calamitate afflictus  
esses; et metuebam, ne dolore et mœrore plane conficereris.  
Sed crede mihi nulla tanta est calamitas, ut non ab aliquâ  
parte cum commodo quodam conjuncta sit. Sic tu quoque,  
antequam illâ calamitate premereris, paullo superior eras  
et confidentior; nunc mitior factus multorum hominum tibi  
conciliabis animos, quos antea offenderas. Hinc illud  
discito: Si semper bonis cumularemur, nec unquam de  
inconstantia fortunæ admoneremur, profecto eâ re impedi-  
remur, quominus sæpius de verâ animi salute cogitaremur.  
O stulti homines, quam multis malis liberaremini, si in  
omnibus rebus sapienter vitam institueretis, et mature de  
vicissitudinibus fortunæ cogitaretis!

If you had been<sup>1</sup> with me to-day, you would have been  
pleased with a very agreeable sight. You would be praised<sup>1</sup>  
by all good men, if you always did your duty. If<sup>2</sup> we  
were not so-often reminded of our faults, we should either  
never become<sup>3</sup> better, or arrive at virtue very late.<sup>4</sup> I did  
not doubt, that<sup>5</sup> I should at-least<sup>6</sup> be listened-to by my  
friends; even-if<sup>7</sup> my enemies should despise<sup>8</sup> my advice.  
If you were not<sup>2</sup> so carefully watched over by your parents  
and teachers, you would have thoughtlessly fallen into va-  
rious dangers. I carefully guarded-myself \*against being  
enticed<sup>9</sup> to bad things by light-minded persons: if I had  
not done this,<sup>10</sup> \*I should have been often punished for my  
thoughtlessness.<sup>11</sup> The King had commanded, that (*ut*)  
you should be kept in custody, till you were freed from your  
debts. How miserable would you be, if you were despised  
by all the good!

<sup>1</sup> S. 216.<sup>2</sup> *If-not*, nisi.<sup>3</sup> Evadere.<sup>4</sup> Sero.<sup>5</sup> S. 19<sup>6</sup> Saltem<sup>7</sup> Etsi.<sup>8</sup> Subj. See Syn. 5.<sup>9</sup> 'Lest (nē) I should be enticed;' *imperf. subj.*<sup>10</sup> Quod nisi fecissem.<sup>11</sup> 'I should have given (= suffered) the punishment (*pl.*) of my thoughtlessness.'



## EXERCISE 35.

Exorare, mi pater! ignosce temeritati filii! compesce iram!—O stulti homines, docemini tandem aliquando quam miseros vos libidinum dominatio faciat!—Romæ lex erat his verbis scripta: Nemo in urbe sepelitor, neve uritor. Solon hanc legem sanxerat: Qui in bello occubuerint, publice sepeliuntur. Hanc ego vobis legem dico: Si quid utile in reipublicam acturi estis, difficultatibus ne deterremur. Audi, mi fili, ab improbis ne corrumpitor, neve flagitiis eorum contaminator!

What am I to do?<sup>1</sup> shall I beat,<sup>2</sup> or be beaten?—Be beaten.—Shall we entreat,<sup>1</sup> or be entreated? Let him who returns<sup>3</sup> to his obedience, be exempted from punishment: let him who continues in his crime be punished. Let the guilty be kept in custody; the innocent be dismissed. Let not yourselves be withheld from<sup>4</sup> doing good, even-when<sup>5</sup> men threaten you with evil.<sup>6</sup> Let the torch be lighted.<sup>7</sup> Let pleasures be despised.<sup>8</sup> If<sup>9</sup> he were of a brave mind,<sup>10</sup> he would despise<sup>8</sup> those dangers.

<sup>1</sup> S. 213.<sup>2</sup> Feriam: anne feriar.<sup>3</sup> Fut. perf.<sup>4</sup> S. 43.<sup>5</sup> Etiamsi.<sup>6</sup> 'Threaten evil to you.'<sup>7</sup> Syn. 2.<sup>8</sup> Syn. 5.<sup>9</sup> S. 216.<sup>10</sup> S. 78.

## EXERCISE 36.

Phocion magnus Græcorum imperator fuit eo tempore, quo Philippus, Macedonum rex, totam Græciam suo imperio subicere conatus est. Qui quamquam non adūlabatur populo, quod ceteri faciebant, tamen sæpius ad imperium vocatus est, quam alius quisquam. Pueros semper hortamur, ut bonos mores imitentur, malos fugiant et aversentur. Adversabimur illis, qui mala reipublicæ minentur; boni bonis semper auxiliabuntur. Sulla, qui Marium in bello Jugurthino comitatus fuerat, postea acerbissimus ejus adversarius exstitit. In magno timore eram, ne inimici vobis insidiarentur; quod quum factum non sit, gratulor. Magnos homines qui æmulatus fuerit, non inter pessimos numerabitur. Quid gloriemini alienâ virtute, quum propriam laudem meru-

eritis, quam cives omnes admirantur? Sæpe recordare, quid Deo, quid parentibus, quid patriæ debeas, ut omni tempore gratum animum ostendas. Consolamini miseros; hortamini pavidos; auxiliamini laborantibus! In rebus sacris nemo jocator. Jure reprehensi ne indignantor.

Do you mean the same as<sup>1</sup> the rest? If<sup>2</sup> you had not despised my advice, you would not now need consolation.<sup>3</sup> Demosthenes, the most celebrated orator of the Greeks, exhorted the Athenians to support<sup>4</sup> their allies in (good) time, against Philip, the king of the Macedonians: but they<sup>1</sup> hesitated, and \*let their enemy escape<sup>5</sup> out-of (*e*) their hands. You will be surprised, in how short a time we have completed<sup>6</sup> so great a work. I am in great fear that<sup>7</sup> wicked men are plotting against us. Take care \*not to imitate<sup>8</sup> those who take-pride in<sup>9</sup> empty things. Don't wonder that<sup>10</sup> I have not returned from the city before-this;<sup>11</sup> many affairs have detained me. Pray the gods to give<sup>4</sup> you a prosperous return. Do not rejoice, \*when it goes ill with others.<sup>12</sup> Men should remember<sup>13</sup> a kindness received.

<sup>1</sup> That is, 'the same *which*,' (quod,) &c.    <sup>2</sup> *If-not*, nisi with subj.    <sup>3</sup> App. I.  
<sup>4</sup> 'That (ut) they should support.' See S. 41.    <sup>5</sup> 'Sent-their enemy -forth' (hostem e manibus emittere; nisi, missum.)  
<sup>6</sup> S. 49.    <sup>7</sup> S. 22.    <sup>8</sup> Nē with subj.  
<sup>9</sup> C. 36.    <sup>10</sup> Quod. S. 20.    <sup>11</sup> *Earlier*, comparat. of *Mature*.  
<sup>12</sup> *It goes ill with me*: in rebus adversis versor.    <sup>13</sup> Meminerint, used as an imperative. See App. I.

### EXERCISE 37.

Deus tuetur et moderatur res omnium hominum, et universum mundum gubernat. Quid verebimini, ne nobis ingrati venissetis, quibus nemo unquam venit exoptator? Miserere pauperum, ut olim Deus misereatur tui. Nemo libenter fatetur, quod fateri nisi cum dedecore aliquo sui non potest. Qui multa pollicitus est, caveat, ne promissorum obliviscatur. Binæ a Deo hominibus datæ sunt aures, ora autem singula, ut plus audirent quam loquerentur. Romæ qui consulatu functi erant, dicebantur consulares; qui præturâ, prætorii; ædiles qui fuerant, ædilitii; quæstores, quæstorii. Quique justo prælio cum hoste congressi [erant et] quinque millia hostium interfecerant, honorem triumphi adi-

piscebantur. Sequere me : in bellum proficiscimur. Sequar, et pro patriâ pugnabo : sequentur omnes, qui caritate patriam amplectuntur. Ergo proficiscamur, et, si ita Deo placuerit, pro patriâ moriamur. Quid enim juvat vitâ frui, nisi eâ cum laude et gloriâ fruamur ?

Romulus, the first king of the Romans, employed a trick to procure<sup>1</sup> wives for the citizens of his new state. He carried off the Sabine girls whom he had invited with (their) parents to (some) games \*which he had instituted.<sup>2</sup> Hence arose the first war. For the Sabines, to revenge<sup>1</sup> the rape of their daughters, seized their arms and fell upon the Romans. At last, when they had fought for-a-long-time, and the Sabines had already made-themselves-masters of the city, they made a treaty, that they should share the city and government. After-that the Romans were called Quirites from Cures, the chief-town<sup>3</sup> of the Sabines, whose king Titus Tatius was named joint-king with Romulus. After Romulus followed Numa Pompilius, less distinguished in arms than by the arts of peace. To him succeeded in order Tullus Hostilius, Ancus Martius, the elder Tarquinius, Servius Tullius, Tarquinius the Proud. We often forget<sup>4</sup> the benefits for which we are indebted<sup>5</sup> to our parents from our earliest childhood.<sup>6</sup> Get acquainted with your faults, that they may be corrected. Pity<sup>4</sup> those who are miserable for no fault of theirs.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Ut with subj. S. 39.

<sup>5</sup> Which we owe.

<sup>2</sup> 'Instituted by him,' (a se.)

<sup>6</sup> A primâ pueritiâ.

<sup>3</sup> Urbs.

<sup>4</sup> S. 89.

<sup>7</sup> Nullâ suâ culpâ.

### EXERCISE 38.

Fugiamus ejus amicitiam, qui sine causâ amicis irascitur, et levioribus eorum delictis ignoscere non didicit. Ut corporis, sic animi morbis possūmus mederi, si salubria remedia adhibemus. Animi morbi sunt iracundia, intemperantia, ignavia : ex his fere mala nascuntur omnia, quibus res humanæ turbari solent. Homines virtute metimur, non fortunâ : nec decet virum servire malis aut blandiri imprōbis, quod potentiâ aut divitiis vel nocere vel prodesse possint. Spe commodi ne mentimur, neve pravis consiliis adsen-

timinor. Socrates quum capite damnatus causam diceret, tantum aberat, ut<sup>1</sup> blandiretur iudicibus, ut ultro eos incusaret, quod innocentem damnassent.<sup>2</sup> Ita ausus est etiam magis eos irritare, nec ullo modo ab eo impetrari potuit, ut pœnæ remissionem precaretur. Tali modo supplicium quidem effugere non potuit, sed ita mortuus est, ut sapientem decuit, et præclarum exemplum reliquit posteris. Tu vero sic vive, sic morere!

<sup>1</sup> Tantum aberat ut = *was so far from*: the subj. to be rendered by the participial substantive.      <sup>2</sup> For having condemned, &c.

In misfortune we are sometimes deserted by those, whom we trusted<sup>1</sup> above all others.<sup>2</sup> Do not<sup>3</sup> measure the fidelity of friends by words. The fidelity of friends should be measured<sup>4</sup> by deeds. How often do bad men hypocritically-pretend friendship, and flatter with words! As-soon-as he had gained<sup>5</sup> what he desired, he forgot<sup>6</sup> his promises. We justly proclaim him happy, who has gained the friendship of a good man.<sup>7</sup> Embrace your friend with sincere affection. The Scythians live on the milk<sup>8</sup> and flesh of their herds: other nations hunt wild beasts, to eat<sup>9</sup> their flesh, and clothe themselves with their skins. Time heals<sup>6</sup> all wounds. I fear you are flattering<sup>10</sup> my friend.

<sup>1</sup> Confidere (*perf.* confisus sum) governs dat. or abl.

<sup>2</sup> Præ ceteris.

<sup>3</sup> S. 37.

<sup>4</sup> *Is to be measured.* S. 163.

<sup>5</sup> S. 251.

<sup>6</sup> App. I.

<sup>7</sup> Express *vir.*

<sup>8</sup> Omit the prepos. and put the noun in the abl.

<sup>9</sup> *Ut* with subj. See App. I.

<sup>10</sup> S. 22, and App I.

---

### EXERCISE 39. [*Learn App. I.*]

Titus Cæsar dicere solebat, neminem tristem a Principe discedere debere. Mathematici docent, terram nostram circa solem trecentis sexaginta quinque diebus cursum suum conficere. Sæpe videmus, homines vel propter leviora delicta in gravissimas calamitates incidere. A poëtis accepimus, antiquissimis temporibus homines in summâ innocentia et morum integritate vitam degisse. Græci quum sentirent, se ceteros populos cultu et artibus superare, peregrinos omnes barbâros appellabant. Constat, Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Co-



rinthum, delevisse. Credimus, Deum hunc mundum creavisse, creatumque conservare et regere. Scis me jam dudum de te nihil audivisse, nec literas a te accepisse. Non turpe est parum scire, sed in inscitiâ suâ culpâ permanēre. Non est æquum, minori parēre majorem. Omnibus bonis expēdit, quemque reipublicæ leges observare, et parēre magistratibus.

Livius relates that<sup>1</sup> Hannibal crossed the Alps with his<sup>2</sup> army. When<sup>3</sup> Pompejus learned that<sup>1</sup> Cæsar had crossed the Rubicon, he with the senate left the city. Then Cæsar proclaimed, that<sup>1</sup> he<sup>2</sup> was not waging war with the state, but with the oppressors of liberty. We read in (*apud*) Cornelius Nepos<sup>4</sup> that<sup>1</sup> Themistocles<sup>5</sup> conquered and dispersed the fleet of the Persians at<sup>6</sup> the island of Salamis.<sup>7</sup> We have heard that<sup>1</sup> Socrates drank the poison with the greatest composure:<sup>8</sup> for he believed that the souls of men live after death. Leonidas with a small band for<sup>9</sup> three days prevented the vast army of the Persians from crossing<sup>10</sup> (the mountains.) You will displease<sup>11</sup> all good men. Have you not<sup>12</sup> pleased all good men?

<sup>1</sup> S. 16.      <sup>2</sup> C. 1.      <sup>3</sup> Quum with pluperf. subj.      <sup>4</sup> Nepos, G. Nepōtis.  
<sup>5</sup> Themistōcles, G. Themistōclis.      <sup>6</sup> S. 159.      <sup>7</sup> 'The island Salamis.'—Salamis, G. Salamīnis, Acc. Salamina or -em. App. II.      <sup>8</sup> Æquissimo animo,  
*(that is, with the most even mind.)*      <sup>9</sup> Per.      <sup>10</sup> To prevent from crossing, *transitu prohibere*.      <sup>11</sup> App. I.      <sup>12</sup> S. 45.

---

EXERCISE 40. [See S. 205, 206.]

Omnes homines beati esse cupiunt. Desinite tandem aliquando esse timidi, ut agere possitis. Dicitur Hannibal octoginta millia peditum et viginti equitum et triginta septem elephantos in Italiam duxisse. Creditur Tacitus, qui mores Germanorum terræque situm accuratissime descripsit, non audita tantum narrare, sed etiam quæ ipse viderit. Indorum scuta dicuntur auro et ebore fulsisse. Omnium animalium terrestrium elephanta videtur maximus esse, maritimum balæna. Avis quædam, quæ dicitur platalea, scribitur conchis se explere solere. Dicimini segnius scholas frequentare. Non videmur vincere posse, nisi summis viribus hostem adoriamur. In hac re non videbaris verum



attigisse, sed errore quodam deceptus esse. Dicuntur dolores omnes tempore leniri. Terentii fabulæ propter elegantiam sermonis putabantur a C. Lælio scribi. Cæsar legiones jussit sub colle subsistere, donec equitatus illas subsequutus esset, ut simul omnes hostem adorirentur. In bello sæpe crudeles imperatores captivos trucidari jusserunt. Faciam, quod jussus sum facere.

He is said to have laughed. Let him who has received a prize, learn well. If you learn well, you shall receive a prize. I will give you a prize, when you have learned well. Is not philosophy the mistress of life? I' was reading Homer, you' Plato. She is said to have scolded the boy. Let us lie-down in the soft grass. It is certain that the boy laughed. (He) who has received a prize, will rejoice. Having received a prize, they will rejoice. When you have tamed your spirit, you shall receive a prize. When you have read-through Homer, you shall receive a prize.

---

EXERCISE 41. [*Learn dolēre*, S. 161.]

Cæsar ad oppugnandum urbem milites e castris eduxerat. Breve tempus ætatis satis est longum ad bene beateque vivendum. Præceptores inter docendum nonnunquam omittunt puerorum intellectui se accommodare. Socrates interrogando elicere solebat eorum opiniones, quibuscum disserebat. Diu circumsedendo Syracusas Romani cælo aquisque adsuerant (adsueverant). Virtutes hominum in agendo cernimus. Multi homines audiendo magis sunt idonei, quam dicendo. Ars dicendi plurimum valet in foro et in judiciis. Verba declarandi et sentiendi Accusativum cum Infinitivo postulant. Bellandi studio ferocissimæ gentes in perniciem ruerunt. Pigerrimi discipulorum sunt ii, qui discendi minime sunt studiosi. Sæpe vobis nobiscum certandi copiam fecimus.

You are come here to<sup>1</sup> learn, not to play. Yesterday \*while we were walking,<sup>2</sup> we had a most agreeable conversation with you.<sup>3</sup> By reading the writings of Cicero,

you will, without doubt, acquire the power of writing and speaking Latin.<sup>4</sup> By running, by suffering hunger<sup>5</sup> and thirst, our bodies grow accustomed to endure the greatest hardships. In disputing it becomes (us) always to observe moderation; and to conquer ambition by our desire of discovering the truth. Your wish to contend<sup>6</sup> with me<sup>3</sup> has ruined you. Wisdom is to be considered the art of living. I have not time<sup>7</sup> for answering.<sup>8</sup> By bearing injuries you will deserve greater praise than by revenging (them.)

<sup>1</sup> S. 161.

<sup>2</sup> Inter ambulandum.

<sup>3</sup> C. 6.

<sup>4</sup> Latine, adv.

<sup>5</sup> To suffer hunger, *esurire*; to suffer thirst, *sitire*.

<sup>6</sup> Say, 'of contending.'

<sup>7</sup> Translate by *est*. S. 114.

<sup>8</sup> Say, 'of answering.'

---

EXERCISE 42. [*Learn scribenda epistola*, S. 162, 165.]

Natura animum hominis sensibus ornavit ad res percipiendas idoneis. Hannibal quum Capuam venisset, visendâ urbe magnam diei partem consumpsit. Multi in amicis parandis adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. Sunt nonnulli acuendis puerorum ingeniis non inutiles lusus. Creando Pontifici Maximo consules comitia habuere. Ab oppugnandâ Neapoli Hannibalem firmitas et altitudo mœnium absterruit. De contemnendâ morte multi egregie præcipiunt, qui ipsi nihil magis timent, quam mortem. Natura cupiditatem ingenuit homini veri videndi. Augendarum divitiarum stultissimi homines plerumque sunt cupidissimi. In suscipiendis negotiis difficilioribus magis anxii sumus, quam in agendis et perficiendis. Ad vim vi repellendam, licet etiam hominem interficere.

Romulus chose a site near the river Tiber for building<sup>1</sup> the city of Rome.<sup>2</sup> Water is better<sup>3</sup> than wine for quenching thirst. For defending the walls of their cities, the ancients used machines, with which they shot stones and arrows against the besiegers. In curing coughs physicians used the tussilago, which received<sup>4</sup> its name from-that-circumstance.<sup>5</sup> The steersman, sitting at the stern, endeavours,<sup>6</sup> by steering<sup>7</sup> his ship, to avoid the rocks and dangers

of the sea. Let no one lead-you-away from (*a*) cultivating virtue. Man has great instruments for (*ad*) obtaining wisdom.

<sup>1</sup> S. 162.  
dux, duct.

<sup>2</sup> 'The city Rome.'  
<sup>5</sup> Inde (*thence*.)

<sup>3</sup> Use utilis, *not* bonus.  
<sup>6</sup> Studere.

<sup>4</sup> Ducere,  
<sup>7</sup> Regere, *to govern*.

## EXERCISE 43.

Galli gallinacei cum sole eunt cubitum. Themistöcles quum ab Atheniensibus expulsus patriam reliquisset, Argos habitatum concessit. Quum Xerxes ingenti exercitu, Græciæ immineret, Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis. Vejentes pacem petitem oratores Romam miserunt. Saguntini quum intelligerent oppidum suum ab Hannibāle expugnatum iri, se suaque omnia cremaverunt.

In consilio capiēdo considerare debemus, honestumne factu sit, an turpe. Palpebræ sunt tegmenta oculorum mollissimæ tactu, ne læderent aciem. Difficillima sunt creditu, quæ a vetustissimis omnium gentium scriptoribus commemorantur. In magnis rebus gerendis nonnulla dictu quam factu facilia sunt.

The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to ask,<sup>1</sup> whether<sup>2</sup> Hannibal was besieging Saguntum by the orders of the people or senate, or of his own will.<sup>3</sup> A great number of persons are come into the city to see<sup>1</sup> the games. Divitiacus, a distinguished German, came to Rome to ask<sup>1</sup> for help. Augustus gave his daughter Julia in marriage,<sup>4</sup> first to Marcellus, the son of Octavia his sister; then, after his death, to Marcus Agrippa. I don't believe that your conduct will be approved-of by all. What is so delightful to hear<sup>5</sup> as a speech ornamented with wise thoughts and powerful words! What (*quod*) is the easiest to do,<sup>6</sup> that' is not always the best. You will repent of your folly too-late. It is of no importance to me, that<sup>6</sup> these things should be concealed from<sup>7</sup> my father.

<sup>1</sup> Sup. in um. See note on S. 40.  
sing. jussune populi aut Senatūs, Hannibal, &c.

<sup>4</sup> *To give in marriage*, nuptum dare.

<sup>6</sup> Acc. with *present* infin.

<sup>2</sup> S. 46. Translate *orders* by

<sup>3</sup> *Suo arbitrio*.

<sup>5</sup> Sup. in u.

<sup>7</sup> S. 139.

## EXERCISE 44. [See S. 168.]

In viâ publicâ ludentes pueros deprehendimus. Cæsar fugientes hostes in angustias compūlit. Peloponnesus est pæninsula, angustis Isthmi faucibus continenti adhærens.— Senectus est operosa et semper agens aliquid. Jugurtha jussis vestris obediens erit. Alcibiades erat temporibus callidissime inserviens. Catonem vidi in bibliothecâ sedentem. Timoleon quum lumina oculorum amisisset, eam calamitatem tantâ animi fortitudine tolerabat, ut nemo eum querentem audieret. Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen tenentem in templo Ephesiæ Dianæ. Hippias, Pisistrati filius, in Marathoniâ pugnâ cecidit, arma contra patriam ferens. Cicero de Socratis morte lacrimare solebat Platonem legens. Mendaci homini, ne verum quidem dicenti, credere solemus. Ut oculus, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit.

Blossoming trees and meadows growing-green delight us more by their appearance, than the glittering palaces of the rich and distinguished. May<sup>1</sup> no calamity disturb your good-fortune. I heard Socrates say<sup>2</sup> that hunger was the seasoning of food. Plato in the Phædon makes Socrates dispute<sup>3</sup> about the immortality of the soul. Phidias the sculptor represented Jupiter (as) sitting on a throne,<sup>4</sup> and holding thunderbolts in his left-hand, a sceptre in his right. I will readily believe \*those who speak<sup>5</sup> the truth. \*Those-who-speak<sup>5</sup> the truth are readily believed.<sup>6</sup> I believe that many unfortunate (persons) gain more when-they-are-silent<sup>5</sup> than when-they-beg.<sup>5</sup>

1 Utinam. S. 241.\*  
5 Present partic.

2 'Saying.'  
6 S. 135.

3 'Disputing.'

4 In solio.

## EXERCISE 45.

Civem bellum gesturum contra patriam non civem, sed hostem judicamus patriæ. Cæsar adversus hostem copias ducturus, præmisit equites, qui vias omnes explorarent. Lecturus sum aliquid, quod et delectabit animum, et scien-



tiam meam valde augebit. Quid jam facturi estis, quum tot vobis difficultates obstant? Cicero fugiturus erat ex Italiâ, quum emissi ab Antonio eum opprèsserunt et interfecerunt. Nescio, quando uxor mea in urbem reditura sit, quum ruris amœnitas animum ejus tantis voluptatibus devinxerit. Ignorabamus, num consilium nostrum probaturi essetis, quod vobis incommodum futurum esset. Themistocles a civibus suis patriâ expulsus, confūgit ad Xerxem, cui promisit, se cum eo adversus Græcos pugnaturum esse. Verisimile est Persas apud Salaminem insulam victuros fuisse,<sup>1</sup> si unum diem expectavissent. Cæsar Calpurniam, L. Pisonis filiam, successuri sibi in consulatu, in matrimonium duxit. Catilina urbem reliquit, mox cum pluribus rediturus.

<sup>1</sup> S. 224.

I was going to write to you, when it was announced, that<sup>1</sup> you were just arrived. As we were going-to-sail from Ostia to Naples, there arose suddenly a storm, which compelled us to remain in the harbor, and wait-for better weather. I don't know when<sup>2</sup> my brother will come; <sup>3</sup> but this<sup>4</sup> I know, that<sup>1</sup> he has already set-out from the town (where-he-resides.<sup>5</sup>) We hear that<sup>1</sup> you have been residing at Corinth for-some-time, and are now about-to-return to Athens. In summer many persons leave the town, to dwell<sup>6</sup> in the country :<sup>7</sup> but when (*ubi*) the weather<sup>8</sup> ceases (*perf.*) to be warm, return again from the country to the city. I met your brother just-as<sup>9</sup> he was going-on-board the ship, in which he has sailed to (*in*) America.

<sup>1</sup> S. 16.      <sup>2</sup> S. 49.      <sup>3</sup> Part. in rus with sim.      <sup>4</sup> Illud.      <sup>5</sup> *Say*  
 'from his town.'      <sup>6</sup> *Ut* with subj.      <sup>7</sup> S. after 160.      <sup>8</sup> Tempus anni.  
<sup>9</sup> Just as, *quum maxime*.

---

#### EXERCISE 46.

Valerius Maximus Fabium Rullianum, quinque consulatibus cum magnâ laude functum, hominem dicit propter virtutem et merita admirabilem. Aliquando noctu Romæ nuntiatum est, Sabinorum exercitum populaturum ad Aniënem fluvium pervenisse; ibi jam expilatas villas in-



cendi. Statim cum equestribus copiis A. Postumius missus est: quem consul Servilius cum delectâ peditum manu sequitur. Equites plures palatos circumvênit, neque peditibus legio Sabina resistere ausa est. Tum itinere tum nocturnâ populatione fessi, ciboque et vino impleti, plurimi hostium vix tantum virium habebant, quantum ad fugam opus erat.—Alcibiâdes propter crimen sacrorum violatorum ab inimicis urbe pulsus, patriæ maxima damna intulit. Deinde vero, Persarum opem pollicitus, de exsilio revocatus est, Lacedæmoniosque pluribus præliis vicit.—Cœnato jam et obdormiscenti mihi literæ tuæ traditæ sunt, in quibus a te scripta me ita commoverunt, ut somnum adimerent.

You have done this \*without being compelled by anybody.<sup>1</sup> Being hindered \*from<sup>2</sup> acting rightly, I shall do nothing. Being presented with a shield and spear, he will fight well for (*pro*) his country. Being moved by your prayers, I will pardon<sup>3</sup> your son. Being conquered by a weaker person, you will be despised. It is disgraceful to be conquered by a weaker person. (Though) despised by others, I shall be praised by you. This very difficult labor being finished, let us rest. Pity<sup>3</sup> a man (*homo*) oppressed with such<sup>4</sup> evils. \*I repent of my folly.<sup>5</sup> \*Are you not<sup>6</sup> ashamed<sup>5</sup> of your fickleness? Having been a little-while-ago<sup>7</sup> tormented with pain, I now, as-it-were,<sup>8</sup> come to-life-again.<sup>9</sup> War being undertaken, let us fight bravely for our country.<sup>10</sup> We should fight bravely for our country. Being conquered by a very weak<sup>11</sup> man, you are despised.

<sup>1</sup> Say, *compelled by nobody*:—omitting '*without*.'

<sup>4</sup> C. 10.

<sup>5</sup> S. 94.

<sup>6</sup> S. 45.

<sup>2</sup> S. 43.

<sup>3</sup> App. I.

<sup>7</sup> Paulo ante.

<sup>8</sup> Quasi.

<sup>9</sup> See page 164.

<sup>10</sup> S. 164.

- <sup>11</sup> See page 171.

---

#### EXERCISE 47.

Hortandi sunt pueri, ut studiis suis diligentiam adhibeant. In vitâ humanâ pleraque labore et studio paranda sunt. Nisi scribenda mihi hodie epistola esset, optato tuo satisfacerem, ac venirem, quo me vocas. Non audiendi

sunt ii, qui arbitrantur, irascendum inimicis esse. Cuique homini vitanda est ostentationis suspicio. Occultæ inimicitiae magis timendæ sunt, quam apertæ. Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Nemo unquam sapiens proditori credendum esse putavit. Semper ita vivamus, ut rationem reddendam nobis arbitremur. Nemo scit, quando sibi moriendum sit. Nobis iter facientibus per Helvetiam Alpes superandæ erant, quæ sempiternâ nive et glacie tectæ esse dicuntur.

In practising any<sup>1</sup> art, many rules are to be observed. Those must be considered brave and magnanimous persons, who are always engaged<sup>2</sup> in preventing<sup>3</sup> injuries. Men should early learn the art<sup>4</sup> of using time; and never must an opportunity be lost of doing any good.<sup>5</sup> If<sup>6</sup> we wished to read all (*pl.*) that has been written by learned men, we should never make an end of reading. We should live,<sup>7</sup> as-if<sup>8</sup> all men saw our actions. When we set-out,<sup>9</sup> we did not know what<sup>10</sup> hills we *had*<sup>11</sup> to climb-over, and how-many rivers to cross. The upper shoots of a tree must often be broken-off for the purpose<sup>12</sup> of checking its luxuriant-growth.

1 S. 192.      2 *Studere*, followed by *dat.*      3 Propulsare.      4 'The art—is to be learned.'  
 5 *Boni aliquid.* Here the *gerund* must be used.  
 6 S. 215.      7 S. 164.      8 S. 241.\*      9 S. 241.      10 S. 49. and C. 21.  
 11 C. 27.      12 *Causâ.* See note on S. 40.

---

### EXERCISE 48.

Per annos centum et quindĕcim inter Romanos et Carthaginienses aut bellum fuit, aut belli apparatus, aut incerta pax; et Roma, jam superato orbe terrarum, se tutam fore non putabat, si nomen Carthaginiensium usquam exstaret. Captâ Carthagine, ille terrarum tractus in provinciæ formam redactus est, et Africa propria dicta. Eodem anno captâ et excisâ Corintho, propter legatos Romanorum violatos, tota Græcia in ditionem populi Romani venit, et Achaia dicta est. Mox rege Attâlo mortuo, testamenti jure Asiæ minoris pars major Romanis obtigit.—Manlio Torquato Caio Atilio consulibus, de Sardis triumphatum est; et

omnibus locis pace factâ, Romani bellum non habebant, quod inde ab urbe conditâ semel tantum factum erat, regnante Numâ Pompilio.—Maximus, de quo accepimus, terræ motus regnante Romæ Tiberio accidit, magno urbium numero eodem die corruente.—Magna spes patriæ scholæ sunt; his florentibus etiam respublica viget; his ægrotantibus morbus perfacile etiam patriam invādit.—Orīturo sole navem solvimus, oriente jam procul terra conspicitur.

\*When Alexander, king of Macedonia, was dead,<sup>1</sup> his generals divided among themselves<sup>2</sup> the conquered countries. \*When Hannibal had conquered the Romans<sup>3</sup> at (*ad*) Trebia, at the Ticinus, at the Trasimene lake, the Roman state seemed to be not far removed<sup>4</sup> from destruction. \*After Syracuse was conquered by Marcus Marcellus,<sup>1</sup> the Greek arts and sciences removed to Rome. \*In the reign of Tullus Hostilius,<sup>5</sup> in the ninety-first year from the building of the city,<sup>6</sup> Demaratus, a Corinthian, (who had been) banished from his country, came to Tarquini, a town of Etruria. The son of this man was L. Tarquinius Priscus, who, \*after the death of Ancus<sup>7</sup> Marcius,<sup>1</sup> was chosen king of the Romans. \*When passion sways,<sup>1</sup> the voice of reason is often unheard. Mithridates waged war with the Romans for forty-nine successive years, \*with many variations of fortune<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>2</sup> Inter sese.

<sup>3</sup> Abl. absol.

<sup>4</sup> Haud procul abesse.

<sup>5</sup> 'Tullus Hostilius reigning,' *abl. absol.*

<sup>6</sup> 'From the city built.'

<sup>7</sup> Ancus.

<sup>8</sup> 'Fortune often varying,' *abl. absol.*

#### EXERCISE 49.

Famâ divulgatâ, Numam Pompilium Sabinum virtute et sapientiâ eminere, hunc populus Romanus, quamquam peregrinum, præteritis civibus regem creavit. Magi Persarum fuerunt, quibus auctoribus Xerxes Græciæ templa inflammari jussit. Patrato quisque scelere conscientiæ morsibus conficitur; scelus enim et accumbentem exagitat, et dormientis obversatur animo, et evigilanti denuo insurgit. Cæsar narrat, invitis iis, a quibus Pharus occupata sit, naves portum Alexandriæ intrare non posse. Vivo Hannibale Romani

sese ab insidiis tutos non esse arbitrabantur. Duce P. Cornelio Scipione Romani in Africam trajecerunt, ubi, pugnâ ad Zamam commissâ, pax petentibus Carthaginensibus data est. C. Cæsar, vir summæ in re militari prudentiæ, milites suos hortatus, ne fugientes hostes incautius persequerentur, legiones sub colle subsistere jubet, dum ipse equites in terga hostium circumduxisset: quod ubi factum esse cognovissent, instructâ acie in collem eniterentur. Sævi bellatores, victoriâ reportatâ, urbes diripiunt, et agros devastant, ac ne inermi quidem parcentes trucidant homines.

\*When the sea is calm,<sup>1</sup> anybody<sup>2</sup> can steer a ship. \*By the advice of Cato,<sup>3</sup> the ambassadors of the Athenians were banished from Rome, because by their incredible eloquence<sup>4</sup> they persuaded the people to receive falsehood for truth.<sup>5</sup> \*When spring returns,<sup>6</sup> your little-garden will be adorned with the most beautiful flowers. Do not boast, \*when you have conquered a weaker person.<sup>6</sup> \*When the victory is lost,<sup>6</sup> it \*makes-no-difference<sup>7</sup> how-many have been killed. Being born for (*ad*) greater things, depart from the wicked, lest you should be corrupted by their character.<sup>8</sup> By the advice of my uncle, I have run to you. Cannot anybody<sup>2</sup> be a pilot, \*when the sea is calm?<sup>1</sup> We must think about the true welfare<sup>9</sup> of the soul.

<sup>1</sup> 'The sea (being) calm,' (tranquillus,) *abl. abs.*

<sup>4</sup> Ars dicendi.

<sup>6</sup> Mores, *pl.*

<sup>5</sup> Falsa pro veris accipere.

<sup>9</sup> Sal-us, ūtis.

<sup>2</sup> S. 192.

<sup>6</sup> Abl. abs.

<sup>3</sup> Catone auctore.

<sup>7</sup> S. 91.

---

### EXERCISE 50. [See S. 94.]

Is labor utilis est, qui auctori laudem fert, aliis utilitatem. Quid fers manu, mi fili? Pecuniam et vasa refero, quæ fur e domo nostrâ nuper abstulerat. Hunc ego dolorem æquo animo ferrem, nisi gravior<sup>1</sup> esset, quam ut ferri omnino possit. Fer opem miseris, et vide, ne te sero lati auxilii pœniteat. Factum est æquitate Aristidis, ut summum imperium a Lacedæmoniis transferretur ad Athenienses. Miseret me tui, quod tanta tibi injuria illata est,



quantam inferre cuiquam nisi audacissimus homo non potuit. Sed tamen majorem laudem merebere, æquo animo ferendo injuriam, quam ulciscendo. Tollite et auferte hæc subsellia: ablata in porticu collocate. Cæsari militum ordines circumequitanti nuntius affertur, hostem adesse et horribili sublato clamore castris appropinquare. Nihil igitur differendum impetum ratus, instructâ acie signa in hostem tulit.

<sup>1</sup> Gravior quam ut possit, &c., *too heavy to be, &c.*

Labors must be borne. What (*pl.*) cannot be avoided, must be borne with resignation.<sup>1</sup> When will you be ashamed<sup>2</sup> of your folly? By whom have you been prevented from<sup>3</sup> fulfilling your duties? You have need<sup>4</sup> of a brave mind. \*It is of great importance to all<sup>5</sup> \*to make a right use of time.<sup>6</sup> By whom (*pl.*) were they prevented from<sup>3</sup> discharging the duties of justice? An opportunity being offered, let us do-good to our friends. Shall<sup>7</sup> you deserve greater praise by bearing an injury, or by revenging (it)? O Alexander, having subdued so many nations, learn to subdue your own<sup>8</sup> passion. The naked must be clothed:<sup>9</sup> the hungry satisfied. You must answer<sup>10</sup> to (*ad*) our questions. The army must be drawn-out-in-battle-array.

<sup>1</sup> 'With even mind.'  
<sup>6</sup> 'To use time rightly.'

<sup>2</sup> S. 94.  
<sup>7</sup> S. 51, 52.

<sup>3</sup> S. 43.  
<sup>8</sup> S. 177.

<sup>4</sup> S. 79.  
<sup>9</sup> S. 163.

<sup>5</sup> S. 91.  
<sup>10</sup> S. 164.

---

### EXERCISE 51. [See p. 26, (66, 2.)]

Si vis beatus esse, impera libidini, quæ te dies noctesque exagitat, nec unquam patitur tranquillum esse animum. Quum ceteris omnibus ignoveris, mihi uni ignoscere non vis? M. Porcius Cato, quum nollet in civitate vivere, quæ unius imperio pareret, mortem sibi Uticæ, (in) oppido Africæ, conscivit: a quo facto Uticensis est appellatus. C. Julius Cæsar dixit, malle sese in minimâ quaque civitate primum esse, quam Romæ secundum. In legibus ferendis hac formulâ uti solebant magistratus: *Velitis, jubeatis Quirites?* Sic P. Sulpicius consul rogationem promulgavit: *Vellent juberent Quirites, Philippo regi Macedonibusque,*

*qui sub regno ejus essent, ob injurias illatas sociis populi Romani bellum indicī?*—Cicero senex vidit perficere Cæsarem, quod decem et septem annis ante Catilina voluerat, sed vigilantia Ciceronis consulis præpeditus non potuerat. Non debet legi, qui non vult intelligi. Dic, utrum malis ruri vivere, an in urbe. Malo ruri.—Noli foris quærere, quæ tibi domi parata sunt. Si tales estis, quales vultis videri, bene est: sed sunt, qui malint videri boni, quam esse.

Had- you -rather<sup>1</sup> live in-the-country,<sup>2</sup> or in the city? He is such as<sup>3</sup> he wishes to appear. Lust must be subdued, which will harass you day and night. If you (*pl.*) wish to be happy, your lusts must be subdued. War being proclaimed, we have need<sup>4</sup> of a brave general. If you wish to be such as<sup>3</sup> you seem, it is well. The boys must be admonished to be<sup>5</sup> such as<sup>3</sup> they wish (*subj.*) to appear. No one wishes to be despised by those, whom he-himself loves. Never forget<sup>6</sup> what you owe to your country. Had- you -rather<sup>1</sup> lead a long and inglorious life, or end a glorious life by an early death? Achilles preferred dying<sup>7</sup> in the Trojan war by an early death, to growing-old at-home in an inactive life. I would (*vellem*) you had come<sup>8</sup> to me as a friend: in thee alone had I placed all my hope.

<sup>1</sup> S. 51, 52.

<sup>2</sup> See examples under S. 160.

<sup>3</sup> Qualis.

<sup>4</sup> S. 79.

<sup>5</sup> *Ut* with subj.

<sup>6</sup> *Say*, 'be unwilling (*noli*) ever to forget.'

<sup>7</sup> *To prefer*, malle. *Say*, 'to die—than to-grow-old.'

<sup>8</sup> Subj. governed by *ut* omitted.

---

### EXERCISE 52.

Gallinæ cum sole cubitum ire dicuntur: at homo, dum recte valet, ante noctem cubitum non ibit. I præ, ego sequar. Ex pugnâ Cannensi admōdum pauci Romani domum redierunt. Præteribam forte domum tuam, quum magnam hominum frequentiam ex eâ vidi exeuntem. Quærenti mihi quid esset, quod<sup>1</sup> tanta frequentia exiret, respondit aliquis, esse apud te principem aliquem, quem visuri isti venissent. Ineunte vere hirundines redeunt, auctumno in terras calidiores abituræ. Cupio, ut tu et

soror tua quam brevissimo tempore ad nos redeatis : jam enim tertius est annus, ex quo profecti estis. Silvæ, montes, maria transeunda sunt in terras longe remotas proficiscentibus. Cæsar ad tutanda castra fossam fecit decem pedes altam totidemque latam, quam equo aut pedibus superare nequirent hostes. In quacunque re priusquam agas quidquam, vires explōra, ut cognoscas, quid queas, quidve nequeas. Avari perpetua cura exest animum, ne bona sibi eripiantur.

<sup>1</sup> *Quid esset, quod* may be rendered, 'why it was that;' or 'why' only.

Is not your little-brother gone<sup>1</sup> to bed? We must follow. We must obey the laws. Must we not obey the laws? We must revile nobody. Flatter nobody. It is-well-known, that \*at the beginning of autumn<sup>2</sup> the swallows go-away to (*in*) warmer countries. How-many men did you see coming-out of (*ex*) my house? I will ask, how many men he saw coming-out. Will not the swallows return \*at the beginning<sup>3</sup> of spring? Having ascertained your strength,<sup>4</sup> you will learn what<sup>5</sup> you can (*queo*) do. I desire that (*ut*) you should take-away<sup>6</sup> from me<sup>7</sup> my care \*in as short a time as possible.<sup>8</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Is gone. See C. 12.    <sup>2</sup> *Say*, 'autumn coming-in,' (abl. abs.)    <sup>3</sup> *Say*, 'spring coming-in.'    <sup>4</sup> Plural. See S. 176.    <sup>5</sup> S. 49.    <sup>6</sup> Syn. 6.    <sup>7</sup> Dat.    <sup>8</sup> *Quam brevissimo tempore*.

---

EXERCISE 53. [See *fo*, p. 165.]

Sæpe qui ex pauperibus repente divites fiunt, divitiis uti nesciunt : ita fit, ut brevi tempore, consumptis opibus, in graviolem etiam egestatem relabantur. Contigit Ciceroni, ut eodem anno consul fieret, quo magno periculo patriam liberare, sibi que æternam gloriam parare posset. Cicero ait, non posse jucunde vivi,<sup>1</sup> nisi honeste vivatur. Tullus Hostilius, qui Numam Pompilium in imperio sequutus est, ut Livius ait, ferocior etiam Romulo fuit. Cæsarem ajunt morti Pompeii illacrÿmasse, quum abscissum illius caput in patinâ victori offerretur. Aristippus percontanti, quæ potissimum adolescentibus essent discenda ; *Quæ viris*, inquit, *usui futura sunt*. Socrates interrogatus, quinam homines tranquille viverent ; *Qui*, inquit, *nullius turpitudinis sibi*

*conscii sunt.* Pisistrātus, quum convīva bene potus ei maledixisset, irritantibus amicis ad pœnam de convivâ sumendam: *Non magis, inquit, illi succenseo, quam si quis obligatis oculis in me incurrisset.*

<sup>1</sup> 'That it cannot be lived pleasantly' = 'that there is no living pleasantly.' *Nisi vivatur* may be translated 'unless one lives;' or, 'without living.'

He is said to have become rich. Having become rich, do not<sup>1</sup> forget those, who did-good to you (when) a poor man. Do not<sup>1</sup> be angry against<sup>2</sup> those who have deserved well of (*de*) you. It has happened<sup>3</sup> to me to free<sup>4</sup> you from<sup>5</sup> great danger. Nothing shall hinder me from<sup>6</sup> doing this. You (*pl.*) would have conquered,<sup>7</sup> if you had waited one day. It is certain that<sup>8</sup> you would have conquered,<sup>9</sup> if you had waited one day. I will wait till<sup>10</sup> you have fulfilled your duty. We have walked<sup>11</sup> enough. Having won<sup>12</sup> for myself eternal glory, I will willingly die. Do not<sup>1</sup> prefer glory to honor.

<sup>1</sup> Be unwilling (to forget—to be angry, &c. :) *noli.*

<sup>2</sup> C. 36.

<sup>3</sup> Syn. 4.

<sup>4</sup> S. 17.

<sup>5</sup> S. 128.

<sup>6</sup> S. 43.

<sup>7</sup> S. 216.

<sup>8</sup> S. 16.

<sup>9</sup> S. 224.

<sup>10</sup> S. 249.

<sup>11</sup> S. 141.

<sup>12</sup> Parare.

---

EXERCISE 54. [See *memini*, &c., p. 166, (8.)]

Demōnax interrogatus, quando cœpisset philosophari; *Tum, inquit, cum cognoscere me ipsum cœpi.* Phocion innōcens capitis damnatus, rogante quodam ex amicis, numquid filio suo Phoco mandari vellet: *Maxime, inquit; jubeo enim eum hujus in patrem injuriæ nunquam meminisse.* Samiorum legatis, longâ oratione usis, responderunt Spartani: *Prima sumus obliti, postrema non intelleximus,<sup>1</sup> quia prima non meminimus.* C. Cæsar Caligula tantâ crudelitate fuit, ut merito Imperatorum Romanorum omnium crudelissimus habeatur. Is quum probe sciret, quanto odio<sup>1</sup> civibus esset, dicere solebat: *Oderint, dum metuant.* Hannibal Romanos sic oderat, ut in gratiam cum illis redire nullo modo posset. Memento etiam ignotis prodesse. Immanis naturæ est,<sup>2</sup> odisse eos, quibus vitam debeas. Quidam scriptores traderunt, Saguntum oppidum captum ab Hannibale esse octavo mense, postquam cœptum est oppugnari.

<sup>1</sup> S. 111.

<sup>2</sup> S. 85.



Remember that you<sup>1</sup> are a man : and that all men must die.<sup>2</sup> I hate you so<sup>3</sup> that<sup>4</sup> I cannot be reconciled to you. Remember to pardon all men. Do not<sup>5</sup> hate anybody.<sup>6</sup> In what month did Saguntum begin to be besieged ? In what year was Saguntum taken ? Do you know in what<sup>7</sup> year Saguntum was taken ? \*It is of great importance to you<sup>8</sup> to remember that you are a man. Do not<sup>5</sup> make<sup>9</sup> a long speech. Remember to do good to as-many-as-possible.<sup>10</sup>

1 S. 16.    2 S. 164.    3 *Sic.* Let it begin the sentence.    4 S. 17.    5 *Noli.*  
 6 *Quisquam.* See S. 191.    7 S. 49.    8 S. 91.    9 *Utor.*  
 10 *Quam plurimi.*

### III. READING LESSONS,

CONSISTING OF

FABLES AND ANECDOTES, &c.

---

1.

*Boves.*

PASCEBANTUR una tres boves robusti in maximâ concordîâ. Itaque facile ab omni ferarum incursione tuti erant, ut ne leones quidem aggrēdi eos auderent. Orto autem inter eos dissidio et solutâ amicitîâ, singuli validioribus bestiis prædæ fuerunt.—Hæc fabula docet, quantum prosit concordia.

2.

*Vulpes et Uva.*

Vulpes, extremâ fame coacta, uvam appetebat ex altâ vite dependentem. Quam quum, summis viribus saliens, attingere non posset, tandem discedens ait: Nondum matura est, nolo acerbam sumere.—Hoc illi exemplum sumant, qui, quæ facere non possunt, verbis elēvant.

3.

*Cervus ad fontem.*

Cervus quum vehementer sitiret, ad fontem accessit, suâque in aquis imagine conspectâ, cornuum magnitudinem et varietatem laudabat, crura vero gracilia et exilia vituperabat. Hæc cogitanti supervēnit leo. Quo viso, cervus aufūgit, et leoni longe præcurrit. Et quamdiu in nudâ planitie erat, nullum ei ab hoste imminebat periculum; ubi

vero ad nemus venit opacum, inter virgulta cornibus adhæsit. Ita quum celeritate pedum uti non posset, captus est a leone et misere laniatus. Tum moriturus : *O me desipientem, inquit, cui ea displicerent, quæ me servarunt, placerent autem, quæ me perdiderunt !*

## 4.

*Vulpes et Corvus.*

Corvus quum frustum carnis rapuisset, in arbore quadam consedit. Quo conspecto vulpes, carnem cupiens, accurrit, eumque callidis verbis adoritur. O corve, inquit, quam pulchra es avis, quam speciosa ! Te decuit esse avium regem. Sane omnes aves regiis virtutibus antecederes, si vocem haberes. His corvus laudibus inflatus, ne mutus haberetur, clamorem edidit, sed simul, aperto rostro, carnem amisit : quam vulpes statim rapuit, atque irridens dixit : *Heus, corve ! nihil tibi deest præter mentem.*

## 5.

*Senex et Mors.*

Senex quidam ligna in silvâ ceciderat, et, fasce in humeros sublato, domum redire cœpit. Quum autem fatigatus esset et onere et itinere, deposuit ligna, et secum considerans miserias senectutis et inopiæ, clarâ voce invocavit mortem, ut se ab omnibus malis liberaret. Mox adfuit mors, quid velit interrõgans. Tunc senex perterritus : *Nihil volo, inquit, nisi ut hunc fascem lignorum humeris meis impõnas.*

## 6.

*Mures et Felis.*

Multi mures in cavo pariète commorantes, contemplabantur diu felem, quæ capite demisso et tristi vultu placide recumbebat. Tunc unus ex iis : *Hoc animal, inquit, ad modum benignum et mite videtur. Quid, si allõquar, et familiaritatem cum illo contraham ?* Hæc quum dixisset et propius accessisset, a fele captus et dilaceratus est. Tunc ceteri hoc videntes secum dicebant : *Non est profecto vultui temere credendum.*

## 7.

*Auceps et Serpens.*

Auceps ibat venatum, et mox vidit in altissimâ arbore palumbem; appropĕrat eum capturus, sed inter eundem premit forte pede altero viperam in herbâ latentem, quæ illum mordet. *Me miserum, inquit, dum alteri insidior, ipse dispereo.*

## 8.

*Canis et Lupus.*

Cani perpingui lupus occurrit macie confectus. Quum se salutassent, lupus: Quomodo fit, inquit, ut tam pinguis sis, tamque niteas? Ego, multo fortior, fame pereo. Canis respondet: Idem tibi erit, si domino officium præstabis, quod ego præsto, ut servem limen, dominumque noctu a furibus tuear. Tum lupus: Ego vero, inquit, paratus sum; nunc enim patior frigōra et imbres, in silvis oberrans.—Veni ergo mecum. Dum procedunt, lupus collum canis detrītum adspicit. Quid hoc est? inquit; num jugum fers? Imo, inquit canis, quia acer sum, me interdiu alligant; noctu vero vagor, ubi lubet. Num est tibi, inquit lupus, licentia abeundi, quo velis?—Non semper.—*Vale*, respondit ille, *liber esse malo, quam servitatem ferre.*

## 9.

*Rusticus et Filii.*

Rusticus vicĭnus morti, quum relinquere filiis suis divitias non posset, animos eorum excitare voluit ad diligentem agriculturam, assiduitatemque in opere faciendo. Igitur eos ad se vocat et sic alloquitur: Mei filii, quo statu res meæ sint, videtis. Vobis autem, quidquid potui, in vitâ meâ collegi, idque totum in vineâ nostrâ quærere poteritis. Hæc quum dixisset, moritur senex. At filii opinantes, patrem in vineâ thesaurum abscondidisse, arreptis ligonibus universum vineæ solum effodiunt. Et thesaurum quidem nullum invenere, terrâ tamen fodiendo perculâtâ, vites post-hac uberrimos fructus tulerunt.



## 10.

*Equus et Asinus.*

Agitabat quidam equum et asinum onustos sarcīnis. Asinus defatigatus rogavit equum, ut, si se vivum servare vellet, aliquā parte oneris se levaret: repudiavit equus preces illius. Paulo igitur post fatigatione et labore consumptus asinus in viā corruit, et efflavit animam. Tum agitator omnes sarcīnas, quas asinus portaverat, atque in super etiam pellem asino detractam in equum imposuit. Ibi ille deplōrans fortunam suam: Me miserum, inquit, qui parvulum onus in me suscipere gravatus fuerim, quum nunc cogar tantum ferre, accedente etiam pelle comitis mei, cujus preces tam superbe contempseram.

## 11.

*Duo Amici.*

Duo amici faciunt iter. Occurrit in itinere ursus, quo conspecto unus illīco arbōrem conscendit, et pericula evitat; alter vero, quum meminisset, illam bestiam cadavera non attingere, humi sese prostravit, simulans, se mortuum esse. Accedit ursus, contrectat jacentem, et os suum ad illius os auresque admōvet. Homine autem spiritum continente, ursus, ratus cadaver esse, discedit. Quum postea socius quæreretur, quidnam ei ursus dixisset in aurem, respondit: Monuit, ne amicum esse mihi persuaderem, cujus fidem adverso tempore non fuissem expertus.

## 12.

*Dictum memorabile Socratis.*

Quum ex Socrate esset quæsitum, nonne beatum putaret Archelāum, Perdiccæ filium, regem Macedōnum, qui tum fortunatissimus habebatur? Haud scio, inquit, nunquam enim cum eo colloquutus sum. Ain' tu?<sup>1</sup> an aliter id scire non potes?—Nullo modo.—Tu igitur ne de Persarum quidem rege magno dicere potes, beatusne sit?—An ego possum, inquit, quum ignōrem, quam doctus sit, et num bonus

<sup>1</sup> Ain' tu for aïsne tu ?

vir?—Quid? tu in eo sitam esse vitam beatam putas?—Ita prorsus existimo: *bonos beatos, impröbos miseros esse.*—Miser<sup>1</sup> ergo Archelaus?—Certe, si injustus.<sup>1</sup>

## 13.

*Egregie dicta.*

Drusus quum ædificaret domum, promitteretque ei architectus, ita se eam ædificaturum,<sup>2</sup> ut nemo in eam despiciere posset: *Tu vero, inquit, si quid in te artis est, ita compone domum, ut, quidquid agam, ob omnibus perspici possit.*—Plato cuidam narranti, esse quosdam, qui ipsum maledictis insectentur: *At ego, inquit, sic vivam, ut nemo istis fidem habeat.*—Epictetus interrogatus, quis esset dives? *Cui, inquit, satis est, quod habet.*—Socrates, in pompâ quum magna vis auri argentique ferretur: *Quam multa non desidero!* inquit.—Antoninus Pius hanc celebratam Scipionis sententiam sæpe in ore habebat, *malle se unum civem servare, quam mille hostes interficere.*

## 14.

*Acute dicta.*

Agis, rex Lacedæmoniorum, audiens, quosdam horrere hostium multitudinem, ait: *non percontandum esse, quot sint hostes, sed ubi sint.* Idem interrogatus, quot milites haberet? *quot sufficiunt, inquit, ad fugandos hostes.*—Quum quidam Lacedæmonios hortaretur, ut bellum Macedonibus inferrent, commemoraretque victorias, quas de Persis reportassent, Eudamidas dixit: *hoc facere, idem esset, ac<sup>3</sup> si quis, devictis mille ovibus, cum quinquaginta lupis pugnaret.*—Aristippum philosophum rogavit quidam, ut filium suum erudiret. Quum vero ille pro mercede petiisset quingentas drachmas, pater, deterritus pretio, quod avaro et rudi homini nimium videbatur: *Tanti, inquit, emere mancipium possum.* Tum philosophus: *Eme, inquit, et habebis duo.*

## 15.

*Libère dicta.*

Apelles, pictor sui temporis clarissimus, Alexandrum

<sup>1</sup> Sc. est.<sup>2</sup> Sc. esse.<sup>3</sup> As.

pinxerat vehementem equo. Quam imaginem quum rex minus laudaret, quam meruerat artifex, equus Alexandri interea adductus picto equo sic adhinniit, quasi verus esset equus. Tum Apelles: *O rex, inquit, equus tuus pingendi peritior, quam tu, videtur esse.*—Alexander olim quum piratam comprehensum interrogaret, quo jure maria infestaret, ille: *Eodem, inquit, quo tu orbem terrarum. Sed quia id ego parvo navigio facio, latro vocor; tu, quia magnâ classe et exercitu, imperator.*—Quum in regali solio sederet Cræsus, pretiosissimâ veste indutus, Solonem interrogavit, an quid unquam pulchrius vidisset? *Gallos, inquit ille, et phasianos et pavones: naturali enim nec imitabili colore et pulchritudine fulgent.*

## 16.

*Damon et Pythias.*

Damon et Pythias, Pythagoræi, tam fidëlem inter se amicitiam junxerunt, ut mori parati essent alter pro altero. Quum eorum alteri Dionysius tyrannus diem necis destinavisset, et is, qui morti addictus esset, paucos sibi dies ad res suas ordinandas postulavisset; vas factus est alter, ut, si ille non revertisset, moriendum esset ipsi. Omnes igitur, et imprimis Dionysius, novæ atque ancipitis rei exïtum speculabantur. Appropinquante deinde definitâ die, nec illo redeunte, unusquisque stultitiæ tam temerarium sponsorem condemnabat. At vero quum alter ad diem se recepisset, admiratus eorum fidem tyrannus supplicio liberavit eum, qui morte erat plectendus, ac petivit, ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent.

## 17.

*Augustus.*

Græcus quidam Augusto, e Palatio descendenti, honorificum aliquod epigramma porrigere solebat, spe præmii. Id quum sæpe frustra fecisset, Augustus eum deterriturus breve epigramma suâ manu exaratum Græculo adveniienti obviam misit. Ille, dum legeret, laudabat, et tum voce, tum vultu gestuque mirabatur. Deinde ad sellam accessit, quâ Cæ-

sar ferebatur, paucosque ex crumēnâ denarios protraxit, quos Cæsari daret, dixitque, se plus daturum fuisse, si plus habuisset. Omnes risere; Cæsar autem dispensatorem vocari, et Græco satis magnam pecuniæ summam numerari jussit.

## 18.

*Cyrus minor, rex Persarum.*

Quum Lysander Lacedæmonius ad Cyrum minorem, regem Asiæ, Sardes venisset, hic erga Lysandrum in omni re comis atque humanus fuit, atque hortum ei aliquando diligenter consitum ostendit. Quum admiraretur Lysander et proceritatem arbōrum, et ordines, et humum subactam atque puram, et suavitatem odorum, qui efflabantur ex floribus: tum dixit, mirari se non modo diligentiam sed etiam sollertiam ejus, a quo ista dimensa et descripta essent. Cui Cyrus respondit: Atqui ego ista omnia dimensus sum, mei sunt ordines, mea descriptio; multæ etiam istarum arborum meâ manu satæ sunt. Tum Lysander intuens ejus purpūram et ornatum corporis, dixit: Recte vero te, Cyre, beatum ferunt, quoniam virtutem tuam fortuna sequuta est.

## 19.

*Catonis pueri constantia.*

Marcus Cato puer in domo avunculi sui, Drusi, tribuni plebis, educebatur. Quum apud eum socii de civitate impetrandâ convenissent, et Quintus Poppedius, Marsorum princeps, eum rogaret, ut socios apud avunculum adjuvaret, constanti vultu respondit, non facturum<sup>1</sup> se. Iterum deinde et sæpius rogatus, in proposito perstitit. Tunc Poppedius puero in altissimam ædium partem sublato minatus est, se eum inde dejecturum,<sup>1</sup> nisi precibus obtemperaret. Sed Cato ne hac quidem re ab incepto depelli potuit. Ita Poppedio vox illa expressa est: Gratulemur nobis, socii, hunc esse tam parvum: quo senatore ne sperare quidem civitatem liceret. Sic ea constantia, quam postea per totam vitam ostendit, jam in puero Catone apparuit.

<sup>1</sup> Sc. esse.



## 20.

*Lysimachi fortitudo.*

Lysimachus inter duces Alexandri illustri genere, sed longe magis virtute quam genere clarus erat. Quum Alexander Callisthenem philosophum miserandum in modum omnibus membris truncasset, et insuper cum cane in caveâ clausum circumferret, Lysimachus, qui eum audire atque ex ejus ore præcepta virtutis et sapientiæ percipere solitus erat, venenum ei dedit, in remedium calamitatum. Quod adeo ægre tulit Alexander, ut Lysimachum leoni objici juberet. Sed quum leo impetum fecisset in eum, Lysimachus manum amiculo involutam in os leonis immersit, arreptâque linguâ feram exanimavit. Quod quum nuntiatum regi esset, admiratio iræ successit, carioremque habuit propter tantam constantiam.

## 21.

*Animus generosus Fabricii.*

Pyrrhi bello maximum exemplum est justitiæ in hostem a Romanis constitutum. Quum enim rex Pyrrhus populo Romano bellum ultro intulisset, quumque de imperio certamen esset cum rege generoso ac potente; perfûga ab eo venit in castra Fabricii, eique est pollicitus, si præmium sibi proposuisset, se, ut clam venisset, sic clam in Pyrrhi castra rediturum, et eum veneno necaturum. Hunc Fabricius reducendum curavit ad Pyrrhum; idque factum ejus a senatu laudatum est.

## 22.

*Piso Orator et Servus.*

Marcus Piso, orator Romanus, servis præceperat, ut tantum ad interrogata responderent, nec quidquam præterea dicerent. Evēnit, ut Clodium, qui tunc magistratum gerebat, ad cœnam invitari juberet. Hora cœnæ instabat; aderant ceteri convivæ omnes, solus Clodius expectabatur. Piso servum, qui solebat convivas vocare, aliquoties emisit, ut videret, an veniret. Quum denique jam desperaretur

ejus adventus, Piso servo : Dic, inquit, num forte non invitavisti Clodium ? Invitavi, respondit ille.—Cur ergo non venit ?—Quia venturum se negavit. Tum Piso : Cur id non statim dixisti ? Respondit servus : Quia de eo non sum a te interrogatus.

## 23.

*Demosthenes.*

Demosthenes causam orans quum judices parum attentos videret : Paullisper, inquit, aures mihi præbete ; rem vobis novam et jucundam narrabo. Quum aures arrexissent : Juvenis, inquit, quispiam asinum conduxerat, quo Athenis Megaram profecturus uteretur. In itinere quum sol ureret, neque esset umbraculum, deposuit clitellas, et sub asino consedit, ut ejus umbrâ tegeretur. Id vero agâso vetabat, clamans, asinum locatum esse, non umbram asini. Alter quum e diverso contenderet, tandem in jus ambulat. Hæc loquutus Demosthenes, ubi homines diligenter auscultantes vidit, abiit. Tum revocatus a judicibus, rogatusque ut reliquam fabulam enarraret : Quid ? inquit, de asini umbrâ libet audire ? causam hominis de vitâ periclitantis non audietis ?

## 24.

*Scipio Nasica.*

Scipio Nasica quum ad poëtam Ennium venisset, eique, ab ostio quærenti Ennium, ancilla dixisset, domi non esse : Nasica sensit, illam domini jussu dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diebus quum ad Nasicam venisset Ennius, et quum a januâ quæreret, exclamat Nasica, se domi non esse. Tum Ennius : Quid, inquit, ego non cognosco vocem tuam ? Hic Nasica : Homo es impudens ; ego quum quærerem, ancillæ tuæ credidi, te domi non esse ; tu mihi non credis ipsi.

## 25.

*Hannibal exsul.*

Hannibal exsul ad Antiochum, Syriæ regem, venit. Rex illi in campo ingentes ostendit copias, quas bellum cum

Romanis gesturus comparaverat; exercitum auro et argēto fulgentem, equitatum frenis, ephippiis, phalēris splendentem, elephantos denique cum turribus. Tum contemplatione tanti et tam ornati exercitūs gloriabundus Hannibalem adspicit, et: Putasne, inquit, satis esse Romanis hæc omnia? Intelligebat numerum exercitus, quærens, num sufficeret bello Romano. At Hannibal elūdens ignaviam militum pretiose armatorum: Satis plane, inquit, esse credo Romanis hæc omnia, etiamsi avarissimi sint.—Rex de numero quæsierat, respondit Hannibal de prædâ.

## 26.

*Epaminondas.*

Epaminondas, dux Thebanorum, quum vicisset Lacedæmonios apud Mantinēam, simulque ipse gravi vulnere exanimari se videret, ut primum dispexit, quæsivit, salvusne esset clipeus? Quum salvum esse flentes sui respondissent: rogavit, essentne fusi hostes? Quumque id quoque, ut cupiebat, audivisset, evelli jussit eam, quâ erat transfixus, hastam. Ita multo sanguine profuso, in lætitiâ et victoriâ est mortuus.

## 27.

*Socrates et Xenophon.*

Xenophontem in angiportu obviam habuit Socrates. Quumque videret adolescentem vultu specioso admōdum et verecundo, porrecto bacūlo vetuit, ne præteriret. Ut constitit, interrogavit eum Socrates, ubinam venderentur, quæ essent necessaria variis usibus civium? Ad quæ quum expedite respondisset Xenophon, percontatus est, ubinam boni ac probi homines fierent? Id vero nescire se, quum respondisset adolescens: Sequere igitur me, inquit Socrates, et disce. Ex eo tempore Xenophon cœpit esse Socratis auditor, et bonus probusque factus est.

## IV. VOCABULARIES

ON

### THE EXERCISES.

---

Numerals refer to Principles of Word-building, p. 174.

---

#### VOCABULARY TO EXERCISE 7.

*Word-building.*]—A field-tiller, from *ager*, root *agr-*, *field*, and *colo*, *till* (*agr-i-cōl-a*, G. *æ*, *husbandman*). To choose apart, from *lego*, *choose* (*diligo*, *lex*, *lect*, to *love* with preference). To take-to, from *capio*, *capere* (*ac-cipio*, *ac-cipere*, *cēp*, *cept* : *receive*). Form a stronger verb from *nare* to *swim* (*nātare*, from root of *supine*, 34). To take-before, from *capere* (*præ-cipere*, *cēp*, *cept* : to *direct* or *instruct* a person to do something).<sup>1</sup> A precept (*præceptum*). A preceptor or teacher (*præceptor*, 41). To make an ornament, from *dēcōr*, root of *decus*, *ornament* (*dēcōrare*, *adorn*). To climb-down, from *scandere* (*descendere*, *scend*, *scens*, *descend*). Descent (*descens-us*. Of what *declens*.? 44). Abounding in money, from *pecunia*, *money* (*pecuniosus*, *moneyed*, 102).

*Hodie* (= *hoc die*,) *to-day*. *Pensum*, *task* (properly that which is weighed out; from *pendere*, to weigh).

#### VOCABULARY TO 8.

*Word-building.*]—From *hortus*, *garden*, form *little-garden* (*hort-ūlus*, 66). From *flōr-*, root of *flos*, *flower*, form to flow-

<sup>1</sup> Perhaps because he who gives directions must have first taken, that is, understood them, himself. *Capere*, to take, is often used in the sense of understanding, of taking in the whole of a notion :—'Quod mentes eorum capere possent.' Liv. ix. 9.



er (flor-ēre, blossom, flourish, 39). Form to begin to blossom or flourish (florescere, come into flower, 36). Form abounding in mores; that is, in peculiar manners or humors (mōr-ōsus, 102, morose, peevish, ill-humored). From emēre, to buy, form buying or purchase (emptio, 43)—buyer (emptor). Form to-take-into from capere (incipere, cēp, cept: to take in hand, to begin). A thing begun, an undertaking (inceptum). To fight-out, from pugnare, to fight (expugnare: to take a city, to win-by-arms). The taking of a city (expugnatio).

## VOCABULARY TO 9.

*Word-building.*]—I. From tegere, cover, form that which is covered (tectum: roof, house). To make an end: to finish, from fin- (fīnire). To act as a guard, from custōd, root of custos, keeper, guard (custodire, to guard).

Sacramentum,<sup>1</sup> the military-oath by which a soldier bound himself.

II. From superbus, proud, form to be proud; to act proudly (superbire). Form a strengthened verb from cant, supine root of canere, to sing, (cantare, to sing). An inhabitant of Tarentum; a Tarentine (Tarentīnus). From vastus, waste, form to make waste; to lay waste (vastare).

## VOCABULARY TO 10.

*Word-building.*]—I. Form an intensive from cīt, supine root of ciēre (cītare, to set in violent motion, 34). To set in motion again; call forth again (recītare; recite, to call forth, as it were, a dead writing to new activity or life). To call-forth-into activity (ex-citare,<sup>2</sup> excite, awake). Form a trans. verb from cura, care (curare, 33, take-care-of). Form an intensive from spect, supine root of spicere, to look (spectare, look, 34). To look-out, (expectare, expect, wait for). To come-to, approach (advenire). Approach (adventus, 44). A trans. verb from nuntius, news (nuntiare, to announce). A subst. from supine root of equitare, to ride (equitatus, riding, cavalry).

<sup>1</sup> Sacer, devoted to the gods, whether as sacred, or as accursed: hence sacrare, to make sacred, or to make accursed: sacramentum, that which makes a man accursed, if he violates it.

<sup>2</sup> Spem excitare is to raise a hope.

Nuncupare (*probably from nomine capere*) is used of solemnly and formally pronouncing a man's name, for instance in naming a man one's heir, &c.

## VOCABULARY TO 11.

*Word-building.*—I. To make sound, *from sanus* (sanare, to cure). Reading; perusal, *from lect*, *supine root of legere* (lectio, 43). *From quærere*, seek, *form to seek-to* (acquirere, quisiv, quisit: seek to myself, gain, earn, &c.).

[Voc. on some Verbs that form their perf. in *i*.]

To help-to (ad-jũvare, to assist). To move-to (admõvẽre). To see-into (in-vidẽre, envy). To come to (advẽnire). To come-upon (in-venire; to find, invent: of things not sought). To drink-out; drink-up (ebĩbẽre, 11). To eat-up (com-ẽdẽre, 7). To do-thoroughly (per-fĩcẽre, fẽc, fect, perform, complete, 16). To give or put to (ad-dẽre, addidi, additum, add). To give or put round (circum-dãre, dẽdi, dãtum, surround). To stand-before (prã-stãre, prã-stĩti, prã-stãtum, to be better, excel,—perform.—prãstare se, show or prove oneself). To promise-back (re-spondẽre, re-spondi, sponsum: generally to answer). To learn thoroughly (ediscere, learn by heart). To touch-to (attingere, tĩgi, tactum, reach).

¶ OBS. Oc-cĩdo, occĩdi, oc-cãsum, fall, perish—set = (ob-cãdo).

Oc-cĩdo, oc-cĩdi, oc-cĩsum, slay = (ob-cãdo).

## VOCABULARY TO 12.

*Word-building.*—I. Abstract subst. *from diligens* (diligentia, 61). Adv. *from sup. root of stare* (stat-im, 123, *immediately: that is, while you are standing where you are*<sup>1</sup>) Act-of-going-within; passage into; entrance (intro-ĩtus 44). To come-thoroughly (per-vẽnire, arrive at). To sit against (ob-sĩdẽre, sẽd, sess, besiege). To-hither, hither-to (ad-huc). Bravely, courageously, *from fortis* (fortiter, 121).

<sup>1</sup> So the Germans use *stehenden Fusses* (on standing foot) for *immediately*.

[Go through the degrees of comparison of fortiter (fortius, fortissime).]

II. Exercise *from* exercit, *sup. root of* exercēre (exercitus, *that which is exercised; army*). To climb-to, *from* scandere (ad-scendere: scend, scens). Ascent (ad-scensus, 44). One who says-law (jū-dex *for* jus-dex, 129). Judgment (ju-dicium, 137). To set-loose-from: free-from (ab-solvere; solv, solūt: *acquit*). Acquittal (ab-solūt-io, 43). To do-completely (con-ficere, fēc, fect: *put-an-end-to; accomplish*).

#### VOCABULARY TO 13.

*Word-building.*]—I. *Abst. subst. from* multus (mult-i-tūdo, 63). Commander, *from* imperare (imperator, *commander-in-chief*).<sup>1</sup> One who feeds, *from* past, *sup. root of* pascere (pastor). To cause flight, *from* fūga (fugare, *put-to-flight; rout*). A little needle, *from* acus (aculeus: *thorn*, 66). Un-certain (in-certus).

Ater, *black: atrare, to make black: atramentum, that which makes black; or, is made black; ink.*

#### [Vocabulary on Verbs forming their perfect in *si*.]

To write-down (de-scribere: *copy, describe*). To pluck-from (de-cerpere, cerps, cerpt: *pluck, gather*). To take-completely (con-sūmere, *consume, waste*). To wait-behind (re-mānere). To fore-tell (præ-dicere). To lead out (e-dūcere). To look-to (ad-spicere, spex, spect: *behold*). To fix-through (trans-figere, *transfix*). To rule- or direct-out (e-rigere, rex, rect: *erect*). To un-cover; discover (de-tēgere). To shut-back; unshut (re-cludere, clūs, clus: *open*). To sprinkle-to (ad-spergere, spers, spers: *sprinkle*). To yield-back (re-cēdere, *retire, withdraw*). To press-against (op-prīmere, press, press: *oppress; fall-upon* an enemy unexpectedly with a *crushing* force). To burn-completely (com-būr-ēre,<sup>2</sup> 7). To shake-thoroughly, *from* quatio (con-cūtēre, concutio, cuss, cuss, *to shake*).

<sup>1</sup> Given as a title to a *victorious* Roman general.

<sup>2</sup> The *b* belongs to the original root, as appears from our *burn*.

## VOCABULARY TO 14.

*Word-building.*]—I. To bestow in different directions, *from* tribuere (dis-tribuere). An Athenian, *from* Athēnā (Athēniensis, 94).

Pro-vinc-ia, *province*—a country gained by *onward conquest*: pro, vincere.

II. To go-out (exire, ex-eo). A good-deed, benefit (beneficium, 139). To bind-down (de-vincire, *oblige*: bind a man by services rendered him). That which is dug out; trench, *from* foss, *sup. root* of fodere (foss-a).<sup>1</sup> Act or state of knowing; thing known, *from* nōt, *sup. root* of noscere (nōtio, *notion*).

## VOCABULARY TO 15.

*Word-building.*]—I. To go against or into (in-vādēre). Carthaginian, *from* Carthago (Carthaginiensis, 94). One who is in the state of having been taken (capt-ivus, 115, *captive*). Manliness, *from* vir (virtūs, 65: *courage, excellence, virtue*). Blandishment, *from* blandire, *verb* from blandus (blandimentum, 49). Body of citizens; state, *from* cīvis (cīvitas, 69). One who takes-first, *from* primus and capere (prin-ceps, 130; *prince, chief*: also as *adject. first*). *Subst. from* princeps, *to express the thing* (principium, *beginning*, 138). *Abst. subst. from* inops<sup>2</sup> (inopia, 61, *want of resources; want; destitution*). Muddy, *from* lutum, *mud* (lut-u-lentus, 103). To draw-together, (contrahere). Remains, *from* reliquus, *left* (reliquiæ). Inhabitant-of-a-town, *from* oppidum (oppidanus, 96).

¶ (1) Sta-gnum (that *which is of a standing nature*; sta-gñ-um. See 135, and note), *pool, pond*.

(2) Căcūmen [= acū-men, *from* acuere, *to sharpen* (see 48), with prefixed *c*], a *sharp, pointed summit*: *top of trees, &c.*

(3) Legatus (*past part. from* legare, *to delegate*), (1) *an ambassador*, (2) *a lieutenant-general*.

II. One who belongs or is subject to death (mort-ālis,

<sup>1</sup> Properly fem. partic. agreeing with terra.

<sup>2</sup> Derivation of inops? [in not; opes resources.]



90). Emptiness, vanity, *from* vanus (vanitas, 60). Bitterness, *from* acerbus, *bitter* (acerbitas). That which is enjoyed, *from* fruct, *sup. root of* fruor (fruct-us, 44: *produce, fruit, especially of trees*). To bend-inwards (in-flectere, *bend-down; bend*). To shine-back; *or* shine much (re-fulgēre, *shine*). Conspiracy, *from* con-jurare, *to-swear-together* (con-juratio).<sup>1</sup> Relating to Catiline<sup>2</sup> (Catilin-arius; *Catilinarian, or Catiline's, gen.*). Change, *from* mutare *to change* (mutatio). To flow-together (con-fluere). To send-together (com-mittere).

Committere prœlium (to send the battle together —followed by *cum*) may be variously rendered: to *join battle with: to engage; to commence the engagement; to give battle (to), &c.*

Jug-um (that which *joins or is joined, from jug, simpler root of jungere*) (1) *yoke, (2) range, i. e. connected line, a chain (of hills, &c.)*

[Vocab. on some Verbs with perf. *ui* and *vi*.]

*Compound of ad and tonare (at-tonare: part. attonitus, thunder-struck; astounded). To be very-silent, from tacere (re-ticēre, to be silent about; say nothing-about).*<sup>3</sup> To hold-back (re-tinēre; also *retain*). To snatch out of (eripere, rīpi, reptum).

#### VOCABULARY TO 16.

*Word-building.*]—I. *From what does cubile, bed, couch, come? (cub-are, to lie down.) Form an abstr. substantive from milit, root of miles, soldier (militia, 61; miles being an adjective-substantive). Uncultivated, from cultus, part. of colo (in-cultus, rude, uncivilized). Draw-forth; draw-out (pro-dūcere). Stroke, from ict, sup. root of icere, to-strike (ictus, 44).*

*Illustris (in-luc-stris, dwelling-in-light, 112), illustrious. Lacunar, a panelled ceiling,<sup>4</sup> usually gilt: from lacuna, a hole, from its sunk panels.*

<sup>1</sup> Derivation of con-spiracy? [Con-spirare, to breathe together.]

<sup>2</sup> Catiline was a profligate Roman nobleman.

<sup>3</sup> To hold one's tongue, *when one has something to say, D.* The re- may perhaps indicate that the speaking would have been in *reply* to some conduct, charge, &c., of another person.

<sup>4</sup> Or a fret-work roof.

II. *Abstr. subst. from libet* (lib-īdo, 46, lust). To sound-back-again (re-sonare, *resound*). Clamor; shouts, *from clamare* (clam-or, 42). Boyish, *from puer* (puerilis, 89). Joy; gladness, *from lætus* (lætitia, 62). Blame, *subst. from reprehens, sup. root of reprehendere* (reprehensio). To make a present, *from don-um* (donare, *to present*). Fearful; timorous, *from pav-ēre* (pav-idus, 82). One who has fled-across, *from trans and fugere* (trans-fūga, 58: *deserter*).

On high, *in sublime, or sublime only*.<sup>1</sup>

#### VOCABULARY TO 17.

*Word-building.*]—*Subst. from audāc, root of audax, bold, daring* (audacia, *boldness, daringness, courage*). Immortality, *from mortalis* (im-mortalitas). Prudence, *from the adj. prudens* (prudentia). That which is paid, *neut. partic. from tribuere* (tributum: *tribute*). To place-on: *impose* (im-ponere). *Adj. from Cannæ* (Cannensis, 94). Of gold; golden, *from aurum* (aureus, 98). To have-often, *from habere* (habit-are, 35: *hence to occupy regularly: to dwell in*). Consolation, *from solāt, root of solari* (solatium, 56). To give-forth (pro-mittere: *hence to promise*). *Verbal subst. from in, against, and petere, to seek, aim at, &c.* (impētus; which is singular in not being formed from the root of the *supine*: it is of the fourth).

Jūmentum (for *jug-mentum*,<sup>2</sup> an animal that is yoked), *a beast of burden*.

Viam terere, *to wear a road: to travel it often*.

II. A contest, *from certare*<sup>3</sup> (certamen, 48). Age, *from vetus* (vetustas, 60). To move-from, *from cedere* (decēdēre).

Sermo (related to *serere, to connect*), *discourse*.

#### VOCABULARY TO 18.

*Word-building.*]—I. To grow-down (de-crescere, *decrease: of the moon, to wane*). To burst-forth, (prorumpere). Youth, *as abstr. subst. from juvenis* (juven-tūs, tūtis, 65).

<sup>1</sup> Cicero always used *sublime* without *in*.

<sup>2</sup> Or possibly for *juva-mentum* or *jut-mentum, a help*; an animal used by man to assist him in his labors. The derivation from *jugum* is the more probable one.

<sup>3</sup> Certare is properly *to make sure, from certus*; a contest being for the settling of some disputed point.

Old-age, *from* senex (senectūs,<sup>1</sup> tūtis). *To leave-from* (delinquere, *to sin, transgress. Hence, delictum, a sin; a transgression*). The office of Consul (Consulatus, G. us; 68: *consulship*).

II. To grow cool, *from* ferverescere, *to grow hot* (de-fervescere, ferbui and fervi). Without care (secūrus, 23). *Abstr. subst. from* concors (concordia; *concord, harmony*). To place-back, *from* statuere (restituere, stitu, stitūt, *restore*). Long, *as adj. from* diu, *for a long time* (diuturnus, 117). To burst-completely (cor-rumpere, 7: *corrupt*). To drive-under, *from* agere (sub-igere, *subdue*). Wickedness, *from the anomalous adj.* nequam, *wicked* (nequitia). To give-away (de-dere; dedere se, *to give oneself up to, &c.: to surrender*).

Quantopere (quanto opere: *with how much work*), *how much*. Securus ago, *I live in security* (vitam, *life, understood*). Neg-otium (nec-otium, *not leisure*), *business, affair*.

#### VOCABULARY TO 19.

*Word-building.*]—I. Writer, *from* scribere (scriptor, *author*). Writing (scriptum, *neut. partic.*). To stand-out (ex-stare, -stiti, *to be extant*). *Abstr. substantive from* elegans (elegantia). To yield-thoroughly (concedere). Truly, *from* verus, *true* (verē). That which is sharpened; point, *from* acuere (acūmen, 48: *sharpness, acuteness*). *Abstr. substantives from* utilis, innocens (utilitas, *utility, usefulness, use: innocentia, innocence*). To show-from (de-monstrare: *to show, to prove*). *Adj. from* domus, *home* (domesticus, *domestic, private*). Relating to a family (familiaris). Joking, *from* jocari (jocabundus, 80). *Abstr. substantives from* gravis and sevērus (gravitas, *gravity; severitas, seriousness*). To place-together (componere, *arrange, adjust*). Oratorical (oratorius). To dis-connect, *from* serere, *to join* (dis-serere, *to discuss: the object of a discussion being to separate a thing from what it was mixed and confounded with*). To place-before (pro-ponere). To establish-in (instituere, stitu, stitūt: *to institute; to train*). *Abstr. subst. from* or-iri, *to arise* (orīgo, 47, *origin*). To draw-down (de-ducere, *to con-*

<sup>1</sup> Which seems to show that the gen. was originally senec-is.



*tinue* in unbroken order to a lower point; *continue*). Relating to citizens, *from* *civis* (*civilis*, 89: *civil*). To cast-under, *from* *jacere* (*sub-jicere*, *jec*, *ject*). To conquer-down (*de-vincere*, *conquer*). To become illustrious, *from* *clarus* (*claresco*; *inclaresco*; *-clarui*, *become famous*).

*Res gestæ*, affairs carried on; *exploits*, *achievements*, *successes*.

*Modo—modo*, *at one time—at another*: or *now—now*.

*Ad—usque*, *quite up to*: *up to*; or *down to*.<sup>1</sup>

II. To become known, *from* *nōt*, *sup. root of nosco* (*notesco*; *in-notesco*, *notui*). To commission-together, i. e. to bring together by a charge given to each, *from* *mandare*<sup>2</sup> (*com-mendare*, *to recommend*; *to introduce* by a commendatory letter, &c.) To touch-together, *from* *tangere* (*contingere*, *-tīgi*, as *intrans. to fall-to-the-lot-of*).<sup>3</sup> A turning, *from* *vertere* (*versus*, *a verse*).<sup>4</sup> To knock against, *from* the old verb *fendere*, (*offendere*, *offend*). Fertility, *from* *uber*, *fertile* (*ubertas*, 60).

#### VOCABULARY TO 20.

*Word-building.*]—I. To come-forth (*pro-venire*, *to grow*). To enlighten-completely, *from* *lustrare* (*collustrare*). To send-down (*de-mittere*). To-strengthen-thoroughly, *from* *firmare* (*con-firmare*).

II. A little-brother (*fraterculus*, 66). To make free, *from* *liber* (*liberare*). *Form* proudly, *from* *superbus*, *proud* (*superbē*):—unjustly, *from* *in-justus* (*in-justē*):—bitterly, *from* *acerbus*, *bitter* (*acerbē*). *Form an intensive from* *tract*, *sup. root of trahere* (*tractare*, *to treat*). To despise-completely, *from* *temnere* (*contemnere*, *temps*, *tempt*). Asking, question, *from* *interrogare* (*interrogatio*).

By sea and land, *terrâ marique*.

To wrong a man, or do a wrong-to, *aliquem injuriâ afficere*.

Unless I am deceived, *nisi animus me fallit*.

<sup>1</sup> Derivation of *publicus*? [*populicus*, *pop'licus*.]

<sup>2</sup> If *mando* = *manui do*, *commendare* is to bring together, by putting one in the other's hands.

<sup>3</sup> See *Syn.* 4.

<sup>4</sup> This alludes to the old way of *turning back* at the end of a line, and writing the opposite way.



## VOCABULARY TO 21.

*Word-building.*]—I. *Form abstr. subst. from super-stit, root of superstes*<sup>1</sup> (super-stitio). To have- a thing -forth, *that is* away from, *from* habere (prohibēre, hibu, hibīt; to ward-off, prevent). Knowledge; *from* cognit, *sup. root of cognoscere* (cognitio). Piety, *from* pius (pietas, 60). Not to know, *from* scire (ne-scire). To be-waiting-on, or against, *from* manere (imminēre). It stands-before (præstat, *it is better*). Not friendly, *from* amīcus (in-imīcus, hostile: as subst. enemy). Believable, *from* credere (credibilis, credible). Incredible (incredibilis).

Prorsus (pro-versus, *for-wards*), *thoroughly, quite*.  
 Utinam<sup>2</sup> (uti-nam) *would that* (with subj.).

II. It falls-to, *from* cadere (accīdit, *it happens, it happened*). To drive-into (impellere; pūl, puls: *impel*). To give-forth (pro-dere, didi, ditum, *betray*). To cultivate thoroughly (ex-colēre, *cultivate*). To come-together (convēnire, *trans. to visit*). Verb of the first conjug. *from* vigil, *awake* (vigilare, *to be awake; to watch*). Cruelly, *from* crudelis (crudeliter).<sup>3</sup> From-thence (de-inde, *thenceforth; then*). To-thither (ad-eo, *so*). Knowledge, *from* sciens, *knowing* (scientia: conscientia; *consciousness, conscience*).

## VOCABULARY TO 22.

*Word-building.*]—I. Strong, *from* robur, *strength* (robustus, 109). To give or put together (condere, didi, ditum, (1) *to hide*, (2) *to found*). To speak-against (contradicere, *contradict*). To make-forward (pro-ficere, fēc, fect, *to make progress*).

Quo-mōdo (in what manner), *how*.

Iterum, a second time; once more; again.

Nihil curare, not to care *at all*.

Succensere, *to be angry*, does not come from *censeo*, but from *succensus*, kindled, *part. of succendere*: just as *denseo*, from *densus*.

<sup>1</sup> *Superstes* was perhaps used absolutely, as *superstes sui*, one who has survived himself: hence *superstitio* expresses the *childish weakness* of such a person.

<sup>2</sup> *Uti* is 'that,' and *nam* is a strengthening affix, added to many interrogatives, &c. Hence *utinam* is properly, 'that it were so!' 'Oh that it were so!'

<sup>3</sup> Give the degrees of comparison of *crudeliter* [*crudelius, crudelissime.*]

II. To run-against (*oc-currere, to meet*). To come-to (*ad-venire*). To be wondered-at; *from mirari (mirabilis.)*

How short, *quam brevis, -e.*

*Negligere (= nec legere, not to pick up), to neglect; disregard.*

*Insidiæ (in-sedēre), a sitting down against a man; a plot, &c.*

*Insidias struere, to waylay, plot against, &c.*

#### VOCABULARY TO 23.

*Word-building.*]—I. Relating to Marius; Marius's (*Marianus*). One who is opposite, *from adversus (adversarius)*. To act as a minister (*ministrare: administrare, to administer*). Worth, *from dignus, worthy (dignitas, dignity)*. To hold-against, i. e. *against other claimants or opponents (obtinēre, obtain)*. To establish-completely, *from statuere (constituere, stitu, stitūt; resolve, determine)*. Envy, *from invīdēre, to see into or against (invidia)*. That which is enjoyed, *from fruct, sup. root of frui (fructus, profit, advantage)*. To press-in, *from premere (im-primere, impress)*. To receive-thoroughly (*per-cipere, cep, cept, to receive*).

*Per-pet-uus, perpetual: from per and petere (in the meaning of to aim at; to endeavor, to arrive at,) that which is (throughout =) ever endeavoring to arrive at some object.*

II. To take-away-quite,<sup>1</sup> *from emere, to take (per-imere, ēm, empt: to carry off, spoken of diseases, &c.)* To make-thoroughly (*efficere, fēc, fect: bring to pass; cause*). Abounding in leisure, *from otium (otiosus)*. To hold-together, *from tenēre (contīnēre, keep, detain)*.

To speak the truth, *verum dicere*.

*Voluntas (volo, am willing), will.*

*Re-cūsare (re-caus-are), to give causes or excuses against: to refuse.*

#### VOCABULARY TO 24.

*Word-building.*]—I. *Form an intensive from occult, sup. root of oculere, to hide (occultare, to hide)*. To take-from

<sup>1</sup> Or *per* has here a *depravative* meaning: to take away prematurely, by bad means, &c.

(de-cipere, io, cēp, cept, *deceive*). *Abstr. subst. from pot-, root of the obsolete potis, able (potestas, power)*. To send-away (a-mittere, *to lose*). Freedom, *from liber, free (libertas)*. To fall-into, *from cadere (in-cidere, cīd)*. To throw-across (trā-jicere, jēc, ject: *to cross—army being understood*). To fly-away (au-fugere, io.) Otherwise, *from ali, root of alius (aliter)*.

Re-cuperare, *related to cap-ere, recover*.

II. Very-narrow, *by adding a prefix to angustus (per-angustus)*. To choose-out, *from legere (e-ligere, lēg, lect)*. To go-out, i. e. *out of the way of (e-vadere, vās, vās)*.

Ef-fig-ies (*ex and fig, shorter root of fingere, to fashion, a likeness; a statue*).

#### VOCABULARY TO 25.

*Word-building.*]—I. To have-to (ad-hibere, ui, ĩtum; *use, employ*). Sorrow, *from mœrere (mœror, 42)*. Repentance, *from pœnitens (pœnitentia)*. *Adv. from vehemens (vehementer, violently, earnestly)*. *Give its degrees of comparison (vehementius, vehementissime)*. Madness, rage, *from furere (furor, 42)*. To excite-completely, *from cīt, sup. root of ciere (con-cītare: to excite, rouse)*. To hold-from (abs-tinere, *abstain from*). Not easy, difficult, *from facilis (dif-ficilis, 10)*. To judge, *from judic, root of judex (judicare, to judge)*. A sin, *neut. part. from peccare (peccatum)*.

Cautus, *cautious; from caut, sup. root of cavere, to beware*.

E-mend-are (e, mendum, *blemish, fault*), *to remove a fault*. Emendatissimus *most nearly faultless*.

Quam-vis (*how-you-please: vis, 2d sing. from volo*), *however; however much; although*.

Tan-quam (tam-quam, *so—as*), *as if*.

II. Valuable, *from pretium (pretiosus, precious)*. Beauty, *from pulchr- (pulchr-itūdo)*. Bountifulness, goodness, *from benignus (benignitas)*. Clemency, mercy, *from clemens (clementia)*. To stand-through (per-stare, stīt, stat: *persist*). To do-enough (satis-facere, *satisfy*). *Adv. from facilis (facilē)*.

Quidni? (quid-ni, *what unless?*) *why not? why should we not?*

Quamquam (quam-quam), *although.*

#### VOCABULARY TO 26.

*Word-building.*]—I. To bridle, *from* frenum, *bridle* (frenare). Bridled-out, i. e. having the bridle let loose (ef-frenatus: *unbridled*). Passionateness, *from* iracundus, *passionate* (iracundia: *anger*, as a *temper* of which *ira* is one outbreak). Relating to Varius; of Varius (Varianus). To cry-out (ex-clamare). Lightness, frivolity, *from* lēvis, *light* (levitas). Hungry, *from* fames, *hunger* (famēlicus, *starving*). To allot-back, to give-back (re-tribuere). To stretch-on (in-tendere, tend, tens: *exert*).

Centurio (centum, *a hundred*), an officer over 100 men: *a centurion.*

Aciem instruere, *to draw up in line of battle.*

Retribuere gratiam (*to return gratitude*), *to recompense.*

II. To begin to be completely well, *from* valere (convalescere, 36). One-who-wishes-well (bene-vōlus, *benevolent, beneficent*). *Abstr. subst. from* benevolus (*benevolentia, as if from bene-volens*). *Abstr. subst. from* honestus (*honestas, good-conduct*). Suddenly, *from* sūbitus (*subito*).

Quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

#### VOCABULARY TO 27.

*Word-building.*]—I. Dwelling in heaven, heavenly, *from* cælum (cælestis, 110). Relating to man, human, *from* hom-o (humanus). Not-pious, impious (impius). To learn-to (ad-discere, *to learn something additional.*)

Invicem (in vicem), *mutually; to be rendered 'one another.'*

II. Cultivation, *from* cult, *sup. root of* colere (cultūra). One who dwells-in, *from* colere (in-cōla, *inhabitant*).

Æque ac, (*equally and =*) *equally as; just as; as much as; as.*

Colonus (*from* colere), *farmer.*



## VOCABULARY TO 28.

*Word-building.*]—I. To grow-ripe, to ripen, *from* *maturus* (*maturescere*). That which nourishes, *from* *nutrire* (*nutrimentum, nourishment*). Cultivator, *from sup. root of colere* (*cult-or*). Strong, *from val-ēre* (*validus, 104*). Compassion, *from misericors* (*misericordia*). Inconsiderateness, *from considerans, partic. of considerare* (*in-considerantia*). Not-never (*non-nunquam, sometimes*). To come around (*circum-venire, circumvent*). *Adv. from segnis* (*segniter*). To restrain-together, *from arcēre* (*co-ercēre*). To make-crowded, *from frequent, root of frequens* (*frequentare, to frequent*).

*Illecēbra* (*il-licēre, entice*), *enticement, allurement*.

*Auctumnus* (*from auct, sup. root of aug-ēre, to increase*), *Autumn*.<sup>1</sup>

II. To cover-about (*ob-tegere, to cover*). *Adv. from lætus* (*lætē*). To blossom-forth (*ef-florescere, put forth their blossoms*). To make-ripe or ripen, *from maturus* (*maturare*). To devour-down (*de-vorare, consume*). Difficulty (*difficultas*). To snatch-away, *from rapere* (*ab-ripere*).

## VOCABULARY TO 29.

*Word-building.*]—I. To take-back (*re-cip-ere, cēp, cept, recover*).

*From statuere, to place, establish, form compounds with in, con* (*instituere; constituere*).

*Re-med-ium* (*re and med, root of mederi, to heal*), *remedy*

II. To hold-a-different-way-from (*distinēre, withhold, prevent*). To leave-behind (*re-liquēre, liqu, lict*). To make-common, *from vulg-us* (*vulg-are*). To make common in different directions (*di-vulgare, divulge*). To do-to (*afficēre, fec, fect*). *Form intensive from vent, sup. root of venire* (*ventare: ad-ventare, to be approaching*). To pray-out (*ex-orare, to prevail upon by prayers*).

<sup>1</sup> NOTE. The names of the months are *adjectives*: hence 'in the month of January,' *mense Januario*.

To hold-up (*sus-tinēre, sustain*).

*Form intensive from sup. root of jacēre (jactare).*

To draw up an army in order of battle, *aciem instruere (strux, struct)*.

As quickly as possible, *quam celerrime*.

#### VOCABULARY TO 30.

*Word-building.*]—I. To go-back (*red-ire; red-eo: return*). To make obscure, *from obscurus (obscurare)*. To lead-to (*ad-dūcere*). To send-back (*re-mittere, remit*). To cast-back, *from jacēre (re-jicere, reject)*. To choose-apart (*di-ligere, lēg, lect, to love, i. e. with preference*). Very-illustrious, *from clarus (præ-clarus, 18)*.

*Im-bēcillis (in, upon; bacillum, staff, stick), weak.*

*Su-spicio (a looking under, to see if any thing is concealed; or, a looking secretly), suspicion.*

II. To be very earnest, *from per-sevērus (perseverare, intrans. to persist, persevere)*. Born-together (*co-gnatus,<sup>1</sup> related; as subst. relation*). To dis-connect, *from sērere (de-serere, -rui, -rtum, desert)*. To place-behind (*post-ponere, posu, posit*). To laugh-down (*deridēre, rīs, rīs, deride*). To lead-away (*de-ducere*). To remain-through-out (*per-manēre, mans: continue*). To fight-against (*impugnare*). Diligently, *from diligens (diligenter)*. Standing, *from stare (statio, military post).*<sup>2</sup> To place in different directions (*disponere, arrange, dispose*). To cast back (*re-jicere, io: of an enemy, drive back*).

*Lābefactare (labare, facere), to make to totter.*

#### VOCABULARY TO 31.

*Word-building.*]—I. Abounding in fables (*fabulosus, fabulous*). Having much of fair appearance, *from species (speci-osus, specious, plausible)*. To give completely (*con-donare, to pardon, to grant*). Deceitful, *from fallere (fallax, 85)*. To give-across, *from dare (trā-dere, did, dit: to deliver)*. To weave-together (*con-texere, -xui, -xtum, in-*

<sup>1</sup> *Gnatus*, part. of *gnascor*, the older form of *nascor: gnascor = genascor: with root gen*, as in *γένος, γεννάω, &c.*

<sup>2</sup> 'Guards' may be translated by *stationes*.

*terweave*). *Abstr. subst. from pravus (prāvitas)*. To do in (*in-ficere, to stain*). Injustice, *from in-justus (in-justitia)*.

De-lir-are (*lira, a furrow*), *to go out of the furrow: hence to be foolish, crazy, &c.*

Prorsus (*pro-versus, for-wards*), *entirely, quite.*

Quam primum, *as soon as possible.*

II. Custom, *from consuet, sup. root of con-suescere (con-suetudo)*. Exercising; exercise, *from exercitare, intensive from exercēre (exercitatio)*. To strengthen-completely, *from robor, root of robur, strength (cor-roborare)*. Liberality, *from liberalis (liberalitas)*. To move-completely (*com-mōvēre*). To strike-to (*af-fligere, flix, flict*). To make a heap, *from cumulus (cumulare)*. To press-against, *from prēmere (op-primere, press, oppress)*. To make a number, to count, *from numerus (numerare)*. To reckon-to (*ad-numerare, to reckon-amongst*).

#### VOCABULARY TO 32.

*Word-building.*]—I. To make a race, *from gener, root of genus (generare, to beget)*. Severity, gravity, *from sevērus (severitas)*. Dwelling on the earth (*terrestris*). To join-apart (*sejungere, separate*). To make an end, *from terminus (terminare, end, terminate)*.

Rē-fert = *rei, fert, i. e. ad rem fert*; it bears to the matter, *is of importance, &c.*

Inter-est, *it is between*; so, that is, as to make a difference: *it matters, concerns, is of importance.*

II. To make firm (*firmare*). To take back, *from prehendere, to seize hold of (re-prehendere, blame)*.

¶ *Guards* in this exercise is to be translated by *excubiæ*; *force* by *præsidium*.

Excubiæ (*ex, out; cubare, to lie*), *a watch, a body of guards watching.*

Præ-sid-ium (*præ, before, sedēre, to sit—that which sits before to protect*).

## VOCABULARY TO 33.

*Word-building.*]—Con-nūbium (con-nubere, *to marry*), *marriage*. Pro-miscuous (pro ; misc-eo, *mix*), *that which is mixed forth ; promiscuous, mixed*.

Re-nov-are, *to re-new*.

## VOCABULARY TO 34.

*Word-building.*]—I. To do-thoroughly (con-ficere : *pass. confici, to be worn-out*).

Com-mōdus (con, modus, *manner*), *convenient, suitable, &c. : neut. an advantage*.

II. *Form intensive from oblect, sup. root of ob-licere (oblectare, to delight, beguile)*. To entice thoroughly (pellicere, lex, lect, *entice*).

## VOCABULARY TO 35.

*Word-building.*]—Act of ruling, *from dominari, to rule (dominatio, rule, dominion)*. Adv. *from publicus, public (publice, publicly, at the public expense)*. To frighten away (de-terrere, *deter*). Not good, wicked, *from probus (imprōbus)*.

Res-publica (see p. 168, 71).

## VOCABULARY TO 36.

*Word-building.*]—I. To cast under, *from jacere (subjicere, jec, ject : subject, subdue)*. To make myself turned towards, *from ad-versus, turned towards, partic. of advertere (adversari : to stand opposite to ; to oppose)*. To give help, *from auxilium, help (auxiliari, to help, to assist)*. To make myself a companion, *from comit,<sup>1</sup> root of comes, companion (comitari)*. Trans. *deponent verb from insidiæ, a plot (insidiari, to plot against)*. Trans. *verb from numerus, number (numerare, to count, to number)*. Trans. *deponent verb from gloria (gloriari, to boast)*. Trans. *verb from labor (laborare, to labor ; to be in distress)*.

<sup>1</sup> From 'com' with, 'it,' sup. root of ire, to go.



II. To make prosperous, *from secundus, favorable (secundare)*. Return, *from redit, sup. root of redeo (reditus, ūs)*.

To give a prosperous return, *reditum secundare*.  
It goes ill with me, *in rebus adversis versor*.

## VOCABULARY TO 37.

*Word-building.*]—I. Ungrateful, *from gratus (ingratus)*. Thing promised, promise, *from promittere (promissum)*. Dearness, *from cārus, dear (caritas, affection)*.

Justum prœlium, *a pitched battle (i. e. not a mere skirmish)*.

II. *Subst. to express the act, from rapere (raptus, ūs, rape, robbery)*. To rise to or against (*adoriri, adort, to fall on, to attack*). *Adv. from communis (communiter)*. To make sound, *from sanus (sanare, to heal)*.

To be named joint-king, *in consortium regni adscisci (perf. adscītus sum)*.

## VOCABULARY TO 38.

*Word-building.*]—I. Moderation: *from temperans (temperantia)*. Intemperance (*in-temperantia*). In-active, *from gnavus, active (i-gnavus, sluggish, slothful)*. Sloth, sluggishness, *from ignavus (ignavia, indolence, weakness of the will)*. *Subst. to express the act from remittere (remissio, remission)*.

To plead a cause, *causam dicere*.

Condemned to death, *capite damnatus (condemned by the head)*. Also, *capitis damnatus*.

II. Not-never (*non-nunquam, sometimes*). To connect from or dis-connect, *i. e. from myself, from serere (deserere, seru, sert), to desert*.

## VOCABULARY TO 39.

*Word-building.*]—I. *Abstr. subst. from integr, root of integer, whole (integritas, wholeness, entireness—integrity, uprightness)*. To do-completely, *from facere (con-ficere,*

*accomplish, complete*). *Abstr. subst. from curs, sup. root of currere, to run (cursus, ūs, course)*. To take-to, *from capere (ac-cipere, cep, cept : to receive)*. Cultivation, *from cult, sup. root of colere (cultus, civilization)*.

*In-scitia (in, not : scire, to know), ignorance.*

*Con-stat (it stands together, as a consistent fact), it is well known, allowed, &c.*

II. One who oppresses, *from oppress, sup. root of opprimere (oppressor, oppressor)*.

#### VOCABULARY TO 40.

*Word-building.*]—I. *Adv. from accuratus (accurate, accurately)*. Give its degrees of comparison (*accuratius, accuratissime*). To touch-to, *from tangere, (at-tingere, attig, attact, to touch, to attain, to reach)*. *Abstr. subst. from elegans (elegantia)*.

*Verum attingere, to hit or arrive at the truth.*

*Audita (things heard)* may be translated by a relative sentence: ‘*what he had heard.*’

II. To rattle-against, *from crepare (in-crepare, to scold)*. To read-through, *from legere (per-legere, lēg, lect)*.

## V. QUESTIONS

ON

### THE LATIN ACCIDENCE.

---

Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the page and paragraph.

---

To what question does the *nom.* answer? (To *who* or *what* with the verb.) To what question does the *gen.* answer? (To *whose?* of *what?*) To what question does the *dat.* answer? (To *for whom* or *what?* to *whom* or *what?*) To what question does the *acc.* after the verb answer? (To *whom?* or *what?* with the verb and its *nom.* case.) How is the *voc.* known? (The vocative denotes the person addressed by name: it is generally *stopped off* by commas.) To what questions does the *abl.* answer? (To the questions *with what?* *by what?* *when?* and *whence?* sometimes to *on what?* *from what?* *at what?* *in what?*) To what question does the *abl.* answer after a comparative? (To *than what?*)

When are nouns called common? (When they are used as *mas.* or *fem.* according as *males* or *females* are spoken of.) When are nouns called *epicene*? (When they are always of *one* gender, which cannot be altered to specify the sex.) *How then can the sex be specified?* (By adding *mas* or *femina*.)

Go through: *Musa*—*Magister*—*Puer*—*Dominus*—*Regnum*—*Nubes*—*Lapis* (*root*, *lapid*)—*Opus* (*root*, *oper*, *neut.*)—*Parens* (*root*, *parent*)—*Gradus*, *Facies*. What is the *voc.* of *Virgilius* (143, 2)? of *filius* (143, 2)? What cases are always alike in neuters? In what letter do these cases end in the plural?

What is the gender of nouns of the first (37)? Mention some plurals of the first that have a *sing.* meaning (145, 10).

Mention some nouns of the first whose dat. and abl. plural is *abus*. (Dea, domina, filia, anima, equa, asina, famula, liberta, mula, socia, serva.) Go through pater-familias. (G. patris-familias : D. patri-familias, and so on. *Familias* is an old *gen.*) What form of the gen. sing. is found in poetry? (*Ai*—as *aulai*.) What form of the gen. plur. is sometimes found? (*Um* for *arum*.)

What is the gender of nouns of the second (37)? Give the exceptions (37). Mention some nouns in *er* that do not throw away the *e* (145, 11). Go through *domus* (146, note). Mention some nouns of the *sec.* that are used in the plur. only. (Castra, a camp; fasti, the calendar; and some names of towns: Veii, Gabii, &c.) Go through *vir : vis* (168, 71).

What terminations are mas. in the third (37)? what fem. (37)? what neuter (37)? What peculiarities have neuters in *e, al, ar* (143, 3)? What nouns take *ium* in gen. plur. (143, 4)? What *monosyllables* take gen. in *um* (144, 4, *f*)? What exceptions are there to the rule that nouns in *is es, er*, not increasing in gen., take *ium* (144, 4, *e*)? What is generally the acc. of *aër, æther*? (Aera, æthera.)

What is the gender of nouns of the fourth (37)? Give the exceptions. How did this declension arise (148, 20)? What words have *ubus* in dat. plur.?

[Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus,  
*Et tribus, et partus, specus, adde veruque pecuque.* (Zumpt.)]

What is the gender of nouns of the fifth (37)? What is the only exception? When must *dies* be mas. (37)? When is *e* in *ei* long (148, 22)?

#### ADJECTIVES.

Go through the terminations of adjectives of three terminations (149, 27).

Go through *bonus, tener, unus*. When only has *unus* a plural? (When used with a noun that has no singular.) What declension do adjectives of three terminations follow in the *mas.*? in the *fem.*? in the *neut.*? Mention some adjs. in *er* that retain the *e* (149, 29). In what respects must the adj. agree with its noun (150, 36)?

What is the *abl.* of *tristis*? the *neut. plur.*? the *gen.*



*plur.* (149, 30)? What is the *neut.* of comparatives? the *abl. sing.*? the *neut. plur.*? the *gen. plur.* (149, 31)? Go through *amans* (*loving*), *vetus*, *felix*. What is the *abl. sing.* of *participles* in *ns*, when used as such? Which term. of *abl.* is the more common in *adj.* (150, 33)? What adjectives have *e* only (150, 34)? Go through the terminations of an *adj.* in *is*; a *comparative*: an *adj.* of *one* termination (150, 37). In comparatives is *e* or *i* the more common term. of *abl.*? (*e* in the best writers).<sup>1</sup> What adjectives very rarely, if ever, take *e* in the *abl.*? (Those in *-x*, *-cors*, *-ceps*: together with *par*, *memor*, *iners*, *ingens*, *inops*, *recens*, *teres*, &c.) Go through *duo*, *ambo*,<sup>2</sup> *tres* (151). Go through *acer* (171). Mention some other adjectives that have this peculiarity (171). Go through *plus* (151, note).

Go through *senex* (150, and 144, 4, *e*). What adjectives have *gen.* in *iūs* (149, 29)? Go through *uterque* (each); *unusquisque* (151). Go through *alius* (149, 29)? What is the *gen.* of *alter* (*another*, of two— 149, 29)? Go through *summus mons*, *ima quercus*, *reliquum opis* (151, 39). What is the *Eng.* of *mediæ aquæ* (*nom. plur.*)? of *extremus liber*?

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. [PAGE 170.]

How is the *comparative* formed? (By adding *ior* to the *root.*) How is the *superlative* formed? (By adding *issimus* to the *root.*) How do *ads.* in *er* form their *superlatives*? (By adding *rimus* to *nom.*) What adjectives in *is* make *superl.* in *timus*? (*Facilis*, *agilis*, *similis*, *gracilis*, *humilis*; with *difficilis*, *dissimilis*, of course.) How do adjectives in *ficus*, *dicus*, *völus*, from *facio*, *dico*, *volo*, form *comp.* and *superl.*? (In *entior*, *entissimus*.) What is *superl.* of *vetus*, *nuperus*? (*Veterrimus*, *nuperrimus*.) Of *maturus*? (*Maturrissimus* or *maturrimus*.) Give the degrees of comparison of *bonus*: (*melior*, *optimus*)—*malus*: (*pejor*, *pessimus*)—*magnus*: (*major*, *maximus*)—*parvus*: (*minor*, *minimus*)—*multus*: (*plus*, *neut.*; *plurimus*)—*dives*: (*divitior*, *divitissimus*, or *ditior*, *ditissimus*)—of *nequam*, *indecl.* (*nequior*, *nequissimus*)—*exterus* (*exterior*, *extremus* and *extimus*)—*in-*

<sup>1</sup> Cicero and Livy form *abl.* of comparatives in *e* rather than *i*. In later writers *i* is the more common ending. (Billroth.)

<sup>2</sup> Like *duo*.

*ferus* (inferior, *infimus* or *imus*)—*superus* (superior, *supremus* or *summus*). What *compar.* and *superlat.* are related in meaning to the adv. *intus*? (interior, *intimus*)—to *citra*? (citerior, *citimus*)—to *ultra*? (ulterior, *ultimus*)—to *prope*? (propior, *proximus*)—to the Greek word *ὠκτός*, *swift*? (*ocior*, *ocissimus*.) What is the *superl.* of *prior*? (*primus*)—the comp. of *juvenis*? (*junior*)—of *senex*? (*senior*.) When must the comparison be formed by *magis*, *maxime*? (When the adj. ends in *us* pure.) When may an adjective in *us*, pure, form its comparison regularly? (When *qu*, which sounds like *kw*, precedes *us*: as, *antiquus*, *iniquus*.) What is used for the comparative of an adverb derived from an adjective? (The neuter of the comparative adjective.) What is the superlative of such an adverb? (It is formed by adding *ē* to the root of the superlative adjective.)

#### THE NUMERALS. [Page 172.]

What are *cardinal* numbers? (Those that answer to, *how many*?) What *ordinals*? (Those that mark *the place* that any individual holds *in a series*.) What *distributives*? (Those that answer to, *how many apiece*?) Are cardinal numbers declinable? (From 4 to 100 *not*: the names of the *hundreds* are, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, &c. *Mille* is indecl. as an *adj.*: but as a *subst.* has plur. *millia*, *ium*, *ibus*, &c.) Are the ordinals and distributives declinable? (Yes.) Give the first ten numerals in the three series; and the num. adverbs answering to *how many times* (172). Give them from 10 to 20 (173).

Give the Latin for 20: for 18. Do the '*teens*' end in *decim* or *decem*? Give the Latin for 11th, 12th, 13th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st. Give the Latin for *eleven apiece*, *twelve apiece*, *thirteen apiece*, *twenty apiece*. What is the difference between cardinals in *ginta* and in *genti*? (Those in *ginta* are so many *tens*; those in *genti* so many *hundreds*.) Between ordinals in *cesimus*, *gesimus*, and those in *centesimus*, *gentesimus*? (Those in *cesimus*, *gesimus*, are so many *tens*; those in *centesimus*, *gentesimus*, so many *hundreds*.) Do the distributives in *zeni*, *geni*, belong to *tens* or *hundreds*? (To *both*.) Is there *any* difference of form between them? (Yes: the *hundreds* are added to a root end-

ing in a *consonant*, except in *triceni*, *treceni*, where the form with *e*, *treceni*, belongs to *hundreds*.)

Turn into Latin 366, (173, Obs. 2.)

What are the forms for 1000, 2000, &c.? (*Mille*, *millesimus*, *milleni*, or *singula millia*, *millies*; and then: *bis mille*, *bis millesimus*, *bina millia*, *bis millies*, &c.) How are the intermediate forms supplied? (By the combination of two forms: *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*, one and twenty; or, twenty-one: but the forms *duode-*, *unde-*, are mostly used for the *two* before every *ten* or *hundred*.)

With what sort of words are the *distributives* used as *cardinals*? (With subst. used in plur. only: *binæ literæ*, two letters: but *uni* is used, not *singuli*: and *trini*, not *terni*.)

#### PRONOUNS. [Page 168.]

Go through: *ego*, *tu*, *sui*.—*meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*. What is voc. mas. of *meus*? (*Mi*.) What syllable is often appended to *strengthen* the pers. pron.? (*Met*: *egomet*, *mihimet*, *temet*.) What is appended to the nom. of *tu*? (*Te*: *tute*.) How is the acc. *se* strengthened? (By doubling, *sese*.) How is *own* strongly expressed? [By adding gen. *ipsius*<sup>1</sup> to *poss.* pron. or (to the abl.) the syll. *pte* in *suopte*, *suapte*, (not in Cicero,) for *suo ipsius*, *suâ ipsius*.]

Go through, *is*: through *ille*, *iste*, (as if from *illus*, *istus*, *a*, *ud*, G. *ius*, &c.) Go through *idem*. What is the difference between mas. and neut. sing. of *idem*? (The neut. has *ĩ*: the mas. *ĩ*.) Go through *qui*; through *quis*. When has *quis* fem. sing. and neut. plur. *qua*? (Generally after *si*, *ne*, *num*.) What is neut. sing. of the compounds of *qui* and *quis* indef.? (*Quid* and *quod*; of which the forms in *quid* are used, when the *noun* they refer to *is not expressed*.) What is the neut. of *quis*, *who*? (*Quid*.) Go through *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quivis*, *quicumque*, (which has only *quodcumque* in neut.) *quispiam*, *quilibet*, *quisquam*. Go through *quisquis*, (it has only *quisquis*, *quicquid*, abl. fem. *quaqua*. Nom. plur. *quiqui*; abl. *quibus*, *quibus*.) Into what letter is *m* often turned before *d* in *idem*, *quidam*? (Into *n*: *quorundam*, &c.) By what syllables is *hic* strengthened? (*Ce*, *cine*: *hicce*, *hæcce*, *hocce*; *hiccine*, *hæccine*, *hoccine*.) By

<sup>1</sup> For the pl. *ipsorum*, or *ipsarum*.



what are *ille, iste*, strengthened? (By *ic*: *illic, illæc, illoc*; *istic, istæc, istoc*.)

## THE VERB.

Go through the terminations of the third persons of the act. voice (152). Go through the terminations of the persons (153). Go through the terminations of the Latin verb (154). In what tenses do verbs of the third in *io* drop the *i* (158, 45)? Go through *suscipio*—*suscipior* (158, 45). Give the first person of each tense of *suscipio*, that has root of present. Go through *esse* (164.) In what persons and tenses of *prosum* is *prod*, not *pro*, prefixed to the tenses of *esse* (165, 62, 1)?

Go through *possum* (165, 63), *volo, nolo, malo* (165, 63), *edo* (165), *fero* (165). Of what verb is *fio* used as the passive? (Of *facio*.) What peculiarities has it? (The perfect tenses are regular from *facio*; *factus sum*, &c.; the imperfect ones regular from *fio* of the *fourth*, with this exception, that *imperf. subj.* and *infin.* keep the *e* with *ï* before it; *fïerem, fïeri*.) Go through *eo* (166). What is the compound of *eo* with *re*? (*Red-eo*.) Go through *ajo*.<sup>1</sup> What is *ain' tu*? (= *aisne tu*? *say you so*?) Go through *inquam*,<sup>2</sup> *I say*. What *tenses* and what *meaning* have

<sup>1</sup> Ajo.

|               |        |        |             |                 |      |        |
|---------------|--------|--------|-------------|-----------------|------|--------|
| Indicative.   |        |        | 1. Present. | Conjunctive.    |      |        |
| Ajo           | Ais    | Ait    |             | Ajam            | Ajas | Ajat   |
| —             | —      | Ajunt. |             | —               | —    | Ajant. |
| 2. Imperfect. |        |        |             |                 |      |        |
| Ajebam        | -bas   | -bat   |             |                 |      |        |
| Ajebamus      | -batis | -bant. |             |                 |      |        |
| Imper.: Ai.   |        |        |             | Partic.: Ajens. |      |        |

<sup>2</sup> Inquam.

|               |             |           |                           |              |           |           |
|---------------|-------------|-----------|---------------------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| Indicative.   |             |           | 1. Present.               | Conjunctive. |           |           |
| Inquam        | Inquis      | Inquit    |                           | —            | Inquias   | Inquiat   |
| Inquimus      | Inquitis    | Inquiunt. |                           | —            | Inquiatis | Inquiunt. |
| 2. Imperfect. |             |           |                           |              |           |           |
|               | Inquiebam   | -bas      | -bat                      |              |           |           |
|               | Inquiebamus | -batis    | -bant.                    |              |           |           |
| 3. Future.    |             |           |                           |              |           |           |
| —             | Inquies     | Inquiet   | Imperat.: Inque, Inquito. |              |           |           |
| —             | —           | Inquiunt. |                           |              |           |           |
| 4. Perfect.   |             |           |                           |              |           |           |
| —             | Inquisti    | —         | Partic.: Inquiens.        |              |           |           |
| —             | Inquistis   | —         |                           |              |           |           |



*memini, cœpi, odi?* (Perfect tenses. In *memini, odi, perf.* has present meaning: pluperf. of imperf., and so on.—*I remember, I hate*: *cœpi* is, *I began or have begun*. Perf. *cœptus est*, when followed by *infin. pass.* of strictly passive meaning.) What is *imperat.* of *memini*? (*Memento, pl. mementote.*) What are *ausim, faxim*? (Old forms for *ausus sim, fecerim.*) What has *quæso*? (Pl. 1. *quæsūmus.*)

What is English of *defit*? (*fails [me]*)—*infit*?—(*begins to speak*)—*confit*? (*[it] is accomplished*; or, *a sum is made up.*) What is the English of *salve, ave*? (*Hail!* *salve* also *farewell*)—of *vale*? (*farewell*)—of *cædo*? (*tell me, give me, pray.*)

#### PREPOSITIONS.

What prepositions always govern the ablative (173, 80)?

#### SEE APPENDIX 2.

Go through *Penelope, Æneas, Anchises, Orpheus, Delos, Evangelion, melos*. What are the principal peculiarities of Greek nouns of the third? Go through *poëma, (ãtis) n. poësis, Erinnyis, Nerëis, tigris, Echo, Dido, Achilles, Ulysses, Pericles, Chremes*.

What are patronymics? What do *mas.* patronymics end in? What do *fem.* patronymics end in? From what man's name does *Ænides* come? Give the *fem.* form. Give *mas.* and *fem.* patronymics from *Æneas, Anchises, Tyn-dãrus, Theseus, Atlas*.

What are the *mas.* termin. for an inhabitant of such a country? The *fem.* terminations? Give *mas.* and *fem.* words for a *Persian, Cretan, Trojan, Thracian, Lacedæmonian, Phœnician, Roman, inhabitant of Clusium, of Abdera, of Arpinum, of Miletus, of Athens*.

Give the initials of the Roman Prænomina. What does COS. mean? (*Consul.*) COSS.? (*Consulibus.*) D.O.M.? (*Deo optimo, maximo.*) S.P.Q.R.? (*Senatus, populusque Romanus.*) A.V.C.? (*Ab urbe conditã.*)

## VI. QUESTIONS ON LATIN SYNTAX.

---

### § 1.

1. In what respects does a verb agree with its nominative case? (In number and person.) 2. An adjective with its substantive? (In gender, number, and case.) 3. What verbs take a substantive or adjective after them in the nominative?

(Verbs of *becoming, being, seeming,*

And passive verbs of *making, calling, deeming.*<sup>1</sup>)

4. In what case does the thing *by which* stand? (In the abl.) 5. In what case does the *agent*, or person *by whom*, stand?<sup>2</sup> (In the *abl.* with *a* or *ab*: but sometimes in the *dat.*) 6. When should the pronoun that is the nom. to the verb be expressed? (When the pron. is emphatic.)
7. When two or more nom. cases sing. come together, in which *number* should the verb be put, and in what *person*? (In the plural number, and in the *more worthy* person.)
8. With *et—et, quum—tum* (both—and), in which number is the verb generally put? (In the sing.)
9. When an adjective belongs to more than one substantive or pronoun, with which should it agree in *gender*? and in which number should it stand, even when the substantives, &c. are all *sing.*? (It should agree with the *more worthy* gender, and be in the plur.) 10. When the substantives are things that *have not life*, in what *gender* is the *adj.* generally put? (In the neut.)

<sup>1</sup> Verba substantiva; ut *sum, forem, fio, existo*; Verba vocandi passiva; ut *nomi- nor, appellor, dicor, vocor, nuncupor*: et iis similia; ut *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eosdem casus habent.

<sup>2</sup> Passivis additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente *a* vel *ab* præpositione; et interdum dativus.

11. What substantives are seldom to be translated? (Man, woman, thing.)
12. What tenses of the indic. are followed by the *pres.* and *perf.* of the subj.? (The *pres.*, *fut.*, and *perfect* with 'have' are followed by the *pres.* and *perf.* of the subj.)
13. What tenses of the indic. are followed by the imperf. and pluperf. of the subj.? (The *past* tenses of the indic. are followed by the imperf. and pluperf. of the subj.)
14. Is the perf. with *have* considered a past tense? (No: it is a *present-perf.* expressing an action that has been done in some space of time, *however large*, that is still *unexpired.*)
15. Is the *fut. perf.* a *subj.* tense? (No.)

§ 2. *Sequence of Tenses. Translation of 'that.'*

OBS. The *pres.* and *perf.* of the subjunctive form one pair, the *imperf.* and *pluperf.* another.

- (a) *Accusative and infinitive.*] 16. When is 'that' to be omitted, and the sentence turned into the *accusative* and *infinitive*?

('That' to omit is mostly best

With forms impersonal, as *certum est* :

With verbs of *thinking, knowing, wishing,*<sup>1</sup>

*Feeling, hearing, et credendi* ;

And other verbs that fill the class

*Declarandi et sentiendi.*

But the impersonals,

*Contingit, evēnit, and accīdit,*

With *restat, reliquum est, and fit,*

are followed by *ut* : as *sequitur* is sometimes.)

- (b) *ut.*] 17. When is 'that' to be translated by 'ut' with the subjunctive? (When it introduces a *purpose* or a *consequence* : and after the impersonals

*Contingit, evēnit, and accīdit,*

With *restat, reliquum est, and fit.*

OBS. When it introduces a *purpose* it is followed by 'may,' 'might.' When it introduces a *consequence* it refers to a 'so,' or 'such.')

<sup>1</sup> Verbs of wishing may also be followed by *ut*. Cicero *always* uses *ut* after *optare*.

- (c) *nē*.] 18. When is 'that' to be translated by *nē* with the *subjunctive*? (When 'that,' expressing the *purpose*, is followed by a negative word. ¶ *Ne* being really 'not,' the following 'not' is to be untranslated, and 'nobody,' 'nothing,' turned into 'anybody,' 'anything.')
- (d) *Quin*.] 19. When is 'that' to be translated by *quin*? [When a *negative* sentence precedes: especially after *non dubito, non dubium est, quis dubitat? facere non possum* ('I cannot help'), and *feri non potest* ('it cannot be,')—when a negative *follows*.]
20. When is 'that' to be translated by *quod*? (After verbs that express an *emotion* of the mind, as *gaudeo*, rejoice; *miror*, wonder; but most of these also take the accusative with *infin*.<sup>1</sup>—Also, when 'that' refers to a 'this' or 'that' in the preceding sentence.)
21. When is 'that' to be translated by 'quo?'  
(Let 'that' translated be by 'quo,'  
When with *comparatives* it does go.)
22. How is 'that' translated after verbs of *fearing*?  
(*Vereor ne*, I fear he *will*,  
*Vereor ut*, I fear he *won't*.  
Turn *future* by *subjunctive present*  
After *fear*: forget it don't.)

### § 3. *The Relative.*

23. What are respectively the *demonstratives* or *antecedent pronouns* to *qui, qualis, quantus, quot*? (*Is, talis, tantus, tot*.)
24. Is the relative ever governed in *case*, by a word that is not in its own clause? (No.)
25. In what respects does the relative agree with its antecedent? (In *gender, number, and person*.)
26. When the antecedent is expressed in the *relative*, and omitted in the *principal* clause, where is the relative clause often placed? (First.)
27. What *pronoun* often represents it in the principal clause? (*Is* or *hic*.)
- 27.\* What is the relative 'what' equivalent to? ('*That which*.')

<sup>1</sup> Obs. With *gaudeo, miror*, use *quod* when the verb that follows 'that' is in a past tense.



28. When the *relat.* agrees with some case of a *subst.* expressed in its own, but not in the principal clause, what must be done? (Some case of that *subst.* must be supplied in the principal clause.)
29. For what does an *infin.* sometimes stand? (For the *nominative case* to a *verb*: the *substantive* to an *adjective*: or the *antecedent* to a *relative*.<sup>1</sup>)
30. When an *adj.* or *rel.* is to agree with an *infin.* mood or *sentence*, in what gender must it be put? (In the *neuter gender*.)
31. When the *rel.* has a *sentence* for its antecedent, what do we often find instead of the *rel.* only? (*Id quod*, or *quæ res*, where *id* and *res* are in *apposition* to the former sentence.)
32. How may 'but,' or a *relative* with 'not,' be translated after *nobody*, *nothing*, &c.? (By *quin*, with *subj.*: but *quin* may not stand for *cui non*, or *cujus non*.)
33. In such a sentence as 'Thebes, which is a town,' &c., should *which* agree with *Thebes*, or with *town*? (With *town*.<sup>2</sup>)
35. When the antecedent has a *superlative* with it, in which clause does the *superlative* generally stand? (In the *relative clause*.)
36. HE WAS THE FIRST PERSON WHO DID IT. (*Primus fecit*.)

§ 4. *Nē*, with *Imper.*—*Infinitive* expressing purpose.

37. How is 'not' to be translated before the *imperative*, or *subj.* used imperatively? (By *nē*.)
38. How is 'as' before the *inf.*, and after *so*, *such*, to be translated? (By *ut*: 'as not to—,' by *quin*.)
39. What does the *Lat. inf.* never express? (A *purpose*.)
40. When the *Eng. inf.* expresses a *purpose*, how may it be translated?<sup>3</sup>
41. After what verbs is the *inf.* to

<sup>1</sup> Aliquando oratio est verbo nominativus.

Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere posito.

Aliquando oratio ponitur pro antecedente.

<sup>2</sup> Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, interdum cum posteriore concordat.

<sup>3</sup> The various ways of expressing a *purpose* are given in the following table:—

|                                     |          |                               |
|-------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------|
| Eo ut ludos spectem,                | } causâ, | } I am going to see the games |
| Eo { ludorum spectandorum           |          |                               |
| { ludos spectandi                   |          |                               |
| Eo ludos spectaturus,               |          |                               |
| Eo ad ludos spectandos,             |          |                               |
| Eo ludos spectatum ( <i>sup.</i> ), |          |                               |

be translated by *ut*—or if there is a *not*, *nē*—with the subjunctive ?

(By 'ut,' translate infinitive,

With *ask*, *command*, *advise*, and *strive*.

But never be this rule forgot,

Put 'ne' for 'ut,' when there's a 'not.'

Under 'ask' are included *beg*, *pray*, &c.: under 'command,' *charge*, *direct*, &c.: under 'advise,' *exhort*, *admonish*, *warn*, &c.)

42. How must 'as not to . . . &c.,' after a negative be translated? (By *quin* with subj.)
43. By what conjunctions are verbs of *hindering* generally followed? (By *quominus*; to be rendered by 'from' with the participial subst.)

### § 5. Interrogatives.

44. Which interrogative particle asks simply for information? (*Nē*.) 45. Which expects the answer 'yes?' (*Nonne*.) 46. Which the answer 'no?' (*Num*: but not in dependent questions, where it is simply 'whether.')
47. When are questions *dependent*? (When they are connected with a preceding word or sentence.) 48. Mention some words on which questions *depend*. (*Ask*, *doubt*, *know*, or *not know*, *examine*, *try*—*it is uncertain*, &c.)
49. In what mood does the verb stand in a dependent question? (The subj.) 50. In what mood must the verb be put in sentences that stand as the *acc.* to a preceding verb? (The subj.)
51. How must 'whether' be translated in double questions? (By *utrum*, *num*, or the appended *ne*.) 52. How 'or?' (By *an*.) 53. If 'whether' is untranslated, how may 'or' be translated? (By *an*, *anne*, or the appended *ne*.<sup>1</sup>) 54. Does *an* ever stand before a single ques-

<sup>1</sup> (Whether) — (or)

*utrum* ... — *an*

*num* ..... — *an*

*nē* ..... — *an*

(untranslated)—*an* or *ne*.

In rendering, the *utrum* or *ne* is not translated in a *direct* question: i. e. when the verb is in the *indicative* mood.

- tion? (Yes: when the answer 'no' is confidently expected; and often with something of impatience.)
55. How is 'yes' to be translated? (Either by the particles *ita, ita est, sane, etiam, vero*; or by repeating the *word* about which the question is made.)
56. How is 'no' to be translated? (Either by *negative particles (non, minime, nihil minus, &c.)*, with or without the verb of the interrogative sentence; or by *imo* with a *noun, adjective, or verb*, which is the *opposite* to the one in the interrogative sentence.)
- § 6. (*May, might; can, could; should, ought.*)
57. Go through *I may go, &c.*  
(*mihi ire licet, I may go.*  
*tibi ire licet, thou mayest go, &c.*)
58. *I might have gone.*  
(*mihi ire licuit, I might have gone.*  
*tibi ire licuit, thou mightest have gone, &c.*)
59. *I can do it.*  
(*ego facere possum, I can do it.*  
*tu facere potes, thou canst do it, &c.*)
60. *I could have done it.*  
(*ego facere potui, I could have done it.*  
*tu facere potuisti, thou couldst have done it, &c.*)
61. *I ought to do it.*  
(*me facere oportet, } I ought to do it;*  
*or ego facere debeo, } or, should do it.*)
62. *I ought to have done it.*  
(*me facere oportuit, } I ought to have done it;*  
*or ego facere debui, } or, should have done it.*)
63. Translate, *I ought to do it, omitting ut.*  
(*ego faciam oportet, I ought to do it.*  
*tu facias oportet, thou oughtest to do it, &c.*)
64. I MAY-BE DECEIVED. (*Fieri potest ut fallar.*)
65. How is the *perf. infin.* to be translated after *might, could, ought?* (By *pres. infin.* unless it is meant that the action should *have been completed before* the time spoken of.)

§ 7. *Apposition.*

66. How is the case of a substantive in *apposition* determined? (It agrees in case with the subst. of which it is spoken.) THE CITY OF ROME. (Urbs Roma.)
67. When *urbs* or *oppidum* stands in apposition to the name of a town, does the verb agree with *urbs*, *oppidum*, or with the name of the town? (With *urbs* or *oppidum*.)
68. When there is a *fem.* form of a substantive, for instance, *magistra*, when should it be used? (When it stands in apposition to a *fem.* subst.)

§ 8. Case of Subst. or Adj. after *esse*.

69. HE WISHES TO BE THE FIRST. (Vult esse princeps; or se esse principem.) 70. HE SAYS THAT HE IS READY. (Ait esse paratus; or, se esse paratum.)
71. THEY MAY BE HAPPY. (Licet esse beatis: or, less commonly, beatos.)

§ 9. *Genitive.*

72. When may a *substantive* and *preposition* generally be translated by the *gen.*? (When the prepos. joins it to another substantive.) 73. HOW MUCH PLEASURE; MUCH GOOD; SOME TIME. (Quantum voluptatis; multum boni; aliquid temporis.)
74. What do you mean by a *partitive* adj.? (A *partitive* adj. is one that expresses some individuals considered as parts of a larger number or body.) 75. What case follows *partitive* adjectives; and what prepositions are often used instead of it? (The *genitive*: but the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, are often used.) 76. With what does the *partitive* adj. generally agree in gender? (With the governed *genitive*, because that expresses the thing meant.<sup>1</sup>) 77. In what *gender* does a *superlative* or *solus* stand when it governs a *genit.*, and also refers to another subst.? (In the gender not of the

<sup>1</sup> Nomina partitiva, numeralia, comparativa, et superlativa, et quædam adjectiva partitive posita, genitivum, a quo et genus mutantur, exigunt. Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante*.



- gen., but of the *other substantive*.) 78. In what case does a substantive of *description* stand when it *has an adjective agreeing with it?* (In the genitive or ablative.<sup>1</sup>) 79. By what cases are *opus est* followed? (By an *ablative of what is needed*, a *dative of the person who needs*.<sup>2</sup>) 80. What other construction is there with *opus est*?<sup>3</sup> (*Opus* is often used in the *nom.* or *acc.* after *esse*.) 81. THERE IS NO NEED. WHAT NEED IS THERE? (*Nihil opus est. Quid opus est?*) 82. THE TOP OF THE MOUNTAIN. THE MIDDLE OF THE WAY. THE REST OF THE WORK. THE WHOLE OF GREECE. (*Summus mons; media via; reliquum opus; universa Græcia.*)
83. What adjectives govern the genitive? (Adjectives which signify *desire, knowledge, recollection, fear, participation*, and their *opposites*, with many of those that express *fulness* or *emptiness*.<sup>4</sup>) 84. What case do participles *used adjectively* and verbals in *az* govern? (The genitive.<sup>5</sup>)
85. What substantives are omitted after *to be*? (Such substantives as *property, duty, part, mark, &c.*<sup>6</sup>) 86. IT IS CICERO'S PART. (*Ciceronis est.*) IT IS YOUR PART. (*Tuum est.*<sup>7</sup>) 87. What case do verbs of *accusing, &c.* take of the *charge*? (Genitive.<sup>8</sup>) 88. What case do *satago, &c.* govern? (Genitive.<sup>9</sup>) 89. What case do verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* govern? (Acc.

<sup>1</sup> *Laus, vituperium, vel qualitas rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo.*

<sup>2</sup> *Opus et usus ablativum exigunt.*

<sup>3</sup> *Opus autem adjective, pro necessarius, quandoque poni videtur.*

<sup>4</sup> *Adjectiva quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem, significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exigunt: cum plurimis aliis quæ affectionem animi denotant.*

<sup>5</sup> *Participia, cum fiunt nomina, genitivum exigunt.*

*Adjectiva verbalia in az etiam genitivum exigunt.*

<sup>6</sup> *Sum genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet.*

*a. This genitive may be rendered in various ways, (besides 'it is the duty,' or 'part of:' 'a mark of:')* 'it is characteristic of;' 'it is incumbent on;' 'it requires;' 'it demands;' 'it shows;' 'it betrays;' 'it is for, (you, &c.),' &c.

*Non cujusvis est, it is not every man who can, &c.*

<sup>7</sup> *Exicipiuntur hi nominativi, meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, belluinum, et similia.*

<sup>8</sup> *Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, qui crimen significat.*

(*Eng.*) To condemn to death.

(*Lat.*) To condemn of the head, (capitis.)

<sup>9</sup> *Satago, misereor, et miseresco, genitivum postulant.*

or gen.<sup>1)</sup> 90. In what case may a *neut. pron.* stand with *accusare, admonēre, &c.*? (Accusative.)

### § 10. Impersonals.

91. With *interest* and *refert* in what case is the person to whom it is of importance put? (In the *gen.*, but instead of personal pronouns, the possessives are used in the *abl. fem.*<sup>2)</sup> 92. How is the *degree* of importance expressed? (Either by the *gen.* of *price*, or by an *adverb.*<sup>3)</sup> 93. How is the *thing that is of importance* expressed? (By an *infinitive* clause; or its representative, a *neuter pronoun*; or a clause introduced either by an *interrogative*, or by a *conjunction.*) 94. What case of the *person feeling* do *puget, &c.*, take? and what case of what *causes* the feeling? (*Puget, piget, pœnitet, tædet, miseret,* take an *accusative* of the *person feeling*, a *genitive* of what *causes* the feeling.<sup>4)</sup> 95. What case do *instar* and *ergo* take? (Genitive.<sup>5)</sup> 96. What adverbs govern the genitive? (Some adverbs of *place, time, and quantity.*<sup>6)</sup>

### § 11. Dative.

97. What adjectives govern the *dat.*? (Adjectives which signify *advantage, likeness, agreeableness, usefulness, fitness, facility, &c.*, with their *opposites*, govern the *dative.*<sup>7)</sup> 98. Mention some adjectives that are followed by *ad.* (*Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus, accommodatus, idoneus,* may also be followed by *ad* with an *acc.* of the *purpose.*<sup>8)</sup> 99. What cases may follow *propior, proximus*? (*Dat.*, but

<sup>1</sup> *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor,* genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt.

<sup>2</sup> Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet genitivis junguntur; præter hos ablativos fœmininos, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, et cuijâ.*

<sup>3</sup> Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, quanticunque, tantidem.* [Quanti interest, of how great importance it is.]

<sup>4</sup> His impersonalibus subjicitur accusativus cum genitivo, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, miserescit, puget, piget.*

<sup>5</sup> *Instar* et *ergo*, adverbialiter sumpta, genitivum post se habent.

<sup>6</sup> Quædam adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt.

<sup>7</sup> Adjectiva, quibus commôdum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant.

<sup>8</sup> *Natus, commôdus, incommôdus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus,* cum multis aliis, interdum etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur.

- sometimes the *accus.*) 100. When should *similis* take the gen. ? (To express like a person in *character.*)
101. In what case do you put the person *to, for, or against whom* the action is done, or the feeling entertained ? (Dat.) 102. Mention the classes of verbs that take the *dat.* (Verbs that signify *advantage or disadvantage*; verbs of *comparing*; of *giving and restoring*; of *promising and paying*; of *commanding and telling*; of *trusting and intrusting*; of *complying with and opposing*; of *threatening and being angry, &c.*<sup>1</sup>) 103. Do any of these take the *acc.* also ? (Yes : many govern the *acc.*; and many an *acc.* of the *immediate, a dat.* of the *remoter* object.) 104. By what prepositions may verbs of *comparing* be followed ? (By the *prepositions, cum, ad, and inter se, 'together.'*) 105. What verbs of *advantage and disadvantage* govern the *acc.* ? (*Juvo, lædo, delecto, and offendo, govern the acc.*<sup>2</sup>) 106. Of verbs of *commanding, which govern the acc. only, and which the dat. or acc. ?* (*Rego and guberno govern the acc., tempero and moderor the acc. or dat.*<sup>3</sup>)
107. What case do *sum* and its compounds govern ? (*Sum* with its compounds, except *possum, governs the dative.*<sup>4</sup>)
108. Mention the compound verbs that generally govern the *dat.* (Verbs compounded with the adverbs *bene, satis, male.* Most of those compounded with
- Præ, con, sub,*  
*Ad, in, inter, ob.*
- Many of those compounded with
- Ab, ante, de, and e,*  
*Post, super, pro, and re.*<sup>5</sup>)

<sup>1</sup> Verba dandi et reddendi; promittendi ac solvendi; imperandi et nuntiandi; fidendi; obsequendi et repugnandi; minandi et irascendi; regunt dativum.

His jungas nubo, faveoque, indulgeo, parco, Gratulor, auxilior, studeo, medeorque, vacoque.\*

☞ 'He threatens me with death,' should be  
In Latin, 'threatens death to me.'

<sup>2</sup> Ex his juvo, lædo, delecto, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt.

<sup>3</sup> Excipe rego, guberno, quæ accusativum habent; tempero et moderor, quæ nunc dativum, nunc accusativum habent.

<sup>4</sup> Sum, cum compositis, præter possum, regit dativum.

<sup>5</sup> Dativum ferme regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, bene, satis, male; et cum his præpositionibus, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter.

---

\* In the sense of 'to have leisure for;' 'to be engaged in.'

109. HE SURROUNDS THE CITY WITH A WALL. HE PRESENTS ME WITH A GARLAND. (*Urbem muro, or murum urbi circumdat. Mihi coronam, or me coronâ donat.*)
110. What verbs govern two datives? (*Esse, donare, mittere, proficisci, &c.*, with *dare* and *vertere*, to impute.<sup>1</sup>)
111. What case often follows *sum* where *we* should put the nom.? (The dative.) 112. How is *have* often translated? (By *esse* with a dative.) 113. MY NAME IS CAIUS. (*Mihi nomen est Caio, or Caius, or sometimes Caii.*) 114. I HAVE A COW. I HAVE SIX COWS. (*Est mihi vacca : sunt mihi sex vaccæ.*)

### § 12. Accusative.

115. Do neuter verbs ever take the *acc.*? (Yes: when the substantive is of kindred meaning or origin.) 116. Explain *sitire honores*. (The verb *sitire* here implies the *transitive* notion of *desiring*.)
117. What verbs take two accusatives? (Verbs of *asking, teaching, clothing, concealing*, generally govern *two accusatives*.<sup>2</sup>) 118. Do *all* the verbs that have any of these meanings take two accusatives? (No: either the *person* or the *thing* is often governed by a *preposition*.) 119. What transitive verbs take *two accusatives*, one in a sort of *apposition* to the other? (Transitive verbs that take *two nominatives* in the passive.)

### § 13. Ablative.

120. What does the *abl.* express? (The thing *with which*: and often the manner *how*, and cause *why*.<sup>3</sup>) 121. In what case is the *specified price* put? (*Abl.*<sup>4</sup>) 122. What adjectives stand in the *abl.* to express the price, *pretio* being understood? (*Magno, permagno, parvo, minimo, plurimo, nimio, vili*: but the genitives, except

<sup>1</sup> *Sum, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum.*

<sup>2</sup> *Verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi, fere duplicem regunt accusativum.*

<sup>3</sup> *Quodvis verbum admittit ablativum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis.*

<sup>4</sup> *Quibusdam verbis subjicitur nomen pretii in ablativo casu.*



- vilis*, are also found, especially with verbs of *valuing*.<sup>1</sup>) 123. What adjectives *always* express price in the *gen.*? (*Tanti* and *quanti*, with their compounds; *pluris, minoris*.<sup>2</sup>) 124. What substantives stand in the *gen.* after verbs of *valuing*? (*Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, &c.*<sup>3</sup>) 125. What should be used instead of *multi* and *majoris*? (*Magni* and *pluris*.)
126. What case do verbs of *abounding, &c.*, govern? (Verbs of *abounding, filling, loading, &c.*, and their opposites, such as verbs of *wanting, depriving of, emptying of*, govern the *ablative*.<sup>4</sup>) 127. What case may *egeo* and *indigeo* govern? (*Gen.*) 128. What case do verbs of *freeing from, &c.*, take? (Some verbs of *freeing from, removing from, differing from, being at a distance from, &c.*, are sometimes followed by the *ablative*.) 129. What is their more general construction in prose? (They are followed by a preposition.) 130. What case do *fungor, &c.* govern? (*Fungor, fruor, utor*, with their compounds, *potior, vescor, dignor, glorior*, take the *ablative*; as does also *supersedeo*.<sup>5</sup>) 131. In what case is the *manner, cause, &c.* put? (*Abl.*)

#### § 14. *Passive Voice.*

132. In what *case* is the *agent* expressed after the pass. verb, when *a, ab*, is not used? (*Dat.*) 133. After what part of the verb is this the regular construction? (*Part. in dus*.<sup>6</sup>) 134. What verbs cannot be used *personally* in the pass. voice? (Those that govern the *dative* in the active.) 135. Go through *I am believed*.<sup>7</sup> 136. Mention some verbs that have a *pass. construction*. (*Vapūlo, vēneo, fio*.) 137. What is the substi-

<sup>1</sup> *Vili, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo*, per se sæpe ponuntur, subauditâ voce *pretio*.

<sup>2</sup> Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi; *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque, &c.*

<sup>3</sup> *Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii*, verbis æstimandi peculiariter adduntur.

<sup>4</sup> Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur.

<sup>5</sup> *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico, supersedeo*, ablativo junguntur.

*Potior*, aut genitivo, aut ablativo, jungitur.

<sup>6</sup> Participiis passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *dus*.

<sup>7</sup> *Mihi creditur, I am believed.*

*Nobis creditur, we are believed.*

*Tibi creditur, thou art believed.*

*Vobis creditur, you are believed.*

*Illi creditur, he is believed.*

*Illis creditur, they are believed.*

tute for a *fut. inf. pass.*, when the verb has no supine to form it with *iri*? (*Fore* or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* with the subjunctive.) 138. I HOPE HE WILL RECOVER. (*Spero fore ut convalescat.*)

139. What verbs can govern an *acc.* in the *pass.*? ('Those that govern *two accusatives* in the active.<sup>1</sup>) 140. Can a *pass.* verb or participle take an *acc.* of the *part affected*? (Yes.<sup>2</sup>) 141. Translate WE HAVE WALKED ENOUGH by the *pass.* (*Satis ambulatum est.*<sup>3</sup>) 142. Which is the more common in Lat.: 'Caius videtur, dicitur, &c. esse,' or 'videtur, dicitur, &c. Caium esse?' ('The *personal* construction is far the more common.)

### § 15. Time.

143. How is a noun of *time* put in answer to *when*? (Abl.<sup>4</sup>) 144. in answer to *for how long*? (Acc.<sup>5</sup>) 145. How do you express the time *in* or *within which*? (By *inter, intra*; or by the *abl.*) 146. How do you express time in answer to *how long before* or *after*? (Abl.) 147. How are *ante, post*, used in this construction? (As *adverbs*, unless there be *another noun* or *pronoun* to be governed by them.) 148. How do you express a point or space of *future* time *for* which any arrangement is now made? (By *in* with *acc.*) 149. How do you express the *exact* time *by* or *against* which a thing is to be done? (By *ad* with *acc.*) 150. FOUR YEARS AGO. (*Abhinc annos, or annis, quatuor.*) 151. THREE YEARS OLD. (*Tres annos natus.*) 152. ABOVE TWENTY YEARS OLD. (*Major annis viginti.*) 153. THREE YEARS AFTER HE HAD RETURNED. (*Post tres annos quam rediit; or, redierat, &c.*)

<sup>1</sup> Hujusmodi verba (i. e. verba rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi) etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent.

<sup>2</sup> Verbis quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ, et poetice accusativus.

Quædam usurpantur etiam cum genitivo.

<sup>3</sup> Verbum impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri eleganter accipi potest. [Thus *statum* may be, I stand (*statum a me*); thou standest (*statum a te*); and so on. Thus, *curritur, there is running, or they are running.*]

<sup>4</sup> Quæ significant partem temporis, in ablativo frequentius ponuntur.

<sup>5</sup> Quæ autem durationem temporis significant, in accusativo fere ponuntur.

§ 16. *Place.*

154. In what case is the town *at which* a thing is done, to be put? (In the *gen.* if it is a *singular* noun of the *first* or *second* declension: if not, in the *ablative*.)  
 155. In what case is the name of a town to be put in answer to *whither?* (*Acc.*<sup>2</sup>) 156. In answer to *whence?* (*Abl.*<sup>3</sup>) 157. To *what* proper names do these rules apply? (To the names of *towns* or *small islands*.) 158. In what case do *urbs* and *oppidum* stand in apposition to the name of a town in the *gen.*? (In the *ablative*.) 159. How is *at* translated before the name of a town, when the action was not done *in*, but *near* it? (By *ad* or *apud*.) 160. How is *local space* expressed? (By the *acc.*, sometimes by the *abl.*)
- 160.\* AT HOME. FROM HOME. HOME, after a verb of motion. INTO THE COUNTRY. FROM THE COUNTRY. IN THE COUNTRY. ON THE GROUND. IN THE FIELD. (*At home*, domi. *From home*, domo. *Home*, domum. *On the ground*, humi, *which may follow a verb of either rest or motion*. *In the field*, militiæ. *Into the country*, rus. *From the country*, rure. *In the country*, ruri; or *less commonly*, rure.)

§ 17. *Gerunds.*

161. Decline '*grieving*' throughout.<sup>4</sup> 162. OF WRITING A LETTER. (*Scribendi epistolam*; or, *scribendæ epistolæ*.) 163. THE LETTER IS TO BE WRITTEN; or, THE LETTER MUST BE WRITTEN; or, WE MUST WRITE THE LETTER, (*scribenda est epistola*, *the letter is to be written*.) 164. Go through, I MUST WRITE.

<sup>1</sup> Omne verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio, modo primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit.

Verum si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur.

<sup>2</sup> Verbis significantibus motum ad locum fere additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione.

<sup>3</sup> Verbis significantibus motum a loco fere additur nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione.

<sup>4</sup> N. Dolere, *grieving*.

G. dolendi, *of grieving*.

D. dolendo, *to grieving*.

Acc. dolere, *grieving*, (ad dolendum, *to grieve*.)

Abl. dolendo, *by grieving*.

The *acc.* is *dolendum* only, when governed by a preposition.

- Sing.* (mihi) scribendum est, *I must write.*  
 (tibi) scribendum est, *thou must write.*  
 (illi) scribendum est, *he must write.*  
*Plur.* (nobis) scribendum est, *we must write.*  
 (vobis) scribendum est, *you must write.*  
 (illis) scribendum est, *they must write.*

165. Go through, *epistola scribenda.*

(N. *Epistola scribenda, a letter to be written.*

G. *epistolæ scribendæ, of writing a letter.*

D. *epistolæ scribendæ, to or for writing a letter.*

Acc. (ad) *epistolam scribendam, to write a letter, (or, to or for writing a letter.)*

Abl. *epistolâ scribendâ, by writing a letter.)*

166. When must the *part. in dus* not be used in agreement with its substantive? (When the verb does not govern the *acc.*) 167. WE MUST SPARE OUR ENEMIES. (*Parcendum est inimicis.*)

### § 18. *Participles.*

168. What kind of sentences may be translated by participles? (Subordinate sentences connected with a principal one by *relative pronouns*, or such *conjunctions* as *when, after, if, since, because, although, &c.*) 169. In what case do a noun, or pronoun, and participle, stand when the *noun* or *pronoun* is not governed by any other word? and what is this construction called? (They stand in the *abl.*, and the construction is called the *ablative absolute*.<sup>1</sup>)
170. HE GAVE THEM THE COUNTRY TO DWELL IN. (He gave them the country *to-be-dwelt-in: habitandam.*)
171. What does the *part. in rus* often express? (The purpose with which a person acts.) 172. What does the *part. in dus* often express? (The *end* or *purpose for which a thing is done.*) 173. Express 'to have a thing *made,*' in the sense of *causing* it to be made. (*Faciendum curare.*)
174. How may '*without*' before the participial substantive

<sup>1</sup> Quibuslibet verbis additur ablativus absolute sumptus.



be translated? (By a participle with *non* or some other *negative* word.)

175. What participle is wanting in all but deponents and neuter-passives? (The participle of the *perfect active*.)  
 176. HAVING LEFT HIS BROTHER. (Relicto fratre, or quum reliquisset fratrem.)

### § 19. Pronouns.

177. MY OWN FAULT. OUR OWN FAULT. (Mea ipsius culpa; Nostra ipsorum culpa.) 178. When —*self*, —*selves*, are to be translated by *ipse*, and a personal pronoun, in what case may *ipse* stand? (The *ipse* generally in the *nominative*, but sometimes in the same case as the personal pronoun.) 179. When may *him*, *his*, *her*, *its*, *theirs*, in a dependent sentence, be translated by *sui* or *suus*, even when they denote the nom. not of their own, but of the principal sentence? (Whenever, from the *grammar* or the *obvious sense*, there would be no danger of understanding the *sui* or *suus* to mean the *nominative of its own verb*.) 180. By what pronoun must *him*, *her*, &c. be translated, when *sui* or *suus* would be understood to mean the nom. of its own verb? (By *ipse*.) 181. Does *suus* ever relate to the *accusative*, or any oblique case? (Yes.) 182. With what pron. is this very common? (With *quisque* or *unusquisque*.) 183. Which gen. pl., *ûm* or *i*, is used after partitives? (The pl. *ûm*.)
184. What is the difference between ‘*is qui pugnat*,’ and ‘*hic* or *ille qui pugnat*?’ (‘*Is qui pugnat*’ means ‘*the combat*’ or ‘*a combatant*,’ while ‘*hic qui pugnat*,’ ‘*ille qui pugnat*,’ signify respectively ‘*this combatant*,’ ‘*yonder combatant*.’) 185. Which of these three pronouns is to be used when *he*, *him*, &c. is without emphasis, simply describing a person or thing *before mentioned*, or *about to be described* by a rel. clause? (*Is*, *ea*, *id*.) 186. By what case only of ‘*is*’ can *his*, *her*, *their*, be translated? (By the *gen*.) 187. Of two things already mentioned, what pronoun means the *latter*? what the *former*? (*Hic* relates to the *nearer*, the *lat-*

- ter* ; *ille* to the more remote, the former.<sup>1</sup>) 188. Which pron. means *that of yours* ? (*Iste.*) 189. MEDEA ILLA. (The famous *Medea.*) 190. Distinguish between *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, referring to different objects. (*Hic* denotes the nearest, *ille* the most remote, *iste* that which is the nearest to the party addressed.<sup>2</sup>)
191. When is *any* to be translated by *quisquam* or *ullus* ? ('*Any*' when all are excluded is *quisquam* or *ullus.*) 192. When by *quivis*, *quilibet* ? ('*Any*' when all are included is *quivis*, or *quilibet* : it then means '*any you please, no matter which.*') 193. When by *quis* ? ('*Any*' is *quis* after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne*, *quo*, *quanto.*) 194. When by *aliquis*, *quispiam* ? ('*Any*' is translated by *aliquis* or *quispiam*, when it means '*some one or other*,' '*some.*') 195. Does *quisquam* ever follow *si* ? (Yes : but it then generally implies that the *existence* of the exception is very doubtful.) 196. By what pronouns may '*a*' sometimes be translated ? (By *quidam*, *aliquis*, or *quispiam.*) 197. What prefix do interrogatives often take ? (The syllable *ec.*) 198. What affix ? (The syllable *nam.*)

### § 20. Comparison.

199. How should '*always*' with two superlatives be translated ? (By *quisque*, agreeing with the same substantives that the superlatives agree with.)  
*Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur,*  
*The deepest rivers always flow with the least sound.*
200. When are the pronouns *that*, *those*, not to be translated ? (When they stand in the *second* member of a comparative sentence for a substantive expressed in the first.) 201. When *quam* is omitted, in what case is the following *subst.* put ? (In the abl.<sup>3</sup>) 202. What case goes with comparatives and superlatives to express the measure of *excess* or *defect* ? (The abl.<sup>4</sup>)

<sup>1</sup> *Hic* et *ille*, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* plerumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur.

<sup>2</sup> Hæc demonstrativa, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, sic distinguuntur : *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat : *iste* eum, qui apud te est ; *ille* eum, qui ab utroque remotus est.

<sup>3</sup> Comparativa, cum exponantur per *quam*, ablativum admittunt.

<sup>4</sup> *Tanto*, *quanto*, *hoc*, *eo* et *quo*, cum quibusdam aliis quæ mensuram excessûs significant, item *ætate* et *natu*, comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur.

203. How are the Eng. *the—the*, = *by how much—by so much*, to be translated? (By *quanto—tanto*; *quo—eo* or *hoc*.)

§ 21. *Remarks on the Tenses, &c.*

204. When may the present be followed by the *imperf. subj.*? (When the present is used, as it often is in narrative, for the *past*.<sup>1</sup>) 205. When is the Eng. *pres.* generally translated by the Latin *future*? (When the action expressed by it is *still future*, which it generally is when the verb in the principal clause is in a *future* tense or the *imperative* mood.) 206. By what tense is the *perf. definite* often translated? (By the *future perfect*.) 207. How are assertions *softened* in Latin? (By putting the verb in the *present* or *perf.* of the *subjunctive*.) 208. What subjunctives are very frequently used in this way? (*Velim, nolim, malim*.) 209. What conjunction is often omitted after *velim*, &c.? (*Ut*.) 210. I HAVE LONG DESIRED. (*Jam pridem cupio*.) 211. Is the *perf. subj.* ever used as an *imperat.*? (Yes.) 212. What other tense is sometimes used as an *imperat.*? (The *future*.) 213. By what tense are questions of *appeal*, or questions for *assent*, to be translated? (By the *present* or *imperfect* of the *subjunctive*, according as a present or past time is referred to.)

§ 22. *Conditional Sentences.*

[☞ The clause with 'if' is the *conditional* clause: the other the *consequent* clause.]

214. In a conditional sentence, how are the verbs translated when *both* are in the indicative? (By the indicative, as in English: but if the *consequent* verb is in the *future*, the conditional verb is more commonly in the present or *perf. subjunctive*.) 215. If both verbs have 'should,' 'would,' or 'were to,' that is, are of the form that generally corresponds to the *imperfect subjunctive*, how should they be translated?

<sup>1</sup> This is called the *præsens historicum*.

(Generally by the *present subjunctive* : but sometimes by the imperfect.)

216. When the consequent verb has a ' *would*' or ' *should*,' but the conditional verb not, how is the translation to be made ? (By the subjunct. *imperf.* or *pluperfect.*<sup>1</sup>)

(214.) { Si quid habet, dat.  
Si quid habebit, dabit.  
Si quid habeat, dabit.

(215.) { Si quid habeat, det.  
Si quid haberet, daret.

(216.) { Si quid haberet, daret.  
Si quid habuisset, dedisset.

217. With what tenses may *si* take the indic. ? (With *pres.*, *perf.*, and *fut.*) 218. With what tenses does *si* always govern the subjunctive ? (With the *imperfect* and *pluperfect.*)

219. What are the conditional forms of the *subj.* ? (*Scriberem*, *scripsissem*, and *scripturus essem* : but *scribam* is often used conditionally.) 220. When should *scripturus essem*, *eram* or *fui*, be used for ' *should have written* ?' (When the thing *would probably have happened*, because it was so *intended* or *arranged*.) 221. What tenses of the *indic.* are used for the *subj.* in conditional sentences ? (The *imperfect* and *pluperfect.*) 222. Is *si* ever omitted ? (Yes.) 223. Where should the verb of the sentence then stand ? (First.)

224. In a dependent conditional sentence, the verb of the consequent clause will be in the *infin.* : what infinitives will take the place respectively of *dat* ? of *dabit* ? *daret* ? *dedisset* ? *daturus esset* ? (Dat will become *dare*. *dabit*, *det*, and *daret*, *daturum esse* : *dedisset*, *daturum fuisse* : *daturus esset*, *erat*, or *fuit*, *daturum fore*.)

### § 23. *Oblique Narration.*

225. Explain the meaning of *oblique narration*. (When the *speech of another* is reported in the *third person*.) 226. In *oblique narration*, in what mood will the principal verbs stand ? (The *infinitive*.) 227. In what mood will the verbs of the *subordinate clauses* stand, provided

<sup>1</sup> Of course, ' *would have*,' ' *should have*,' by the *pluperf.*



they express the words and opinions, not of the *narrator*, but of the speaker? (In the subjunctive.) 228. In oblique narration what is often omitted? (The verb or participle on which the infinitives depend.) 229. In what mood are *questions for answer* asked? (In the subjunctive.) 230. In what mood are *questions of appeal* asked? (In the infinitive.) 231. When questions are thus asked in the *infin.*, may *interrogative pronouns* and *adverbs* be used with the *infin.*? (Yes.) 232. In what mood is the *charge* expressed with *quod*? (In the subj.) 233. How are the *acc.* and *infin.* used with *nē* in direct narration? (In indignant exclamations.)

#### § 24. *The Relative.*

234. Mention some words, phrases, &c., with which *qui* takes the subj. (After *sum*, in 'sunt qui,' 'erant qui,' &c., and in *negative* and *interrogative* sentences, *nemo, nihil, &c. est? quis est? an quisquam est? quotusquisque est?* &c. Also after *adsunt qui, non desunt qui, &c.*, and similar phrases with *reperio, invenio* [to find].)
235. What mood does *qui* govern, when it introduces the *ground* of an assertion? (The subj.) 236. What mood does *qui* take after *quippe, utpote?* (Generally the subjunctive.) 237. What mood does *qui* take, when it is equivalent to *ut* with a *personal* or *possessive* pronoun? (Subj.) 238. Mention some phrases with which *qui* has this force.
- (After (1) *dignus, indignus, idoneus, &c.*  
 (2) *tam, talis, ejusmodi, is (such), &c.*  
 (3) comparatives with *quam*.  
 (4) *is sum (= talis sum), 'I am a man to.'*  
 (5) *quis sum? who am I?*  
 (6) when it expresses a *purpose*.)
239. In what other cases does *qui* govern the subj.? (After *unus* and *solus* signifying 'alone,' 'only,' and to express a *repeated action* taking place in *past time*.<sup>1</sup>)

<sup>1</sup> The verb is then in *imperf.* or *pluperf.*

§ 25. *Quum and other Conjunctions.*

240. When does *quum* take the *indic.*? (When it expresses the *time*, either *simply* or in a *very marked manner*; and in such sentences as ‘*when you say this, you are mistaken.*’)<sup>1</sup>) 241. What mood does *quum*, ‘*when,*’ govern with the *imperf.* and *pluperf.*: and generally when the sentence with *when* can be turned into a *participle*? (The *subj.*) 241.\* Mention some conjunctions that always govern the subjunctive. (Quasi, *tanquam, as if*; *utinam, would that*; *dum, modo, or dummodo, provided only*; *forsitan, perhaps*; *licet, although.*) 242. When are the *pres.* and *perf. subj.* used with *utinam*? (When the thing wished is not to be *represented as impossible to be realized*. The *imperf.* and *pluperf.* express wishes that *are, in the speaker’s opinion, impossible, or unlikely to be realized.*) 243. How is ‘*not*’ generally expressed after *utinam, dum, &c.*? (By *nē.*) 244. When the principal verb is in the present tense, in what mood is the verb after *antequam* or *priusquam* expressed? (In the *pres. indicative* or *subjunctive.*) 245. When the principal verb is in the *fut.*, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *future perfect* or the *present subjunctive*; sometimes in the *present indicative.*) 246. When the principal verb is in the *past* tense, in what mood or moods may the dependent verb be? (In the *perfect indicative*, or in the *imperfect subjunctive.*) 247. When should the *subj.* always be used after *antequam, priusquam*? (Whenever it is stated or implied to be *necessary, proper, or designed* with a view to some *purpose*, that the one action or event should precede the other.) 248. When do *dum, donec, quoad, = until*, take the *in-*

<sup>1</sup> In such sentences what is said in the principal clause is not only *contemporaneous* with the action expressed in the *quum* clause, but is, actually *included* in it.

When does *quum* always take the subjunctive? [When it means *although, whereas, since*, (when *since* does not express *time.*)]

- dicative?* (When they merely *mark the time* up to which the action or state is to be continued.) 249. When the *subjunctive?* (When that up to which the action or state is to be continued, is to be represented, not as a *fact*, but only as what *may possibly* occur; especially when it is itself *the object pursued*.) 250. What mood do they and *quamdiu* always take, in the sense of *as long as?* (The *indicative*.) 251. With the adverbs meaning *after*, *as soon as*, how should the English *pluperf.* generally be translated? (By the *perf.*)
252. What are the conjunctions by which '*although*' is to be translated? (*Etsi*, *tametsi*, *quamquam*, with the *indicative*; or *licet* with the *subjunctive*.)
253. What is *quamvis*, and what mood does it govern? (*However much*; *however*, with *subj.*: it may often however be rendered *although*.) 254. What is *etiamsi*, and what mood does it take? (*Even if*; *even though*: it governs *indic.* or *subjunct.*) 255. Do any other conjunctions express *though*? (Yes: sometimes *quum* and *ut*.)
256. What is the Lat. for '*because*,' and what mood does it take? (*Quia* with *indic.*)
257. What is the conjunction for '*since*'?<sup>1</sup> (*Quoniam* with *indic.*)

## (Examples.)

244. { Ante rorat quam pluit, *It drops before it rains.*  
 Tempestas minatur antequam surgat, *A tempest  
 threatens before it gets up.*
245. { Antequam aliquo loco consedero, longas a me literas non exspectabis, *Till I settle somewhere, you will not expect long letters from me.*  
 Antequam de republicâ dicam, exponam vobis breviter, &c.  
 Priusquam respondeo . . . dicam, &c. (Phil. ii. 3.)

<sup>1</sup> When it gives a reason: not '*since*' of *time*; which is *ex quo*, &c.

246. { Hæc omnia ante facta sunt, quam Verres Italiam  
attigit, *All these things were done before Verres  
reached Italy.*
249. { Ducentis annis ante quam Romam caperent, in  
Italiam Galli transcenderunt, *The Gauls crossed over  
into Italy two hundred years before they took Rome.*
- { Exspectabo dum venias, *I will wait till you come.*  
Exspecto dum venias, *I am waiting till you come.*  
Exspectabam dum venires, *I was waiting till you  
came.*



## VII. CAUTIONS.

---

1. *Him, her, them,* (or *he, she, they,* when they are to be translated by the *accusative*.) must be translated by the proper case of *sui*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his, hers, its, theirs,* must be translated by *suus*.
2. In a sentence with 'that' dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated by the present (and imperfect) infinitive, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as over before the time of the principal verb.
3. 'Should' after 'that' is to be translated by the present infinitive when it does not express either duty or a future event.
4. 'Would,' 'should,' after a past tense are future forms :
 

|   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| } | He says that he will come.  |
| } | He said that he would come. |
5. 'Thing' should be expressed by '*res,*' (fem.,) when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant :  
Thus '*of many things,*' not *multorum,* but *multarum rerum*.
6. *Cum* is written after, and as one word with the ablatives *me, te, &c.* : *mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*.
7. Many English verbs become transitive by the addition of a preposition ; for instance, *to smile at, &c.*
8. 'For' before a substantive or pronoun followed by the *infin.* is not to be translated. The construction is the *acc.* with *infin.*  
It is a sin { for a boy not to obey his parents.  
                  } that a boy should not obey his parents.
9. 'As' and 'but' are often (in effect) *relatives* : 'but' being equivalent to the *relat.* with *not*.
10. 'Such' in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus, quantus* ; not *talis, qualis*.
11. 'That,' when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.
12. *Neuter verbs of motion* often form their *perfect definite* of the *active voice* with '*am,*' not '*have.*'
13. 'To' is omitted after many verbs, which thus seem to govern two accusatives.
14. When 'that' introduces a consequence, 'that not' is *ut non,* not *ne*.  
*That—not* { for a purpose . . . *ne*.  
                  } — consequence . . . *ut non*.
15. After verbs of *fearing,* the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated by the *present or imperfect subjunctive,* with *ut* or *nē*.
16. *Who, what, which,* are often *dependent interrogatives,* especially after verbs of *asking, knowing, doubting, &c.*
17. '*May,*' '*might,*' sometimes mean '*can,*' '*could,*' and must be translated by *possum*.
18. The *perf. infin.* must be translated by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought,* unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could, &c.,* refer.
19. '*Of you,*' '*of us,*' are not to be translated after *how many,* or *other numerals,* when the *whole party* are spoken of. When *of you,* are omitted, the verb will be of the *first* and *second pers.* respectively.
20. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively,* and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.
21. 'What' is sometimes used for '*how,*' (*quam*;) sometimes for '*how great,*' (*quantus*.)

22. 'For' and 'as' are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.
23. When *one, two, &c.*, mean *one, two, &c. apiece*, or *for each*, they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singuli, bini, &c.* See C. 38.
24. To express the *future subjunctive passive*, we must not use the *participle in dus* with *sim, essem, &c.*, but *futurum sit, esset, &c.*, followed by *ut*.
25. After an expression of time, 'that' is often used for *on which*.
26. What is *in form* the *present participle active* is often 'the *participial substantive*' or gerund. It is always so, when it *governs* or is *governed*, instead of *merely agreeing*.
27. 'I have to do it' must be translated by the part. in *dus*.  
(*Eng.*) With whom we *have* to live.  
(*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived*, (*quibuscum vivendum est.*)
28. 'It is,' followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.*, generally expresses *necessity, fitness*, or something *intended*.
29. But 'is to be' sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness*, or *intention*, but *possibility*: as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may* or *can* be found in the fifth book.
30. A *present participle* must be translated by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over*, before that expressed by the verb *begins*.
31. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.*, when the verb is *deponent*.
32. 'But' (= *except, unless*) after a negative is *nisi*, or (if it stands before a substantive) the prepos. *præter*.
33. When the action was not done *in*, but only near a town, 'at' must be translated by *ad* or *apud*.
34. 'One' often means 'some one' (*aliquis*) or 'a certain one,' (*quidam.*)
35. 'Will' and 'would,' 'will not' and 'would not,' are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.  
They are to be so translated when for  
*will,* *would*, we may substitute  
*is* (are, &c.) *willing,* *was* (were, &c.) *willing.*
36. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case: and then by what preposition, or what case.
37. O never translate, *puer admodum care,*  
'I am going to plough,' by 'sum iens arare.'  
With *eo* the phrase has got nothing to do:  
Be *sum araturus* the Latin for you.
38. In so many *apiece*, leave 'apiece' quite alone,  
But of numerals choose a *distributive* one.

### VIII. DISTINCTION OF SYNONYMES.

1. Qui *querit*, REPERIT: non *quæsit* INVENIUNTUR.  
2. Tu *succende* rogum; tædas *accende* facesque.  
3. Navis, equus, currusque *vehunt*; PORTABIT *asellus*  
Pondera, PORTABUNTQUE *humeri*; leviora *feruntur*.  
*Læva* GERIT *clipeum*; vestesque GERUNTUR *et arma*.  
4. CONTINGIT use of things we *like*;  
But ACCIDIT, when *evils* strike.  
5. *Vilia* DESPICIMUS: CONTEMNE *pericula*, miles:  
SPERNE *voluptates*, fœdasque *libidinis* escas.  
DESPICERE relates to what we *might value* or *respect*: CONTEMNERE to  
what we *might fear* or *think important*: SPERNERE, to what we *might*  
*accept* or *pursue*.  
6. EXIMO *quæ mala* sunt; ADIMO *bona*: DEMERE *possum*  
*Quidlibet*: hæc teneas *justo discrimine* verba.  
7. Pars ORÆ est LITUS: retinentur *flumina* RIPIS.  
Hence ORA, *coast*; LITUS, *shore*; RIPA, *bank*.

## APPENDIX I.

---

Verbs followed by *Gen.*, *Dat.*, or *Abl.*, where *we* use *no* preposition, and should therefore be likely to put the accusative. (Those with asterisks take also an *acc.* of the *thing*, though some of them only when the *acc.* is a *neut. pron.*)

| GEN.  | DAT.                              | ABL.  |
|---|-----------------------------------|---|
| <i>obtain</i> , <i>potior</i> , ( <i>abl.</i> )               | <i>abuse</i> , }                  | <i>abuse</i> , <i>abūtor.</i>                                     |
| <i>to pity</i> ,         { <i>misereor.</i>                   | <i>revile</i> , }                 | <i>discharge</i> , } <i>fungor.</i>                               |
|   | <i>advise</i> , }                 | <i>perform</i> , }  |
| <i>forget</i> ,         { <i>miseresco.</i>                   | <i>answer</i> , }                 | <i>enjoy</i> , <i>fruor.</i>                                      |
|   | <i>believe</i> , }                | <i>obtain</i> , <i>potior</i> , ( <i>gen.</i> )                   |
| <i>remember</i> ,     { <i>obliviscor</i> , ( <i>acc.</i> )   | <i>command</i> , }                | <i>require</i> , }  |
| <i>recollect</i> ,    { <i>memini</i> , ( <i>acc.</i> )       | <i>commission</i> , }             | <i>need</i> ,           { <i>egeo</i> ,         { ( <i>gen.</i> ) |
|   | <i>charge</i> , }                 | <i>want</i> ,           { <i>indigeo</i> , }                      |
| <i>require</i> ,       { <i>recordor</i> , ( <i>acc.</i> )    | <i>congratulate</i> , }           | <i>use</i> , <i>utor.</i>   |
| <i>need</i> ,           { <i>reminiscor</i> , ( <i>acc.</i> ) | <i>displease</i> , }              | <i>want</i> ,           { <i>careo.</i>                           |
|   | <i>direct</i> , }                 | <i>am without</i> , }   |
|   | <i>envy</i> , }                   |   |
|   | <i>favor</i> , }                  |   |
|   | <i>flatter</i> , }                |   |
|   | <i>give</i> , }                   |   |
|   | <i>help</i> , }                   |   |
|   | <i>aid</i> , }                    |   |
|   | <i>assist</i> , }                 |   |
|   | <i>succor</i> ,                   |   |
|   | { <i>subvenio</i> ,               |   |
|   | { <i>succurro.</i>                |   |
|   | <i>heal</i> , }                   |   |
|   | <i>cure</i> , }                   |   |
|   | <i>hurt</i> ,                     |   |
|   | <i>indulge</i> ,                  |   |
|   | <i>marry</i> ,                    |   |
|   | <i>obey</i> ,                     |   |
|   | { <i>pāreo</i> ,                  |   |
|   | { <i>obedio</i> ,                 |   |
|   | { <i>obtempero.</i>               |   |
|   | <i>pardon</i> ,                   |   |
|   | <i>permit</i> ,                   |   |
|   | <i>persuade</i> ,                 |   |
|   | <i>please</i> ,                   |   |
|   | <i>resist</i> ,                   |   |
|   | <i>oppose</i> ,                   |   |
|   | { <i>resisto</i> ,                |   |
|   | { <i>repugno.</i>                 |   |
|   | <i>rival</i> ,                    |   |
|   | <i>satisfy</i> ,                  |   |
|   | <i>spare</i> ,                    |   |
|   | <i>suit</i> ,                     |   |
|   | <i>threaten</i> ,                 |   |
|   | { <i>amulor</i> , ( <i>acc.</i> ) |   |
|   | <i>satisfacio.</i>                |   |
|   | <i>parco.</i>                     |   |
|   | <i>convenio.</i>                  |   |
|   | { <i>minor</i> ,                  |   |
|   | { <i>minitor.</i>                 |   |
|   | <i>trust</i> ,                    |   |
|   | { <i>fido</i> ,                   |   |
|   | { <i>confido</i> , } <i>abl.</i>  |   |





INITIALS OF ROMAN NAMES. (*Prænomina.*)

|           |            |                 |      |            |                  |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|------|------------|------------------|
| A.        | stands for | <i>Aulus.</i>   | N.   | stands for | <i>Numerius.</i> |
| APP.      | _____      | <i>Appius.</i>  | P.   | _____      | <i>Publius.</i>  |
| C.        | _____      | <i>Caius.</i>   | Q.   | _____      | <i>Quintus.</i>  |
| CN.       | _____      | <i>Cnæus.</i>   | SER. | _____      | <i>Servius.</i>  |
| D.        | _____      | <i>Decimus.</i> | SEX. | _____      | <i>Sextus.</i>   |
| K.        | _____      | <i>Kæso.</i>    | SP.  | _____      | <i>Spurius.</i>  |
| L.        | _____      | <i>Lucius.</i>  | T.   | _____      | <i>Titus.</i>    |
| M.        | _____      | <i>Marcus.</i>  | TI.  | _____      | <i>Tiberius.</i> |
| M'. or M? | _____      | <i>Manius.</i>  |      |            |                  |

## APPENDIX III.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

(1) *Conjunctions governing the subjunctive.*

|                  |   |  |   |
|------------------|---|--|---|
| ut, <sup>1</sup> | { <i>that, in order that, (often rendered by the infinitive.<sup>1</sup>) that and carry 'not,' (after verbs of fear.)</i>  | quomīnus,                                | { <i>(by which—the less,) that not. from, with the participial substantive.</i> |
| quo,             | { <i>that, (and carry 'the' to the comparative.)</i>  | utīnam, would <i>that.</i>               |   |
| ne,              | { <i>not, (with imperat. or subj. used imperatively.) that, and carry 'not : ' lest. that, (after verbs of fear.) it may often be rendered by not with the infin.</i> | dum,                                     | { <i>provided that : if only.</i>   |
| neve,            |   | modo,                                    | { <i>(after these conjunctions 'not' is nē.)</i>                                |
| neu,             | { <i>and that not ; nor.</i>  | dummodo,                                 | { <i>as if.</i>   |
| quin,            | { <i>but, (as used after negatives.) the relative with not. 'as not' with infin. from or without with the participial substantive.</i>                                | ut si,                                   | { <i>(pres. subj. rendered by the perfect after these conjunctions.)</i>        |
|                  |   | ac si,                                   |   |
|                  |   | tanquam,                                 |   |
|                  |   | licet, <i>although.</i>                  |   |
|                  |   | quamvis, <i>however much ; although.</i> |   |
|                  |   | quum, <i>since ; although.</i>           |   |
|                  |   | nedum,                                   |   |
|                  |   | nedum ut,                                | { <i>much less.</i>   |

(2) *Other conjunctions, several of which take the subjunctive occasionally, (especially with the imperfect and pluperfect.)*

|                                 |   |                        |   |
|---------------------------------|---|------------------------|---|
| quod,                           | { <i>because, that, (after verbs expressing emotions, and when it refers to a demonstrative pronoun.)</i> | simūlac,               |   |
| quum, <sup>2</sup> <i>when.</i> |   | simulatque,            | { <i>as soon as, (generally with perf. indicative.)</i> |
| postquam,                       | { <i>after, (generally with perf. indicative.)</i>  | ut primum,             |   |
| posteaquam,                     |   | quum primum,           |   |
|                                 |   | ut,                    | { <i>when ; after.</i>                                  |
|                                 |   | ubi,                   |   |
|                                 |   | antequam, <sup>3</sup> | { <i>before.</i>  |
|                                 |   | priusquam,             |   |

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *ut* = *so that ; on condition that.* Sometimes = *although.*

<sup>2</sup> *Quum*, 'when,' often takes the subjunctive: it should generally do so, when the verb with *when* could be turned into a participle.

<sup>3</sup> *Antequam* and *priusquam* mostly take the subj. of the imperf. and pluperf.; and whenever it is meant that one thing is necessary or designed to precede another. The indicative is used when mere priority is to be expressed.

|   |  |
|---|--|
| dum, <sup>1</sup> donec, } until; as long as, (dum, | itaque, and so; therefore.             |
| quoad, } whilst.)                                   | igitur,                                |
| quam diu, as long as.                               | propterea, } therefore                 |
| si, <sup>2</sup> if.                                | idcirco, }                             |
| sin, but if: sin minus, but if not.                 | ergo, }                                |
| nisi, ni, unless.                                   | ideo, } hinc, hence; therefore         |
| etsi,   | quare, }                               |
| tametsi, } although; even though.                   | quapropter, } wherefore.               |
| etiamsi, }  | quamobrem, }                           |
| et, que, ac, atque, and, (ac seldom before          | quocirca, }                            |
| k sounds.)  | et—et, }                               |
| etiam, (before its } even; also; too.               | atque—atque, }                         |
| word,) } (etiam, in answers,                        | ac—ac, } both—and;                     |
| quōque, (after its } is 'yes.')                     | tam—quam, } not only—but also.         |
| word,) }  | tum—tum, }                             |
| et,   | quum—tum, }                            |
| aut, vel, ve, or.                                   | non solum, } verum (or) not only, but  |
| verum, vero, but.                                   | non inodo, } sed) etiam } also.        |
| autem, at, ast, atqui, sed, but.                    | aut—aut, } either—or.                  |
| tamen, attāmen, } yet; notwithstanding;             | vel—vel, }                             |
| veruntamen, } nevertheless.                         | sive—sive, } be it that—or be it that; |
| quia, because.                                      | seu—seu, } either—or: whether—or.      |
| quippe, because; inasmuch as                        | nunc—nunc, } now—now; one while—       |
| quoniam, } since.                                   | modo—modo, } another.                  |
| quandoquidem, }                                     | nec—nec, } neither—nor.                |
| quando, when, since.                                | neque—neque, }                         |
| siquidem, since; if indeed.                         | nec, alone, may often be rendered by   |
| quatēnus, in as far as.                             | 'and' and 'not' carried to the verb.   |
| nam, namque, } for.                                 |  |
| enim, etēnim, }                                     |  |

Obs. *Enim, autem, vero, quidem, quoque*, cannot stand as the first words of a sentence or clause: *igitur* seldom does.

<sup>1</sup> *Dum, donec, quoad*. In the sense of *until*, take the *subj.* when there is reference to an object to be obtained. In the sense of 'as long as' they have the *indicative*.

<sup>2</sup> *Si* and its compounds take the *subjunctive* of the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and of the other tenses when the condition is to be expressed *doubtfully*.

## INDEX.

---

(On finding root of *present* from root of *perfect*.)

To find the root of the *present* from the root of the *perfect*, we must remember how the root of the *perfect* was formed.

- a) Thus if *āv*, *iv*, *u* precede 'it' or any other termination of the tenses that have the root of the *perfect*, we get the root of the *present* by throwing them away. But sometimes *u* is to be retained.
- b) We must remember that *x* is made up of *cs*, or *gs*, or *qus*: and therefore the root of the *present* ends in *c*, *g*, or *qu*: sometimes however in *v*, *h*, or the vowel that precedes *x*.  
[*duxi, texi, coxi*, from *duco, tego, coquo*.  
*vixi, vexi, struxi*, from *vivo, veho, struo*.]
- c) We must remember that *ps* may be made up of *bs*: so that the root of the *present* may end in *b*; not necessarily in *p*.  
(*scrips-it* = *scrib-sit*: R. *scrib*.)
- d) Sometimes an *n* or *m* must be inserted before the final mute, to give the root of the *present*.  
(*vīc-it*; R. *vīc*: *rūp-it*; R. *rump*.)
- e) Sometimes *ē* must be turned into *ā*, to get the root of the *present*.  
(*jēc-it*; R. *jāc*.)
- f) Before *s*, a *d* has often been thrown away.  
(*clausi* = *claud-si*; R. *claud*.)
- g) An *s* before *s* is a *b*, *d*, or *r*, in the *present*.  
(*jussi, cessi, gessi*, from *jub-eo, ced-o, ger-o*.)

[3] When a verb is followed by *io*, the meaning is that the first person of the *pres.* ends in *io*.]

## LATIN INDEX.

---

[p. refers to the page. Numerals below 7 refer to the Exercises, Part II. Above 6, to the Vocabularies, Part II. Numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to the Exercises, Part II.]

---

- A, ab, abs, *from; by*: a fronte, (24.) *in front*: ab u. c. *stands for ab urbe conditâ, from the city built; from the building of the city.*
- abesse, *to be absent; to be far from.*
- abire, *to go away.*<sup>1</sup>
- abolere, *to abrogate.*
- abolescere, *pass away, decay.*
- abrîpere, (ripu, rept,) 23, *to snatch away; hurry away.*
- abs-condere, (did, dit,) *to hide.*
- absens, (23,) *absent*: construe 'in his absence.'
- absolvere, (solv. solût,) *to acquit, 12.*
- abstinere, *to abstain from, 25.*
- absumere, *to take away, destroy.*
- ac, and.
- accedere, (cess,) *go up to; approach.*
- accidere, Syn. 4, *to happen; befall*: accidit, 21, *it happens; or, it happened.*
- accipere, (cēp, cept,) *to receive, 2, 39.*
- accipiter, *a hawk, 2.*
- accommodare se, *to adapt.*
- accurate, *accurately, 40.*
- accurrere, *to run up.*
- accusare, *to accuse.*
- acer, p. 171, *sharp, active, fierce.*
- acerbe, *sharply, 20.*
- acerbitas, *sharpness, 15.*
- acerbus, 36, *sour; bitter.*
- Achilles, (23.) *Achilles, the bravest of the Greeks who fought at Troy*: Gen. is. ācies, *sharpness; sight; line or order of battle; 'ranks.'* aciem instruere, 26, 29.
- acquirere, *to acquire.*
- acuere, *to sharpen.*
- aculeus, 13, *a sting, a thorn.*
- acumen, 19, *acuteness.*
- acute, *sharply; wittily.*
- ad, to, at; ad tempus, (25,) *for a time; ad—usque, 19, up to.*
- addere, *to add.*
- addictus morti, *condemned to death, [addicere.]*
- addiscere, 27, *to learn more.*
- adducere, 30, *to lead to; induce.*
- adeo, 21, (23,) *so; in such a manner.*
- adesse, (32,) *to be present, to be at hand.*
- adferre, (fero, irreg. verb,) *to bring.*
- adhærere, *to adhere; to be joined to; to stick; or, be caught.*
- adhibere, 25, *to use, to employ.*
- ad-hinnire, *to neigh at any thing.*
- adhuc, 12, (22,) *hitherto, yet.*
- adimere, (ēm, empt,) *to take away something desirable.*
- adipisci, (adept,) *to obtain, gain, win.*
- adjuvare, *to help, (acc.)*
- administrare, 23, *to administer.*
- admirabilis, *admirable, wonderful.*
- admōdum, *very.*
- admonere, (monu, monit,) *to admonish, remind.*
- admōvere, *to move (a thing) to.*
- adnumerare, 31, *to reckon to.*
- adolescere, *to grow up; grow to maturity.*
- adoriri, 37,<sup>2</sup> *to attack, fall on, accost.*
- adornare, (25,) *to adorn.*
- ascendere, 12, *climb to, ascend, mount.*
- ad-scribere, [to write in addition to.] ut se ad amicitiam tertium adscriberent, (to admit him as a third person into their friendship;) *to let him too be their friend.*
- adspectus, (10,) *look, sight*: Gen. ūs.
- adspargere, (spers, spers,) *to besprinkle.*
- adspicere, io, (spex, spect,) *to behold.*

<sup>1</sup> See Conjug. of eo, inf. ire. Irreg. verbs, p. 123, *First Latin Book.*

<sup>2</sup> In Fab. 4, p. 230 *to address or accost*: meaning, however, that it was done with a deceitful intention.



- adulescere**, (suev, suet.) *to accustom, (trans. ;) to accustom myself.*  
**advect**, see *advehere*.  
**advehere**, (vex, vect.) *to bring.*  
**advenire**, (10.) *to come to.*  
**adventare**, 29, *to approach.*  
**adventus**, 10, *approach*; G. ūs.  
**adversarius**, 23, *enemy.*  
**adversus**, *adverse, towards*; **adverso tempore**, (at an adverse season,) *in adversity.*  
**ædes**, pl. *house.*  
**ægre ferre**, *to take (any thing) ill; to be displeased at (any thing.)*  
**ædificare**, *to build.*  
**ædilitas curulis**, (33,) *the Curule Ædileship; the dignity of Curule Ædile.*  
**ædilitius**, (37,) *one who has been Ædile.*  
**ægrotus**, *sick.*  
**Ægyptii**, *the Egyptians.*  
**Ænēas**, *Æneas, a Trojan prince*; G. æ, App. ii.  
**æqualis**, (adj.) *of the same age.*  
**æquare**, (33,) *to make equal; to equalize.*  
**æque ac**, 27, *just as, as.*  
**æquitas**, *equity, justice.*  
**æquus**, *even, equal, just, fair*; **æquus animus**, *resignation.*  
**æër**, *the air.* See p. 168, 71.  
**æs alienum**, 33, (another's money =) *debt.*  
**æstas**, *summer.*  
**æstimare**, *to value.*  
**ætas**, *time of life, age.*  
**in æternum**, *forever.*  
**ævum**, *age, an age.*  
**afficere**, io, *to affect; injuriã afficere, to wrong; animum voluptate, to give pleasure to the mind; pœnã, to visit with punishment; ultimo supplicio, to execute, to put to death.*  
**affirmare**, *to affirm.*  
**affligere**, (flic, flict,) *to afflict.*  
**Agamemnon**, *the commander-in-chief of the Greeks at Troy*; G. õnis.  
**agãso**, *muleteer*; G. õnis.  
**age**, (26,) *come!*  
**ager**, 5, *field, territory*; G. agri.  
**agere**, (æg, act,) *to do, to act, to drive, to spend, (life, time, &c. ;) causam, to plead a cause; quid agis?*  
**ag-grëdior**, (gress,) *to attack, [from ad to, grãdior to walk.]*  
**agitare**, *to drive.*  
**agnoscere**, (nov, nõt,) *to recognise, acknowledge.*  
**agnus**, *lamb.*  
**agricõla**, 3, 7, *a husbandman.*  
**agricultūra**, *agriculture, tillage.*  
**ain' tu?** (for aisne tu?) *say you so? how so?*  
**Alcibiades**, Gen. is, *an Athenian, a pupil of Socrates, and general in the Peloponnesian war.*  
**alere**, p. 162, *to nourish, support.*  
**Alexander**, G. dri, *a king of Macedon, called 'the Great'*  
**alienus**, *belonging to another: render 'another's,' 'other men's.'*  
**alimentum**, *nourishment, food.*  
**aliquamdiu**, *for some time.*  
**aliquando**, p. 172, *some time or other.*  
**aliquis**, p. 169, *any one, any, some.*  
**aliquid**, (neut.,) *something; some.* Before a *genitive* it is to be translated by *some*, and the *genitive* not to have 'of.'  
**aliquot**, *some, several.*  
**aliquõties**, *several times.*  
**aliter**, 24, *otherwise.*  
**alius**, p. 151, 30, *other, another*; G. ius.  
**al-ligare**, *to tie up.*  
**allõqui**, (locut,) *speak to, address.*  
**aloë**, *the aloe*; G. es, App. ii.  
**Alpes**, *the Alps*; G. ium.  
**alter**, p. 151, *another; one more: alter—alter, the one—the other.*  
**alteruter**, *one or the other, one of the two.*  
**altitudo**, *height.*  
**altus**, *high, deep; loud.* **altum mare**, *the deep sea, or high sea.*  
**amare**, *to love.*  
**amãrus**, *bitter.*  
**ambire gratiam**, *to court the favor (of.)*  
**ambitio**, *ambition.*  
**ambitus**, *bribery*; G. ūs.  
**ambulare**, *to walk*; in **jus ambulare**, *to go to law; to go before a magistrate.*  
**amicũlum**, *cloak, mantle.*  
**amicitia**, *friendship.*  
**amicus**, 3, *friend*; **amicum habere ali-quem**, *to have a man for your friend.*  
**ãmittere**, (mĩs, miss,) 24, *to lose.*  
**amnis**, *river.*  
**amœnitas**, *beauty, (of places, &c.)*  
**amor**, *love.*  
**amussis**, Abl. i, *carpenter's rule, plumb line.*  
**amphibium**, *an amphibious animal.*  
**an.**—Synt. 54, p. 269, note 1.  
**anas**, *ãtis, duck.*  
**an-ceps**, (cipitis,) *doubtful.*  
**Anchĩses**, *a Trojan, the father of Æneas*; G. æ, App. ii.  
**ancilla**, *maid-servant; maid.*  
**angiportus**, ūs, *lane.*  
**anguis**, *snake.*  
**Anglus**, *English; an Englishman.*  
**angustiã**, *a narrow pass.*  
**angustus**, *narrow.*  
**anima**, *breath, vital principle, soul.* **animam agere**, (to be spending the vital principle, =) *to be near death; to be about to die.*  
**animal**, *animal*; G. ãlis.  
**animi levitas**, *lightness of mind, thoughtlessness.*  
**animus**, *mind, soul, heart, feeling, intention*; **animus me fallit**, *I am mistaken.*  
**Anio**, G. õnis, *a river that flows into the Tiber.*  
**annũlus**, *ring.*

- annus, year. tertius est annus, ex quo,  
 (it is the third year from that which, =)  
 'it is three years since,' &c.  
 antea, before, (adv.)  
 antecēdere, to go before; to excel.  
 anteferre, to prefer.  
 antequam, before, (conjunctive adv.)  
 antiquus, ancient.  
 antrum, cave.  
 anus, old woman.  
 anxius, anxious.  
 Apelles, G. is, a celebrated Grecian painter.  
 aperire, (aperu, apert.) p. 164, to open.  
 Apollo, G. inis, Apollo, the god of poetry  
 and prophecy.  
 ap-pārēre, (paru,) to appear.  
 appellare, to call to, appeal to.  
 appellere classem, (24,) (to drive a fleet  
 to, =) to put into a port, to land.  
 appētere, to desire, long to attain.  
 ap-properare, to hasten up.  
 aptus, fit.  
 apud, at, by, amongst, in the house of.  
 āqua, 3, water. aqua marina, sea-water,  
 salt water.  
 āquila, 2, eagle.  
 āra, (13,) altar.  
 ārare, 1, to plough.  
 Arāris, (a river in Gaul,) the Saône.  
 arbitrium.—See note on Ex. 43.  
 arbor, (8,) tree. fem. G. ōris.  
 arcānum, secret.  
 arcēre, to ward off, keep off,—exclude  
 from.  
 arcessere, p. 163, to send for, summon.  
 architectus, architect.  
 arcus, bow; G. ūs, (Dat. pl. ūbus.)  
 arēna, 3, sand.  
 argentum, silver.  
 Argi, G. ōrum, Argos, a town of Greece,  
 in the Peloponnesus.  
 Aristides, a noble Athenian, famed for  
 his justice.  
 arma capere, to take arms.  
 ar-rigere, (rex, rect,) to raise up, prick  
 up.  
 ar-ripere, io, (ripu, rept,) to snatch up, to  
 snatch hold of, seize.  
 ars, tis, art.  
 ars oratoria, oratory: vid. bonus.  
 arti-fex, (ficus,) artist.  
 arvum, ploughed land, cornfield, field.  
 arx, citadel.  
 ascendere, to ascend, climb.  
 asīnus, 2, ass.  
 assiduitas, assiduity, industry.  
 astrum, constellation, star.  
 at, but. at vero, but.  
 Athenæ, ārum, Athens.  
 Atheniensis, 14, an Athenian.  
 atque, and.  
 atqui, but.  
 atrāmentum, 13, ink.  
 attentus, (at-tendere,) attentive. parum  
 attentus, (too little attentive,) very in-  
 attentive.
- atrox, terrible, wild; G. atrōcis.  
 attingere, (tig, tact,) 40, to touch, reach.  
 attonare, to astound.  
 auceps, (for avi-ceps,) bird-catcher,  
 [avis, bird; capere, to take.] G. au-  
 cūpis.  
 auctor, an adviser. quibus auctoribus,  
 ('who being the advisers') may be  
 rendered 'by whose advice.'  
 auctoritas, authority.  
 auctumnus, 28, autumn.  
 audacia, 17, boldness.  
 audax, 17, bold; G. ācis.  
 audēre, (ausus sum,) to dare, to pre-  
 sume.  
 audire, to hear.  
 aufugere, io, 24, to fly away.  
 augēre, (aux, auct,) to increase: trans.  
 aureus, of gold, golden.  
 auris, ear.  
 aurum, 4, gold.  
 auscultare, 6, to listen.  
 aut, or; aut—aut, either—or.  
 autem, but.  
 auxilium, 5, help; auxilia, 5, auxiliary  
 forces.  
 avaritia, avarice.  
 avārus, greedy, avaricious.  
 āvis, 3, bird.  
 avuncūlus, uncle.
- Baculus, or baculum, stick, staff.  
 balæna, whale.  
 barbarus, barbarous.  
 barbarus, barbarian; one who was not a  
 Greek.  
 beate, happily.  
 beatus, happy. beatum ferre aliquem, to  
 call a man happy.  
 bellare, to wage war; bellandi stu-  
 dium = love of war.  
 bellua, beast.  
 bellum, 5, war; gerere, to wage war.  
 bēne, well.  
 beneficium, 14, benefit.  
 beneficus, bountiful.  
 benevolentia, 26, benevolence, goodness.  
 benignitas, 25, bountifulness, goodness  
 benignus, bountiful.  
 bestia, beast, wild beast.  
 bībēre, (bīb, bībīt,) to drink. p. 161, 55.  
 blandimentum, 15, blandishment.  
 biennium, the space of two years.  
 bis, twice.  
 Bœotia, a country in middle Greece;  
 capital, Thebes.  
 bonitas, goodness. G. ātis.  
 bōnum, a good thing, a blessing.  
 bōnus, good: bonæ artes, = useful learn-  
 ing; the arts and sciences.  
 bos, bōvis, p. 168, ox.  
 brachium, 5, arm.  
 brēvis, short.  
 Brīsēis, Briseis; G. īdis.  
 Britannicus, British.

**Brundisium, Brundisium, a town of lower Italy.**  
brutus, *brute, brutish.*

**Cācūmen, 15, the top, peak.**  
cadaver, (n.) *corpse.*  
cādere, p. 161, *to fall.*  
cæcus, *blind.*  
cædere, (cecīd, cæs,) p. 161, *to slay, kill.*  
Cæsar, *Cæsar*; G. āris.  
calamitas, *a calamity.*  
calcar, *a spur*; G. aris.  
cālidus, *warm.*  
callēre bene, *to be well skilled in.*  
callidus, *skilful*; callidissime, *very skilful.*  
calor, *heat*; G. ōris.  
campus, *field.*  
candīdus, *white.*  
cānēre, 1, p. 162, 58, *to sing.*  
cānis, *dog*; G. is.  
Cannæ, ārum, *Cannæ, a town in Campania.*  
Cannensis, 17, *of Cannæ.*  
cantare, 9, *to sing.*  
cantilēna, (9,) *song.*  
cantillare, 4, *to trill.*  
cantus, *song*; G. ūs.  
cāpere, io, p. 161, 55; arma capere, *to take arms.*  
capessere, p. 163, *to seize hold of, undertake.*  
capitūs, (*of the head, =*) *to death.*  
capra, *goat.*  
captīvus, 15, *captive.*  
captūrus, fut. part. of capio, *to take.*  
Capua, *Capua, the capital of Campania, in southern Italy.*  
cāput, p. 147, *head*; capite or capitūs damnatus, 38, *condemned to death.*  
carcer, p. 147, *prison*; G. ēris.  
cārēre, p. 159, 1. (governs abl.) *to want, to be without.*  
caritas, 37, *affection.*  
carmen, G. īnis, *song.*  
cārō, p. 147, *flesh*; G. carnis.  
carpere, p. 161, 55, *to pluck.*  
Carthāginiensis, 15, *Carthaginian.*  
Carthāgo, īnis, *a powerful city in Africa, founded by Queen Dido, (from Tyre); the rival of Rome.*  
cārus, *dear.*  
castigāre, *to chastise.*  
cāstra, (pl.) *a camp.*  
castus, *chaste.*  
casus, (31.) *misfortune*; G. ūs.  
casu, *by chance.*  
Catilinarii, *the Catilinarian conspirators.*  
Cāto, ōnis, *a Roman famed for his inflexible adherence to his principles; he lived between the second and third Punic wars.*  
causa, *cause*; causā, *for the sake of*; causam agere, *to plead a cause. (as advocate); causam dīcere, to plead one's own cause.*

cautus, 25, *cautious.*  
cāvea, *a cage.*  
cavēre, (cāv, caut,) p. 160, *to beware of.*  
cāvus, *hollow.*  
cēdere, p. 161, *to yield.*  
cēlebratus, part. of celebrare, *celebrated.*  
celeritas, *swiftness*; G. ātis.  
celeriter, *quickly.*  
celsus, *high, tall.*  
censēre, p. 160, *to think, value.*  
centurio, 26, *centurion*; G. ōnis.  
cēpi, see capere.  
cera, *wax.*  
Cēres, ēris, *Ceres, the goddess of corn, &c.*  
cernere, (crēv, cret,) *to see, perceive*, p. 162, 58.  
certamen, 17, *contest.*  
certare, 3, 17, *to fight, quarrel.*  
certus, *certain.*  
cervus, *stag.*  
cēteri, æ, a, *the other; other.*  
Chæronēa, *a town in Bœotia.*  
Christianus, *Christian.*  
Chryses, G. æ, *Chryses, a priest of Apollo.*  
cibus, i, *food.*  
cingere, (cinx, cinct,) p. 162, *to gird, surround.*  
circa, } *about.*  
circum, }  
circum-dāre, (circumdēdi, circumdātum,) *to surround.*  
⚔ 'to surround a city with a wall,' is either 'circumdare urbem muro,' or 'circumdare murum urbi.'  
circum-linere, (lēv, līt,) *to smear round, anoint, cover.*  
circum-sēdēre, (to sit around,) *to invest or besiege a town.*  
circum-spicere, io, (spex, spect,) *to look around.*  
circum-vēnire, 28, *to surround, to circumvent.*  
cis, } *on this side of.*  
citra, }  
cito, *quickly.*  
civilis, 19, *civil.*  
cīvis, p. 147, *a citizen.*  
cīvitas, *state; admission to citizenship*, p. 147.  
clādes, *defeat, overthrow*; clades Variana, *the defeat of Varius.*  
clam, *secretly.*  
clam, (prep.) *without the knowledge of.*  
clamare, 3, *to shout.*  
clamor, 16, *clamor, shouting.*  
clarus, p. 150, *clear, illustrious.*  
classis, p. 147; classem appellere, (appūli, appulsum,) *to put into a port; to land.*  
claudere, (claus, claus,) p. 161, *to shut.*  
clāvus, *a nail.*  
clementia, 25, *clemency, mercy.*  
clipeus, *shield.*  
clitellæ, panniers; *a packsaddle.*  
cœlestis, 27, *heavenly.*  
cælum, p. 146, *heaven.*



- cæna, *dinner*; ad cœnam vocare, to *invite to dinner*.  
 cœnare, to *dine*.  
 co-ërcere, to *restrain*.  
 cõgere, (coëg, coact,) to *compel*, p. 162.  
 cogitare, to *consider*.  
 co-gnatus, 30, *related*.  
 cognitio, 21, *knowledge*.  
 co-gnoscere, (co-gnõvi, co-gnõtum,) to *know well*, generally from information; to *learn*; cognõtus, *known*.  
 ☞ Obs. The original root is *gno*, as in *γνο, γνω, γιγνωσκ*.  
 colere, p. 162, *cultivate, worship*.  
 collineare, to *hit the mark*.  
 collis, (m.,) *hill*.  
 col-lõqui, (locut,) to *converse*.  
 collum, *neck*.  
 col-lustrare, *enlighten, illuminate*.  
 colõnus, 27, *former*.  
 color, õris, *color*.  
 columba, *dove*.  
 com-bũrere, p. 242, to *burn down*; to *burn*, (= consume by burning.) See *uro*, p. 163.  
 com-ẽdere, to *eat up, to devour, to eat*. See *cõo*, p. 165.  
 cõmes, (comõtis,) *companion*.  
 cõmis, *affable, polite*.  
 comõtia, (pl.) *an assembly of the people* for the election of magistrates. From 'com' and 'it,' sup. root of *eo*.  
 commemorare, to *make mention of*.  
 ☞ De after *commemorare* must be rendered by 'of.'  
 commendare, 19.  
 committere, to *commit*; prælium, 15.  
 com-mõdum, 34, *advantage*.  
 com-morari, [to tarry together,] to *live together*.  
 commovẽre, to *move*; moveo, p. 160, viii.  
 communicare, to *make common*; to *share*, (followed by *cum*.)  
 communiter, 37, *in common*.  
 com-parare, to *procure*. Comparare *copias*, to *raise troops or forces*.  
 comparãtus, *formed*.  
 compellare, to *call*.  
 compẽrire, p. 164, to *ascertain*.  
 compescere, to *restrain, repress*.  
 complẽre, (plẽv, plẽt,) to *fill*.  
 compõnere, to *arrange*.  
 compositus, (from componere,) *arranged, disposed, &c*. In Ex. 19: 'compositus ad gravitatem ac severitatem,' may be rendered, 'adopting a grave and serious tone.'  
 com-prehendere, (prehend, prehens,) to *take prisoner, to seize*.  
 concedere, 19, (43,) to *yield, to go*.  
 concha, *shell*.  
 conciliare, to *conciliate, reconcile, win over*.  
 concio, onis, *assembly*.  
 concitare, 25, to *excite, rouse*.  
 concordia, 18, *concord*.  
 concupiscere, to *wish for, desire*.  
 concutere, (con-quaterè,) to *shake*.  
 condere, 22, to *build, found*.  
 condimentum, (from condire,) *seasoning*.  
 conditio, *condition*.  
 condonare, 31, to *pardon, grant*.  
 condũcere, (dux, duct,) to *hire*.  
 confẽro, to *carry, (together); confẽro culpam*, I *throw the blame*.  
 conferre se, to *betake themselves*.  
 conficere, 12, 34, 39.  
 confidẽre, to *feel confident*.  
 confidens, *trusting, confident*.  
 confirmare, to *strengthen*.  
 con-fitẽri, (fess,) to *confess*.  
 confũsus, (particip. of confundere.)  
 confluere, 15, to *flow together*.  
 conijcere, (42,) to *hurl, to shoot*.  
 conjungere, (34,) to *join*.  
 conjuratio, 15, (ii,) *conspiracy*.  
 connubium, 33, *marriage*.  
 conquĩrere, *seek after, collect*.  
 con-scendere, (scend, scens,) to *climb up*.  
 conscientia, 21, *knowledge*.  
 consentãneus, *reasonable, agreeable*.  
 con-sẽrere, (sẽv, sõt,) to *plant*.  
 conservare, (21,) to *preserve, observe*.  
 considerare, to *consider*.  
 considẽre, (sẽd, sess,) to *settle; to perish*.  
 consilium, *design, plan, intention; cãpere, to form a resolution*.  
 con-sistere, (stõt,) to *stop*.  
 consitus. See *consẽrere, planted*.  
 consolatio, (36,) *consolation*.  
 consortium, *partnership*. See 37.  
 conspiciere, õs, *sight*.  
 conspiciere, io, (spex, spect,) to *behold, to see*.  
 constantia, *firmness, constancy*.  
 constat, it is *known, evident*.  
 con-situere, 23, 29, (32,) to *appoint*.  
 Constituere exemplum, to *set an example*.  
 construere, (strux, struct,) to *construct, build, (a nest)*.  
 consuetudo, 31, *custom*; G. ñnis.  
 consul, (15,) G. õlis, *consul*.  
 consularis, (37,) *consular; of consular rank*.  
 consulatus, 18, *consulship; consulatum pẽtere, to be a candidate for the consulship, (23.)*  
 consulere, to *consult; consulere alicui, (21,) to consult a man's interests*.  
 consumere, (42,) to *consume, spend*.  
 consumptus, *worn out*.  
 contaminare, (35,) (for con-tagminare,) to *contaminate*.  
 contegere, to *cover*.  
 contemnere, (temps, tempt,) to *despise, 20*.  
 contemplari, to *look at*.  
 contemplatio, *sight*.  
 contentus, *contented, content, (abl.)*  
 contexere, 31, to *weave, join to*.  
 continens, G. ntis, *continent, (adj.)*  
 con-tinẽre, 23, to *hold, contain*.  
 contingere, 19, (ii,) to *touch, lay hold of*.



contra, against.  
 contradicere, 22, to speak against.  
 contrāhere, 15. contrāhere familiaritātem cum aliquo, to make acquaintance (or strike up an intimacy) with anybody.  
 con-trectare, to handle; to pull about.  
 convālescere, 26, to grow strong, amend.  
 convēnire, 21, to assemble.  
 convīcium, an invective.  
 con-vīva, guest. (Com. Gender.)  
 copiā, forces, troops; copiā equestres, cavalry.  
 copiam fācere, to make plenty = to give an opportunity.  
 cōquere, (cox, coct,) to cook, bake, ripen.  
 coram, before.  
 cor, cordis, heart.  
 Corinthus, Corinth, a rich commercial city of Greece.  
 Cornelius, a Roman family name; C. Nepos, a Roman historian.  
 cornu, horn.<sup>1</sup>  
 corōna, crown.  
 corrigere, to correct.  
 corpus, p. 147, body; G. ōris.  
 corrōborare, 31, to strengthen.  
 corruere, (ru, rūt,) to fall down.  
 corrumpere, (35,) to corrupt.  
 cortex, icis, bark.  
 corvus, raven.  
 crabro, hornet.  
 cras, to-morrow.  
 crastinus, to-morrow's.  
 crastinus dies, to-morrow.  
 crassus, p. 150, thick, coarse.  
 creare, to create.  
 crēdere, to believe, to trust; credīdi, credītum, (dat.)  
 cremare, to burn, burn down.  
 crepare, p. 159, to make a noise.  
 crescere, p. 163, of the moon, to wax, to grow.  
 crīmen, p. 147, crime, charge.  
 cruciari, to torment.  
 crudelis, cruel.  
 crudeliter, 21, cruelly.  
 crumēna, purse.  
 crus, crūris, leg. n.  
 cūbare, p. 159, (ii,) to lie down.  
 cubīle, 16, bed, couch.  
 cubitu surgere, to rise from bed, to get up; cubitum ire, to go to bed, (supines of cubare.)  
 cūdere, 5, to forge.  
 culpa, p. 145, fault.  
 culter, G. tri, knife.  
 cultor, 28, cultivator.  
 cultura, 27, cultivation.  
 cultus, -ūs, 39, civilization.  
 cum, with, when; cum—tum, both—and.  
 cum maxime, at the moment that; as he was just.  
 cumulare, (34,) to heap, to load.

cunctatio, delay.  
 cuncti, all.  
 cunctus, (with sub.) the whole.  
 cūpere, (from cupio, cupivi, cupitum,) p. 161, 55.  
 cupiditas, ātis, desire.  
 cupidō, G. dīnis, desire.  
 cūpidus, desirous.  
 cur? why?  
 curare, 10, 22, to care for, take care of; nihil curare, not to care at all: with part. in dus, to cause; e. g. faciendum curare, to cause to be made; to have any thing made.  
 Cures, G. ium, Cures, a city of the Sabines in Italy.  
 curia, the senate-house.  
 currere, (cucurr, curs,) to run, 4, p. 163.  
 currīculum, a course.  
 currus, ūs, chariot.  
 cursus, 39, G. ūs, course.  
 curulis aedilitas, curule aedileship; the dignity of curule aedile.  
 custōdiā, (35,) custody; in custodiā tenere, to keep in custody.  
 custodire, 5, to keep safe, preserve.  
 custos, 5, guard; G. ōdis.  
 Cūbēle, a goddess, the mother of all the gods; G. es.  
 Damnare, to condemn.  
 Damnum, hurt, loss; damna inferre, to inflict injuries.  
 dāre, (dēd, dāt,) p. 159; pœnam, to suffer punishment.  
 dē, from, concerning, about, of.  
 dēbēre, to owe. See p. 270, 61, 62.  
 debilis, weak, feeble.  
 decēdere, 17, to depart, withdraw, to die.  
 decernere, (crēv, crēt,) to decree, resolve.  
 decerpere, (cerps, cerpt,) to pluck down, to pluck.  
 decertare, to contend, to fight.  
 dēcet, it is becoming; it becomes, (acc.) Sometimes it may be rendered by ought.  
 decipere, io, (cēp, cept,) 24, to deceive.  
 declarare, to declare.  
 decorare, 7, to adorn.  
 decrescere, (decrēvi,) 18. See crescere, p. 163, to decrease, to wane.  
 dedēcus. (ōris,) disgrace, shame; dedecus sui, disgrace to himself.  
 dēdēre, (dedīd, dedīt,) to give up; to surrender, compound of dē and do.  
 dedūcere, (dux, duct,) 19, 30.  
 deesse, to be wanting.  
 defatīgare, to weary, to tire.  
 defendere, (fend, fens,) to defend; to ward off.  
 defervescere, 18.  
 dēgere,<sup>2</sup> (perf. dēgi,) to spend life, time, &c.; to live.

<sup>1</sup> See note on the Genitive of the Fourth Declension, *First Latin Book*, p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> For de-igere, from de and agere.

deglubere, (glups, glupt,) to flay.  
 deinceps, one after another ; successively.  
 deinde, 21, (ii.) thenceforth.  
 de-jicere, io, (jēc, ject,) to throw down.  
 delectare, 5, to delight, allure.  
 dēlēre, (dēlēv, dēlēt,) p. 159, 54, to blot out, deface.  
 delictum, 18, sin, transgression.  
 deligere, (lēg, lect,) to choose out ; to choose.  
 delinquere, to transgress.  
 delirare, 31, to rave, dote.  
 delirius, crazy.  
 Delphi, a town of Greece, famous for the Oracle of Apollo.  
 delphīnus, a dolphin.  
 demens, entis, mad.  
 demissus, (part of demittere,) hung down ; down.  
 demittere, 20, to send down.  
 demonstrare, to show, to prove.  
 dēnārius, a denarius, (a Roman coin worth about 8½d, or 15 cents.)  
 denique, at last.  
 dens, p. 147, tooth ; G. dentis.  
 de-pellere, to drive away.  
 dependēre, to hang down.  
 de-plorare, to bewail.  
 deprehendere, to catch (in the commission of a fault, &c.) Seeprehendere, p. 161.  
 deridēre, 30, to deride, mock.  
 descendere, 7, to come down.  
 describere, describe ; lay out, (gardens.)  
 descriptio, laying out, (of a garden, &c.)  
 desērere, (seru, sert,) 30, to leave off, forsake.  
 de-sidērare, to miss ; to feel the want of.  
 desinere, (desii, desitum,) to end ; to leave off.  
 desipere, io, to be foolish, [de, from ; sapere, to be wise.] O me desipientem ! O fool that I was !  
 despērare, to despair of.  
 de-spicere, to look down (upon).  
 destinare, to fix.  
 detēgere, (tex, tect,) 13. (Voc. on perf. si.)  
 deterrēre, 35, to deter, frighten.  
 de-trāhere, (trax, tract,) to drag off ; take off.  
 de-tritus, (part. of detēre, triv, trit,) rubbed, galled.  
 Deus, God, p. 168, 74.  
 devincere, (vic, vict,) to conquer completely ; to conquer.  
 devincire, (vinx, vinct,) to bind, enchain.  
 devorare, to devour.  
 dexter, (tra, trum,) right, (opp. to left.)  
 Diana, Diana, goddess of the chase.  
 dicere, (dix, dict,) to say, to speak—to call.  
 dictator, dictator, (a high office at Rome.)  
 dictum, a saying.  
 Dido, a Phœnician princess, queen of Carthage ; Gen. ūs. See App. ii. p. 291.  
 dies, day. Ad diem, to his day.  
 difficilis, difficult.  
 difficultas, difficulty

diffidere, to distrust, (dat.)  
 dignitas, worth, worthiness.  
 dignus, worthy, abl.  
 dilacerare, to tear to pieces.  
 dilaniare, to tear to pieces.  
 diligenter, diligently.  
 diligentia, diligence.  
 diligere, (dilex, dilect,) to love.  
 diluvium, flood.  
 di-mētor, (mensus,) to measure out.  
 dimicare, to fight.  
 dimittere, to send away ; to dismiss.  
 dirigere, (direx, direct,) to direct—to steer (a vessel.)  
 discēdere, (discess,) to depart.  
 discere, (didici,) to learn.  
 disciplīna, discipline, teaching  
 discipulus, pupil.  
 discrepare, to be different.  
 discrimen, difference, danger.  
 disjungere, (junix, junct,) to separate.  
 dispensātor, a steward.  
 displicere, (plicu,) to displease.  
 dispōnere, (pōsu, pōsit,) to dispose ; to place, arrange.  
 dispūtare, to discuss ; to dispute.  
 disquirere, to examine.  
 dissēre, (seru, sert,) to discuss ; to argue.  
 dissidium, disagreement, quarrel.  
 dissipare, to scatter ; to spread abroad ; publish.  
 distinere, (distinu, distent,) to keep off ; to engage or distract (with business.)  
 distribuere, to distribute.  
 diu, long ; for a long time.  
 diurnus, long (of duration.)  
 diversus, different : e diverso contendere, to maintain the contrary.  
 dives, itis, rich. See p. 260.  
 dividere (divis, divis,) to divide.  
 divinitas, itis, divinity.  
 divinus, divine.  
 divitiæ, riches, wealth.  
 divulgare, to publish.  
 docēre, p. 160, ii., to teach.  
 dolere, p. 159, i., to be pained, grieve.  
 dolor, pain, sorrow.  
 dolus, trick, stratagem.  
 domare, p. 159, ii., to tame.  
 domesticus, domestic.  
 dominatio, rule, sovereignty.  
 dominus, master.  
 domus, p. 146, house, home, G. ūs and i.  
 donare, to present. See Synt. 275.  
 donec, till, until—as long as.  
 donum, gift.  
 dormire, to sleep ; to be asleep.  
 drachma, drachma, (a Greek coin, worth about 9½d. or 18 cents.)  
 dubie : haud —, without doubt.  
 ducere, p. 162, to lead.  
 ducere nomen, to take its name.  
 ducere in matrimonium, to marry, (of the husband.)  
 dudum, long ago.

dulcis, *sweet*.  
 dum, *whilst, until, provided*.  
 duo, *two*.  
 duodécim, *twelve*.  
 durare, *to harden; to last*.  
 durescere, *to grow hard*.  
 durus, *hard, harsh, cruel*.  
 dux, dūcis, *leader, general*.

E, ex, *out of; from*  
 ebĭbere, *to drink up; to drain*.  
 ěbur, ěris, *ivory*.  
 ědere, (ěd, ěs) p. 165, (5,) *to eat*.  
 ědere, (edid, edit,) *to tell; to publish; to exhibit*.  
 edĭcere, *to make a proclamation*.  
 ediscere, *to learn by heart*.  
 edūcare, *to educate*.  
 edūcere, (edux, educt,) *to draw forth or out; to bring up*.  
 effĭcax, *effectual*.  
 effĭcere, io, (fĕc, fect,) *to effect; accomplish*.  
 effigies, *image, likeness; G. iĕi*.  
 ef-flare, *to breathe (out)*. ef-flare animam (*to breathe out one's breath*), *to expire; breathe one's last*.  
 efflorescere, *to blossom, flourish*.  
 ef-fĕdere, io, *to dig over, (effĕd, effoss.)*  
 effrĕnatus, *unbridled*.  
 effugere, io, *escape, avoid*.  
 egĕre, p. 160, iv., (gen. or abl.,) *to need*.  
 ego, I, p. 168.  
 egrĕgie, *admirably; egregiously*.  
 egressus, *part. of egrĕdi, to go out*.  
 elābi, (laps,) *to slip away*.  
 elatus (*part. of ef-ferre*), *lifted up, elated*.  
 elegantia, *elegance*.  
 elephas, antĭs, *elephant*.  
 elephantus, *elephant*.  
 elĕvare, *to depreciate*.  
 elĭgere (lĕg, lect,) *to choose out; elct*.  
 e-ludere (lūs), *to deride*.  
 emendatus, 25, *emended*.  
 ěmĕre, p. 162, (58,) *to buy*.  
 emittere, *to send out; to put out; to let go*.  
 enim, *for*.  
 enĭti, *to strive*.  
 ensis, *sword*.  
 eo, *thither*. See quo.  
 Epaminondas, *a Theban general*.  
 Ephesus, *a city of Asia Minor*. Ephesus, *Ephesian*.  
 ephippium, *a saddle*.  
 epigramma, (ĕtis), *epigram*.  
 epistĕla, *letter*.  
 epitĕme, G. es; *an epitome; abridgement*. See App. ii. (Penelope) p. 291.  
 ěques, equĭtis, *horseman, knight*.  
 equestres copĭe, *cavalry*.  
 equitatus, ũs, *cavalry*.  
 equus, *horse; equo vĕhi, to ride on horseback*.  
 erectus, *raised up, erect*.  
 erga, *towards, (acc.)*  
 ergo, *therefore—on account of*.

erĭgere, (erex, erect,) *erect*.  
 erĭpere, io, (ripu, rept,) *snatch; snatch away; dat. of person from whom*.  
 error, *wandering, error; G. ěris*.  
 erudire, *to instruct, teach*.  
 erumpere, *to break out*.  
 esse, p. 164, *to be*.  
 esto, imper. of esse, *to be*.  
 esurire, *to be hungry*.  
 et, and—also, too, even; et—et, both—and  
 etiam, *even, too*.  
 etiamsi, *even if, though, although*.  
 etsi, *although*.  
 evadere, (evās,) *to escape; to turn out, become*.  
 evectus, *part. of evehere, to raise*.  
 e-vellere, *to draw or pluck out*.  
 evĕnit, *it happens; evĕnit, it happened*.  
 evertere, (vert, vers,) *to overthrow, pull down*.  
 ěvitare, *to avoid*.  
 evolare, *to fly out of*.  
 ex, *out of; from, (abl.)*  
 ex-animare, *to put to death*.  
 exārare, [*to plough up a wax tablet,*] *to write*.  
 exardescere. (exarsi,) *blaze forth; (of a war) to break out*.  
 excellere, (ui,) *to excel; to be distinguished*.  
 excĭtare, *excite, arouse, awake;—stir up*.  
 exclamare, *to exclaim*.  
 excĕlere, (colu, cult,) *to cultivate*.  
 excruciare, *to torment*.  
 excubĭe, *watches, posts: to be rendered guards*.  
 exercere, (ui,) *to exercise; to practise*.  
 exercitatio, *practice*.  
 exercitus, ũs, *army*.  
 exiguus, *small*.  
 exĭlis, *thin*.  
 exire, (exo,) *to go out; to leave*.  
 existimare, *to think*.  
 exĭtus, ũs, *egress, issue, end*.  
 exolescere, *to become obsolete; to pass away*.  
 exoptatus, *wished for, desirable*.  
 exĕrre, *to supplicate; to prevail upon (by entreaties.)*  
 exorĭri, (exortus,) *to rise; arise*. (See orior, p. 167.)  
 expĕdit, *it is expedient*.  
 expedĭte, *quickly, promptly, without hesitation*.  
 expellere, (puli, puls,) *to drive out, banish*.  
 experĭri, (expertus,) *to try; to experience*.  
 expĭllare, *to plunder*.  
 explĕre, (explĕvi, explĕtum,) *to fill, to fulfil, to complete*.  
 explorare, *to examine, to explore*.  
 ex-primere, (press,) *to extort; acc. of thing, dat. of person*.  
 expugnare, 8, *to assault*.  
 exsilium, *exile, banishment*.  
 existere, (exstiti,) *to stand forward as; to become*.



expectare, to wait.  
 expirare, to expire.  
 exstare, to be extant.  
 exsul, (ūlis), an exile.  
 externus, external.  
 extimescere, to dread.  
 extra, without.  
 extrēmus, extreme, p. 170.  
 extrinsecus, outwardly.

Faber, bri, a mechanic; smith, carpenter, &c.

fabula, tale, fable.

fabulōsus, 31, fabulous.

facere, io, p. 162, to do, to make, (imperat. fac.)

facessere, (ivi, itum,) to make, to cause; to make off.

facies, ēi, face.

facile, facilius, easily, more easily.

facilis, easy.

factum, deed, conduct, (in a particular case.)

facultas, capacity, power.

fallax, ācis, 31, deceitful.

fallere, p. 162; fallit me animus = I deceive myself.

famēlicus, hungry, starved.

fames, is, hunger.

familiaris, intimate; (as subst.) a friend.

familiaritas, intimacy.

famulus, slave, servant.

fas, lawful (according to divine or natural law.)

fatēri, (fessus,) to confess.

fatigare, to fatigue.

faux, throat; fauces, (Ex. 44.) a pass, neck of land.

fāvēre (dat.) p. 160, viii., to favor.

febris, (abl. i.,) fever.

felicitas, atis, happiness.

felis, a cat.

felix, icis, happy, prosperous.

fera, wild beast.

fēre, almost.

ferire, to strike.

ferox, ōcis, fierce.

ferre, p. 165, to bear, carry.

ferrum, iron, sword.

fero, see ferre.

ferus, fierce.

fessus, weary, tired.

festus, festive.

fidelis, faithful, true.

fidere, fisis sum, to trust.

fides, fidelity, faith; fidem habere, to believe; G. ei.

fieri, p. 165, to be made or done.

figere, p. 162, to fix.

figūra, figure.

filia, daughter; abl. pl. ābus.

filius, son; voc. fili.

filum, thread.

ingere, p. 162, (57,) feign, fashion.

finire, to finish.

finis, end.

firmare, to strengthen.

firmitas, firmness, strength.

firmus, firm.

flagitare, to demand, call for.

flagitium, crime.

flamma, flame.

flectere, p. 161, (56,) to bend.

flēre, p. 159, (54,) to weep.

florēre, blossom, flourish.

florescere, come into flower; blossom; begin to flourish.

flos, flower. flōris.

fluere, (flux,) p. 163, (60,) to flow.

flumen, inis, river.

fluuius, river.

f ōcus, p. 146, hearth.

fædus, ēris, p. 147, league, treaty.

fons, fontis, fountain.

fore, from esse.

fores, ium, door.

forma, beauty, form.

formica, ant.

formido, inis, fear.

fortasse, perhaps.

forte, by chance.

fortis, strong, brave.

fortiter, bravely.

fortuito casu, by accident.

fortuna, fortune; fortunæ, pl. property, possessions.

fortunatus, fortunate, prosperous.

forum, the forum; i. e. market-place, used also for the transaction of public business.

fossa, ditch, trench, foss.

fōvēre, (fōv, fōt,) to cherish, p. 160.

frangere, (frēg, fract,) to break.

frater, G. tris, brother.

fraterculus, little-brother.

fratricida, a fratricide.

fraudare, to defraud.

frenum, curb, bridle.

frequentare, to frequent.

frētus, relying on.

fricare, p. 159, to rub.

frigēre, p. 160, v. to be cold.

frigus, ōris, cold.

frons, frontis, p. 147.

a fronte, in front.

fructus, fruit, produce; G. ūs.

fructum capere ex, to derive advantage from.

frui, p. 167, (69,) to enjoy.

frumenta, all kinds of corn.

frustra, in vain.

frustum, piece, morsel.

frutex, icis, shrub.

fugare, to put to flight; to rout.

fugere, (fugio,) p. 162, fly, fly from.

fulcire, p. 164, to prop.

fulgēre, p. 160, v. to shine, glitter.

fundus, i, estate, farm.

fungi, (functus,) to discharge, abl.

funis, (m.,) rope.

furere, to rage, to be mad.



furor, *madness, passion.*

furtum, *theft.*

fusus, *rouled: part. of fundo, (fūd, fus.)*

futūrus, (fut. partic. of esse,) *about to be; future.*

Gallina, *a hen.*

Gallus, *a Gaul.*

gallus gallinaceus, *a cock.*

gallus, *a cock.*

garrire, *to babble, to chatter.*

garrulus, *talkative.*

gaudēre, p. 164, (63.)

gelidus, *cold.*

generare, *to beget.*

generōsus, *noble.*

gens, *a race, tribe, nation; G. gentis.*

genus, (genēris,) *race, family, kind.*

gēre, p. 163, *to carry, bear.*

gerere bellum, *to wage war.*

Germānia, *Germany.*

gestus, ūs, *action, (of the hands,) demeanor, attitude.*

gladius, *sword.*

gloria, *glory.*

gloriabundus, *boasting, [render by boastfully.]*

gloriari, *to boast.*

glubere, (glups, glupt,) *to pare, to peel.*

Græculus, (diminutive,) *a low Greek; a Greek.*

Græcus, *a Greek.*

gracilis, *slender.*

gramen, īnis, *grass.*

grandinare, *to hail.*

grandis, *large.*

granum, *a grain.*

gratia, *favor, grace, thanks.*

gratiam ambire, *to court the favor.*

—— habēre, *to feel grateful.*

—— retribuere, *to return a favor; to recompense.*

gratulari, *to congratulate.*

gratus, *grateful, agreeable, delightful.*

gratum facere alicui, *to oblige a person.*

gravari, *to be reluctant; not to choose.*

gravis, *heavy, weighty, serious.*

gravitas, *weight, seriousness, importance.*

grex, (grēgis,) p. 147, *a flock.*

grus, uis, *crane.*

gubernare, *to govern, (acc.)*

gubernator, *pilot.*

Habēre, p. 159, i. *to have.*

habēre pro, *to hold for; to consider as.*

—— amicum alicquem, *to have a man for a friend.*

habitare, *to dwell.*

hærēre, (hærs,) p. 160, vi. *to cling to, to stick.*

Hannibal, *Hannibal a great Carthaginian general.*

hasta, *spear*

haud, *not.*

haurire, p. 164, *drink off, drain.*

haurire venēnum, *to drink poison.*

hēbes, *blunt, dull; G. ētis.*

Helvetia, *Helvetia, Switzerland.*

herba, *herb, grass.*

Hercules, *Hercules.*

hēri, *yesterday.*

hic, hæc, hoc, *this, p. 169. [When it has no noun in agreement, it is rendered as a personal pronoun, he, she, it.]*

hic, *here.*

hiems, ēmis, *winter.*

hinc, *hence.*

hinnire, *to neigh.*

historia, *history.*

hōdie, 7, *to-day, this day.*

Homērus, *Homer.*

hōmo, homīnis, *man.*

honestas, *honor, integrity.*

honeste, *honestly, virtuously.*

honestus, *honorable.*

honor, *honor; G. ōris.*

honorificus, *laudatory.*

hora, *hour.*

horrēre, *to be frightened at.*

hortari, *to exhort.*

hortulus, 8, *a little garden.*

hortus, *garden; G. ī.*

hostis, *enemy.*

huc, *hither.*

humānus, *human, (Ex. 27, earthly:) courteous, kind.*

humērus, *shoulder.*

humi, *on the ground.*

humilis, (humillimus,) *low, humble.*

humus, *ground, soil, f.*

Ibi, *there.*

ictus, G. ūs, *a stroke, a blow.*

idem, p. 169, *the same.*

idem ac, p. 169, *the same as.*

ideo, *therefore.*

idōneus, *suitable.*

igitur, *therefore.*

ignārus, *ignorant, (gen.)*

ignavia, *sluggishness; weakness of the will.*

ignis, (m.) p. 147, *fire.*

ignorare, *to be ignorant of, (acc.;) ignoratio, ignorance.*

ignoscere, (ignōvi,) *to pardon, (dat.)*

illacrimare, *to cry over; to weep over or at.*

ille, a, ud, p. 169, *that one, the former.*

illēcebra, *enticement, allurement.*

illīco, *immediately.*

illustrare, *to illumine.*

illustris, 16.

imāgo, īnis, *image.*

imbecillis, -is, *weak.*

imber, bris, m., *shower.*

imbuere, p. 163, *to dip, imbue.*

imitabilis, *imitable.*

imitari, *to imitate.*

immensus, *immense.*

im-mergere, (iners,) to plunge or thrust in.  
 imminēre, to hang over; to threaten,  
 (dat.)

immobilis, immoveable.

immolare, to sacrifice.

immortalis, immortal.

immortālitas, immortality.

imo, no — but.

impar, āris, odd, (of number.)

impēdire, to hinder.

impellere, to impel; to drive on, (impūl,  
 impuls.)

impendere, to spend.

imperare, to command, (dat.)

imperator, commander-in-chief; general.

imperium, command, empire.

impertire, to impart.

impetrare, to prevail upon; to obtain (by  
 entreaties.)

impētus, assault, violence; G. ūs.

impius, impious.

implēus, (part. of implēre,) filled.

impōnere, (impōsi, impositum,) to place-  
 upon; to impose.

imprimere, (impress,) impress.

imprimis, especially.

imprōbus, bad.

imprudens, ignorant, senseless.

impugnare, 30.

impūdēns, impudent.

in, (with abl.) in; (with acc.) into, to,  
 against.

in tempōre, in good time.

inānis, empty.

incallescere, to grow warm.

incendere, to set on fire, to burn.

incendium, conflagration, fire.

inceptum, (properly, a thing begun,) a  
 purpose; a resolution.

incertus, uncertain.

incessere, (incessivi and inces) to fall  
 upon.

incidere, 24, to fall into, enter.

incipere, (cēp, cept,) to begin.

inceptum, undertaking.

inclarescere, to become famous.

incognitus, unknown.

incōla, inhabitant.

incolūmis, safe, uninjured.

incommōdum, inconvenience, disadvan-  
 tage, hardship.

inconsiderantia, thoughtlessness.

inconstantia, inconstancy.

incredibilis, incredible.

incultus, uncultivated, uncivilized.

incurrere, to run into.

in-curs-io, (properly, a running against,)  
 an attack.

inde, thence, from this;—then.

indignus, unworthy, (abl.)

indoctus, unlearned.

induēre, p. 163, (57,) to put on.

indulgēre, p. 160, (v.) to indulge.

Indus, the Indus.

infelix, Icis, unfortunate.

inferre, (intūl, illāt,) to bear-against;

bellum inferre, to wage war against;  
 to attack, invade.

infestare, to make unsafe; to infest.

infestus, hostile.

inficere, (fēc, fect,) stain, dye.

infirmus, infirm, weak.

inflextere, 15, to bend in, crook.

ingenium, abilities, mind.

ingenii cultus, cultivation of the intellect;  
 intellectual cultivation.

ingens, huge, immense; G. entis.

ingignere, (ingēni, ingēnitum,) to implant.

ingratus, ungrateful, disagreeable.

ingruēre, to burst out.

inhibēre, to restrain.

inhonestus, dishonorable.

inimicus, enemy; as adj. hostile.

inimicissimus, most hostile.

iniquus, unjust.

injuria, injury, wrong.

injuriā afficere, to wrong, to injure.

injuste, unjustly.

injustitia, injustice.

innocens, innocent.

innocentia, innocence.

innotescere, (innotui,) to become known.

innoxius, harmless.

inōpia, want, poverty, destitution.

inscitia, ignorance.

insectari, to persecute, to rail at.

insequi, to pursue, to follow.

inservire, to be the slave of.

inservire temporibus, to comply with  
 the times; to accommodate oneself  
 to the times.

insidiæ, plot, stratagem.

insidiari, p. 166.

insignis, distinguished.

insistere, to stand upon; to take a road  
 or course.

inspirare, to breathe into.

instare, to press on; to press; to be at hand.

instituire, to establish; to appoint; to

train on: vitam instituire, to conduct  
 yourself.

instruere aciem, to draw up an army in  
 order of battle.

insūla, island.

insūper, besides.

intēger, whole, entire, upright.

integritas, uprightness, integrity.

intellectus, intellect; G. ūs.

intelligere, to understand; to be aware

intemperantia, intemperance.

intendere, (tend, tens,) to put forth.

inter, between, amongst.

interdiu, in the day-time.

interdum, sometimes.

interea, in the mean time.

interesse, to be engaged in.

interest, there is a difference; it is of im-  
 portance; it concerns, signifies, &c.

interficere, io, (fec, fect,) to kill.

interimere, (ēm, empt,) to kill, to carry off.

interrogare, to ask.

interrogatio, a question.

intervallum, *interval*.  
 intra, *within*.  
 introitus, *entrance*.  
 intuēri, *to look upon*.  
 intus, *within, at home*.  
 inundare, *to inundate; to overflow*.  
 inutilis, *useless*.  
 invādere, *to come against; assault; invade; fall upon*.  
 invēnire, (vēn, vent,) *to find*. See Syn.  
 invicem, *in turn; one another*.  
 invīdēre, (vīd, vīs,) *to envy, grudge*.  
 invidia, *envy, odium*.  
 invitare, *to invite*.  
 invitus, *unwilling*.  
 involvere, (volv, volūt,) *to roll up, to bind round, (with.)*  
 ipse, p. 169, *self, myself, thyself, itself, &c.*  
 ira, *anger*.  
 iracundia, *passionateness; anger, (as a habit.)*  
 irasci, (irat,) *to be angry, (dat.)*  
 irrigare, *to water*.  
 irritare, *to excite; to provoke; to irritate*.  
 is, ea, id, p. 169, *that*.  
 iste, a, ud, p. 169, *that of yours, &c.*  
 Ister, ri, *the Danube*.  
 ita, so, *in such a manner*.<sup>1</sup>  
 Italia, *Italy*.  
 itaque, *therefore*.  
 iter, G. itinēris, *journey*.  
 iterum, *a second time; once more; again*.

Jacere, p. 162, (jēc, jact,) *to throw, to hurl*.  
 jacere, p. 159, i., *to lie, to lie low*.  
 jactare, *to toss*.  
 jaculari, *to hurl a dart, to shoot*.  
 jam, *already*.  
   nec jam, *and—no more*.  
   jam dudum, *now for a long time*.  
   jam pridem, *long; for some time*.  
 janua, *gate, door, (of a house.)*  
 jōcabundus, *joking; in a joking manner*.  
 jōcus, *joke*.  
 Jov-, see Jupiter.  
 jubere, (juss,) p. 160, vi., *to order*.  
 jucundus, *pleasant, delightful*.  
 judex, *pleasant, delightful, 12, and p. 147; G. icis*.  
 judicare, *to judge*.  
 jugum, 15, ii., *a yoke, a range, (of hills.)*  
 Jugurtha, *Jugurtha, a prince of Numidia*.  
 jumentum, 17, *a beast of burden*.  
 jungere, (junn, junct,) *to join; jungere amicitiam, to form a friendship*.  
 Jupiter, p. 168; G. Jōvis, *Jupiter*.  
 jurare, *to swear*.  
 jus, juris, *right, law*.  
   jure, *deservedly, with good reason, justly*.  
   jure meritoque, *deservedly*.

jussu, *by the command*. Domini jussu, *by his master's orders*.  
 jussum, *command, bidding*.  
 justitia, *justice*.  
 justus, *just*.  
 juvare, *to help, assist, (acc.)*  
 juvat, *it is delightful; it delights*.  
 juvenilis, *youthful*.  
 juvenis, *a young man; a man (from about 20 to 40.)*  
 juventus, ūtis, *youth*.  
 juxta, *close by, (prep.)*

Lābare, *to totter*.  
 labefactare, *to make to totter; to shake*.  
 labor, *labor; G. ōris*.  
 labōrare, *to labor*.  
 lacessere, p. 163, (59,) *to provoke*.  
 lacrima, or lacryma, *a tear*.  
 lacunar, 16, *a panelled-ceiling; G. āris*.  
 lædere, p. 161, 56, *to hurt, (acc.)*  
 læte, *joyfully*.  
 lætitia, *joy*.  
 lætus, *joyful, glad*.  
 lævus, *left*.  
 lana, *wool*.  
 laniare, *to mangle*.  
 lætere, (latu,) *to lie hid, to be concealed*.  
 Latine (adv.,) *in the manner of the Latins*. Latine loqui, *to speak Latin correctly*.  
 Latinus, *Latin*.  
 latro, ōnis, *robber*.  
 lātus, *broad*.  
 lātus, ēris, *side*.  
 laudare, *to praise*.  
 laurus, *a laurel*.  
 laus, laudis, *praise*.  
 lavare, p. 159, ii. Also lavere.  
 lectio, *reading, perusal*. (In II it is used for 'lesson' set to be studied; which is an unclassical use of it.)  
 lēgātus, *ambassador, lieutenant*.  
 lēgere, (lēg, lect,) *to read*.  
 lēgio, ōnis, *a legion or body of Roman soldiers*.  
 lenire, *to soften*.  
 lēnis, *soft*.  
 leo, ōnis, *lion*.  
 lēvare, *to relieve*.  
 lēvis, *light*.  
 levitas, *lightness, fickleness*.  
 lex, lēgis, *law*.  
   lēgem perferre, *to carry a law through*.  
 libenter, *willingly; libenter facio, I like to do it*.  
 liber, era, erum, *free*.  
 liber, bri, *book*.  
 liberalitas, *liberality*.

<sup>1</sup> Ita is often to be rendered by an *adverb* with so: 'so violently,' 'so foolishly,' &c., according to the manner meant.



liberare, to free.  
 libere, freely, spiritedly.  
 liberi, children.  
 libertas, liberty.  
 libido, inis, lust, desire.  
 licentia, permission; the power.  
 licet. (See page 270. Questions 57, 58.)  
*it is allowed.*  
 ligneus, wooden.  
 lignum, wood.  
 ligo, ōnis, spade.  
 limen, (inis,) threshold.  
 linere, (lēvi, lītum,) to smear.  
 lingua, tongue.  
 litera, p. 145, a letter, literature.  
 litus, ōris, a shore.  
 locare, to let on hire.  
 locuples, ētis, rich.  
 locus, p. 146, a place.  
 longe, far.  
 loqui, (locūtus,) to speak.  
 lubet or libet, it pleases: to be rendered  
 by *I (you, &c.) like, please.*  
 lubido, inis, lust, pleasure.  
 lucrum, gain.  
 luctus, ūs, sorrow.  
 ludere, p. 161, (56,) to play.  
 luna, moon.  
 lupus, wolf.  
 luscina, nightingale.  
 lusus, ūs, game.  
 lutulentus, 15, miry, dirty, muddy.  
 lux, lūcis, p. 147, light.  
 luxuria, luxury.  
 lyra, lyre.

Macedo, ōnis, Macedonian.  
 machina, machine.  
 macies, leanness: macie confectus,  
 (wasted away with leanness,) miserably  
 thin.  
 magis, more.  
 magister, tri, master.  
 magistratus, ūs, magistracy, magistrate.  
 magistratum gerere, to hold a magistracy;  
 to fill a high office.  
 magnopere, earnestly.  
 magnus, great.  
 major, greater.  
 maiores, our forefathers.  
 maledictum, railing, abuse, scurrilous  
 language.  
 maleficium, misdeed.  
 malum, evil. mala, evils, ills.  
 malus, bad.  
 malus, i. f., an apple.  
 malus, i. m., a mast.  
 mancipium, slave.  
 manere, p. 160, vi., to remain.  
 manifestus, manifest.  
 manus, ūs, hand, (f.)  
 Marathon, Marathon, the field of a celebrated  
 battle between the Athenians and  
 Persians.  
 mare, is, p. 147, the sea.

Marianus, Marian; of Marius.  
 marina, salt (water-).  
 maritimus, maritime; living in the sea.  
 maritus, i, husband.  
 Marsi, the Marsians, a people of middle  
 Italy.  
 Massilia, Marseilles.  
 mater, p. 147, mother; G. matris.  
 matēries, materials; wood, timber.  
 maturare, to ripen; to hasten.  
 mature, quickly;—prematurely.  
 maturescere, to ripen, (intrans.)  
 maturus, ripe.  
 maxime, (adv.,) most, the most.  
 maximi, at a very great price, very highly,  
 the greatest.  
 maximus, the greatest.  
 Mediolanum, Milan.  
 mederi, to heal, (dat.)  
 mediocritas, a middle point, the mean.  
 medius, the middle, amidst.  
 medicus, physician.  
 Megara, ōrum, a town not very far from  
 Athens.  
 mel, mellis, honey.  
 membrum, member, limb.  
 inmemorabilis, deserving to be remembered;  
 memorable.  
 memoria, memory.  
 mendacium, a lie.  
 mendax, ācis, lying (person); liar.  
 mens, ntis, mind.  
 mensa, table.  
 mensis, is, m. month.  
 mentiri, p. 167, to lie, to deceive.  
 merces, ēdis, pay, reward.  
 merere, merui, and mereri, (depon.,) p.  
 167, deserve.  
 meridies, mid-day, (m.)  
 meritum, desert.  
 metallum, metal, mine.  
 metere, (messu, mess,) to mow; to reap;  
 to pluck off.  
 metiri, (mensus,) p. 167, to measure.  
 metuere, p. 163, vi. to fear.  
 metus, ūs, fear.  
 meus, a, um, mine. Voc. masc. mi.  
 mi, Voc. masc. of meus.  
 micare, p. 159, to glitter, glisten.  
 migrare, to remove, (intrans.)  
 miles, itis, p. 147, a soldier.  
 militia, warfare.  
 millia, thousands, p. 173.  
 Miltiades, is, the Athenian general to  
 whom the victory of Marathon was due.  
 minari, p. 166, to threaten.  
 minister, tri, 5, a servant, attendant.  
 minor, less;—the younger, (for minor  
 natu.)  
 mirabilis, } wonderful.  
 mirus, }  
 mirari, to wonder, express admiration.  
 miscere, p. 160, ii. to mingle, mix.  
 miser, era, erum, miserable, wretched.  
 miserandus, to be pitied: miserandum in  
 modum, in a horrible manner.



misere, *miserably*.  
 miserēri, p. 167, 68, *to pity*. (Gen.)  
 misēria, *misery*.  
 misēricordia, *compassion, pity*.  
 mītis, *mild, lenient*.  
 mittere, p. 161, (56), *to send*.  
 mōbillis, *moveable*.  
 modestia, *moderation, modesty*.  
 modius, *a peck (nearly\*)*  
 mōdo, *only*.  
 modo—modo, *one while—another*.  
 mōdus, *measure, manner*.  
 mœnia, *walls (of a fortified town.)*  
 mœrēre, *to mourn*.  
 mœror, ōris, *grief*.  
 mōliri, p. 167, (70) *to move, to plan*.  
 mollis, *soft*.  
 mōnēre, p. 159, *warn, advise*.  
 monocēros, ōtis, *unicorn*.  
 mons, ntis, p. 147  
     mons Apennīnus, *the Apennines*.  
 monstrare, *to show*.  
 monumentum, *monument*.  
 morbus, *disease*.  
 mordēre, (mors.) p. 160, vii., *to bite*.  
 mōres, um, *manners, morals, character*.  
 mōriturus, *see morior, p. 167, ready, or*  
     *about to die*.  
 morōsus, *ill-humored*.  
 mors, mortis, p. 147, *death*.  
 mortalis, *mortal*.  
 mortifer, *fatal, deadly*.  
 mortuus, *dead*.  
 mos, ōris, *custom, manner*.  
 mōtus, ūs, *motion*.  
 mōvēre, p. 160, viii., *to move*.  
 mox, *presently*.  
 mucro, ōnis, *point of a sword; sword*.  
 mulctare, *to fine, (abl.)*  
 mulier, ēris, *woman, wife*.  
 multitudo, īnis, *multitude*.  
 multo, (abl.,) *much—before comparatives*.  
 multum, *much*.  
 multus, a, um, *much; plur. many*.  
 mundus, p. 146, *world*.  
 munire, *to fortify*.  
 munus, ēris, *gift, task, duty*.  
 murus, *wall*.  
 mus, muris, *a mouse*.  
 mutare, *to change*.  
 mutatio, *change*.

Nam, *for*.  
 nancisci, (nactus,) p. 167, *to get, attain*.  
 narrare, *to relate*.  
 nasci, (natus,) p. 167, *to be born, to proceed*  
     *from*.  
 natare, *to swim*.  
 natūra, *nature*.  
 naturalis, *natural*.  
 nātus, *born*. See nasci.  
 nauta, *sailor*.

navigare, *to sail*.  
 navigatio, *navigation*.  
 navigium, *vessel*.  
 navis, *ship*.  
 ne. See App. iii., p. 292.  
     ne—quidem, *not even*.  
     ne quis, *that nobody*.  
 —nē, *asks a question*. See p. 269, 51, 52,  
     &c. ne—an, *whether—or*. See p. 269.  
     (51.)  
 nec, *neither; nor; and not*.  
     nec—nec, *neither—nor*.  
     nec temēre, *nor easily*.  
     nec ullus, *and no*.  
     nec quidquam, [*nor any thing,*] *and*  
     *nothing*.  
 necessarius, *necessary*.  
 nēgare, *to deny*. It is often rendered by  
     *to say, a 'not' being added to the in-*  
     *finite mood*.  
 negligere, (lex, lect,) *to neglect, disre-*  
     *gard*.  
 negotium, *business, affair*.  
 nēmo, īnis, *nobody*.  
 nēmus, nemōris, *grove*.  
 neque—neque, *neither—nor*.  
 nequire, *to be unable*.  
 nequītia, *wickedness*.  
 nēre, p. 159, 54, *to spin*.  
 nescire, *not to know*.  
 neuter, *neither; G. neutrius*.  
 nēve, *nor*.  
 nex, nēcis, *death, (a violent death.)*  
 nīdus, *nest*.  
 nihil, *nothing*.  
 nihildum, *nothing as yet*.  
 nihīlo secius, *nevertheless*.  
 nīmis, *too*.  
 nīnium, *too much*.  
 nisi, *unless; if—not*.  
 nītēre, *to shine; to be sleek*.  
 nix, nīvis, *snow*.  
 nobilis, *noble*.  
 nobilitare, *to ennoble*.  
 nōcens, (part. of nocēre,) *a guilty per-*  
     *son*.  
 nocēre, p. 159, i. (dat.)  
 noctu, *by night*.  
 nocturnus, *nightly; by night*.  
 nōmen, īnis, *name*. nōinen ducere, *to*  
     *take its name*.  
 non, *not*.  
 non modo, *not only*.  
 non satis, (*not sufficiently, =*) *not well;*  
     *not thoroughly*.  
 nondum, *not yet*.  
 nonnulla, (*not-none, =*) *some*.  
 nonnē, *not?*  
 nonnunquam, (*not-never, =*) *sometimes*.  
 noscere, p. 163, 61, (nōvi, = *I know.*)  
 noster, tra, trum, *our, ours*.  
 notio, *notion; ōnis*.  
 nōvi, *I know*. See noscere.

nōvus, *new*.  
 nox, noctis, *night*.  
 nubere, p. 161, 55, *to marry*, (dat.)  
 nubes, *is, cloud*.  
 nūdus, *naked*.  
 nullus, G. Ius, *no, none* : nullo modo, *by no means*.  
 num, p. 269, 46, *whether*.  
 num—an. See p. 269, 51, 52, &c.  
 numerare, *to number, to reckon*.  
 numerus, *number*.  
 nunc, *now*.  
 nuncupare, *to name; to mention a name*.  
 nunquam, *never*.  
 nuntiare, 10, *to announce*.  
 nuntius, *message, messenger*.  
 nuptum dāre, *to give in marriage* : nuptum, *supine of nubo*.  
 nūtrimentum, *nourishment*.  
 nutrire, *to nourish; to support*.

Ob, *on account of*.

ob oculos, *before our eyes*.  
 obdormiscere, *to be falling asleep*.  
 obducere, *to overlay, cover*.  
 obēdire, *to obey*, (dat.)  
 oberrare, *to wander about*.  
 obesse, *to be prejudicial to*, (dat.)  
 ob-jicere, io, *to throw against; to expose*, (to.)  
 oblectare, *to delight*.  
 oblinēre, (oblēv, oblīt,) *to bedaub*.  
 obliuio, ōnis, *oblivion, forgetfulness*.  
 obliuisci, (oblitus,) *to forget*, (gen.)  
 obscurare, *to obscure, to darken*.  
 obsēquium, *obedience*.  
 observare, *to observe; to keep*.  
 obsidēre, (obsēd, obsess,) *to besiege*.  
 obsistere, *to withstand, prevent*.  
 obstare, *to stand in the way; to prevent*, (dat.)  
 obtēgere, (obtex, obtect,) *to cover*.  
 obtemperare, *to obey*, (dat.)  
 obtinēre, (obtinui, obtent,) *to obtain*.  
 obviam, *adv. in the direction towards another person; obviam mittere, to send to meet*, (dat. of person to be met.) Obviam occurrere alicui, *to meet him accidentally*.  
 occasio, ōnis, *opportunity*.  
 occidens, *setting* : (as subst.,) *the west*.  
 occidere, (occīd, occās,) p. 241, *to fall, to perish*.  
 occidere, (occīd, occīs,) p. 241, *to kill, to slay*.  
 occultare, *to hide*.  
 occumbere, (occūbui,) *to fall* (in battle.)  
 occupare, *to occupy*.  
 occurrere, (occurr, occurs,) *to meet*, (dat.)  
 oceaŋus, *the ocean*.  
 octo, *eight*.  
 ōcūlus, *eye*.  
 ōdium, *hatred*.  
 odor, ōris, *smell, odor*.  
 odoratus, ūs, *smell, scent*.

offendere, (offend, offens,) *to offend; to light upon*.

offerre, *to offer*.

officium, *duty*.

officium præstare, *to perform a service*.

ōleum, *oil*.

olfācere, (olfēc, olfact,) *to smell*, (trans.)

olor, ōris, *a swan*.

olōrinus, *of the swan*, (adj.)

ōmittere, (omīs, omiss,) *to omit, neglect*.

omnis, *all, every* : omnia, *all things, every thing*.

ōnus, ēris, p. 147.

onustus, *laden, burdened*.

opācus, *shady*.

operam dāre, *to go about* (business.)

opērire, *to cover*.

operōsus, *busy*.

opes, um, *means, resources, wealth*.

opinari, *to think, to imagine*.

opperiri, p. 167, *to wait for*.

oppetere, *to encounter*.

oppidanus, *inhabitant of a town*.

oppressor, *oppressor*.

opprimere, (oppress, oppress,) *to oppress; to fall upon; to crush*.

oppugnare, *to attack, assault*.

ops, ōpis, *f., power, assistance*.

optimus, (superl. of bōnus, *good*,) *the best*.

opus, ēris, *work*.

opus est, *there is need*. [Render nom as dat.; est by 'have;' abl. by 'of:'] "mihi I est have opus need cibo of food."]

opus facere, *to work; to labor*.

orāculum, *oracle*.

ōrare, *to pray*.

orare causam, *to plead a cause*.

oratio, ōnis, *speech, oration*.

orator, *an orator*.

oratorius, *oratorical*.

orbis, *is, m., orb; the world*.

orbis terrarum, (the orb of the lands, =) *the world*.

ordinare, *to arrange*.

ordo, īnis, (m.,) *order*.

oriens, *rising; part. from orior: (as subst.,) the east*.

origo, īnis, *origin*.

oriri, (orēris, oritur, &c.; perf. ortus sum,) *arise*. See p. 167.

ornare, *to adorn*.

ornatus, ūs, *ornament, decoration*.

os, oris, *n., face*.

os, ossis, *ll., a bone*.

ostendere, (tend, tens,) *to show*.

Ostia, *a town in Italy, at the mouth of the Tiber*.

ostia, pl., *mouth (of a river)*.

ostium, *door*.

ōtiōsus, *full of leisure, disengaged, inactive, idle*.

ovis, *is, f., sheep*.

Pābūlatum, *to forage*, (supine.)  
 pæne, *almost*.  
 pæninsula, *peninsula*.  
 pālari, *to wander about*.  
 palatium, *the Palatium*, (i. e. the residence of Augustus on the Palatine Hill.)  
 pallium, *a cloak*.  
 palma, *the palm*.  
 palpebra, *eyelid*.  
 palumbes, is, m. and f., *wood-pigeon*.  
 pārare, *to prepare, to provide, to procure*.  
 parātus, *prepared*, (part. of parare.)  
 parcere, (pēperc, et pars, parsum, and parctum,) *to spare*, (dat.)  
 pārere, *to obey*, (dat.)  
 paries, ētis, *wall (of a house)*.  
 parere, io, (pēpēri, part.,) *to bring forth*.  
 pars, partis part. partes, *a party*, (in a state.)  
 parsimonia, *frugality*.  
 pārūm, *little, too little*.  
 parvūlus, (*dim. of parvus*), *little*.  
 pascere, (pāv. past.) *to feed*, (trans. ;)  
 pasci, *to feed*, (intrans.)  
 pastor, ōris, *a shepherd*.  
 pateferi, (see *fio*, p. 165,) *to be laid bare, to be discovered*.  
 pater, tris, p. 147, *father*.  
 Patres, (*the Fathers* =) *the Senators*.  
 patientia, *patience*.  
 patria, (*one's*) *country*.  
 patrius, *paternal*.  
 patricii, *patricians*.  
 pauci, æ, a, *few*. paucis post diebus, *a few days afterwards*.  
 paulo, *by a little; a little*.  
 paulo ante, *a little before*.  
 paulo post, *a little after*.  
 pauper, ēris, *poor*.  
 pāvīdus, *fearful, timid*.  
 pavo, ōnis, *peacock*.  
 pāvor, ōris, *fear, dread*.  
 pax, pācis, *peace*.  
 pācem pētere, *to sue for peace*.  
 peccare, *to do wrong; to sin*.  
 peccātum, *a sin*.  
 pectus, ōris, n. *breast*.  
 pecunia, *money*.  
 pecuniōsus, *moneyed*.  
 pēcus, ōris, a, *sheep, any tame animal*.  
 Peleus, *the father of Achilles*.  
 pellere, (pēpūl, puls.) *to drive; to drive back; to banish*.  
 pellicere, (pellex, pellect,) *to entice*.  
 pellis, is, *hide*.  
 pēnes, *in the power of*, (prep.)  
 penna, *a wing*.  
 pensum, *task*.  
 per, *through, along, by*, (sometimes over.)  
 perangustus, *very narrow*.  
 percipere, io, (percēp, percept,) *to perceive*.  
 per-cultus, (part. of per-cōlere, cōlu, cult,) *thoroughly cultivated*.  
 perdere, (perdīdi, perditum,) *to lose; to ruin; to destroy*.

peregrinari, *to go abroad; aves peregrinantes, birds of passage*.  
 peregrīnus, *a foreigner*.  
 perfectus, *perfect*.  
 perferre, (pertūli, perlātum,) *to endure*.  
 perficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to perform, complete*.  
 perfīdia, *perfidy*.  
 perfūga, *a deserter*.  
 periclitari, *to be in danger*. Homo periclitatur de vitā, *the man's life is at stake*.  
 periculosus, *dangerous, full of danger*.  
 periculum, *danger*.  
 perinde, *just so; perinde est ac si, it is just as if*.  
 perīnere, (perēm, perempt,) *to carry off*.  
 perītus, *skilled in*, (gen.)  
 permanēre, (permans, permans,) *to remain; to continue*.  
 permittere, *to permit*.  
 pernicies, ēi, *destruction, ruin*.  
 perpressus, *having suffered, or endured*.  
 perpētūus, (33.) *perpetual*.  
 per-pinguis, *very fat*.  
 Persa, *a Persian*.  
 perseverare, *to persevere*.  
 persolvere, (solv, solut,) *to pay*. persolvere pōnas, *to suffer punishment*.  
 per-spicere, io, *to look through; see plainly*.  
 perstare, *to persist*.  
 per-suadēre, (dat.,) *to persuade*.  
 perturbatio, *perturbation*.  
 pervēnire, (pervēn, pervent,) *to arrive at*.  
 pes, pēdis, *foot; pēde prēmere, (to press with the foot,) to tread upon*.  
 pestis, *plague, pestilence*.  
 pētere, (petiv, petit,) *to make for; to seek; to beg; to aim at*.  
 petere pacem, *to sue for peace*.  
 phālēræ, *trappings or furniture of a horse*.  
 phāsianus, *a pheasant*.  
 Philoctētes, or Philoctēta, *a Grecian hero*.  
 philosophus, *a philosopher*.  
 piāculum, *an offering of atonement*.  
 pietas, ātis, *dutiful affection; affection*.  
 pingere, (pinx, pict,) p. 23, *to paint*.  
 pīrāta, *a pirate*.  
 piscis, is, *fish*.  
 Pisistrātus, *an Athenian who usurped sovereign power at Athens*.  
 pius, *dutifully affectionate; pious*.  
 plācare, *to appease*.  
 plācēre, *to please*, (dat.)  
 placīde, *calmly*.  
 plāne, *quite*.  
 plānities, ēi, *level ground, plain*.  
 planta, *a plant*.  
 Platææ, *a town in Bœotia*.  
 Plato, ōnis, *Plato, (a Grecian philosopher)*.  
 plaudere, 3.  
 plēbēii, *the plebeians*.



plebs, *the people, (as distinguished from the patricians or nobles,) the plebeians; G. plēbis.*

piectere, *to twist, twine, weave, punish.*

plerique, pleræque, pleraque, *the most.*

plerumque, *generally.*

plōrare, *to cry; to weep aloud; to bewail.*

plus, *more, p. 151; G. pluris.*

Pæcile, *the painted portico at Athens.*

poëma, ātis, *a poem, App. ii.*

pœnam dāre, *to suffer punishment.*

pœnitentia, *penitence, regret (for.)*

pœnitet, *it repents. Take acc. as nom. me I, pœnitet repent.*

Pœnus, *a Carthaginian.*

poëta, *a poet.*

pollicēri, (pollicītus,) *to promise.*

pompa, *a procession.*

ponum, *an apple, or other fruit.*

pōnere, (pōsui, pōsit,) *p. 162.*

pons, pontis, *a bridge.*

Pontifex Maximus, *the Pontifex Maximus, or Chief Priest.*

Pontus Euxīnus, *the Euxine, now the Black Sea.*

pōpulari, *to lay waste; to ravage.*

popularis, *popular.*

pōpulus, i, f., *a poplar tree.*

pōpulus, i, *a people, the people.*

por-rigere, (rex, rect,) *to extend, stretch out.*

porta, *gate.*

portare, *to carry.*

porticus, ūs, *portico.*

portus, ūs, *port, harbor.*

posse, *to be able, can.*

possidēre, (possēd, possess,) *to possess.*

post, *after, (acc.)*

postea, *afterwards.*

posthac, *hereafter, afterwards.*

postpōnere, (pōsu, pōsit,) *to put after.*

pōstquam, *after.*

postulare, *to demand.*

pōtens, (potentis,) *powerful.*

potentia, *power.*

potestas, ātis, *power.*

pōtio, ōnis, *drink.*

potiri, (pōtiōr,) *to get possession of.*

pōtius, *rather.*

præ, *before; in comparison with; for.*

præbere, *to afford; to supply; præbere se, to prove or show oneself.*

præceptor, 7, *teacher, preceptor.*

præceptum, 7, *precept.*

præcipere, io, (præcēp, præcept,) 7, *to direct, instruct.*

præcipitare, *to cast down headlong; to ruin.*

præclārus, 30, *illustrious.*

præcurrere, *to run before; to outrun, (dat.)*

præda, booty, prey. prædæ esse, (to be for a prey,) *to be the prey.*

prædicare, *to proclaim; to extol.*

prædicere, (prædix, prædict,) *to foretell.*

præditus, *endued with.*

præmittere, (mīs, miss,) *to send forward; to send on.*

præmium, *reward.*

præsens, tis, *present.*

præsidium, *a defence; a garrison.*

præstans, tis, *excellent.*

præstare, *to be better; to excel, (dat. or acc. of person:)—to show, or exhibit.*

præstat, *it is better.*

præterea, *besides; more.*

præter-ire, *to pass (by.)*

prætērītus, *past.*

prætor, ōris, *prætor, a Roman magistrate.*

prætōrius, *relating to a prætor; prætorian; of prætorian rank.*

prætūra, *the prætorship.*

prātum, *meadow.*

pravitas, ātis, *wickedness.*

prāvus, *wicked, depraved.*

præces, um, *prayers.*

præmere, (press, press,) *p. 162, to press.*

pretiōsus, 25, *precious.*

primum, first, (adv.:) *ut primum, as soon as.*

prīmus, *first.*

princeps, first; (as subst.) *prince, chief.*

principatus, ūs, *the first place.*

prior, *former.*

priscus, *ancient, old.*

privare, *to deprive, (abl.)*

prīvatus, *private.*

pro, *for; in proportion to, (abl.)*

prōbare, *to approve of.*

prōbari, *to be approved of.*

procēdere, *to go along.*

procella, *storm.*

prōcēritas, *tallness, height.*

prōcul, *afar off; at a distance.*

prōdere, (prodid, prodit,) *to betray.*

prōdesse, (profui,) *p. 165, (65,) to profit, do good to.*

proditio, ōnis, *treachery.*

prōditor, *a betrayer; a traitor.*

prodūcere, (dux, duct,) *to lead forth.*

prælium, *battle.*

prælium committere, 15, ii. *to join battle.*

prōfecto, *in truth, assuredly.*

prōfectus, *set out, departed.*

proficere, io, (fēc, fect,) *to make progress.*

proffigare, *to rout.*

prōhibēre, 21, *to prohibit, forbid.*

prōles, is, f. *offspring.*

promiscuus, *mixed.*

promissum, *promise.*

promisso stare, *to stand to a promise; to keep a promise.*

prōmittere, (promīs, promiss,) *to promise.*

prope, *near.*

propensus, *inclined.*

propior, *nearer.*

propōnere, (proposu, proposit,) *to place before, 19; to draw; to offer.*

propositum, *purpose, intention.*

proprius, *peculiar to; (ones) own.*

propter, *on account of.*

prorsus, 21, 31, *thoroughly, altogether.*



prorumpere, (prorūp, prorupt,) to burst forth; to rush out.

pro-sternere, Ex. 17, to overthrow, beat down.

prostravi. See prosterno.

provēnire, to come forth; to spring up.

provīdus, circumspect, wise.

provincia, 14, province.

proxīmus, nearest, next.

prudens, cautious, sensible.

prudentia, prudence.

publice, 35.

publicus, public.

puđicus, modest, chaste.

puđor, ōris, shame, bashfulness.

puella, girl.

puer, ĕri, boy.

puerit̃ia, boyhood.

a primā puerit̃iā, from his earliest boyhood, (childhood.)

pugna, battle.

pugnare, to fight.

pulcher, chra, chrum, beautiful.

pulchritudo, inis, beauty.

pullus, young (of a bird.)

pulvis, ĕris, dust.

Pūnicus, Punic, (that is, Carthaginian.)

puniri, to be punished.

puppis, is, stern (of a vessel.)

purpurea, purple.

purus, pure.

putare, to think.

Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.

Pyrrhi bellum, the war with Pyrrhus.

Pythagorēus, a disciple of Pythagoras; a Pythagorēan.

Quadraginta, forty.

quærere, (quæsiv, quæsīt.) p. 163, seek; seek for; inquire; ask for.

quæstio, ōnis, question.

quæstorius, quæstorian; of quæstorian rank, (i. e. who has been quæstor.)

quālis, such as; of what kind.

quam, than, how, with superl. as—as possible, (using the positive.)

quam ut, omit these words and render by the inf.

(major, too great, quam ut sit, to be.)

quam celerrīme, as quickly as possible.

quam prīmum, as soon as possible.

quam plurīmi, as many as possible.

quam maxīme, as greatly as possible.

quandiu, as long as; how long.

quamobrem, wherefore, why.

quamquam, although.

quamvis, however much; although.

quando? when?

quantōpere, 18, (ii.) how greatly, as greatly.

quantus, how great; (when tantus is omitted,) as great as.

quāsi, as if; as it were.

quatuor, four.

—que, and.

quercus, ūs, oak.

quēri, (quest,) to complain.

qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that.

quia, because.

quid? what?

quīdam, p. 169, a certain one.

quīdem, indeed.

ne—quidem, not even.

quidnam, what, (as dependent interrogative.)

quidni? why—not?

quiescere, (quiēv.) p. 163, to rest.

quin. See list of conjunctions.

Quīrites, ium, Quirites, a name of the Romans.

quis, any.

quis? who?

quid agis? how do you do? what are you doing?

quispiam, p. 169, some, somebody.

quisquam, p. 169, any, anybody.

quisque, p. 169, each, everybody.

quisquis, p. 169, whoever.

quo—eo, the—the.

quod, because, that, (adv.)

quōmodo, how.

quōniam, since.

quōque, also, too.

quot —? how many?

quōtidie, daily.

quōties, how often.

quōtus, how many.

quum, when, since, although.

quum—tum, both—and also.

quum maxime, just as.

Rādīus, a ray, a beam.

rāmus, a branch.

rana, a frog.

rāpere, io, (rapu, rapt,) p. 161, 52, to snatch.

raptus, -ūs, rape.

raro, seldom.

ratio, ōnis, reason, an account.

rātus, (part. of reor,) p. 167, 65.

rēcēdere, (recess,) to retire, to withdraw.

recīpere, io, (recēp, recept,) 29. recipere se, to return.

recītare, to recite.

reclūdere, (reclus,) p. 242. Voc. on perf. si, to open, reveal.

recte fācere, to do right; to act rightly.

rectus, straight, right.

re-cumbere, (cubu, cubit,) to lie down.

recuperare, to recover.

recusare, 23, ii. to refuse.

reddere, (reddīd, reddīt,) to return; reddere ratiōnem, to give an account.

redire, 30, to return.

redītus, ūs, 36, ii. a return.

reditum secundare, to grant a favorable return.

reducere, to lead back.

rēfert, *it is of importance*: nihil refert, *it is of no importance*; makes no difference.

reficere, *io*, to refresh, refit.

refugere, *io*, to flee back.

refulgere, (refuls,) to shine.

regalis, *royal*.

rēgere, (rex, rect,) to rule, to govern.

regīna, *queen*.

rēgio, ōnis, *region, district, country*.

regius, *royal*.

regnare, to reign.

regnum, *kingdom*.

rejicere, *io*, (rejēc, reject,) 30, to reject.

relinquere, (relīqu, relict,) to leave.

reliquiā, *remains*.

reliquus, *remaining*; but see p. 151, 39.

remanere, (remans,) to remain.

remedium, 29, *remedy*.

reminisci, to recollect, (gen. or acc.)

remissio, onis, *a relaxation, lessening, diminution*.

remittere, (remīs, remiss,) to remit: pœnam remittere, to excuse a punishment.

renovare, to renew.

reor, p. 167, 65, to think.

repērire, (reper, repert,) to find. See Syn.

repertore, (petiv, petīt,) to seek again.

reportare, to carry back: victoriam reportare, to gain a victory.

reprehendere, to blame, censure.

reprehensio, ōnis, *blame*.

repudiare, to reject.

requirere, to seek again; to require; to miss.

rērum natūra, *nature*.

res, rei, *thing, affair*.

res gestæ, *achievements, deeds, (in war,) successes, &c.*

resistere, to resist, (dat.)

resoundare, (sonu, sonit,) to resound.

respondere, (respond, respons,) to answer.

respublica. p. 168, (74,) *commonwealth*.

restituere, 18.

reticere, (reticui,) to keep silence about.

retinere, (retinu, retent,) to hold back; to retain.

retribuere, to give back; to repay: gratiam retribuere, to recompense.

reus, *an accused person*.

reverti, (reversus,) to turn back; return.

reviviscere, to revive.

rex, rēgis, *king*.

Rhēnus, *the Rhine*.

Rhōdānus, *the Rhone*.

ridere, p. 160, vi., to laugh, laugh at.

rīgere, p. 160, iv., to be stiff, dried up.

rīpa, *bank*. Syn.

risus, ūs, *laughter*.

robustus, *robust, strong*.

rōgare, to ask.

rogatio, ōnis, *asking, proposal; a bill proposed*.

rōgus, *funeral pile*.

Rōma, *Rome*.

Romānus, *Roman*.

ros, rōris, *dew*.

rosa, *rose*.

rotundus, *round*.

Rūbico, ōnis, *the Rubicon, a stream that formed the boundary between Italy and Gallia Cisalpina*.

rudere, to bray.

rudis, *uneducated*.

ruere, p. 163, (60,) to rush, hurl down.

rugire, to roar.

rus, rūris, *the country*. See p. 278, (160\*.)

rure, *from the country*.

ruri, *in the country*.

Sabine, *a Sabine woman*.

sacer, cra, crum, (devoted to the gods,)

hence (1) *sacred*, (2) *accursed*.

sacerdos, ōtis, *priest, priestess*.

sacra, *sacred rites or solemnities; festivals*.

sacramentum, 9, *military oath, a pledge*.

sacrum, *a sacrifice*.

sæpe, *often*.

sævire, to rage, to act cruelly.

sagitta, *arrow*.

Saguntini, *the Saguntines*.

Saguntum, *a town*.

Sālāmis, Inis, *an island near the coast of Attica*.

salio, p. 164, 59, to spring, leap.

salius, *salt, saltish*.

saltare, to dance, to leap.

saltem, at any rate; at all events; at least.

saltus, ūs, *a woodland pasture*.

saluber, (salubris,) p. 171, 77.

salus, ūtis, *safety, welfare*.

salutare, to salute.

salvus, *safe*.

sanare, to cure.

sancire, p. 164, § 14, to confirm.

sane, *assuredly*.

sanguis, inis, p. 148, *blood*.

sānus, *sound; in health*.

sāpere, p. 161, (52,) to taste, be wise.

sapiens, ntis, *wise*.

sarcīna, *burden, package*.

Sardes, ium, *Sardis*.

satiare, to satisfy.

satis, enough; satis magnus, *pretty considerable*.

satisficere, (satisfēc, satisfact,) to satisfy, (dat.)

Saturnus, i, *Saturn*.

saxum, *rock, stone*.

scēlus, ēris, *crime*.

sceptrum, *sceptre*.

scientia, *knowledge*.

Scīpio, ōnis, *Scipio, a celebrated Roman general*.

scire, to know.

scōpus, *a mark*.

scrībere, p. 161, (52,) to write.

scriptor, oris, *writer, author*.

scriptum, *thing written; writing*.

- scutum, *shield*.  
 se, *himself, herself, itself, themselves* :—  
 or *him, her, it, them*.  
 secēdere, (secess, secess,) *to withdraw*.  
 secundus, *second, favorable* : res secundæ,  
*prosperity*.  
 securis, *is, axe*.  
 secūrus, *without fear ; without anxiety*.  
 sed, *but*.  
 sēdere, (sēd, sess,) *to sit*.  
 sēdes, *seat, abode, settlement*.  
 seditio, onis, *sedition*.  
 sēges, ētis, *corn sown ; crop*.  
 segniter, *lazily*.  
 sejungere, (junix, junct,) 32.  
 sella, *chair*.  
 sēmen, ĩnis, *seed*.  
 semper, *always, ever*.  
 sempiternus, *eternal*.  
 senator, *a senator*. Quo senatore, (*who*  
*being a senator, =*) *for if he was a sen-*  
*ator*.  
 senatus, ūs, *senate*.  
 senectūs, ūtis, *old age*.  
 senescere, *to grow old*. sēnex, sēnis, *old*  
*man*.  
 sentēntia, *opinion, meaning*.  
 sentire, (sens,) p. 164, *to feel, perceive*.  
 sepēlire, (sepelio, sepult,) p. 164, *to bury*.  
 septentrio, ōnis, *the north ; properly the*  
*seven stars in the Great Bear*.  
 sēqui, (secūtus, or sequutus,) p. 167, *to*  
*follow*.  
 sērere, (sēv, sāt,) p. 163, *to sow ; plant*.  
 sermo, ōnis, *discourse, conversation*.  
 sēro, late, *too late*.  
 serpens, *snake*.  
 servare, *to keep ; to preserve*.  
 servire, *to be a slave ; to be the slave of,*  
*(dat.)*  
 servitūs, ūtis, *slavery*.  
 servus, *slave*.  
 sese, the acc. of sui doubled—*render be-*  
*fore an infin., "that they."*  
 severitas, *seriousness*.  
 si, *if*.  
 signum, *sign, standard*.  
 silēre, *to be silent*.  
 silva, *wood*.  
 silvester, *woody*, p. 171, note.  
 similis, *like*.  
 simplex, ĩcis, *simple*.  
 simul, *at the same time*.  
 simul ac, } *as soon as*.  
 simul atque, }  
 simulare, *to pretend*.  
 sincērus, *sincere, genuine*.  
 sīne, *without*.  
 sīnere, (sīvi,) p. 163, (55,) *to permit, suffer*.  
 singūli, *one ; one apiece*.  
 sitire, I, *to be thirsty*.  
 sitis, *is, thirst*.  
 situs, *situated* : situm esse in eā re, *to*  
*consist in that*.  
 situs, -ūs, *situation ; nature (of a coun-*  
*try)*.
- sōcius, *ally, associate ; partner, compan-*  
*ion*.  
 Socrates, *is, a great Athenian philosopher*.  
 sol, sōlis, *the sun*.  
 solatium, *comfort, consolation*.  
 solemnia, *solemn rites ; games*.  
 solēre, (solitus,) *to be wont or accustomed* :  
 solebat, solitus est, *used*.  
 solium, *throne*.  
 sōlum, *only*.  
 sōlum, *soil*.  
 sōlus, (G. ĩus,) *alone ; only*.  
 solvere, (solv, solūt,) p. 163, (57,) *to loosen,*  
*pay*.  
 somnus, *sleep*.  
 sonare, (sonu, sonit,) p. 159.  
 sōnus, *sound*.  
 soror, ōris, *sister*.  
 sors, sortis, *lot*.  
 spargere, (spars, spars,) p. 162, *to scatter*.  
 speciosus, 31, *beautiful, handsome*.  
 spectare, *to behold ; to look at ; to look to*.  
 speculari, *to watch for*.  
 sperare, *to hope ; to hope for*.  
 spernere, (sprēv, sprēt,) p. 163, (55.) See  
 Synon., *to despise*.  
 spes, ei, *hope*.  
 spiritus, ūs, *breath*.  
 splendēre, p. 160, iv.  
 spoliare, *to rob of, despoil, (abl.)*  
 splendēre, (spōpond,) p. 160, vii., *to prom-*  
*ise*.  
 sponsor, *a surety*.  
 stabilitas, *stability*.  
 stagnum, 15, *a pool or lake*.  
 stare, (stēt, stāt,) p. 159, (50,) *to stand ;*  
*stare also means to cost*.  
 stare promisso, *to stand to or keep a*  
*promise*.  
 stātīm, 12, *immediately*.  
 statio, post, &c., (pl. stationes = *guards*.)  
 statuarius, *sculptor*.  
 status, ūs, *state, condition*.  
 stella, *star*.  
 sternere, (strāv, strāt,) p. 163, 55, *to strew,*  
*throw down*.  
 stōnāchus, *the stomach*.  
 stringere, (strinx, strict,) p. 162, *to bind*.  
 struere, (strux, struct,) p. 163, *to pile up,*  
*build*.  
 studēre, *to pursue, (to study, &c.) to be*  
*fond of ; to favor, (dat.)*  
 studiōsus, *desirous of ; devoted to*.  
 studium, *zeal, pursuit*.  
 stultus, *foolish ;—a fool*.  
 stupēre, p. 160, iv., *to be astounded*.  
 suavis, *sweet*.  
 sub, *under ; acc. (after verbs of motion)*  
*or abl.*  
 subigere, (ēg, act,) 18, ii.—*also to till,*  
*cultivate*.  
 subire, *to undergo*.  
 subĭto, *suddenly*.  
 subĭtus, *sudden*.  
 subvēnire, } *to succor, (dat.)*  
 succurrere, }



subjicere, io. (subjĕc, subject,) 36.  
 sublime, 16, *on high*.  
 subtilis, *fine-spun; fine; shrewd, &c.*  
 succĕdere, (success,) *to succeed; take the place of: successurus, who was to succeed.*  
 succensĕre, 22, *to be angry, (dat.)*  
 succumbere, (succūbui,) *to yield to.*  
 succus, *juice, moisture.*  
 sudare, *to be in a perspiration.*  
 suescere, p. 163, (58,) *to grow accustomed.*  
 sufficere, (sufficio,) *to be enough.*  
 sumere, (sumps, sumpt,) p. 162, iv., *to take.*  
 summa, *a sum.*  
 summum imperium, *the chief command; supreme power.*  
 sumptus, ūs, *expense.*  
 super, *above.*  
 supĕrare, *to conquer:—montem, to cross a mountain.*  
 superbe, *proudly.*  
 superbire, *to behave proudly.*  
 superbus, *proud.*  
 superstitio, ōnis, 21, *superstitious.*  
 supervacuum, *unnecessary, superfluous.*  
 suppeditare, *to supply.*  
 supervĕnire, *to come upon; to approach unobserved, with dat.*  
 supplicium, *punishment.*  
 supra, *above.*  
 surdus, *deaf.*  
 suscipere, io, (suscep, suscept,) *to undertake.*  
 suspicio, ōnis, 30, *mistrust, suspicion.*  
 sustinĕre, (sustinu, sustent,) 29, *to endure.*  
 suus, a, um, p. 169, *his, hers, its, their, &c.*  
 Syracusæ, ārum, *Syracuse.*

Tābŭla, *tablet, &c.; tabulæ, account-books.*  
 tacĕre, p. 159, i., *to be silent.*  
 tam, *so.*  
 tamen, *yet, nevertheless.*  
 tandem aliquando, *at last.*  
 tangere, (tĕtig, tact,) p. 162, *to touch.*  
 tanquam, *as if.*  
 tanti, *for so much; for that (gen. of price.)*  
 tantum, *only.*  
 tardus, *slow.*  
 Tarentinus, *a Tarentine, (i. e. inhabitant of Tarentum.)*  
 taurus, *bull.*  
 tectum, 9, *roof, house.*  
 tĕgere, (tex, tect,) p. 162, (54,) *to cover.*  
 tegmentum, *covering.*  
 tĕlum, *missile, dart, weapon.*  
 temerarius, *rash.*  
 temĕre, *rashly, easily.*  
 nec temere, *nor—easily; and—not easily.*  
 temĕritas, *rashness.*  
 temperare, *to govern; to regulate.*  
 tempestas, *season, storm.*

templum, *temple.*  
 tempus, ōris, *time.*  
 tempus anni, *season of the year.*  
 tempōribus inservire, *to accommodate oneself to the times.*  
 tendere, (tetend, tens,) p. 161, (53,) *to stretch.*  
 tenĕre, p. 160, ii., *to hold.*  
 tĕnus, *as far as, up to, (prep.)*  
 tepĕre, *to be warm.*  
 terere, (triv, trit,) p. 163, *to rub.*  
 terere viam, *to tread a way often; to travel it often.*  
 terminare, 32, *to limit, bound.*  
 terra, *earth, land.*  
 terrā marique, *by sea and land.*  
 terrĕre, *to frighten; to terrify.*  
 terrestris, *earthly; on earth.*  
 tertius, *third.*  
 Teutoburgensis, *Teutoburgian.*  
 Thebæ, ārum, *Thebes.*  
 thĕsaurus, *treasure.*  
 Tibĕris, is, (m.) *the Tiber, a river in Italy.*  
 tigris, idis, (f,) *tiger.*  
 tilia, *a lime-tree.*  
 timĕre, p. 160, iv., *to fear.*  
 timidus, *timid.*  
 Timōleon, ontis, *Timoleon, a Corinthian general.*  
 tiro, ōnis, *a beginner.*  
 tōga, a toga, *the robe worn by Romans of the upper classes.*  
 tolerare, *to bear; to endure.*  
 tonare, (tonu, tonit,) p. 159.  
 tonĕre, *to shear.*  
 torpĕre, p. 160, iv., *to be stiff and motionless.*  
 torquis, is, *chain (worn round the neck.)*  
 torvus, *stern.*  
 tōties, *so often.*  
 totus, G. Ius, *whole.*  
 tractare, *to handle; to treat.*  
 trādere, (tradid, tradit,) *to deliver; to relate.*  
 trāhere, (trax, tract,) p. 162, (54,) *to draw, drag.*  
 trajicere, io, (trajĕc, trajet,) 24, *to cross.*  
 trans, *across.*  
 transfigere, (fix, fix,) *to transfix.*  
 transfūga, 16, *a deserter.*  
 transitus, ūs, *passing through; crossing.*  
 transire, *to pass over.*  
 tres, *three.*  
 tribuere, p. 163, vi., *to allot to.*  
 tribūnal, ālis, *tribunal.*  
 tribūni mīlitum, *military tribunes.*  
 ——— plĕbis, *tribunes of the people.*  
 tribunus, *a tribune.*  
 tributum, *tribute.*  
 tristis, *sad.*  
 triumphare, *to triumph.*  
 Troja, *Troy.*  
 trucidare, *to slaughter; to butcher.*  
 truncus, *trunk.*  
 tu, *thou.*



tuēri, to defend.  
 tum, then : tum—tum, both—and.  
 turbare, to disturb ; to throw into confusion.  
 Turca, a Turk.  
 turpis, base, disgraceful.  
 turris, is, a tower.  
 tussilāgo, īnis, the name of a plant.  
 tussis, is, a cough.  
 tūtus, safe.  
 tuus, a, um, thine, thy : tuum est, it is your business, (part, duty, &c.)  
 tympanum, a drum.  
 tyrannus, tyrant.

Uber, ēris, breast, dugs.  
 ubertas, fertility.  
 ubi, when, where, after  
 ubicunque, wherever.  
 ubīnam, where.  
 ubīque, everywhere.  
 ullus, any : nec ullus, and no ; G. ius.  
 ultra, beyond.  
 ultro, of his own accord : ultro incusare, to volunteer an accusation against (a person ; ) to accuse a man deliberately.  
 Ulysses, is, Ulysses.  
 umbra, shade, shadow.  
 umbraculum, protection from the heat.  
 una, in one place, together.  
 unda, wave.  
 unde, whence.  
 undīque, from all sides.  
 universus, whole.  
 unquam, ever.  
 unus, G. ius, one.  
 urbs, urbis, city : ab urbe conditā, from the building of the city.  
 urere, (uss, ust,) to burn.  
 ursus, a bear.  
 usque ad, quite up to ; up to.  
 usus, need, want.  
 ut. See list of conjunctions, p. 292 : ut—sic. Sometimes so that ;—on condition that.  
 uter, p. 169, utrius, which (of two.)  
 uterque, p. 169, each.  
 uti, that, as.  
 utilis, useful, good (for any purpose.)  
 utilitas, utility, use.  
 utīnam, would that.  
 utrum, whether. See p. 269, (51.) In sentences that are not dependent, it is to be untranslated.  
 uva, grape.  
 uxor, ōris, wife.

Vācare, to be free from, to have leisure, (abl.)  
 vagari, to wander.  
 valde, very.  
 vale, farewell.  
 valens, tis, strong.  
 valēre, to be strong ; to be well ; to be able.

Valerius Maxīmus, a Roman historian.  
 validus, strong.  
 vallis, is, a valley.  
 vanitas, emptiness.  
 vanus, empty, vain.  
 vapor, vapor.  
 Varianus, (adj.) of Varius.  
 varietas, variety : also diversity of color.  
 vārius, various.  
 vas, vādis, m., surety : vādem fieri alicujus, to become anybody's surety.  
 vas, vāsis, n., a vessel.  
 vastare, 9, to destroy, lay waste.  
 —ve, or.  
 vehēmens, ntis, violent, eager.  
 vehementer, 25, vehemently.  
 vehere, (vex, vect,) p. 162, (54.) to carry.  
 Veientes, the Veientes, or people of Veii.  
 vel, either, or ;—even.  
 vēlox, ōcis, swift.  
 venenum, poison.  
 venaticus, belonging to hunting : canis venaticus, a sporting dog, a hound.  
 venatum, (sup.) a hunting.  
 venari, to hunt : venatum (supine) ire, to go a hunting.  
 vendere, (did, dit,) to sell.  
 vēnire, (ven, vent,) to come.  
 Vēnus, ēris, Venus, the goddess of beauty.  
 ver, vēris, spring.  
 verbum, a word.  
 vere, truly.  
 verecundus, modest.  
 verisimilis, probable.  
 vero, but.  
 versari, to be employed : to reside at.  
 versus, ūs, a verse.  
 vertere, (vert, vers,) p. 161, (53.) to turn.  
 vēru, n. a spit.  
 verum, truth ; verum dīcere, to speak the truth.  
 vērus, true.  
 vere, truly.  
 verēri, (veritus sum,) to fear.  
 vespa, wasp.  
 vesper, ēris, the evening.  
 vesci, to feed (on,) abl.  
 vester, tra, trum, your, yours (of more than one.)  
 vestire, to clothe.  
 vestis, garment, dress.  
 vētare, (vetu, vetit,) p. 159.  
 vētus, ēris, old. Pl. neut., vetera ; superl., veterrimus.  
 vetustas, antiquity.  
 vetustus, old.  
 vexare, to vex ; to harass.  
 via, way.  
 vicinus, near.  
 vicissitūdo, īnis, change.  
 victima, victim.  
 victōria, a victory.  
 victus, ūs, food.  
 victus, conquered.  
 vīdēre, (vīd, vīs,) p. 160, vii., to see ; vīdēri, to be seen, to seem.

vīgēre, p. 160, iv.  
 vigilare, *to be awake; to watch.*  
 villa, *farm-house, country-house.*  
 vincere, (vīc, vict,) p. 162.  
 vincire, (vinx, vinct,) p. 164, § 14.  
 vincūlum, *chain.*  
 vindicare, *to avenge.*  
 vinea, *vineyard.*  
 vinum, *wine.*  
 violare, *to violate; to wrong.*  
 vipēra, *viper.*  
 vir, vīri, *man, (opposed to woman;) husband.*  
 vīrere, p. 160, iv., *to be green, to flourish.*  
 vīres, ium, *strength. (See vis.)*  
 virgo Vestalis, *a Vestal virgin, whose duty it was to keep up the sacred fire in the temple of Vesta.*  
 virgultum, *bush.*  
 virtus, ūtis, *manly excellence; virtue; courage.*  
 vis, 2d sing. of volo.  
 vis, vim, vi; pl. vīres; *strength, power, force, multitude: summis vīribus, with all his might.*  
 vīsere, p. 163, (56,) *to visit*

27\*

vīsus, (*See vīdēre, p. 160, vii., seen.*)  
 vitare, *to avoid.*  
 vitis, is, *vine.*  
 vītium, *fault, vice.*  
 vituperare, *to reprove; to blame; to chide.*  
 vīvere, (vix, vict,) p. 163, (57,) *to live.*  
 vīvus, *alive.*  
 vix, *scarcely; with difficulty.*  
 vōcare, *to call; to invite.*  
 volo, (velle, volui,) *to be willing, to wish.*  
 volare, *to fly.*  
 voluntas, ātis, *inclination, will.*  
 voluptas, ātis, *pleasure.*  
 vox, vōcis, *voice; also speech, exclamation.*  
 vulnerare, *to wound.*  
 vulnus, ěris, *wound.*  
 vulpes, is, (f.) *fox.*  
 vultus, ūs, *countenance, look.*

Xēnōphon, ontis, *a Grecian general, an elegant writer and historian.*  
 Xerxes, is, *Xerxes, a king of Persia.*

## ENGLISH - LATIN INDEX.

- a) p. refers to the page: numerals without p. to the Vocabularies on the Exercises, Pt. II., (if they are above 6.) Numerals enclosed in a parenthesis refer to the Exercises, Pt. II.
- b) A verb in *ere*, when the penult is not marked long, belongs to the third conjugation. Verbs of the 2d conj. have the penult marked long, as *ēre*.
- c) When a verb is separated by a hyphen from its preposition, the perfect of the simple verb is to be looked for in the lists. Thus *ob-tegere*: look for *teg-o* in the list of the verbs of the third ending in a *k* sound.

Able, (to be,) *posse, quire, (queo.)*  
 abound, *abundare, abl.*  
 about, (= concerning,) *de, abl.*  
 above, *super, supra, (prep.)*  
 absent, (to be,) *abesse.*  
 accomplish, *conficere, fēc, fect.*  
 accident, *casus, ūs.*  
 according to, *secundum, (prep.)*  
 account of, (on.) *ob, propter.*  
 accuse, *accusare.*  
 accused-person, *reus.*  
 accustomed (to be.) *solēre, solitus.*  
 accustom themselves, *consuescere.*  
 accustom yourself, *te assuefacere (fēc, fect.)*  
 acquire the power, *facultatem excolere, (colu, cult.)*  
 acquit, *absolvere, (solv, solūt,) gen. of charge.*  
 across, *trans, (prep.)*  
 act, *agere, (ēg, act:) act rightly, recte facere.*  
 action, *actio, ōnis.*  
 act-proudly, *superbire, 9.*  
 add, *addere, (dīd, dīt.)*  
 adorn, *dēcōrare, 7; ornare.*  
 advantage, *utilitas*: to offer advantages, *utilitatem* or *utilitates habēre; prābēre, or afferre.*  
 advice, *consilium*: by the advice of my uncle, *avunculo auctore.*  
 affair, *res, ei.*

affection, *amor, ōris.*  
 afflict, *affligere, (flīx, flīct.)*  
 afford, *præ-stare, (stīt, stāt.)*  
 after, *prep. post, (with acc.)*  
 after-that, *posthac.*  
 afterwards, *postea.*  
 again, *rursus*; (= once more,) *iterum.*  
 against, *contra, adversus, acc.: in with acc. (of feelings, actions, &c., against a person.)*  
 Agamemnon, *Agamemnon, G. ōnis.*  
 age, (= time of life,) *ætas, atis*; (= length of time,) *vetustas.*  
 age of Augustus, *ævum Augusteum.*  
 agreeable, *jucundus; suavis, (41.)*  
 aim at, *studēre, (dat.)*  
 air, *æēr, æēris, m.*  
 Alexander, *G. dri.*  
 all, *omnis.*  
 ally, *socius.*  
 almost, *prope, pæne.*  
 along, *secundum.*  
 Alps, *Alpes, G. ium.*  
 already, *jam.*  
 altar, *ara.*  
 although, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi; quamquam, quamvis, licet, quum.<sup>1</sup>*  
 always, *semper.*  
 ambassador, *lēgatus.*  
 ambition, *ambitio, ōnis.*  
 amongst, among, *inter, acc.*  
 amongst (a people,) *apud, with acc.*

<sup>1</sup> See p. 286, (252—255.)

ancient, *antiquus*.  
 ancients, the, *vetères*.  
 and, *et, ac, atque, que*.  
 anger, *ira*.  
 angry (to be), *irasci*, dat. : *succensere*, dat.  
 announce, *nuntiare*.  
 answer, *respondere*, (*spond, spons.*)  
 ant, *formica, æ*.  
 any. See page 281, (191.)  
 any-one, (after *negative* words,) *quisquam*. See note 3. Ex. 13.  
 apiece, never to be translated, but the *distributive* numeral to be used.<sup>1</sup> See p. 173.  
 Apollo, *Apollo, G. inis*.  
 appear, (= seem,) *videri, vis*.  
 appearance, p. 148, 24, *species, ei*.  
 appease, *placare*.  
 approve of, *probare*.  
 arise, *oriri (ortus), ex-oriri*, (45.)  
 arm, *brachium*.  
 arms, *arma, pl.*  
 army, *exercitus, us*.  
 arrive, *venire; advenire*.  
 arrive at, *pervenire ad*.  
 arrow, *sagitta*.  
 art, *ars, artis*.  
 as, *ut*.  
 as, after *tam, talis, tantus, tot*, is *quam, qualis, quantus, quot*, respectively.  
 as, after *idem*, is *qui*, (or *ac, atque*.)  
 as it were, *quasi*.  
 as long as, *quamdiu*.  
 as many as possible, *quam plurimi*.  
 as possible, *quam* before the superlat.  
 as soon as, *simul ac; ut primum; quum primum; ubi; ut*.  
 ascertain, *explorare*.  
 asleep, to be, *dormire*.  
 ashamed, (am—of,) *puget*.  
 ask, *rogare*.<sup>2</sup>  
 ass, *asinus*.  
 assault, (a town,) *oppugnare, invadere*.  
 assist, *adjuvare*.  
 assistance, *auxilium*.  
 at, (of a place, near which a battle is fought, &c.) *apud, (or ad)*.  
 at-a-distance, *procul*.  
 at a great price, *magni*.  
 at-home, *domi*.  
 at last, *denique*.  
 at nothing,  *nihili*.  
 at once, *simul*.  
 at-the-right-time, *in tempore*.  
 Athens, *Athens, urum*.  
 Athenian, *Atheniensis*.  
 atrocious, *atrox, ucis*.  
 attack, *adgrædi, gress; adoriri, ort*: attack, (= charge an enemy,) *impetum facere*: to be attacked, *impugnari*.

attentive, *studiosus, (gen.)*  
 Augustus. See age.  
 Autumn, *Auctumnus*.  
 avarice, *avaritia*.  
 avenge, *vindicare*.  
 avoid, *vitare*.  
 awake, to be, *vigilare*.  
 awaken, *excitare*.  
 aware, to be, *intelligere, (lex, lect.)*  
 Bad, *pravus, malus, inutilis*.  
 bake, *côquere*.  
 band, *mânus, us*.  
 banish, *pellere, (pépul, puls.)*  
 banishment, *exsilium*.  
 bank, *ripa*.  
 bark, *cortex, icis, m*.  
 base, *turpis*.  
 battle, *prælium*.  
 battle of Cannæ, — of Marathon, *pugna Cannensis, — Marathonia*.  
 be with me, *mecum una esse*  
 beam, *radius*.  
 bear, *ursus*.  
 bear, *ferre, (tul, lat.)*  
 beard, *barba*.  
 beasts, *feræ, bellua*.  
 beat, *ferire, (percussi, percussum.)*  
 beautiful, *pulcher, (root pulchr.)*  
 beauty, *pulchritudo*: (= elegance,)  *elegantia*.  
 because, *quia*.  
 becomes, *fit, (see fio.)*  
 become, *evadere, (vas, vas.)*  
 become acquainted with, *innotescere*,<sup>3</sup> 19.  
 becoming, (to be,) *décere, acc.*  
 befall, *accidere, (accidi,) dat.*  
 before, *adv., antea*.  
 before, *prep. ante, acc.*  
 before, (standing before a sentence,) *antèquam*.  
 beg, *rogare, orare*.  
 begin, *côpisse, (began, before pass. infin. captus est; ) incipere, 8.*  
 begin to flourish, *florescere*.  
 beguile, *fallere, (fêfelli.)*  
 behind, *pône, (prep.)*  
 behold, *adspicere, conspîcere*.  
 behave-proudly, *superbire, (followed by in with acc.)*  
 believe, *credere, dat., (credid, credit.)*  
 believed, I am, *mihî creditur*.  
 bend down, *in-flectere*.  
 benefit, *beneficium*.  
 besiege, *obsidere, (sêd, sess.)*  
 besieger, *obsidens*.  
 best, *optimus*.  
 bestow, *tribuere*, p. 163, 57 : *impertire*.

<sup>1</sup> For instance, to translate 'one apiece,' 'two apiece,' use the distributive numeral for *one, two, &c.*, (singuli, bini:) 'Two oboli apiece,' (acc.,) '*binos obolos.*'

<sup>2</sup> In Exercise 21, Pt. II., translate 'we will ask ourselves,' by *queremus*.

<sup>3</sup> Followed by the *dat.* of the person.



- Upon' is to be untranslated,  
 and the person put in the dative.  
 betray, *prodere, prodidi, proditum*.  
 betray confidence, *fidem fallere*.  
 better, *melior*; adv. *melius*.  
 beyond, *præter, ultra*.  
 bigger, *major*.  
 bite, p. 160, vii., *mordere*.  
 bird, *avis*.  
 bitter, *amarus*.  
 Black Sea, *Pontus Euxinus*: on the  
 Black Sea, *ad Pontum Euxinum*.  
 blame, *culpa*.  
 blame, *culpæ*.  
 blind, *cæcus*.  
 blood, *sanguis, inis, m.*, (after it is shed,  
*cruur.*)  
 blossom, *florere*.  
 blow-off, *jactare*, (properly, to toss.)  
 boast, *gloriarî*.  
 body, *corp-us, oris*.  
 book, p. 147, *liber, ri*.  
 booty, *præda*.  
 born, *natus*; born to, *natus ad*. before  
 the birth of Christ, *ante Christum na-*  
*tum*.  
 both, *uterque*, p. 169. both—and, *et—et*.  
 bough, *ramus*.  
 boy, *puer*; G. *pueri*.  
 brave, *fortis*; bravely, *fortiter*.  
 bray, *rudere, rudi* and *rudivi, ruditum*.  
 break, *frangere, (frangi, fractum)*.  
 break one's word, *fidem violare*.  
 break a law, *legem violare*.  
 break-off, *defringere, (frang, fract.)*  
 bribery, *ambitus, us*.  
 bridge, *pons, tis*.  
 Briseis, *Brisëis*; G. *ïdis*.  
 brother, p. 147, *frater, ris*.  
 build, *ædificare*: a nest, *construere*.  
 building, *ædificium*: from the building  
 of the city, *ab urbe conditâ*.  
 burst, *rumpere*.  
 bury, *sepelire*.  
 business, *negotia, pl.*: much business,  
*varia negotia*.  
 but, *sed*;—*autem*, (which must not stand  
 as the first word.)  
 but if, *sin*; *sin autem*.  
 buy, *emere*.  
 buyer, 8, *emptor*.  
 by, (close by,) *juxta*, (prep.)  
 by chance, *câsu*.  
 Cæsar, *Cæsar, aris*.  
 calamity, *calamitas, atis*.  
 call, *vocare, appellare, nomenclare. dicere*:  
 (= invite,) *vocare*.  
 call upon, *convênire, (vên, vent.)* acc.  
 calm, *tranquillus*.  
 camp, *castra, pl*.  
 can, *posse, quire, (queo)*  
 cannot, *nequeo*, p. 166; *non possum*.  
 card, *carpere*.  
 care, *cura*.  
 carefully, *diligenter*.  
 carry, *portare*; (in ships, carriages, &c.,)  
*vehere*.  
 carry, (a law,) *perferre, (tûl, lât.)*  
 carry-off, *rapere, (ui, tum :)* (of a disease,  
*per-imere, (em, empt.)*  
 carry on, (war,) *gerere*.  
 Carthage, *Carthâg-o, inis*.  
 cat, *felis*.  
 Catilinarian, 15, ii., *Catilinarius*.  
 cavalry, 10, *equitatus, us*.  
 cave, *antrum*.  
 cease, *desinere, (desi, desit :)* ceased, be  
 fore inf. pass. *desitus est*.  
 celebrated, p. 171, 77, *celeber*.  
 certain, *certus*.  
 certain, a, *quidam*, p. 169.  
 chance, (by,) *fortuito câsu*.  
 change, { *mutare.*  
           { *mutatio.*  
 character, *mores, pl.*; G. *um*  
 chariot, *currus, us*.  
 chaste, *castus*.  
 chastise, *castigare*.  
 cherish, *fôvère*.  
 check, (restrain,) *coercere, (47.)*  
 childish, *puerilis*.  
 children, *liberi, pl*.  
 choose, *eligere, (lêg, lect :)* *deligere, (42.)*  
 Christian, *Christiânus*.  
 Chryses, *Chryses*; G. *æ*.  
 Cicero, *Cicer-o, onis*.  
 circumstance, *res, ei*.  
 citadel, *arx, arcis*.  
 citizen, *civis, is*.  
 city, *urbs, urbis*.  
 climb-over, *superare*.  
 cloak, *pallium*.  
 close-to, *juxta*, (prep.)  
 clothe, *vestire*.  
 clothe oneself, *induere, acc.*  
 clouds, *nubes, is*.  
 coarse, *crassus*.  
 coast, *ora*.  
 cold, *frig-us, oris*.  
 collect, *colligere*; *conquirere*.  
 color, *color, oris*.  
 combatants, the, *pugnantes, (pl. parti-*  
*cipe.)*  
 come, *vênire, (vên, vent.)*  
 come-in, *inire*.  
 come into flower or blossom, *flores-*  
*cere*.  
 come-out, *exire*.  
 command, *impêrare, dat.*  
 commander-in-chief, *imperâtor*.  
 commit, *com-mittere*.  
 common, to make, *æquare*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In Ex. 33, (end.) transl. 'all the rights of patricians and plebeians were equalized,' *æquantur*.

- compel, *cōgere*, (*coīg*, *coact*.)  
 complete a work, *opus*, *conficere*, (*fēc*,  
*fect*.) or *absolvere*, (*solv*, *solūt*.)  
 comply with, *obēdīre*, *dat*.  
 conceal, *cēlare*, (2 acc.)  
 condemn, *damnare*.  
 concerning, *dē*.  
 concerns, (*it*), *intērest*.  
 conduct, (in a particular instance,) *fac-*  
*tum*.  
 confidence. See betray.  
 congratulate, *gratulari*.  
 conquer, *vincere*, (*vīc*, *vict*;) *superare*:  
 (= win by conquest.) *expugnare*, or  
*cāpere*, (*cēp*, *cept*.)  
 conquered, *victus*.  
 conqueror, *victor*, *ōris*.  
 conscience, *conscientia*: a pure or  
 clean conscience, *integra conscientia*.  
 consider, (= think,) *existimare*; *hā-*  
*bēre*.  
 considerably, *ālīquanto*, (before com-  
 paratives.)  
 consolation, *consolatio*, *ōnis*.  
 conspiracy, 15, ii., *conjuratio*.  
 Constantinople, *Constantinopōlis*, *G. is*,  
*Acc. im*.  
 consul, *consul*, *ūlis*.  
 consular power, *consularis potestas*.  
 consulate, *consulatus*, *ūs*.  
 consult, *consulere*, (*sulu*, *sult*), *acc*.  
 contend, *certare*.  
 contented, *contentus*, *abl*.  
 contest, 17, *certamen*.  
 continue, *permanēre*, (*mans*;) *persē-*  
*verare*.  
 conversation, *sermo*, *ōnis*.  
 cool, *defervescere*.  
 cool-down, *de-fervescere*, 18.  
 cook, *cōquere*.  
 Corinth, *Corinthus*.  
 Corinthian, *Corinthius*.  
 correct, *corrīgere*.  
 corrupt, *corrumpere*, (*rūp*, *rupt*.)  
 cost, *stāre*, (*abl*. of price.)  
 cough, *tussis*.  
 counsel, *consilium*.  
 count, *numērare*.  
 country, (= land,) *terra*; (= district)  
*rēgio*, *ōnis*; (= native country,) *pa-*  
*tria*; (as opposed to town,) *rus*,  
*rūris*.  
 country, in the, *ruri*.  
 country, into, *rus*.  
 country, from, *rure*.  
 courageously, *fortīter*.  
 court the favour, *amb-ire gratiam*.  
 cover, *ob-tēgere*, (*tex*, *tect*.)  
 crane, *grus*, *is*.  
 crackle, *crēpare*, p. 159, ii.  
 create, *creare*.  
 create, (an office,) *instituere*, (*stitu-*  
*stitut*.)  
 crop, *seges*, *ētis*.  
 crime, *malefīcium*; *scelus*, *ēris*; *flagi-*  
*tium*.  
 cross, *transjicere* or *trajicere*, (*jēc*, *ject*),  
*acc*.  
 to cross the Alps, *Alpes superare*.  
 crown, *corōna*.  
 " cingere.  
 cruel, *crudēlis*.  
 crush, *oppīmēre*, (*press*, *press*.)  
 cry, *clamor*. *ōris*.  
 cry out, *clamare*.  
 cry, (weep,) *flēre*, p. 159, 51.  
 cultivate, *cōlere*, (*cōlu*, *cult*;) to cultivate  
 our minds, *mentes excōlere*.  
 cure, *sānare*.  
 Cures, *G. ium*.  
 custom, *consuetūd-o*, *īnis*.  
 customary, *usitatus*.  
 custody, *custōdia*.  
 cut-down, *cādēre*, (*cēcīd*, *cās*.)  
 Daily, *quōtīdie*.  
 dance, *saltare*.  
 danger, *perīcūlum*.  
 dangerous, *periculosus*.  
 daughter, *filia*.  
 day, p. 148, 24, *dies*, *ei*.  
 day and night, *dies noctesque*.  
 dead, *mortuus*.  
 death, *mors*, *tis*.  
 debt, debts, *ās alienum*; *ās*, *āris*: *ās*  
*alienum*, properly 'another man's  
 brass,' (i. e. money.)  
 deceive, *decipēre*, *cēp*, *cept*; (if without  
 intending it,) *fallere*, *fēfelli*.<sup>1</sup>  
 decree, *decernere*, (*crev*, *cret*.)  
 deep, *altus*.  
 defend, *defendere*, (*fend*, *fens*;)   
 defend (a town) by a garrison, *præsi-*  
*dio firmare*.  
 defraud, *fraudare*, (*abl*.)  
 delight, *juvare*.  
 delightful, *jucundus*.  
 deliver, *liberare*, *abl*.  
 demand, *postulare*.  
 deny, *nēgare*.  
 depart, *discēdere*, *abl*.  
 deprive, *privāre*, (*abl*.)  
 derive, *haurire*.<sup>2</sup>  
 descend, 7; descent, 7, *descendere*, *de-*  
*scensus*.  
 desert, *desērere*, (*sēru*, *sert*.)  
 deserter, 16, ii., *transfūga*.  
 deserve, *merēri*, (*merīt*;) well of, *bēne*  
*dē*.  
 deserving of, *dignus*, *abl*.  
 desire, (= eager pursuit,) *studium*.

<sup>1</sup> Ex. 20. 'How you deceived yourself!' *ut animus tuus te fefellit!*

<sup>2</sup> 'From' after 'haurire' is to be translated by *e* or *ex*.

- desire, *velle*; *cupere*, (*cupiv*, *cupit*;) = express a wish, *optare*.  
 desire, *libido*, *inis*; *cupiditas*.  
 despise See Synonymes, p. 289  
 destroy, *delēre*, (*delēv*, *delet*;) *perdere*, (*perdid*, *perdit*.)  
 destruction, *perniciēs*, G. *ei*; *exītiūm* (48.)  
 detain, *detinēre*; *retardare*.  
 deter, *deterrēre*.  
 devote oneself to, *studere*, (dat.)  
 dictator, *dictator*, *ōris*.  
 die, *mōri*, *ior*, (*mortuus sum*.)  
 difference, it-makes-no—, *nihil rēfert*.  
 difficult, *difficilis*.  
 difficulty, *difficultas*, *ātis*.  
 dignity of Curule Ædile, *Curulis Ædilitas*.  
 diligent, *diligens*, *entis*.  
 dinner, *cæna*.  
 discharge, *fungi*, (*funct*;) abl.  
 discover, *invēnīre*, *rēpērire*. Syn. p. 239.  
 discover, (= reveal), *de-tēgere*.  
 disease, *morbus*.  
 disgraceful, *turpis*.  
 dismiss, *dīmītere*.  
 disperse, *dissipare*.  
 displease, *displicēre*, dat.  
 dispute, (= discuss.) *dispūtare*.  
 disregard, *negligere*.  
 distinguish oneself, himself, &c., *excellere*, *ui*, (acc. of pron. not to be translated.)  
 distinguished, *insignis*, *nobilis*, *illustris*.  
 distinguished, to be, *excellere*, (*ui*.)  
 disturb, *turbare*.  
 distress, *turbare*.  
 divide, p. 161, 53, *dividēre*, (*dīvisi*.)  
 do any wrong to a man, *aliquem injuriā afficere*.  
 do good, *prod-esse*.  
 do-wrong, *peccare*.  
 do, *fācere*.  
 “*agere*.  
 dog, *cānis*.  
 don't know, *nescio*.  
 doubt, *dubitare*.  
 doubt, there is no, *non est dubium* (*quin*.)  
 without doubt, *haud dubie*.  
 doubtful, *dubius*.  
 dove, *columba*.  
 dragon, *draco*, *ōnis*.  
 draw, (a sword.) *stringere*, p. 162.  
 draw out an army, *aciem instruere* (*strux*, *struct*.)  
 draw up an army in order of battle, 29.  
 dress, *vestitus*.  
 drink, *bibere*, (*bib*, *bibit*.)  
 to drink poison, *venenum haurire*, (*haus*.)
- drive, *pellere*, (*pepūl*, *puls*;)—drive away, *fugare*.  
 drive-back, *rejicere*, *io*.  
 dust, *pulvis*, *ēris*.  
 duty, *officiūm*: to do your duty, *officiūm fācere*, or *præstare*, (*stit*.)  
 dutiful affection, *pietas*, *ātis*.  
 dwell, *hābitare*.  
 draw,<sup>1</sup> p. 162, 54, *trāhere*.
- Each, *quisque*: (of two,) *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*; G. *utriusque*.  
 eagle, p. 145, *aquila*.  
 early, *matūre*.  
 early, *præmaturus*.  
 eārth, *terra*.  
 easy, *facilis*: easily, *facile*.  
 eat, *ēdere*, (*ēd*, *ēs*;) *vesci*, (as food.)  
 economy, *parsimonia*.  
 educate, *educare*.  
 effectual, *efficax*.  
 Egyptian, *Ægyptius*.  
 either—or, aut—aut, vel—vel, sive—sive.  
 elder, the, *priscus*.  
 elect, *elīgere*, (*līg*, *lect*.)  
 elephant, *elephas*, *antis*.  
 embrace, *amplecti*, *complecti*.  
 employ, *adhībēre*: to employ a trick, *dolo uti*, (*usus sum*;) abl.  
 employment, *negotium*.  
 empty, *vannus*.  
 encounter death, *mortem oppetere*.  
 end, *finis*, in-  
 end, *finire*.  
 never to make an end of reading, *lēgendi finem nunquam invēnīre*.  
 endure, *sustinēre*, (*tinu*, *tent*;) *tolerare*, (41.)  
 endured with, *præditus*, (abl.)  
 enemy, (private.) *inimicus*.  
 enemy, (public.) *hostis*.<sup>2</sup>  
 enjoy, *frui*, (abl.)  
 enquire of, *quære ex*, (*quæsiv*, *quæsīt*.)  
 entice, *pellicere*, *io*, (*lex*, *lect*.)  
 entreat, *rōgare*.  
 envy, *invīdēre*, (*vid*, *vīs*;) dat.  
 equal, *par*, dat.  
 erect, (a monument, &c.) *statuere*, *pōnere*, or *collōcare*: dat. of person to whom.  
 escape, *vītare*.  
 estate, *fundus*, *i*.  
 eternal, *sempiternus*.  
 even, *ētiam*, (before its word.)  
 evening, *vesper*, *ēris*.  
 even mind, *æquus animus*.  
 even, not—ne—quidem.  
 every, *omnis*.  
 everybody, *quisque*.  
 every day, *quōtidie*.

<sup>1</sup> In Ex. 15, 'after it' need not be translated after 'drew.'

<sup>2</sup> 'The enemy,' meaning a body of enemies, must be translated by the plural, *hostes*.



evil, *mālum*, neut. adj., or plur. *mala*.  
 examine a question, *dīsquirere*.  
 example, *exemplum*.  
 exceedingly, *vehementer*.  
 excel, *præstare*, *præstiti*, dat. or acc. of person; abl. of thing in which.  
 excellent, *præstans*, *tis*.  
 excite, *excitare*: excite to anger, *ad iram concitare*.  
 exclude, *arcēre*, (abl. of thing from which.)  
 exempted, to be, *liberari*, abl.  
 exercise, *exercere*.  
 exercise, *exercitatio*.  
 exhort, *hortari*, *adhortari*.  
 expect, *expectare*.  
 expectation, *spes*, *ei*.  
 expense, *sumptus*, *ūs*.  
 expire, *exspirare*.

Fable, *fabūla*.  
 face, *facies*, *ei*.  
 fact, (it is an allowed,) *constat*.  
 faith, *fides*, *ei*.  
 faithful, *fidēlis*.  
 fall, *cādere*, p. 161.  
 fall-on, (= seize on,) *incessere*.  
 fall into, *incurrere*, (*incurri*.)  
 fall-to-the-lot-of, 19, (dat.)  
 fall upon, *adoriri*, (*adortus*.) acc.  
 fall down, *decidere*.  
 fasten, *figere*.<sup>1</sup>  
 fasten, (a vessel,) *retinēre*, *retinui*, *retentum*.  
 fate, *fortuna*.  
 father, *pat-er*, *ris*.  
 fault, *culpa*.  
 favor, *favēre*, dat. (*fāv*, *faut*.)  
 fear, (of body,) *timor*; (of mind,) *mētus*, *ūs*; to be in fear, *in timōre esse*.  
 fear, *timēre*, *mētūere*.  
 feed, (trans. as a shepherd,) *pascere*, p. 163, 58.  
 feed on, *vesci*, abl.  
 feel, p. 164, § 14, *sentire*, (*sens*, *sens*.)  
 feeling, *animus*.  
 fellow-citizen, *civis*; G. *is*.  
 fertility, *ubertas*.  
 fetch water, *aquātum*, (sup.)  
 fever, *febris*, abl. *i*.  
 few, *pauci*, *æ*, *a*.  
 fickleness, *levitas*, *ātis*.  
 fidelity, *fides*, *ei*.  
 field, *āger*; G. *gri*; (if under tillage,) *arvum*.  
 fight, *pugnare*; *decertare*, (Ex. 37.)  
 fill, *implēre*, (*plēv*, *plēt*.) *complēre*.  
 find, *in-vēnire*; *repērire*, (*rēpēri*, *reper-tum*.) See Syn. I.  
 find-out, *de-tēgere*.  
 finish, *conficere*, *finire*; finish, (life,) Ex. 19, *vitam dēgere*, (*dēgi*.)

fire, *ignis*; (= conflagration,) *incendium*.  
 firm, *firmus*.  
 first, *primus*; at first, *primo*.  
 fish, *piscis*, m. *is*.  
 fit, *aptus*.  
 fit for, *idōneus*, (dat.)  
 flame, *flamma*.  
 flatter, *adulari*, (dat. or acc.)  
 flay, *deglūbere*.  
 fleet, *classis*, *is*.  
 flesh, *caro*, *carnis*, p. 147.  
 flight, *fuga*.  
 flock, p. 147, *grex*, *grēgis*.  
 flourish, *florēre*.  
 flower, *flos*, *ōris*.  
 flow together, 15, ii.  
 fly, *vōlare*.  
 fly-from, *fugēre*.  
 fly out, *evōlare*.  
 foe, *hostis*.  
 follow, p. 167, *sēquor*, (*secūtus*.)  
 folly, *stultitia*.  
 fond, *cupīdus*, (gen.)  
 food, *cībūs*, *i*.  
 for, *nam*, *namque*, *enim*.  
 for, (= in behalf of,) *pro*.  
 for-a-long-time, *diu*.  
 forbid, p. 159, ii., *vētare*, (*vetui*, *vetitum*.)  
 force, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; a strong force, *vālidum præsidium*. To be in force, (of a law,) *vālere*.  
 forces, *copiæ*.  
 forefathers, *mājores*, or *patres*.  
 foretell, *prædicere*.  
 forget, *oblivisci*, (*oblītus*.) gen.  
 forgetful, *immēmor*, gen.  
 forgetfulness, *oblīvio*, *ōnis*.  
 forgive, *ignoscere*, *ignōvi*, dat.  
 formed, *comparātus*.  
 former, *prior*.  
 for-some-time, *aliquamdiu*.  
 fortify, *munire*.  
 fortune, *fortuna*.  
 forty-nine, *quadrāginta novem*; or *novem et quadrāginta*; or *undequingūginta*.  
 forty-ninth, *undequingūgesimus*; or *quadragēsimus nonus*.  
 foss, *fossa*.  
 found, (a city,) *condere*.  
 fountain, p. 147, *fons*, *tis*.  
 fox, *vulpes*, f. (7.)  
 fraud, *fraus*, *fraudis*.  
 free, *liber*, (abl.)  
 free from, *liberare*, abl.  
 friend, *amicus*.  
 frighten, *dētērrere*.  
 friendship, *amicitia*.  
 from, after prevent, deter, &c., *quāminus* with subj.  
 frugality, *parsimonia*.  
 fruit, (of the earth,) *fruges*; (of a tree,) *fructus*; G. *ūs*.  
 fulfil, *explēre*.

<sup>1</sup> For 'fastened to the wall,' say, 'fastened in the wall.'



Gain, *lucrum*.  
 gain, (by begging,) *impētrare*.  
 gain, (by exertions,) *adipisci*, (*adēptus*;) (without exertions,) *nancisci*, (*nactus*.)  
 gain, (= earn,) *acquirere*, 9.  
 gain a victory, *victoriam reportare*.<sup>1</sup>  
 game, *ludus*.  
 garden, *hortus*, *i*.  
 garland, *corōna*.  
 gate, *porta*; opened gates, *portæ pātentes*.  
 Gaul, *Gallus*.  
 general, *dux*, *dūcis*; *imperator*, (the title of a victorious Roman general.)  
 genius, *ingēnium*.  
 gentle, *lēnis*, *mīlis*.  
 German, *Germanus*.  
 Germany, *Germania*.  
 get well, *convalescere*.  
 get acquainted with, *noscere*; *cognoscere*.  
 gift, *donum*.  
 girl, *puella*.  
 give, p. 159, 50, *i*., *dāre*.  
 give pleasure. See pleasure.  
 give up, *dēdere*, (*dēdīdi*, *dēdītum*.)  
 glitter, *fulgēre*.  
 glory, *gloria*.  
 glorious, *gloriosus*.  
 go to bed, }  
 — to roost, } *cubitum ire*.  
 — a hunting, *vēnātum*, *ire*.  
 go away, *abire*, *discēdere*, (*cess*.)  
 go-on-board, *conscendere*, *scend*, *scens*, (*navem*, or *in navem*.)  
 go-to-battle, *in praelium ire*.  
 God, *Deus*, p. 168.  
 gold, *aurum*.  
 good, *bōnus*.  
 good for, *utilis*, (*dat*.)  
 good fortune, *felicitas*, *ātis*.  
 good time, *in*, *in tempore*.  
 good conduct, *honestas*, *ātis*.  
 goodness, *benignitas*, *ātis*.  
 govern, *rēgere*, *gubernare*.  
 government, *impērium*.  
 grain, *granum*.  
 grape, *uva*.  
 grass, *gramen*, *īnis*.  
 grateful, *gratus*.  
 gratitude, *gratia*.  
 great, *magnus*: the great, *nobiles*, *ium*; *illustres viri*.  
 greatest, (when degree is meant rather than size,) *summus*.  
 greatest possible, (the,) *quam maxīmus*.  
 greatness, *magnitūdo*, *īnis*.  
 greatly, *magnōpēre*.  
 greedy, *avidus*, (*gen*.)  
 Greece, *Græcia*.  
 Greek, *Græcus*.  
 grief, *dolor*, *ōris*.  
 grieve, *dolēre*, *marēre*.

ground, *humus*; on the ground, *humi*.  
 grow-old, *senescere*.  
 grow-green, *virescere*.  
 grow-warm, *incalescere*.  
 grow-accustomed, *consuescere*.  
 guard, *custodire*.  
 guard against, }  
 guard myself, } *cāvēre*, *acc*., (*cāv*, *caut*.)  
 guards, *stātiones*, (*i. e.* parties of soldiers posted in particular places;) *excubia*.  
 guilty, *nōcens*, *nōcentis*.

Habit, *mos*, *mōris*.  
 hang, *pendere*, (*neut*.)  
 hang over, *imminēre*.  
 had rather, *malle*, (*from malo*.)  
 hand, *mānus*, *ūs*, *f*.  
 Hannibal, *Hannibal*, *Hannibālis*.  
 happen, (of evils,) *accidere*; (of fortunate events,) *contingere*, (*tig*;) (= turn out,) *evenire*. *Syn*.  
 happy, *beātus*, *fēlix*.  
 happy, (= joyful,) *lētus*.  
 harass, *exāgitare*.  
 harbor, *portus*, *ūs*.  
 hardly, (= scarcely,) *vix*.  
 hardship, *labor*, *ōris*.  
 harm to do, (to,) *obesse*.  
 harmony, *concordia*.  
 hate, *odisse*, (with tenses derived from *perfi*.)  
 hatred, *odium*.<sup>2</sup>  
 have, *habēre*.  
 have rather, *malle*, p. 165.  
 head, *cāput*, *capītis*, *n*.  
 heal, *medēri*, *dat*.  
 hear, *audire*.  
 heart, (as the seat of the affections,) *animus*.  
 heart, *cor*, *cordis*, *n*.  
 hearth, *fōcus*.  
 heat, *calor*, *ōris*.  
 heavy, *grāvis*.  
 hen, *gallina*.  
 hence, *inde*, *hinc*.  
 help, *auxilium*.  
 her, *acc. sing. se*, if relating to *nom.* of sent.; if not, *eam*.  
 her, *adj. suus, a, um*, if relating to *nom.* of sent.; if not, *ejus*.  
 herb, *herba*.  
 herd, *amentum*; *grex*, *grēgis*.  
 here, (= hither,) *huc*.  
 hesitate, *dubitare*.  
 hill, *collis*, *is*, *m.*: *mons*, *montis*.  
 him, *se*, if relating to *nom.* of sent.; if not, *eum*.  
 himself, *ipse*; in *acc. se*: *seipsum*, or *ipsum se*.  
 hinder, *impēdire*, *obstare*.

<sup>1</sup> 'When he had gained the victory.' *partū victoriā*.

<sup>2</sup> In Ex. 24 use it in the plural.

his, *ejus*; or *suus*, *a*, *um*.  
 hit, (a mark,) *attingere*, (*tīg*, *tact*.)  
 hither, *huc*.  
 hold, *tēnere*, p. 160, ii.  
 home, to, *dōmum*; at, *dōmi*; from,  
*dōmo*.  
 Homer, *Homērus*.  
 honey, *mel*, *mellis*, *n*.  
 honor, *honor*, *ōris*.  
 honor, (= the honorable,) *honestas*;  
 (= probity,) *fides*, *ei*.  
 honor, *cōlere*, p. 162, 55.  
 hope, *spes*, *ei*.  
 hope, *spērare*.  
 hornet, *crabro*, *ōnis*.  
 horse-soldier, *ēques*, *equītis*.  
 horse, *equus*.  
 hour, *hora*.  
 house, p. 145, *dōmus*, *ūs* et *i*.  
 house, at my, *dōmi meæ*.  
 how, (with *adj.*.) *quam*.  
 how greatly, *quantōpere*.  
 how many, *quot*.  
 how much, *quantum*.  
 how often, *quōties*.  
 huge, *ingens*, *tis*.  
 human, *humanus*.  
 humor, *indulgēre*, (*dat*.)  
 hunger, *fāmes*, *is*.  
 hungry, to be, *esurire*.  
 hunt, *vēnari*.  
 hurry-away, *abrīpere*, *io*, (*rīpu*, *rept*.)  
 hurt, *nōcēre*, *dat*.  
 husband, *vir*, *vīri*.  
 husbandman, 7, *agricola*.  
 hypocritically pretend, (= lie,) *mentīri*.  
*ior*, (*mentītus*.)

Idle, *otiōsus*.  
 if—not, *nīsi*.  
 ignorant, to be, *ignorare*, *acc*.  
 ill-humored, *mōrōsus*, 8.  
 illuminate, *illuminare*, *illustrare*.  
 immense, *ingens*, *tis*, *abl*. *i*.  
 immortal, *immortalis*.  
 immortality, *immortalitas*.  
 impede, *impēdire*.  
 impel, *impellere*. (*pūl*, *puls*.)  
 importance, it is of, *interest*, *gen*. it is of  
 no importance, *nihil interest*; it is of  
 very great importance, *permultum in-*  
*terest*; of how great importance it is,  
*quanti interest*; it is of great impor-  
 tance, *magni interest*.  
 in, *in*, (*abl*.)  
 inactive, *otiosus*.  
 inclined, *propensus*.  
 increase, *augēre*, (*aux*, *auct*.) *trans*. *cre-*  
*scere*, (*crēv*.) *neut*.  
 incredible, *incredibilis*.  
 indulge in, *indulgēre*, (*duls*, *dult*.) *dat*.  
 inflict punishment on, *aliquem pōnd*  
*afficere*.  
 inglorious, *inglōrius*.  
 inhabitant-of-a-town, *oppidānus*.

inhabitant, *incōla*.  
 injure, *nōcēre*, (*dat*.)  
 injury, *injuria*.  
 innocence, *innocentia*.  
 innocent, *innocens*, *tis*.  
 inquire, *quērere*, (followed by *e*, *ex*.)  
 instead of, *lōco*, (*abl*.)  
 institute, *instituo*, (*i*, *tum*.)  
 instruct, *erudire*.  
 instrument, *præsidium*.  
 intellectual cultivation, *ingenii cultus*.  
 intention, *consilium*.  
 into, *in*, (*acc*.)  
 invade, *bellum inferre*, (*intūl*, *illāt*.) with  
*dat*. of the country.  
 invading, *invadens*.  
 invective, *convicium*.  
 invite, *vōcare*, *invitare*.  
 irrigate, *irrigare*, (= *irrigare*.)  
 island, *insūla*.  
 Italy, *Italia*.  
 itself, *ipse*, *a*, *um*; *G*. *īus*.

Jewel, *gemma*.  
 join battle with, *committere prælium*,  
 (*cum*.)  
 joint-king, to be named, 37.  
 journey, *iter*, *itinēris*.  
 joy, *lætitia*.  
 joyful, *lætus*.  
 judge, 12. See p. 147, *judex*, *īcis*.  
 judge, *vindicare*.  
 just, *mōdo*, (*adv*.)  
 justly, *jure*, *meritoque*.  
 Jupiter, *Jupiter*; *G*. *Jōvis*.

Keep, *servare*.  
 keep in custody, *in custōdiā tēnere*.  
 keep in their camp, *in castris continēre*,  
 (*ui*.)  
 keep-off, *arcēre*.  
 kill, *interficere*, *occidere*, *nēcāre*.  
 kill, *cādere*, p. 161.  
 kindness, *benēvōlentia*; a kindness, *bene-*  
*ficiūm*.  
 kind-of-corn, *frumentum*.  
 king, *rex*, *rēgis*.  
 knife, *culter*, *ri*.  
 know, *scire*, *nōvisse*, *callēre*: not know,  
*nēscire*.  
 knowledge, *scientia*.  
 known, (it is,) *constat*.

Labor, *labor*, *ōris*.  
 lake, *lācus*, *ūs*.  
 land, *terra*.  
 language, *lingua*.  
 large, *grandis*.  
 lately, *nuper*.  
 laugh, *ridēre*, p. 160, vi.  
 laugh at, *ridēre*, *deridēre*.  
 law, *lex*, *līgis*.  
 lay waste, 9, *vastare*.

- lay-siege-to, *obsĭdĕre*, (*obsĕd*, *obsess*.)  
lead, p. 162, 54, *dŭcere*.  
lead a life, *āgere vitam*, (*ēg*, *act*.) *dēgere vitam*.  
lead away, *abdŭcere*.  
leader, *dux*, *dŭcis*.  
leaf, p. 146, *folium*.  
learn, *discere*, (*didĭc*.) (of facts, events, &c.) *compĕrĭre*, (*compĕri*;) *cognoscere*, (*nŭv*, *nŭt*.)  
learn by heart, *ediscere*.  
learned, *doctus*.  
leave, *relinquere*, (*lĭqu*, *lict*.)  
leave, (= to go out of,) *excĕdere*, *abl.* (*cess*.)  
leave a province, *discĕdere ex provinciā*.  
left-hand, *sinistra*.  
legion, *legio*, *ŏnis*.  
less, *minus*.  
lessen, (= soften,) *lenire*.  
lest, *ne*.  
letter, *littera*,<sup>1</sup> *pl.*: *epĭstŏla*.  
liberty, *libertas*, *ātis*.  
lie, *mentĭri*.  
lie, *mendacium*.  
lie down, *cubare*, p. 159, *ii*.  
lieutenant-general, *lĕgātus*.  
life, *vita*; (= lifetime,) *ætas*, *ātis*.  
light, *lĕvis*.  
light, (= kindle,) *accendere*; *succendere*, (*cent*, *cens*.) *Syn.* *ii.* p. 289.  
like, *similis*, *dat.* *simillĭmus*, (*superl.*)  
likeness, *a*, *effigies*, *ei*.  
lion, *leo*, *ŏnis*.  
listen to, *obĕdĭre*, (*dat.*) *obtemperare*, (*dat.*)  
little, *parvus*.  
little-garden, *hortulus*.  
live, p. 163, *vi*, *vivere*, (*vix*, *vict*.)  
load, *cumulare*.  
long, *longus*.  
long, *diu*.  
look at, *spectare*.  
lose, *āmittere*.  
lose an opportunity, *occasionem prĕtermittere*.  
lot, *sors*, *sortis*.  
love, *āmare*, *dilĭgere*, *7*.  
lowest, *infĭmus*, *ĭmus*.  
lust, *libĭdo*, *ĭnis*.  
luxuriant-growth, *luxuria*.  
luxury, *luxuria*.  
lyre, *lyra*.
- make, *fĕcere*, (*fĕc*, *fact*.) *am* made, *fiŏ*.<sup>2</sup>  
man, *homo*, *vir*.  
manifest, *manifestus*.  
Manlius, *Manius*.  
manners, (= morals, character,) *mŏres*, *um*, *pl.*  
many, *multi*.  
march-up, *advĕtare*.  
mark, *scŏpus*.  
marriage, *connubium*.  
marry, (of a female,) *nubere*, *dat.*  
Marseilles, *Massilia*.  
master, (who teaches,) *magister*, *ri*.  
master, (who owns,) *dŏminus*.  
mean, *significare*; (= to convey an opinion,) *censĕre*.  
means, *mŏdus*, *rĕtio*.  
means, (= remedial or preventive means,) *remedia*, *pl.*  
means-of-escape, *exĭtus*, *ŭs*.  
meaning, *sententia*.  
meadow, *prĕtŭm*.  
measure, *mĕtiri*, *ior*, *mensus*.  
meet, *occurrere*, (*occurr*, *occurs*.) *dat.*  
melt, *liquescere*.  
mention, *nuncĭpare*. See 10.  
Milo, *Mĭlo*, *Milŏnis*.  
military-oath, *sacramentum*.  
milk, *lac*, *lactis*.  
mind, *animus*.  
mine, *meus*; *voc.* *mĭ*.  
mindful, *mĕmor*, *gen.*  
miserable, *mĭser*, *ĕra*, &c.  
misfortune, *calamitas*; *cĕsus*, *ŭs*.  
miss, *ŏmittere*, *prĕtermittere*.  
mistress, *magistra*.  
mix, p. 160, *ii*, *miscĕre*.  
mixed, *promiscuus*.  
modest, *pudicus*.  
money, *pecunia*.  
moneyed, *pecuniŏsus*, *7*.  
month, *mensis*, *m*.  
monument, *monumentum*.  
moon, *luna*.  
morals, *mŏres*, *um*.  
more, *plus*, with *gen.*:<sup>3</sup> even more, *etiam plura*.  
more, (*adv.*.) *mĕgis*.  
morose, *morŏsus*, *8*.  
mortal, *mortĕlis*.  
most men, *plerĭque*.  
motion, *mŏtus*, *ŭs*.  
mother, *mĕt-er*, *ris*.  
mount, *ad-scĕdere*, (*scĕnd*, *scĕns*.) (See 12.)  
mountain, *mons*, *ntis*, *m*.  
move, *mŏvĕre*, (*mŏv*, *mŏt*.) *move*, *neut.* *mŏvĕri*.  
move with compassion, *commŏvĕre*, (*mŏv*, *mŏt*.)

<sup>1</sup> *Littera* may also be used for *letters*.

<sup>2</sup> Ex. 26, Part II.: 'to make friends of enemies,' *ex inimicis amicos facere*.

<sup>3</sup> That is, if *quantity* is meant: if number, *plures*, *a*, &c., in agreement. 'More gold,' *plus auri*: 'more roses,' *plures rosae*.



much, (= many things,) *multa*.  
 much, *multum*, (followed by subst. in gen.)  
 much, (before comparative,) *multo*, abl.  
 multitude, *multitudo*, *inīs*.  
 my, *meus*, (V. m. *mi*.)  
 myself, (nom.,) *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

Nail, *clavus*.  
 naked, *nudus*.  
 name, *nominare*, (also = to appoint.)  
 (subst.,) *nōmen*, *inīs*.  
 Naples, *Neapōlis*, acc. *im*.  
 nations, *populi*.  
 nature, *natura*.  
 near, *prope*, acc.  
 nearest, *proximus*.  
 nearly, *prope*, *pene*.  
 need, *ēgere*, *indīgere*.  
 need, there is, *opus est*.  
 neglect, *negligere*, (*neglex*, *neglect*.)  
 neigh, *hinnire*.  
 neighbor, your, *proximus tuus*.<sup>1</sup>  
 neighboring, *vicinus*.  
 neither—nor, { *neque—neque*.  
                   { *nec—nec*.  
 nest, *nidus*.  
 never, *nunquam*.  
 nevertheless, *tamen*.  
 new, *novus*.  
 next, *proximus*.  
 night, p. 147, *nox*, *noctis*.  
 ninety-first, *nonagesimus primus*.  
 no, *nullus*; after *ne*, *quis*.  
 nobody, *nemo*, *inīs*.  
 no one, *nemo*, *inīs*.  
 no time, *nihil tempōris*.  
 no where, {  
 no whither, { *nusquam*.  
 no wiser, *nihilō sapientior*.  
 not, *non*.  
 not, (in questions,) *nonne*?  
 not yet, *nondum*.  
 not even, *ne—quidem*.  
 not only—but { *non solum—verum etiam*.  
                   { *non modo—sed etiam*.  
 not at all, *nihil*.  
 nothing, *nihil*.  
 now, *nunc*.  
 number, *numerus*; (= multitude,) *multitudo*, *inīs*.

Oak, *quercus*, *ūs*.  
 obedience, *obsequium*.  
 obey, *pārere*, *obēdire*, *obtemperare*, dat.  
 oblige, *satis-facere*, dat.  
 oblige, *fāvère*, p. 160, viii.  
 obolus, *ōbōlus*.  
 observe, *observare*.  
 observe moderation, *modestiam retinere*.

obtain, *pārare*.  
 ocean, *oceanus*.  
 of, after 'become,' 'deserve well,' &c.,  
 'am persuaded,' and when = concern-  
 ing, *de*.  
 of, after, 'inquire,' *ex*.  
 of others, *alienus*, *a*, *um*.  
 offend against, *violare*.  
 offend, *offendere*, (*fend*, *fens*.) acc.  
 offer, *offerre*, (*oblāt*, *oblāt*.) See ad-  
 vantage.  
 offering-of-atonement, *piaculum*.  
 often, *sæpe*.  
 oil, *oleum*.  
 old, *vētus*, *vetēris*, n. pl. *vetera*.  
 old man, *sēnex*, G. *senis*, G. pl. *um*.  
 old age, *senectus*, *ūtis*.  
 on, *super*; after 'live,' sign of abl.  
 on the Black Sea, *ad Pontum Euxinum*.  
 on high, 16, ii., *sublime*.  
 on all sides, *undique*.  
 one, *unus*.  
 one, (of two,) *alter*, G. *ius*.  
 one's, *suus*.  
 only, adj. *sōlus*, G. *ius*.  
 open, 13, (Voc. on perf. *si*.) *detegere*,  
*aperire*.  
 opportunity, *occasio*, *ōnis*.  
 opponent, *adversarius*.  
 oppose, *repugnare*, dat.; *obstare*, (dat.)  
 oppress, *opprimere*, (*press*, *press*.)  
 oppressor, *oppressor*, *ōris*.  
 or, *aut*, *vel*, *ve*, (in questions *an*.)  
 oracle, *oraculum*.  
 orator, *orātor*, *ōris*.  
 order, *ordo*, *inīs*, m.  
 order, *jubere*, (*juss*.) acc. with inf.  
 ornament, *ornare*.  
 others, *alii*; the other, (of two,) *alter*.  
 ought, *oportet*. See p. 270.  
 our, *nost-er*, *ra*, *rum*.  
 out of, *e*, *ex*, *extra*.  
 overthrow, (a plan, &c.,) *lābēfactare*.  
 over, *super*, (prep.)  
 owe, *debere*.  
 own, (emphatic,) *ipsius* or *ipsorum*, after  
*meus*, *tuus*, &c.

Pain, *dolor*, *ōris*.  
 paint, p. 162, *pingere*.  
 palace, *domus*, p. 145.  
 palm, *palma*.  
 pardon, *ignoscere*, (*nōv*.) dat.; (of a  
*superior*.) *veniam dare*.  
 parent, *parens*, *tis*.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*.  
 passion, *animus*; (= anger,) *ira*.  
 path, *via*.  
 patrician, *patricius*.  
 pavement, *pavimentum*.  
 peace, *pax*, *pācis*.

<sup>1</sup> This word, though given by Grotend, is not a classical word in this sense. Translate 'love thy neighbor,' by 'love other men,' '*alios*.'



- peevish, *morōsus*, 8.  
 Peleus, *Peleus*, G. *ēi*.  
 people, *pōpūlus*.  
 perceive, *intelligere*, (*lex, lect.*)  
 perform (a service, promise, &c.,) *præstare*, (*stīt, stat.*)  
 perform, *fungi, perfungi*, (*funct.*)  
 permitted, it is, *licet*.  
 permitted, I am, *licet mihi*.<sup>1</sup>  
 persevere, *perseverare*.  
 Persian, *Persa*.  
 persist, *perseverare*.  
 person, (= man,) to be generally untranslated.  
 persuade, (= advise effectually,) *persuadere, suās*, dat.; followed by *ut*.  
 Phædon, *Phædon, ōnis*, one of Plato's dialogues.  
 Philip, *Philippus*.  
 philosopher, *philosōphus*.  
 philosophy, *philosophia*.  
 physician, *mēdicus*.  
 picture, *tabula*.  
 piety, *pietas, ātis*.  
 pilot, *gubernator*.  
 pity, *miserēri*, gen.  
 place, *pōnere, (posu, posit.*  
 place, (guards, &c.,) *dispūnere, (posu, posit.)*  
 place in a higher rank, *altiōri lōco constituere, (stītu, stītūt.)*  
 plague, *pestis*.  
 plain, *manifestus*.  
 plan, *consīlium*.  
 plant, *sērere*.  
 Plato, *Plāto, G. ōnis*.  
 play, *ludere, (lūs.)*  
 pleasant, *jucundus*.  
 please, *plācere, dat.*  
 pleasing, to be, *placere*.  
 to be pleased, *oblectari*.  
 pleasure, *voluptas, ātis*.  
 to give pleasure, *voluptate afficere, (fēc, fect.)* with acc. of person.  
 plebeian, *plebeius*.  
 plot, *insidiari*.  
 plough, *ārare*.  
 pluck, *de-cerpere*, 13; *carpere*, p. 161.  
 Pœcile, G. *es*, Acc. *en*.  
 poet, *poeta*.  
 point out, *monstrare*.  
 poison, *venēnum*.  
 Pompey, *Pompejus*.  
 poor, *pauper, ēris*.  
 portico, *porticus, ūs*.  
 portion, *pars, partis*.  
 possess, *possidēre, (possēd, possess.)*  
 posterity, *posteritas*; or the pl. *postēri*.  
 power, (= ability,) *facultas*, (41.)  
 power, *potentia*, of actual; *potestas*, of legal, conceded, &c., power.  
 powerful, *pōtens*; (of words,) *gravis*.  
 powers of the mind, *animi vires*.  
 practise, *exercere, (ui, itum.)*  
 practise, (= exercise,) *exercere*.  
 Prætor, *Prætor, ōris*, a Roman magistrate.  
 prætorship, *prætūra*.  
 praise, *laus, laudis*.  
 praise, to, *laudare*.  
 pray, (= beg earnestly,) *orare*.  
 pray the gods, a *diis præcari*.  
 prayers, *præces, um*.  
 precept, *præceptum*.  
 preceptor, *præceptor, ōris*.  
 prefer, *antepōnere, (pōsu, posit.)*  
 prepare, *pārare*.  
 present an appearance, *speciem præbere*.  
 present (with,) *donare*, *Ō. 109, 110*.  
 preserve, *conservare*; (= retain,) *retinere*.  
 press, (= urge,) *instare, institi*.  
 pretend, *simulare*.  
 pretence, *simulatio, ōnis*.  
 prevail-upon, *exorare*.  
 prevent, *prohibere, (ui, itum;)* (= prevent, as an obstacle interposed,) *obstare, obstiti*, with dat.; to be prevented by business, *negotiis distineri*.  
 priest, }  
 priestess, } *sacerdos, ōtis*.  
 prince, *princeps, principis*.  
 prison, *carcer, ēris*.  
 privilege, *jus, juris*.  
 prize, *præmium*.  
 proclaim, *prædicare*.  
 proclaim, *edicere*; (a war,) *indicere, (dix, dict.)*  
 procure, *parare*.  
 profitable, *utilis*.  
 promise, *promissum*.  
 promise, *polliceri, (licēt;)* *promittere*, (the former of *free, gracious* promises.)  
 property, *bona, (good.)*  
 proposal, (of a law,) *rogatio*.  
 prop-up, *fulcire, (fuls, fult.)*  
 protect, (= guard a house, &c.,) *custodire*.  
 protect, (= foster, encourage,) *fovère, (fov, füt.)*  
 proud, *superbus*.  
 proudly, *superbe*.  
 prove, *probare*.  
 prove myself, *præstare me*.  
 provided, *modo* or *dummodo*.<sup>2</sup>  
 prudence, 17, *prudentiā*.  
 Punic, *Punicus, (i. e. Carthaginian.)*  
 punish, *punire, or pænā afficere*.  
 punishment, *pæna*.  
 pull down, *evertere*.  
 pupil, *discipulus*.  
 purchase, 8, *emptio, ōnis*.  
 pure, *castus*.  
 purpose, for the, *causā*.

<sup>1</sup> The pronoun is generally omitted, if it is plain who are meant.

<sup>2</sup> With subj.—'not' after 'provided' is *nē*.

put-after, *posthābere*, (*aliquid alicui.*)  
 put-an-end-to, 12, ii., *conficere.*  
 put-on, p. 163, 57, *induere.*  
 Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus.*

Queen, *regīna.*  
 quench, *restinguere*, (*stinx*, *stinct*;) *pellere.*  
 question, *interrogatio.*  
 Quirites, *G. ium.*

Race, *genus*, *ēris.*  
 rage, *sāvire*, *sāvii.*  
 raise, (= excite,) *excitare.*  
 rank, *locus.*  
 rape, *raptus*, *ūs.*  
 reach, (= arrive at,) *pervēnīre*, (the place to be governed by *ad.*)  
 read, *legere*, (*lēg*, *lect*;) (= read through,) *perlegere.*  
 readily, *fācile.*  
 reason, *ratio*, *ōnis.*  
 recall, *rēvocare.*  
 receive, *accipere*, (*cēp*, *cept.*)  
 reckon, *numerare*, *ducere.*  
 recognise, *agnoscere*, (*agnovi*, *agnitum.*)  
 recollect, *reminisci.*  
 reconciled, to be, *in gratiam redire* (*cum.*)  
 refuse, *recusare.*  
 reign, *regnare.*  
 rejoice, *gaudere*, (*gāvīsus sum.*)  
 relate, *narrare.*  
 relations, *cognati.*  
 relying on, *frētus*, (*abl.*)  
 remain, *mānere*, (*mans*, *mans*;) to remain in the same mind, *in eodem animo perstare.*  
 remember, *meminisse*, (*Imper. memento*;) *recordari*, *reminisci.*  
 remains, it, *restat*, (*ut.*)  
 remains, the, *reliquiā.*  
 remedy, *remēdium.*  
 remind, *admonere*, *Gen. of the thing*; or *de* with *abl.*  
 remove, (*intrans.*) *migrare.*  
 render, *reddere*, (*dīd*, *dīt.*)  
 renew, *renōvare.*  
 repent, I, *me pānitēt*, *gen.*  
 reply, *re-spondere*, (*spond*, *spons.*)  
 represent, *ingere*, (*finx.*)  
 reproach, *reprehendere*, *vituperare.*  
 reproof, *reprehensio*, *ōnis.*  
 request, *rogare.*  
 require, *ēgere*, *indīgere*, (*gen.*, *abl.*)  
 reside, *habitare.*  
 resignation, *æquus animus.*  
 resignation, the greatest, *æquissimus animus.*  
 resolve, (= decree) *decernere*, (*crēv*, *cret.*)  
 resound, *resonare*, *ui*, *itum.*

*rest*, *quiescere.*  
 rest, the, *ceteri*, *æ*, *a.*  
 rest of, *adj. reliquus.*  
 rest, to be at, *quiescere*, p. 163, 58.  
 restore, *restituere*, *ui*, *utum.*<sup>1</sup>  
 restrain, *coercere*; (= tame, subdue,) *dōmare*, *ui*, *itum.*  
 retain, *retinere*, (*ui*, *itum.*)  
 return, *redire*, *reverti*, (45.)  
 return, to give a prosperous, *reditum secumulare*; *dat. of person.*  
 revenge, *ulcisci*, (*ultus.*)  
 revile, *maledicere*, *dat.*  
 revive, *reviviscere.*  
 rewarded, to be, *ornari.*  
 Rhine, *Rhenus.*  
 Rhone, *Rhōdānus.*  
 rich, *dives*, *itis.*  
 riches, *divitiā.*  
 right, *rectus*, (= rightly,) *recte.*  
 right, *ius*, *juris.*  
 right-hand, *dextra.*  
 ripe, to make, } 28, ii., *cōquere.*  
 ripen, (trans.) }  
 rise, *oriri*, *ior*, (*ort.*)  
 river, *annīs*, *flumen*, *inis.*  
 road, *via*; on the road, *in viā.*  
 rob, *spoliare*, (*abl.*)  
 rock, *saxum.*  
 roof, 9, *tectum.*  
 Rome, *Roma.*  
 Roman, *Romānus.*  
 roost, (go to,) *cubitum*, (*ire.*)  
 rope, *funis*, *m.*  
 rose, *rosa.*  
 round, *circum*, *circa.*  
 rouse up, *excitare.*  
 rub, p. 159, ii., *fricare*, (*fricui.*)  
 Rubicon, *Rūbicon*, *ōnis.*  
 ruin, *perdere*, (*dīd*, *dīt.*)  
 rule, *regūla.*  
 rule, *regere*, (*rexī*, *rectum.*)  
 run, p. 163, *currere*, (*cucurri*, *cursum.*)

Sabines, *Sabīni.*  
 sacrifice, *immolare.*  
 safe, *tutus.*  
 safety, *sālus*, *ūtis.*  
 sail, *navigare.*  
 sailor, *nauta.*  
 salt-water, *agua marīna.*  
 sake, for the—of, *causā.*  
 Salamis, *Salāmīnis*, *Acc. Salamīna.*  
 same, *idem*, p. 169.  
 Sardis, *Sardes*, *ium*, *pl.*  
 Saturn, *Saturnus.*  
 satisfy, *satisfacere*. *dat.*, (*satisfacio*;) (with food,) *satiare.*  
 save, *servare.*  
 say, *dicere.*  
 says he, *inquit.*

<sup>1</sup> 'To' after 'restore' is to be translated by 'in' with the acc., in such expressions as, 'to be restored to a rank,' &c.

- scarcely, *vix*.  
scatter, *spargere*.  
sceptre, *sceptrum*.  
sciences, *artes*; *disciplinæ*; *literæ*.  
Scipio, *Scipio, ōnis*.  
scold, *incrēpare*, (dat.,) p. 159.  
sculptor, *statuarius*.  
Scythian, *Scytha, æ*.  
sea, *māre*; by sea and land, *terrā mar-  
ique*; Black Sea, *Pontus Euxīnus*.  
search-for, *conquīrere*, (9.)  
season, *tempestat, ātis*.  
seasoning, *condimentum*.  
second, *alter*.  
second, *sēcundus*.  
secret, *secrētum, arcanum*.  
see, *vīdēre*; (= distinguish; have the  
sense of sight,) *cernere*; to be seen  
(of objects becoming visible,) *conspici*,  
(*conspēct.*)  
see that you don't, *vīde nē*, with subj.  
seed, *sēmen, īnis*.<sup>1</sup>  
seek,  
seek-out, { *quærerē, (quæsiv, quæsīt.)*  
seem, *vīdēri, (vis.)*  
seize, *cāpere, (cēp, capt,) arripere*.  
sell, *vendere, (vendīdi, vendītum.)*  
send, p. 161, 53, *mittere*.  
sensible, *prudens, tis*.  
sensible people, *sāni*.  
senate, *sēnātus, ūs*.  
senseless, *imprudens*.  
service, *officiūm*.  
service, on, *militiā*.  
set, 11. [Voc. on perf. *i*, p. 241.]  
set out, *proficisci, (fect.)*  
several, *plures*.  
shake, *quātere*.  
share, (intrans.,) *communīter hābēre*.  
share, *communicare, (33. cum.)*  
sharpen, p. 163, vi, *acuere*.  
shear, *t nḃere, (totondi, tonsum.)*  
shed, *profundere, (fūd, fūs.)*  
sheep, *ōvis*.  
shepherd, *pastor, ōris*.  
shield, *clipeus*.  
shine, p. 160, *fulgēre*.  
ship, *nāvis, abl. e or i*.  
shoot, *flagellum*.  
shoot, (= hurl,) *conjicere, (jēc, ject.)*  
shoot-up, (of plants,) *emergere super or  
extra terram: efflorescere*.  
shore, *lit-us, ōris*.  
short, *brēvis*.  
shoulder, *humērus*.  
should, (= ought,) *debēre, oportet*.  
show myself (brave,) *præbēre*.  
shut, *claudere*.  
side, *lātus, ēris*.  
sight, *aspectus, ūs*.  
silent, to be, *silēre, tacēre*.  
silver, *argentum*.  
simple, *simplex, icis*.  
sin, *peccare*.  
since, *quum, quōniam*.  
sincere, *sincērus*.  
sing, *cānere, (cēcīn, cant)—cantare*.  
sister, *soror, ōris*.  
sit, p. 160, vii., *sēdēre*.  
site, *lōcus, (pl. loci et loca.)*  
sixty, *sexaginta*.  
skilled in, *perītus, (gen.)*  
skin, *pellis, is*.  
slave, *servus*.  
slave, to be the, *servire, dat.*  
slay, *occidēre, (cīd, cīs.)* See 11.  
sleep, *somnus*.  
sleep, *dormire*.  
slow, *tardus*.  
slip away, *elābi*.  
slothful, *ignāvus*.  
small, *parvus*.  
snatch, *eripere, (rīpu, rept.)* with dat.  
snake, *anguis, is*,  
snow, *nix, nīvis*.  
so, (= to such a degree,) *ādeo*; (= in  
such a manner,) *ita*.  
so-great, *tantus*.  
so-many, *tot*.  
so often, *tōtīs*.  
Socrates, *Socrātes, is*.  
soft, *mollis*.  
soldier, *mīles, itis*.  
some, *aliquis, quispiam*.  
some—others, *alii—alii*.  
some, (when the persons are known, but  
it is not necessary to name them,)  
*quīdam*.  
sometimes, *nonnunquam*.  
something, *aliquid*.  
somewhat; omit, and put adj. in com-  
parative.  
son, *filius*.  
song, *cantilēna*.  
soon, *cito*.  
sorely, (= violently,) *vehēmenter*.  
sorrow, *dōlor, ōris*.  
soul, *anīmus, animā*.  
sound, *sōnus*.  
sow, *sērere, (sēv, sāt.)*  
spare, *parcere, (peperc,) dat.*  
speak, *lōqui, (locut.)*  
speak the truth, *vērūm dicere*.  
spear, *hasta*.  
speech, *oratio*.  
spend, (life, time, &c.,) *agere, (ēg, act; )  
impendere, (dat.)*  
spend, (wastefully,) *con-sumēre*.  
spin, p. 159, 51, *nēre*.  
spirit, *animus*.  
spring, *ver, vērīs*.  
sprinkle, *ad-spergere, (spers, spers.)*  
stake, to be at, *agī, pass.*  
stand, p. 159, 50, *stāre*.

<sup>1</sup> In Ex. 28 translate *seed* by *seges*, the seed sown, the young crop, or crop.



stand by promises, *stare promissis*.  
 standard, *signum*.  
 star, *stella*.  
 state, *civitas*; *urbs, urbis*, (if a city);  
 (= condition.) *stātus, ūs*.  
 steer, *dirigere, (rex, rect.)*  
 steersman, *gubernator*.  
 stern, *puppis*; at the stern, *in puppi*.  
 still, (before comparatives,) *etiam*.  
 Stolo, *Stolo, ōnis*.  
 stone, *lāpis, lapidis*.  
 storm, *tempestas, ātis*; *procella*.  
 storms of war, the, *belli tumultus*.  
 strange, (= surprising,) *mirus*.  
 strength, *vires, ium*; *robur, ōris*.  
 strengthen, *firmare*.  
 strengthen, *corroborare*.  
 strive, *nāti, enīti, (nisus, nixus.)*  
 stupid, *hebes, etis*.  
 subdue, *sub-igere, (ēg, act.): domare, ui,*  
*itum, (50.)*  
 succeed, (= follow,) *excipere, (cēp, cept.)*  
*acc.; succedere, (successi.) dat.*  
 successive—omit this word and govern  
 'years' by 'per.'  
 such, *talis*; (= so great,) *tantus*.  
 suddenly, *subito*.  
 suffer, *sinere, (siv;) pati, (passus.)*  
 suitable, *idōneus*.  
 sum of money, *pecunia*.  
 summer, *æstas, ātis*.  
 sun, *sol, solis*.  
 superstition, *superstitio, ōnis*.  
 support, (= nourish,) *alere, (ālu, alit or*  
*alt.)*  
 support, (= assist, allies, &c.,) *auxilium*  
*ferre, (dat.)*  
 surprised, to be, *mīrari, (dep.)*  
 surround, (p. 162, 54;) *circumdāre, (dēd,*  
*dāt;)<sup>1</sup> cingere.*  
 surround, (of enemies, &c.,) *circumve-*  
*nire.*  
 swallow, *hirundo, dīnis*.  
 swallow-up, *devorare*.  
 sway, *regnare*.  
 swear, *jurare*.  
 sweet, *dulcis*.  
 swift, *vēlox, ōcis*.  
 swim, *nare, natare*.  
 sword, *ensis, m.; gladius*.  
 Syracuse, *Syracusæ, ūrum*.

Table, *mensa*.

take, *cāpere, (cēp, capt;) sumere, (sums,*  
*sumpt.)*  
 take, *expugnare*.  
 take away, *eximere, (ēm, empt;) eripere,*  
*(by violence.)*  
 take away my life, *vitam mihi eripere*.  
 take pride, *gloriarī, (abl.)*

take care, *cāvēre, (cav, caut.)*  
 take care of, *curare*.  
 take care that, *vide, (nē.)*  
 taking, (of a city,) *expugnatio, 8*.  
 tale, *fabula*.  
 tame, p. 159, ii., *domare, (domui.)*  
 task, (= work, labor,) *opus, operis*: (=   
 task set to pupils,) *pensum*.  
 Tarentine, *Tarentīnus, 9*.  
 teach, *dōcere, 2 acc.*  
 teacher, *magister, præceptor*.  
 teaching, *præcepta, pl.*  
 tear, *lacrima*.  
 tear-to-pieces, *dilaniare*.  
 tell, *dicere*; (of tales, &c., related,) *nar-*  
*rare*.  
 temper, *animus*.  
 temple, *templum*.  
 terrify, *terrere*.  
 that, (after doubt, deny, &c., with neg.,)  
*quin.*  
 that, (after fear,) *ne*; that—not, *ut*.  
 that, *ille, a, ud.*  
 that, *ut*.  
 that—not, *nē*.  
 that-of-yours, *iste, a, ud.*  
 the more—the more, *quo—eo*.  
 Thebes, *Thebæ, ūrum*.  
 theft, *furtum*.  
 then, (= at that time,) *tum*.  
 then, (= after,) *deinde, inde*.  
 their, *suus*.  
 there, *ibi.<sup>2</sup>*  
 thereof, (= of it, of them, &c.,) *ejus, eo-*  
*rum, &c.*  
 Thetis, *Thētis, idos*.  
 think, *putare*.  
 think, (= think of doing, purpose, &c.,)  
*cōgitare*.  
 thing, *res, ei*.  
 thirst, *sītis, is*.  
 thirsty, to be, *sītire*  
 this, *hic, (hæc, hoc.)*  
 thorn, 13, *aculeus*.  
 those who, *quī.<sup>3</sup>*  
 thoughtlessly, *tēmēre*.  
 thoughtlessness, *temeritas, ātis*.  
 thoughts, *sententiæ*.  
 thread, *filum*.  
 threaten, *mīnari*; (of dangers,) *imminēre,*  
*(dat.)*  
 three, *tres*.  
 three days ago, *nūdius-tertius, (= nunc*  
*dies tertius.)*  
 three hundred and seventy-eighth, (an-  
 nus) *trecentessimus septuagesimus oc-*  
*tavus*.  
 three hundred and tenth, *trecentessimus*  
*decimus*.  
 through, *per*, expressing the cause, sign  
 of abl.

<sup>1</sup> Urbem muro, or murum urbi.

<sup>2</sup> 'There,' before *is, are, were, &c.*, is to be left untranslated.

<sup>3</sup> Properly *ii quī*, but the *ii* is generally omitted.



thunder, to, *tōnare*, p. 159.  
 thunderbolt, *fulmen*, *īnis*.  
 Tiber, *Tibēris*, *is*, acc. *im*.  
 tiger, *tigris*, *īdis*, *f*.  
 till, *cōlere*, (*colu*, *cult*.)  
 till, *donec*, (subj.)  
 time, *tempus*, *tempōris*; in a short time,  
*brēvi tempōre*.  
 time, at the right, *in tempōre*.  
 timid, *timīdus*, *pavidus*.  
 tired, am—of, *tædet me*, gen.  
 to-bed, *cubitum*, (sup. of *cubare*.)  
 to-day, *hodie*.  
 to death, (after condemn,) *capitis*.  
 to the city, (after return,) *in urbem*.  
 together, (after to compare,) *inter se*.  
 too much, *nīmius*, (*nīmius somnus*, or  
*nīmium somni*.)  
 too late, *sēro*.  
 top of, *summus*.  
 torch, *tæda*.  
 torment, *cruciare*.  
 totter, *lābare*.  
 touch, p. 162, *tangere*.  
 towards, *erga*, acc.; *in*, acc.; *adversus*.  
 town, *oppīdum*.  
 Trasimene lake, *lācus Trasimēnus*.  
 treasure, *thesaurus*; *ōpes*, (pl.); G. *opum*.  
 treachery, *proditio*, *ōnis*.  
 treat, *tractare*.  
 treaty, *fædus*, *ēris*.  
 tree, p. 147, *arbor*, *ōris*.  
 tribunal, *tribūnal*.  
 tribune, *tribūnus*.  
 tribune of the people, *tribunus plebis*.  
 trick, *dolus*.  
 triumph, *triumphus*.  
 Trojan;—in the Trojan war, *bello Troja-*  
*no*.  
 troops, *copiæ*, *milites*.  
 troublesome, *molestus*.  
 Troy, *Trōja*.  
 true, *vērus*.  
 truly, *vēre*.  
 trust, (= believe, have confidence in),  
*credere*, (dat.)  
 truth, the, *verum*.  
 turn out, *evadere*, (*vas*.)  
 tussilago, G. *īnis*.  
 twice, *bis*.  
 two apiece, p. 172, *binī*.  
 tyrant, *tyrannus*.

Umpire, *arbīter*, *tri*.  
 unbecoming, it is, *dedēcet*, acc.  
 uncertain, *incertus*.  
 uncover, *aperire*, *detēgere*.  
 understand, *intelligere*, (*lex*, *lect*.)  
 undertake, *suscipere*, (*cēp*, *cept*.)  
 undertaking, *inceptum*, 8.  
 undertaking, an, 8, *inceptum*.  
 unfeeling, *durus*.  
 unfortunate, *miser*, (*era*, *erum*.)  
 unheard, *inaudītus*.  
 unjustly, *injuste*.

unlearned, *indoctus*.  
 unless, *nisi*.  
 unlike, *dissimilis*, dat.  
 unmindful, *immēmōr*, gen.  
 unnecessary, *supervācuus*.  
 unprofitable, *inutilis*.  
 unskilled in, *imperitus*, gen.  
 unworthy, *indignus*, abl.  
 unwilling, *invītus*.  
 unwilling, to be, *nolle*.  
 unworthy, *indignus*, abl.  
 upper, *summus*.  
 upright, *honestus*.  
 use, *uti*, (*usus*.) abl.  
 useful, *utilis*.  
 useless, *inutilis*.  
 usual, *suetus*.

Valley, *vallis*  
 valuable, *pretiosus*.  
 value, (= value highly,) *magni æstima-*  
*re*, (not *æstimare* only;) of persons, *dī-*  
*ligere*.  
 vanity, *vanitas*, *ātis*.  
 vapor, *vapor*, *ōris*.  
 various, *vārius*.  
 vary, *vāriare*.  
 vast, *ingens*, *ntis*.  
 verse, *versus*, *ūs*.  
 very-confined, *per-angustus*.  
 vessel, *navis*, *is*.  
 vice, *vitium*.  
 victim, *victimā*.  
 victory, *victoria*.  
 vie, *certare*.  
 vile, *turpis*.  
 violence, *vis*, (— *vim*, *vi*;) pl. *vires*.  
 violent, *vehemens*, *ntis*.  
 violently-carry-off, *erīpere*, (*erīpui*, *erēp-*  
*tus*.)  
 virtue, *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.  
 virtuous, *honestus*.  
 voice, *vox*, *vōcis*.

Wage, *gerere*, (*gess*, *gest*.)  
 wait, *manēre*, *expectare*.  
 wait for, *opperiri*.  
 walk, *ambulare*.  
 wall, *murus*; (of a walled city,) *mānia*,  
 pl.; (of a house,) *paries*, *ētis*; (of a  
 garden, &c.) *maceria*: on the walls,  
*per muros*.  
 want, *carēre*, (abl.)  
 want, *inopia*.  
 war, *bellum*.  
 ward off, *arcēre*.  
 warm, *tēpere*.  
 warm, *calidus*.  
 warn, *mōnēre*.  
 warrior, *mīl-es*, *ītis*.  
 wasp, *vespa*.  
 watch-over, *custōdire*.  
 water, *aqua*.  
 wave, *fluctus*.  
 way, *via*.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>waylay, to, <i>insidias struere</i>, (<i>strux, struct.</i>) with dat. of person.<br/> weak, <i>imbecillus</i>.<br/> wealth, <i>opes, opum</i>.<br/> weary, am, <i>tædet me</i>, gen.<br/> weather, <i>tempestas</i>.<br/> weight, <i>onus, èris</i>.<br/> well, <i>bène</i>; (= rightly,) <i>recte</i>.<br/> well-known, it is, <i>constat</i>.<br/> what? (interrog.,) <i>quis, quæ, quid</i>, (but if it agrees with a subst., <i>quod</i>.)<br/> what, (meaning how great,) <i>quantus</i>.<br/> whatever, <i>quicquid</i>, neut. as subst.; <i>quicunque</i>, adj.<br/> when, <i>quum, quando</i>, (<i>quum not</i> in dependent sentences.)<br/> whence, <i>unde</i>.<br/> where, <i>ubi</i>.<br/> which, (of two,) <i>uter</i>.<br/> white, <i>albus</i>.<br/> whither, <i>quo</i>.<br/> who? <i>quis?</i><br/> whole, <i>totus</i>.<br/> wholesome, <i>salūber</i>.<br/> why, <i>cur</i>.<br/> wickedness, <i>nequitia</i>: wicked, <i>mālus, imprōbus</i>.<br/> wife, <i>mulier, èris</i>.<br/> wild, (of cries, &amp;c.,) <i>atrox, ōcis</i>.<br/> wild-beast, <i>fera</i>, (<i>bestia</i> understood.)<br/> will, <i>voluntas, ātis</i>.<br/> willing, to be, <i>velle</i>.<br/> willingly, <i>libenter</i>.<br/> win-by-arms, <i>ex-pugnare</i>, 8.<br/> win, (a country by arms,) <i>expugnare</i>.<br/> wine, <i>vinum</i>.<br/> winter, <i>hiems, hiēmis</i>.<br/> wisdom, <i>sapientia</i>.</p> | <p>wise, <i>sapiens, tis</i>.<br/> wish, (= choose, have a mind,) <i>velle</i>.<br/> wish, <i>cupere</i>, p. 162, 52.<br/> with, <i>cum</i>, (abl.)<br/> with me, <i>apud me</i>.<br/> without, <i>sine</i>, (abl.,) <i>extra</i>.<br/> withhold, <i>arcere</i>.<br/> withstand, <i>sustinere</i>, (<i>sustinui, sustentum</i>.)<br/> wolf, <i>lupus</i>.<br/> wonder, <i>mirari</i>.<br/> wonderful, <i>mirus</i>.<br/> wont, to be, <i>solere</i>, (<i>solitus sum</i>.)<br/> wood, <i>silva</i>; the Teutoburgian wood, <i>saltus Teutoburgensis</i>, (<i>saltus</i>; G. <i>ûs</i>.)<br/> wool, <i>lana</i>.<br/> word, <i>verbum</i>.<br/> work, <i>opus, èris</i>, p. 147.<br/> world, <i>mundus</i>; <i>orbis terrarum</i>.<sup>1</sup><br/> worship, <i>colere</i>, p. 162, 55.<br/> worse, <i>pejor</i>.<br/> worst, <i>pessimus</i>.<br/> worthy, <i>dignus</i>, abl.<br/> would that, <i>utinam</i>.<br/> wound, <i>vulnus, eris</i>.<br/> wrath, <i>ira</i>.<br/> write, p. 161, 52, <i>scribere</i>.<br/> writing, a, <i>scriptum</i>.<br/> wrong, <i>violare</i>.</p> <p>Year, <i>annus</i>.<br/> yesterday, <i>hieri</i>.<br/> young man, <i>adolescens, tis</i>.<br/> young, (bird,) <i>pullus</i>.</p> <p>Zama, <i>Zama</i>; G. <i>æ</i>.</p> |
|--|---|

<sup>1</sup> *Orbis terrarum*, when it is considered as made up of various lands or nations: hence it should be used when we speak of *subduing the world*.



# D. APPLETON & COMPANY'S VALUABLE PUBLICATIONS.

## A COMPLETE MINIATURE LIBRARY.

Comprising the best Works of the most approved Authors in Prose and Poetry published in an elegant form, with a beautiful Frontispiece to each. The following are comprised in the series:

|  |     |  |     |
|--|-----|--|-----|
| LALLA ROOKH. By THOMAS MOORE.....            | 37½ | IRISH MELODIES. By THOMAS MOORE.....             | 37½ |
| NIGHT THOUGHTS. By EDWARD YOUNG.....         | 37½ | ESSAYS ON VARIOUS SUBJECTS. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. | 37½ |
| HISTORY OF RASSELAS. By DR. JOHNSON.....     | 37½ | EXILES OF SIBERIA. By MAD. COTTON.....           | 31½ |
| PRIVATE DEVOTIONS. By HANNAH MORE.....       | 31½ | PURE GOLD. By EMINENT WRITERS.....               | 31½ |
| PRACTICAL PIETY. By HANNAH MORE. 2 vols..... | 62½ | PAUL AND VIRGINIA. By ST. PIERRE.....            | 31½ |
| SACRA PRIVATA. By Bp. WILSON.....            | 31½ | SCRIPTURE PROMISES. By SAMUEL CLARKE, D. D.....  | 37½ |
| THE SEASONS. By JAS. THOMSON.                | 37½ | COURSE OF TIME. By ROBERT POLLOK.....            | 37½ |
| GEMS FROM AMERICAN POETS.                    | 37½ | POETICAL WORKS OF OLIVER GOLDSMITH.              |     |
| VICAR OF WAKEFIELD. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH..... | 37½ |  |     |

### TOKEN OF LOVE.

#### TOKEN OF REMEMBRANCE.

#### TOKEN OF AFFECTION.

#### TOKEN OF FRIENDSHIP.

#### TOKEN OF THE HEART.

Each volume consists of appropriate Poetical extracts from the principal writers of the day. 31½ each.

The Library may be had in an elegant morocco case, with glass door, forming a beautiful and useful ornament for the Parlor Table.

## ILLUSTRATED STANDARD POETS,

Elegantly printed and uniform in size and style. The following editions of Standard British Poets are illustrated with numerous steel engravings, and may be had in all varieties of binding.

### SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS.

The Poetical Works of Sir Walter Scott, Bart.—Containing Lay of the Last Minstrel, Marmion, Lady of the Lake, Don Roderick, Rokeby, Ballads, Lyrics, and Songs, with a Life of the Author. 1 vol. 16mo. cloth, \$1 25, morocco extra, \$2 50.

### COWPER'S COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS.

The complete Poetical Works of Wm. Cowper, Esq., including the Hymns and Translations from Mad. Guion, Milton, &c., and Adam, a Sacred Drama, from the Italian of Batista Andreini; with a Memoir of the Author, by the Rev. Henry Stebbing, A. M. Two elegantly printed volumes, 800 pages, 16mo. cloth, \$1 75, or 1 vol. \$1 50. Do. morocco extra, 1 vol. \$3.

### MILTON'S COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS.

The complete Poetical Works of John Milton, with Explanatory Notes and a Life of the Author, by Rev. Henry Stebbing, A. M. Beautifully Illustrated. 1 vol. 16mo. cloth, \$1 25, morocco extra \$2 50.

The Latin and Italian Poems are included in this edition.

### BURNS' COMPLETE POETICAL WORKS.

The complete Poetical Works of Robert Burns, with Explanatory and Glossarial Notes, and a Life of the Author, by James Currie, M. D. 1 vol. 16mo. cloth, \$1 25, morocco extra, \$2 50.

## THE POEMS OF DANTE.

COMPRISING THE VISION OF HELL, PURGATORY, AND PARADISE.

TRANSLATED BY THE REV. HENRY CARY, A. M.,

With a Life of Dante, Chronological View of his Age, Additional Notes and Index. Illustrated with TWELVE STEEL ENGRAVINGS, from designs by JOHN FLAXMAN, R. A., and a finely engraved Portrait. One elegant volume, 16mo., \$1 50.

This standard classic is now for the first time presented to the American public, in a style worthy of its intrinsic merits.



*D. Appleton & Co. have recently published*

# HISTORY OF GERMANY,

FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE PRESENT TIME.

BY

FREDERICK KOHLRAUSCH,

*Chief of the Board of Education for the Kingdom of Hanover, and  
late Professor of History in the Polytechnic School.*

Translated from the last German edition,

BY JAMES D. HAAS.

One elegant 8vo. volume, of 500 pages, with complete Index, \$1 50.

## TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

The high merits and distinguished character of the original German Work, by Professor Kohlrausch, of which this is a translation, have long been acknowledged. A work which, during a period of thirty years, has enjoyed so much popularity as to have gone through several editions, embracing a circulation of many thousand copies; a production which has extended and established its good repute, even in its original form far beyond its native clime, to England, France, Belgium, Italy, America, &c. (in some of which countries it has been reprinted in German,) and has thus become a standard book of reference in almost all the Universities and principal public as well as private educational Institutions. Such a publication possesses ample testimony proving it able to create a lasting interest, and confirming its claims to consideration and esteem.

The aim of the distinguished author, in this valuable history, is thus simply but distinctly expressed by himself: "My sole object," he says, "has been to produce a succinct and connected development of the vivid and eventful course of our country's history, written in a style calculated to excite the interest and sympathy of my readers, and of such especially who, not seeking to enter upon a very profound study of the sources and more elaborate works connected with the annals of our empire, are nevertheless anxious to have presented to them the means of acquiring an accurate knowledge of the records of our Fatherland, in such a form as to leave upon the mind and heart an enduring, indelible impression."

That our industrious historian has attained his object, the intelligent reader will find in the interest excited, the clear views imparted, and the deep impression effected by his animated portrayals of both events and individuals. This has been the original and acknowledged characteristic of Herr Kohlrausch's work throughout its entire existence but in the new edition, from which this translation has been rendered, he has endeavoured to make it as perfect as possible, both in matter and style, and besides this has enriched it with many valuable notes not contained in the former editions: thus making it in reality a concise, yet, in every respect, a complete history of Germany.

It is important to remark, that Professor Kohlrausch is a Protestant, and one distinguished not less for his freedom from prejudice and impartiality, than for the comprehensiveness of his views and the high tone of his philosophy. The general adoption of the work—alike by Protestant and Romanist—is proof sufficiently convincing of the impartiality of his statements, and of the justice of his reflections and sentiments.

"After England, no country has stronger claims upon the attention of Americans than Germany. Its institutions, language, literature and national character combine to render its history highly interesting. The place it has occupied among nations for 1000 years—that is, ever since the era of Charlemagne—has been, on the whole, second to none in importance. Some of the greatest inventions—among them gunpowder and the art of printing—owe their origin to the Germans. The literature of Germany is now exciting a marked influence over our own, and we can never forget that Germany is the cradle of the Reformation.

"Notwithstanding all these claims upon our attention, it is not to be denied that the history of Germany has been very little known among us. Few persons except the highly educated have more than a very meagre knowledge of the outlines of German history.

"The publication of Kohlrausch's History, which is a standard work at home, comes in very opportunely to supply the dearth of information on this interesting topic. It furnishes a most valuable compend; and will tend to spread in our country a knowledge of one of the most refined as well as most learned of modern nations. Few of the historical works of our day are more worthy of the public patronage.—*Evening Mirror.*

712











Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process  
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide  
Treatment Date: July 2006

**Preservation Technology**  
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive  
Cranberry Township, PA 16066  
(724) 779-2111



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 360 1

